

2nd edition

Routledge Grammar Workbooks

Basic Chinese

A Grammar and Workbook

Yip Po-Ching
and Don Rimmington

BASIC CHINESE: A GRAMMAR AND WORKBOOK

Praise for the first edition:

‘Very well structured and clearly explained’

Dr Qian Kan, *Cambridge University*

Basic Chinese introduces the essentials of Chinese syntax. Each of the 25 units deals with a particular grammatical point and provides associated exercises. Features include:

- clear, accessible format
- many useful language examples
- jargon-free explanations of grammar
- ample drills and exercises
- full key to exercises

All Chinese entries are presented in both *pinyin* romanization and Chinese characters, and are accompanied, in most cases, by English translations to facilitate self-tuition as well as classroom teaching in both spoken and written Chinese.

Basic Chinese is designed for students new to the language. Together with its sister volume, *Intermediate Chinese*, it forms a compendium of the essentials of Chinese syntax.

Yip Po-Ching was formerly Lecturer in Chinese Studies at the University of Leeds and **Don Rimmington** is Emeritus Professor of East Asian Studies and former head of the East Asian Studies Department at the University of Leeds. They are the authors of *Chinese: An Essential Grammar* (1996; 2nd edition, 2006), *Intermediate Chinese: A Grammar and Workbook* (1998; 2nd edition forthcoming), and *Chinese: A Comprehensive Grammar* (2004).

Titles of related interest published by Routledge:

Intermediate Chinese: A Grammar and Workbook
by Yip Po-Ching and Don Rimmington

Chinese: An Essential Grammar
by Yip Po-Ching and Don Rimmington

Chinese: A Comprehensive Grammar
by Yip Po-Ching and Don Rimmington

Colloquial Chinese: A Complete Language Course
by Kan Qian

Colloquial Chinese CD-ROM
by Kan Qian

Colloquial Chinese (Reprint of the first edition)
by Ping-Cheng T'ung and David E. Pollard

The Chinese Lexicon
by Yip Po-Ching

Basic Cantonese: A Grammar and Workbook
by Virginia Yip and Stephen Matthews

Intermediate Cantonese: A Grammar and Workbook
by Virginia Yip and Stephen Matthews

Cantonese: A Comprehensive Grammar
by Stephen Matthews and Virginia Yip

Colloquial Cantonese: A Complete Language Course
by Keith S. T. Tong and Gregory James

Other titles available in the Grammar Workbooks series are:

Basic Cantonese

Intermediate Cantonese

Basic Dutch

Intermediate Dutch

Basic German

Intermediate German

Basic Irish

Intermediate Irish

Basic Italian

Basic Korean

Intermediate Korean (forthcoming)

Basic Polish

Intermediate Polish

Basic Russian

Intermediate Russian

Basic Spanish

Intermediate Spanish

Basic Welsh

Intermediate Welsh

BASIC CHINESE: A GRAMMAR AND WORKBOOK

2nd edition

Yip Po-Ching and Don Rimmington
with Zhang Xiaoming, Rachel Henson and
Yip Li Quzhen

First published 1998
by Routledge
2 Park Square, Milton Park, Abingdon, Oxon OX14 4RN

Simultaneously published in the USA and Canada
by Routledge
270 Madison Ave, New York, NY 10016

Second edition published 2009

Routledge is an imprint of the Taylor & Francis Group, an informa business

This edition published in the Taylor & Francis e-Library, 2009.

“To purchase your own copy of this or any of Taylor & Francis or Routledge’s collection of thousands of eBooks please go to www.eBookstore.tandf.co.uk.”

© 1998, 2009 Yip Po-Ching and Don Rimmington

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reprinted or reproduced or utilized in any form or by any electronic, mechanical, or other means, now known or hereafter invented, including photocopying and recording, or in any information storage or retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publishers.

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

Library of Congress Cataloguing in Publication Data

Yip, Po-ching, 1935–

Basic Chinese : a grammar and workbook / Yip Po-Ching and Don Rimmington.
p. cm.

Includes index.

1. Chinese language—Grammar. 2. Chinese language—Syntax. 3. Chinese language—Textbooks for foreign speakers—English. I. Rimmington, Don.

II. Title.

PL1111.Y56 2009

495.1'82421—dc22

2008031535

ISBN 0-203-88340-3 Master e-book ISBN

ISBN10: 0-415-47216-4 (hbk)

ISBN10: 0-415-47215-6 (pbk)

ISBN10: 0-203-88340-3 (ebk)

ISBN13: 978-0-415-47216-6 (hbk)

ISBN13: 978-0-415-47215-9 (pbk)

ISBN13: 978-0-203-88340-2 (ebk)

CONTENTS

Introduction	vii
1 Nouns: singular and plural	1
2 Definite and indefinite reference and demonstratives	8
3 Personal pronouns	17
4 Interrogative pronouns	28
5 Numbers	38
6 Measure words	49
7 Indefinite plurals	63
8 Times and dates	73
9 More interrogative expressions	84
10 Adjectives: attributive and predicative	93
11 是 shì and 有 yǒu	103
12 Comparisons	113
13 Verbs and location expressions	127
14 Verbs and time expressions	139
15 Verbs and aspect markers	154
16 Modal verbs	165

Contents

17	Negators: 不 bù and 没(有) méi(yǒu)	174
18	Types of question (1)	185
19	Types of question (2)	196
20	Imperatives and exclamations	206
21	Complements of direction and location (or destination)	214
22	Complements of result and manner	225
23	Potential complements	234
24	Coverbal phrases	242
25	Disyllabic prepositions	255
	Key to exercises	264
	Vocabulary list: Chinese to English	320
	Vocabulary list: English to Chinese	340
	Glossary of grammatical terms	359
	Index	364

INTRODUCTION

This book is designed to assist learners of Mandarin or Modern Standard Chinese, which is the language spoken by close on 70 per cent of the people of China. It presents the essential features of Chinese syntax in an easily accessible reference-and-practice format. We hope that it will be helpful to students of the language at all levels, though some initial knowledge will be an advantage, and we envisage that it will be suitable for classroom use, as well as for individual study and reference.

The book sets forth most of the basic elements of Chinese syntax, dealing with simple sentences and the main grammatical categories. The material is laid out over 25 units, and is introduced on a graded basis with more elementary items in the early units and more complex patterns in the later sections.

Each unit deals with an individual language category or structure. In the early stages, of necessity, grammatical items beyond those introduced in a unit are used in the illustrative sentences, but explanatory notes are added for them with cross-referencing to the later units, in which they themselves appear.

Each unit also provides follow-up exercises, which are designed for immediate reinforcement and readers are encouraged to make full use of them. A key to the exercises is given at the end of the book. Readers may wish to consult the units separately or work progressively through the book, but we suggest that, when going through a particular unit, they attempt all the exercises in it, before consulting the key.

In this second edition extra drills have been provided for each unit, which draw on the additional illustrative material mentioned above and which give an opportunity for the reader to extend and explore his or her learning experience of the language. They of course in many cases anticipate material that is to appear later in the book, but the intention is to encourage from the start practice in the rhythms of the basic structures of the language. It is an advantage when learning any language, and particularly Chinese, if you can develop good speech habits

as soon as possible as well as learning grammatical rules. If the exercises are there to help you with the grammatical rules, the drills will help you develop good speech habits. Keys to these drills are provided with the exercise keys at the end of the book.

Practical, functional vocabulary is used in the grammatical explanations and in the exercises and drills, and it is introduced as far as possible on a cumulative basis. A complete vocabulary list is appended to facilitate easy reference.

The use of grammatical terms is kept to a minimum and explanations of them are given as they occur. In addition a glossary of these terms is included as an appendix. An index is also provided to help locate particular grammatical structures or explanations.

All illustrative examples throughout the book are given in Chinese script and *pinyin* romanization, with colloquial English translations and where necessary with additional literal translations (marked *lit.*).

Students interested in pursuing their practical study of the Chinese language to a higher level should consult the companion volume to this book, *Intermediate Chinese: A Grammar and Workbook*, where more syntactic patterns peculiar to the Chinese language are explained and the important grammatical items covered in *Basic Chinese* are summarized. Furthermore, exercises and drills in *Intermediate Chinese* not only cover specific grammar points but also compare them with English language usage.

The preparation of this second edition is based on the first edition of the book, which received financial assistance from the University of Leeds Academic Development Fund. Two Research Assistants, Ms Zhang Xiaoming and Ms Rachel Henson carried out much of the important work of assembling the illustrative material. The present revision, however, could not have been completed without help and contribution from Mrs Yip Li Quzhen, who closely monitored the vocabulary progression, partially revamped the exercises and compiled the vocabulary list.

Any errors or omissions are, of course, the fault of the authors.

Note: We have used ‘a’ rather than ‘ɑ’, which is the standard form in *pinyin* romanization.

UNIT ONE

Nouns: singular and plural

A In Chinese, as in other languages, nouns may be differentiated into a number of categories. The largest category is the common noun, which covers tangible, discrete entities, e.g. 大人 **dàren** adult, 树 **shù** tree, etc. The common noun is the main focus of this unit, but other noun categories are:

- (i) proper noun (for one individual entity):
e.g. 中国 **zhōngguó** China, 李明 **lǐ míng** Li Ming (name of a person)
- (ii) material noun (for non-discrete entities):
e.g. 纸 **zhǐ** paper, 茶 **chá** tea
- (iii) abstract noun (for non-tangible entities):
e.g. 文化 **wénhuà** culture, 经济 **jīngjì** economy

B Chinese common nouns, unlike English ones, make no distinction in form between singular and plural:

苹果	píngguǒ	apple/apples
孩子	háizi	child/children
一个苹果	yī gè píngguǒ	an/one apple
两个苹果	liǎng gè píngguǒ	two apples
一个孩子	yī gè háizi	a/one child
两个孩子	liǎng gè háizi	two children

C Another important feature of the common noun in Chinese is that when it is used with a numeral, the numeral has to have a measure word between it and the noun (see also Unit 6). 个 **gè** (usually unstressed as **ge** in actual speech) is by far the most common measure word and it can occur with a wide range of nouns:

一个人	yī gè rén	a/one person
两个学生	liǎng gè xuésheng	two students
三个面包	sān gè miànbāo	three bread rolls/three buns
四个橙子	sì gè chéngzi	four oranges

1
Nouns:
singular
and plural

五个鸡蛋	wǔ gè jīdàn	five eggs
六个城市	liù gè chéngshì	six cities
七个国家	qī gè guójiā	seven countries
八个商店	bā gè shāngdiàn	eight shops
九个男孩子	jiǔ gè nán hái	nine boys
十个女孩子	shí gè nǚ hái	ten girls
几个朋友	jǐ gè péngyou	a few friends

A considerable number of nouns or sets of nouns are linked with particular measure words:

一本书	yī běn shū	a/one book
一支笔	yī zhī bǐ	a/one pen
一把牙刷	yī bǎ yáshuā	a/one toothbrush
一棵树	yī kē shù	a/one tree

Some Chinese measure words that indicate portion or partition, for example, are similar to English measures:

两片面包	liǎng piàn miànbāo	two slices of bread
一块蛋糕	yī kuài dànɡāo	a piece of cake
一杯咖啡	yī bēi kāfēi	a cup of coffee
一杯啤酒	yī bēi píjiǔ	a glass of beer

Measure words are also used with abstract and material nouns:

一个建议	yī gè jiànyì	a suggestion	(abstract)
一个借口	yī gè jièkǒu	an excuse	(abstract)
一个理想	yī gè lǐxiǎng	an ambition/ideal	(abstract)
一张纸	yī zhāng zhǐ	a piece of paper	(material)
一块布	yī kuài bù	a piece of cloth	(material)

Note 1: Notice that with 一 **yī** you distinguish between ‘a/an’ and ‘one’ in speech by the degree of emphasis given to it. The phrase 一个杯子 **yī gè bēizi**, for example, may mean ‘one mug’ if 一 **yī** is stressed and ‘a mug’ if 一 **yī** is not stressed. In the latter meaning 一 **yī** can be omitted altogether if it comes directly after a monosyllabic verb.

我想去商店买(一)个杯子 **wǒ xiǎng qù shāngdiàn mǎi (yī) gè bēizi**
(一 **yī** is unstressed and optional)
I’m going to the shop to buy a mug.

我只要买一个杯子。 **wǒ zhǐ yào mǎi yī gè bēizi** (一 **yī** is stressed)
I only want to buy one mug.

Note 2: In Chinese 杯子 **bēizi** may mean ‘cup’ or even ‘glass’ as well as ‘mug’.

Note 3: 想 **xiǎng** and 要 **yào** are both modal verbs, i.e. verbs which precede main verbs to indicate the mood or attitude of the subject (see Unit 17). While 想 **xiǎng** emphasizes ‘plan’ or ‘inclination’, 要 **yào** indicates ‘wish’ or ‘will’. They may generally be used interchangeably.

D It is possible to pluralize human nouns by adding the suffix 们 **men** but only when the people concerned are seen or addressed as a group. A collectivized noun like this undergoes two changes:

- (i) A noun with 们 **men** suffix becomes definite in reference. Being of definite reference, this form may be used to address a particular audience:

先生们，女士们 ...	xiānshengmen,	Ladies and gentlemen
	nǚshìmen
朋友们 ...	péngyoumen	Friends ...
	...	

- (ii) A collectivized noun with 们 **men** suffix is incompatible with a ‘numeral + measure word’ phrase:

One cannot say:

*三个工程师们	sān gè gōngchéngshìmen	(<i>lit.</i> three engineers)
*九个大人们	jiǔ gè dàrénmen	(<i>lit.</i> nine adults)

However, it is not possible to collectivize non-human nouns with the suffix 们 **men**:

*狗们	gǒumen	(<i>lit.</i> dogs)
*杯子们	bēizimen	(<i>lit.</i> cups/glasses/mugs)

E Nouns or noun phrases (e.g. ‘numeral + measure word + noun’) may be linked together by the conjunction 和 **hé** ‘and’:

笔和纸 **bǐ hé zhǐ**
pens and paper

男孩子和女孩子 **nán hái zi hé nǚ hái zi**
boys and girls

1

Nouns:
singular
and plural

三个蛋糕和四个面包 **sān gè dànɡāo hé sì gè miànbāo**
three cakes and four bread rolls

中国经济和文化 **zhōngguó jīngjì hé wénhuà**
China's economy and culture

他有两本书和一支笔。 **tā yǒu liǎng běn shū hé yī zhī bǐ**
He has two books and one pen.

我要吃两片面包、一个鸡蛋和一块蛋糕。

wǒ yào chī liǎng piàn miànbāo | yī gè jīdàn hé yī kuài dànɡāo
I want to eat two slices of bread, an egg and a piece of cake.

Note: Observe that a Chinese full-stop is a hollow dot, not a solid one as in English; and the ‘、’ dun-comma, seen in this last example, is peculiar to Chinese punctuation and is used for listing items in a series:

她想买四个苹果、三个橙子、两个面包和一打鸡蛋。

tā xiǎng mǎi sì gè píngguǒ | sān gè chéngzi | liǎng gè miànbāo hé yī dá jīdàn

She would like to buy four apples, three oranges, two loaves of bread and a dozen eggs.

Exercise 1.1

Translate the following phrases into Chinese:

- | | |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| 1 a child | 16 one mug |
| 2 one child | 17 two pens |
| 3 two children | 18 ten cups |
| 4 three oranges | 19 two cups of tea |
| 5 a dozen eggs | 20 three books |
| 6 four bread rolls | 21 four adults |
| 7 five slices of bread | 22 six pieces of paper |
| 8 a city | 23 a cake |
| 9 two suggestions | 24 a piece of cake |
| 10 six countries | 25 an excuse |
| 11 eight shops | 26 five boys |
| 12 nine students | 27 six girls |
| 13 seven engineers | 28 two pieces of cloth |
| 14 a friend | 29 a few trees |
| 15 a person | 30 two Chinese |

Exercise 1.2

Decide on the emphasis given to 一 **yī** in the sentences below by putting brackets round the 一 where it may be omitted:

- 我想交一个中国朋友。
wǒ xiǎng jiāo (yī) gè zhōngguó péngyou
I would like to have a Chinese friend. (交 **jiāo** 'to make friends with')
- 我想买一打鸡蛋。
wǒ xiǎng mǎi yī dá jīdàn
I want to buy a dozen eggs.
- 他只是是一个学生。
tā zhǐ shì yī gè xuésheng
He is only a student.
- 我想吃一个橙子。
wǒ xiǎng chī yī gè chéngzi
I want to eat an orange.
- 我们有一个建议。
wǒmen yǒu yī gè jiànyì
We have a suggestion.
- 我只想去一个国家。
wǒ zhǐ xiǎng qù yī gè guójiā
I only want to go to one country.
- 我要去买一把牙刷。
wǒ yào qù mǎi yī bǎ yáshuā
I want to go and buy a toothbrush.
- 她只有一个孩子。
tā zhǐ yǒu yī gè háiizi
She only has one child.

Exercise 1.3

Decide which of the following sentences are incorrect and make the necessary corrections:

- 我碰见两个朋友们。**wǒ pèngjiàn liǎng gè péngyoumen**
(碰见 **pèngjiàn** 'to bump into')
I bumped into two friends.
- 他想找一借口。**tā xiǎng zhǎo yī jièkǒu** (找 **zhǎo** 'to find')
He wanted to find an excuse.

1
Nouns:
singular
and plural

- 3 孩子们要吃苹果们。 **háizimen yào chī píngguǒmen**
The children wanted to eat apples.
- 4 他们想去三国家。 **tāmen xiǎng qù sān guójiā**
They would like to visit three countries.
- 5 我想喝杯茶。 **wǒ xiǎng hē bēi chá** (喝 **hē** 'to drink')
I would like to have a cup of tea.
- 6 她有中国朋友们。 **tā yǒu zhōngguó péngyoumen**
She has Chinese friends.
- 7 你要吃几面包？ **nǐ yào chī jǐ miànbāo**
How many slices of bread would you like to eat?
- 8 谁要买鸡蛋？ **shuí/shéi yào mǎi jīdàn**
Who wants to buy eggs?

Exercise 1.4

Translate the sentences below into English:

- | | |
|-------------|--|
| 1 我要买几个面包。 | wǒ yào mǎi jǐ gè miànbāo |
| 2 她想吃两块蛋糕。 | tā xiǎng chī liǎng kuài dàngāo |
| 3 我碰见三个中国人。 | wǒ pèngjiàn sān gè zhōngguó rén |
| 4 我要喝杯咖啡。 | wǒ yào hē bēi kāfēi |
| 5 我想去五个国家。 | wǒ xiǎng qù wǔ gè guójiā |
| 6 她是一个工程师。 | tā shì yī gè gōngchéngshī |
| 7 我有两个孩子。 | wǒ yǒu liǎng gè hái zi |
| 8 我只想去一个城市。 | wǒ zhǐ xiǎng qù yī gè chéngshì |
| 9 谁想买书？ | shuí/shéi xiǎng mǎi shū |
| 10 我有个建议。 | wǒ yǒu gè jiànyì |

Exercise 1.5

Translate the following phrases and sentences into Chinese. Don't forget to use the dun-comma where necessary.

- 1 apples and oranges
- 2 adults and children
- 3 three slices of bread, a cup of coffee and a piece of cake
- 4 four books and six pens
- 5 I would like to visit three countries.
- 6 I would like to have a cup of tea.
- 7 She only wants to go to two shops.

- 8 She wants to buy a bread roll, two cakes, five apples and a dozen eggs.
- 9 The child has only one ambition.
- 10 I bumped into four Chinese friends.
- 11 I want a few pieces of paper.
- 12 I want to know something about China's economy and culture.
(了解 **liǎojiě** 'to know or understand')

1
Nouns:
singular
and plural

Pattern and vocabulary drill 1.1

Complete the following sentences using the examples indicated:

- 1 我要买... **wǒ yào mǎi** ... I would like to buy ...
 - a. some eggs
 - b. a few bread-rolls
 - c. a book and a pen
 - d. some oranges
- 2 我想喝... **wǒ xiǎng hē** ... I would like to drink ...
 - a. a cup of tea
 - b. a cup of coffee
 - c. a glass of beer
 - d. a glass of coke (可乐 **kělè**)
- 3 我想吃... **wǒ xiǎng chī** ... I would like to eat ...
 - a. an apple
 - b. an orange
 - c. a piece of cake
 - d. a sandwich (三明治 **sānmíngzhì**)
- 4 我要去... **wǒ yào qù** ... I would like to go to ...
 - a. China
 - b. Britain (英国 **yīngguó**)
 - c. Beijing (北京 **běijīng**)
 - d. London (伦敦 **lúndūn**)
- 5 我想交... **wǒ xiǎng jiāo** ... I would like to make friends with ...
 - a. a few Chinese friends
 - b. some English friends

Pattern and vocabulary drill 1.2

Change all the statements you have completed in Drill 1.1 into questions, using 谁 **shéi** 'who' as the subject instead of 我 **wǒ** 'I':

我要买几个苹果。 **wǒ yào mǎi jǐ gè píngguǒ**
I would like to buy a few apples.

谁要买几个苹果? **shéi yào mǎi jǐ gè píngguǒ**
Who would like to buy a few apples?

UNIT TWO

Definite and indefinite reference and demonstratives

A Reference is an important aspect of common nouns. As there are no definite or indefinite articles ‘the/a(n)’ in Chinese, definite or indefinite reference is indicated by the positioning of the noun in the sentence. Generally speaking, a noun placed before the verb will be of definite reference, while a noun placed after the verb will be of indefinite reference.

Definite reference:

笔在哪儿？ **bǐ zài nǎr** Where is the pen?/Where are the pens?
(笔 **bǐ** ‘pen’ is positioned before the verb 在 **zài** ‘be in/at’.)

Indefinite reference:

哪儿有笔？ **nǎr yǒu bǐ** Where is there a pen?/Where are there *some* pens?
(笔 **bǐ** ‘pen’ is positioned after the verb 有 **yǒu** ‘exist’.)

In fact, any noun used on its own is subject to this general principle. The English translations of the following examples provide the referential clues:

病人在哪儿？	bìngrén zài nǎr	Where is the patient?
哪儿有医生？	nǎr yǒu yīshēng	Where is there a doctor?
我喜欢吃香蕉。	wǒ xǐhuan chī xiāngjiāo	I like (eating) bananas.
你找毛衣吗？	nǐ zhǎo máoyī ma	Are you looking for your sweater/jumper?

Note: 吗 **ma** is a sentence particle which is used at the end of a statement to convert it into a general question asking for either confirmation or denial (see Unit 18).

Even a noun apparently made indefinite by its ‘numeral (other than 一 **yī** ‘one’) + measure’ phrase, may still be regarded as of definite reference when placed before the verb, particularly when 都 **dōu** or 也 **yě** is present to refer back to the noun in question:

三个孩子都上学。 **sān gè hái zǐ dōu shàng xué**

All *the* three children go to school.

(*lit.* three children all go to school)

两件毛衣也在柜子里。 **liǎng jiàn máo yī yě zài guì zi li**

Both of *the* jumpers are also in the wardrobe.

Note: 柜子 **guì zi** is a general term in Chinese which may mean ‘wardrobe’, ‘cabinet’, ‘cupboard’, etc. depending on the context.

B However, this general rule may be nullified if the speaker is making a general comment rather than narrating an event or incident. The comment in a topic-comment sentence, as we shall see, usually consists of an adjective, the verb 是 **shì** ‘to be’, a modal verb or a verb that indicates a habitual action:

香蕉很好吃。	xiāngjiāo hěn hǎochī	Bananas are delicious.	(adjective)
橙子不是蔬菜。	chéngzi bù shì shūcài	Oranges are not vegetables.	(verb 是 shì ‘to be’)
猫会抓老鼠。	māo huì zhuā lǎoshǔ	Cats can catch mice.	(modal verb)
马吃草。	mǎ chī cǎo	Horses eat grass.	(verb that indicates a habitual action)

In the above examples, 香蕉 **xiāngjiāo** ‘bananas’, 橙子 **chéngzi** ‘oranges’, 猫 **māo** ‘cats’ and 马 **mǎ** ‘horses’, as topics to be commented on, are of indefinite reference, in spite of the fact they are placed before the verb.

Note: The distinction between subject-predicate and topic-comment sentences is discussed in detail in *Intermediate Chinese*, Unit 7.

C On the other hand, a noun before the verb may be made to take on indefinite reference if it is preceded by 有 **yǒu** ‘have/exist’:

2

Definite and indefinite reference and demonstratives

有人找你。 **yǒu rén zhǎo nǐ**
There is someone looking for you.

有毛衣在柜子里。 **yǒu máoyī zài guǐzi li**
There is a sweater/there are (some) sweaters in the wardrobe.

In these sentences with 有 **yǒu** a numeral (including 一 **yī** ‘a(n); one’) or an expression such as (一)些 **(yī)xiē** ‘some’ or 几 **jǐ** + measure ‘a few’ may be used with the noun:

有(一)个医生请病假。 **yǒu (yī) gè yīshēng qǐng bìngjià**
A doctor was on sick leave.
(*lit.* There was a doctor [who] asked for sick leave.)

有(一)个女医生在病房里。 **yǒu (yī) gè nǚ yīshēng zài bìngfáng li**
A lady doctor is in the ward.
(*lit.* There is a female doctor [who] is in the ward.)

有两个鸡蛋在碗里。 **yǒu liǎng gè jīdàn zài wǎn li**
There are two eggs in the bowl.

有(一)些花儿在花瓶里。 **yǒu (yī)xiē huār zài huāpíng li**
There are some flowers in the vase.

有几本书在书架上。 **yǒu jǐ běn shū zài shūjià shang**
There are a few/several books on the (book)shelf.

As can be seen from the examples above, these 有 **yǒu** sentences can express the presence of a person or thing in a place, with or without a clear indication of the location. Where the location is indicated, a more common way of phrasing such sentences is to begin with the location phrase (e.g. 花瓶里 **huāpíng li** ‘in the vase’, 书架上 **shūjià shang** ‘on the bookshelf’), since it is likely to be of definite reference and a pre-verbal position is therefore more natural (see Units 11 and 13):

花瓶里有(一)些花儿。 **huāpíng li yǒu (yī)xiē huār**
There are some flowers in the vase.
(*lit.* In the vase there are some flowers.)

书架上有几本书。 **shūjià shang yǒu jǐ běn shū**
There are a few books on the (book)shelf.
(*lit.* On the bookshelf there are a few books.)

碗里有两个鸡蛋。 **wǎn li yǒu liǎng gè jīdàn**
There are two eggs in the bowl. (*lit.* In the bowl there are two eggs.)

屋子里有一张桌子和四把椅子。

wūzi li yǒu yī zhāng zhuōzi hé sì bǎ yǐzi

There are a table and four chairs in the room.

(*lit.* In the room there are a table and four chairs.)

桌子上有(一)个花瓶。 **zhuōzi shang yǒu (yī) gè huāpíng**

There is a vase on the table. (*lit.* On the table there is a vase.)

柜子里有毛衣。 **guìzi li yǒu máoyī**

There is a sweater/are sweaters in the wardrobe.

(*lit.* In the wardrobe there is a sweater/are sweaters.)

病房里有四个病人。

bìngfáng li yǒu sì gè bìng rén

There are four patients in the ward.

那儿有笔，这儿有纸。 **nàr yǒu bǐ | zhèr yǒu zhǐ**

There is a pen/are pens over there and (there is) some paper here.

(*lit.* There there is a pen/are pens, here there is some paper.)

D Demonstratives are by definition context-based. They naturally indicate definite reference. In Chinese ‘this’ is 这 **zhè** and ‘that’ is 那 **nà**:

这是咖啡，那是茶。 **zhè shì kāfēi | nà shì chá**

This is coffee and that is tea.

In Chinese, when demonstratives are followed by a noun, as with numbers, a measure is required between the demonstrative and the noun. When used in this way, 这 **zhè** may also be pronounced ‘**zhèi**’ and 那 **nà**, ‘**nèi**’. The probable explanation for this is that ‘**zhèi**’ and ‘**nèi**’ are fusions of ‘**zhè** + **yī**’ and ‘**nà** + **yī**’:

这个人	zhèi gè rén	this person
那张桌子	nèi zhāng zhuōzi	that table
这只狗	zhèi zhī gǒu	this dog
那只猫	nèi zhī māo	that cat

我朋友喜欢这张照片。

wǒ péngyou xǐhuan zhè zhāng zhàopiàn

My friend likes this photograph.

我不喜欢那幅画儿。 **wǒ bù xǐhuan nà fú huàr**

I don’t like that painting.

In the plural, these demonstratives are followed by 些 **xiē** or a 几 **jǐ** + measure word phrase to mean ‘these’ or ‘those’:

2

Definite
and
indefinite
reference
and
demon-
stratives

她要这些毛衣。 **tā yào zhè xiē máoyī**

She wants these sweaters.

她要这几件毛衣。 **tā yào zhè jǐ jiàn máoyī**

She wants these (few) sweaters.

我买那些碗。 **wǒ mǎi nèi xiē wǎn**

I'll buy those bowls.

我买那几只碗。 **wǒ mǎi nà jǐ zhī wǎn**

I'll buy those (few) bowls.

When 这 **zhè** and 那 **nà** are used in conjunction with a numeral, the word order is demonstrative + number + measure:

你喜欢这两张照片吗？ **nǐ xǐhuan zhè liǎng zhāng zhàopiàn ma**

Do you like these two photo(graph)s?

你找那三把钥匙吗？ **nǐ zhǎo nà sān bǎ yàoshi ma**

Are you looking for those three keys?

When the context is clear, the noun, of course, may be omitted:

我要这个。 **wǒ yào zhèi gè**

I want this one.

他喜欢那两件。 **tā xǐhuan nèi liǎng jiàn**

He likes those two. (e.g. sweater, shirt, etc.)

我喜欢这张，不喜欢那张。

wǒ xǐhuan zhèi zhāng | bù xǐhuan nèi zhāng

I like this one, but I don't like that one. (e.g. photographs, paintings, etc.)

E Finally, as we have seen context is always an important factor in Chinese. If an object or a matter has already been mentioned in a particular context, then this will give it a consequential definite reference. For example, in the sentence:

你去买书吗？ **nǐ qù mǎi shū ma**

the unmarked noun 书 **shū** 'book' would normally be of indefinite reference because it comes after a verb (where it would mean: 'Are you going to buy a book/some books?'). However, it would take on definite reference if the communicators were already aware from their previous exchange that 书 **shū** here refers to a book or books they have been talking about. This would make it mean: 'Are you going to buy the book(s)?'

The indefinite reference of an unmarked noun after the verb can, of course, always be countered by the presence of a demonstrative:

你去买那本书吗？ **nǐ qù mǎi nài běn shū ma**
Are you going to buy that book?

Exercise 2.1

Complete the translations below by filling in the blanks:

1 this pen	_____	_____	笔 bǐ
2 these pens	_____	_____	笔 bǐ
3 that orange	_____	_____	橙子 chéngzi
4 those oranges	_____	_____	橙子 chéngzi
5 those (few) children	_____	_____	孩子 háizi
6 these (few) tables	_____	_____	桌子 zhuōzi
7 that cup/glass/mug	_____	_____	杯子 bēizi
8 this book	_____	_____	书 shū
9 those schoolbags	_____	_____	书包 shūbāo
10 those (few) bookshelves	_____	_____	书架 shūjià
11 this vase	_____	_____	花瓶 huāpíng
12 these (few) vases	_____	_____	花瓶 huāpíng
13 that kitchen	_____	_____	厨房 chúfáng
14 these flowers	_____	_____	花儿 huār
15 those trees	_____	_____	树 shù
16 that piece of cake	_____	_____	蛋糕 dàngāo
17 that school	_____	_____	学校 xuéxiào
18 this toothbrush	_____	_____	牙刷 yáshuā
19 that slice of bread	_____	_____	面包 miànbāo
20 these keys	_____	_____	钥匙 yàoshi
21 those umbrellas	_____	_____	雨伞 yǔsǎn
22 that shop	_____	_____	商店 shāngdiàn
23 those (few) chairs	_____	_____	椅子 yǐzi
24 these (few) paintings	_____	_____	画儿 huàr
25 these two doctors	_____	_____	医生 yīshēng
26 those few patients	_____	_____	病人 bìngren

Exercise 2.2

Indicate which of the two English translations below is the correct version of the Chinese in each case:

- 1 她喜欢狗。 **tā xǐhuan gǒu**
She likes the dogs./She likes dogs.

2

Definite and indefinite reference and demonstratives

- 2 我买这顶帽子。 **wǒ mǎi zhè dǐng màozi**
(顶 **dǐng** measure word for hats/caps)
I'll buy this hat./I'll buy that hat.
- 3 你带雨伞吗？ **nǐ dài yǔsǎn ma**
(带 **dài** 'to bring along; to take with')
Are you bringing an umbrella with you?/Are you bringing the umbrella with you?
- 4 钥匙在哪儿？ **yàoshi zài nǎr**
Where are the keys?/Where can I find some keys?
- 5 你带毛衣吗？ **nǐ dài máoyī ma**
Are you bringing along a jumper/sweater?/Are you bringing along the jumper?
- 6 她有孩子吗？ **tā yǒu háiizi ma**
Has she got any children?/Has she got the children?
- 7 桌子上有只碗。 **zhuōzi shang yǒu zhī wǎn**
There is a bowl on the table./The bowl is on the table.
- 8 有件毛衣在柜子里。 **yǒu jiàn máoyī zài guizi li**
The jumper is in the wardrobe./There is a jumper in the wardrobe.
- 9 筷子在桌子上。 **kuàizi zài zhuōzi shang**
The chopsticks are on the table./There are chopsticks on the table.
- 10 我会抓筷子。 **wǒ huì zhuā kuàizi**
(会 **huì** 'know how to')
I know how to use chopsticks. (*lit.* I know how to grasp chopsticks.)/
I know how to use the chopsticks.

Exercise 2.3

Translate the following sentences into English paying attention to whether the nouns involved are of definite or indefinite reference. In some cases the noun could be either definite or indefinite depending on the possible contexts.

- 1 哪儿有书？ **nǎr yǒu shū**
- 2 书在哪儿？ **shū zài nǎr**
- 3 厨房里有一个蛋糕。 **chúfáng li yǒu yī gè dànɡāo**
- 4 猫在屋子里。 **māo zài wūzi li**
- 5 你找钥匙吗？ **nǐ zhǎo yàoshi ma**
- 6 你买雨伞吗？ **nǐ mǎi yǔsǎn ma**
- 7 你吃香蕉吗？ **nǐ chī xiāngjiāo ma**
- 8 我们想买花儿。 **wǒmen xiǎng mǎi huār**
- 9 孩子们在学校里。 **háizimen zài xuéxiào li**
- 10 我喜欢吃苹果。 **wǒ xǐhuan chī píngguǒ**

- 11 四件毛衣和三顶帽子都在柜子里。
sì jiàn máoyī hé sān dǐng màozi dōu zài guǐzi li
- 12 十个学生都想去中国。 **shí gè xuésheng dōu xiǎng qù zhōngguó**
- 13 你有筷子吗？ **nǐ yǒu kuàizi ma**
- 14 苹果、橙子、蛋糕和面包都在厨房里。
píngguǒ | chéngzi | dànɡāo hé miànbāo dōu zài chúfáng li

Exercise 2.4

Translate the following sentences into Chinese:

- 1 Where are there any shops?
- 2 Oranges are good to eat.
- 3 There are a few mugs on the table.
- 4 There are some books on the bookshelf.
- 5 Do you have a pen on you? (Hint: you can formulate this sentence using the verb 带 **dài** 'to bring along with' or you can use the location phrase 身上 **shēnshang** lit. 'on body'.)
- 6 The bowls are in the cupboard.
- 7 Where is the key?
- 8 There are some flowers in the vase.
- 9 Where are the boys?
- 10 Do you have a jumper?
- 11 Do you like these photo(graph)s?
- 12 Are you looking for the books?
- 13 These two books are very interesting. (有意思 **yǒu yìsi** 'interesting')
- 14 I like those three pictures.
- 15 Where are those five students?

Pattern and vocabulary drill 2.1

Following the patterns below, in each case formulate the question or statement separately as appropriate for (a) and (b):

- 1 哪儿有...? **nǎr yǒu ...** Where is there a...?
 (when you need to locate (a) a pen and (b) a chair)
- 2 ... 在哪儿? ... **zài nǎr** Where is the...?
 (when you want to know where (a) the toilet (厕所 **cèsuǒ**) is and
 (b) where the station (车站 **chēzhàn**) is)
- 3 有... 在病房里。 **yǒu ... zài bìngfáng li** There is/are... in the ward
 (when you are explaining that there are (a) a male doctor and a lady
 doctor (b) nine patients in the ward)

2

Definite and indefinite reference and demonstratives

- 4 ... 在厨房里。... **zài chúfáng li** The ... is/are in the kitchen (when you are pointing out that (a) the bowls and chopsticks and (b) the knives and forks are in the kitchen)
- 5 柜子里有...。 **guizi li yǒu ...** There is/are ... in the cupboard (when you are saying that there are (a) tea and coffee and (b) some mugs in the cupboard)

Pattern and vocabulary drill 2.2

Change the following statements into general questions using 吗 **ma**:

Model: 我喜欢吃香蕉。 **wǒ xǐhuan chī xiāngjiāo**
I like eating bananas.

Answer: 你喜欢吃香蕉吗? **nǐ xǐhuan chī xiāngjiāo ma**
Do you like eating bananas?

- 1 我喜欢吃蛋糕。 **wǒ xǐhuan chī dàngāo**
- 2 我喜欢喝啤酒。 **wǒ xǐhuan hē píjiǔ**
- 3 我喜欢吃蔬菜。 **wǒ xǐhuan chī shūcài**
- 4 我喜欢交朋友。 **wǒ xǐhuan jiāo péngyou**
- 5 我想喝杯咖啡。 **wǒ xiǎng hē bēi kāfēi**
- 6 我想买支笔。 **wǒ xiǎng mǎi zhī bǐ**
- 7 我要买几本书。 **wǒ yào mǎi jǐ běn shū**
- 8 我想买些花儿。 **wǒ xiǎng mǎi xiē huār**
- 9 我的猫会抓老鼠。 **wǒ de māo huì zhuā lǎoshǔ**
- 10 我会画画儿。(画 **huà** 'draw; paint') **wǒ huì huà huà**

Note: If 想 **xiǎng** and 要 **yào** indicate wills and wishes on individual occasions, 喜欢 **xǐhuan** indicates habitual preferences.

UNIT THREE

Personal pronouns

A Chinese personal pronouns

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>1st person</i>	我 wǒ I/me	我们 wǒmen we/us 咱们 zánmen we/us (including the listener)
<i>2nd person</i>	你 nǐ you 您 nín you (polite form)	你们 nǐmen you
<i>3rd person</i>	他 tā he/him 她 tā she/her 它 tā it	他们 tāmen they/them (masculine) 她们 tāmen they/them (feminine) 它们 tāmen they/them (neuter)

As can be seen the personal pronouns have no case distinctions:

我是中国人。	wǒ shì zhōngguó rén	I am Chinese.
她来看我。	tā lái kàn wǒ	She came to see me.
你好！	nǐ hǎo	Hello!/How are you?
你们住在哪儿？	nǐmen zhù zài nǎr	Where do you (plural) live?
我们不认识他们。	wǒmen bù rènshi tāmen	We don't know them.
她们不喜欢她。	tāmen bù xǐhuan tā	They don't like her.
祝你生日快乐！	zhù nǐ shēngrì kuàilè	Happy birthday! (<i>lit.</i> Wish you birthday happy.)

Note: As 他 and 她 are both pronounced **tā**, gender differentiation in speech (rather than in writing) is only possible through context.

3
Personal
pronouns

B 咱们 **zánmen** ‘we, us’ is employed only when the speaker wants consciously to include the listener(s):

咱们走吧。 **zánmen zǒu ba** Let’s go.
再见！我们走了。 **zàijiàn | wǒmen zǒu le** Goodbye. We’re off now.

Note 1: In ordinary conversation the distinction between 咱们 **zánmen** ‘we (inclusive)’ and 我们 **wǒmen** ‘we (exclusive)’ is not strictly followed, particularly in the south of the country, where 咱们 **zánmen** may often be replaced by 我们 **wǒmen**, though not the other way round when the speaker wants to exclude the listener(s): e.g. 我们自己来！ **wǒmen zìjǐ lái** ‘We’ll help ourselves/manage by ourselves.’

Note 2: 吧 **ba** is a sentence particle for a tentative request (see Unit 20), and 了 **le** is a sentence particle used to signal the beginning of a new situation of some kind as is made clear in the statement above (see *Intermediate Chinese* Unit 8).

C 它 **tā**/它们 **tāmen** is mostly used to refer to animals:

你找到了那只猫没有？
nǐ zhǎo dào le nèi zhī māo méiyǒu
Have you found that cat?
找到了，它在花园里。 **zhǎo dào le | tā zài huāyuán li**
I have found it. It’s in the garden.

水池里有很多金鱼。它们都很好看。
shuǐchí li yǒu hěn duō jīnyú | tāmen dōu hěn hǎokàn
There are a lot of goldfish in the pool. They are all very beautiful.

In spoken Chinese, 它 **tā**/它们 **tāmen** is rarely used to refer to inanimate objects since the reference is usually clear without it:

自行车你修好了没有？ **zìxíngchē nǐ xiū hǎo le méiyǒu**
Have you repaired your bicycle?
修好了。 **xiū hǎo le**
Yes, I have (repaired it). (*lit.* repair good)

你看了那个电影没有？ **nǐ kàn le nèi gè diànyǐng méiyǒu**
Did you see that film?
看了，可是不喜欢。 **kàn le | kěshì bù xǐhuan**
Yes, but I didn’t like it.

One does not usually say:

*修好它了。 **xiū hǎo tā le**

*看了它，可是不喜欢它。 **kàn le tā | kěshì bù xǐhuan tā**

It occurs only occasionally in expressions where without it ambiguity might arise:

	别动它！	bié dòng tā	Don't touch it!
vs	别动！	bié dòng	Don't you move!
	别管它吧！	bié guǎn tā ba	Don't bother about it.
vs	你别管！	nǐ bié guǎn	None of your business.

D 您 **nín** is the polite form of 你 **nǐ**. It is a fusion of 你 **nǐ** and 们 **men** and therefore has no plural form. (One cannot say *您们 **nínmen**.) To express a plural for 您 **nín**, one uses an appositive phrase:

您三位是中国人吗？ **nín sān wèi shì zhōngguó rén ma**

Are the three of you Chinese?

您几位是哪国人？ **nín jǐ wèi shì nǎ guó rén**

Where are you (people) from?

Note: 位 **wèi** is a more polite measure word for 'people' than the normal 个 **gè**.

E Possession, whether as an adjective or a pronoun, is indicated by the addition of the particle 的 **de** to the personal pronoun:

我的	wǒ de	my/mine	
我们的	wǒmen de	our/ours	
你的	nǐ de	your/yours	
你们的	nǐmen de	your/yours	
他的	tā de	his	
他们的	tāmen de	their/theirs	(masculine)
她的	tā de	her/hers	
她们的	tāmen de	their/theirs	(feminine)
它的	tā de	its	
它们的	tāmen de	their/theirs	(neuter)

3
Personal
pronouns

你的教室在哪儿？ **nǐ de jiàoshì zài nǎr**
Where is your classroom?

这是他们的车。 **zhè shì tāmen de chē**
This is their car.

那把雨伞是我的 **nèi bǎ yǔsǎn shì wǒ de**
That umbrella is mine.

的 **de** may be omitted before nouns where the possessor has a close relationship with the person or object:

我妈妈想跟你妈妈谈谈。 **wǒ māma xiǎng gēn nǐ māma tántán**
My mother would like to talk to your mother.

我哥哥想认识你弟弟。 **wǒ gēge xiǎng rènshi nǐ dìdì**
My older brother would like to meet/get to know your younger brother.

你父母好吗？ **nǐ fùmǔ hǎo ma**
How are your parents?

你家在哪儿？ **nǐ jiā zài nǎr**
Where is your home?

Note 1: 的 **de** may also be used after nouns to indicate possession:

我妹妹喜欢骑我姐姐的自行车。
wǒ mèimei xǐhuan qí wǒ jiějie de zìxíngchē
My younger sister likes to ride my elder sister's bicycle.

我弟弟喜欢邻居的那只小猫。
wǒ dìdì xǐhuan línjū de nèi zhī xiǎo māo
My younger brother likes that kitten of our neighbours.

我姐姐喜欢开爸爸的车。 **wǒ jiějie xǐhuan kāi bàba de chē**
My elder sister likes driving father's car.

Note 2: The possessive phrase always comes before the demonstrative:

邻居的那只小猫	línjū de nèi zhī xiǎo māo	that kitten of our neighbours
我的那件毛衣	wǒ de nèi jiàn máoyī	that jumper of mine
你的这些书	nǐ de zhèxiē shū	these books of yours
他的这几幅画儿	tā de zhè jǐ fú huàr	these few paintings of his

F 自己 **zìjǐ** ‘oneself’:

(i) It is used immediately after the subject in apposition to it:

我们自己没有	wǒmen zìjǐ méi	We don't have a
电视(机)。	yǒu diànshì(jī)	television (set) ourselves.
他自己走了。	tā zìjǐ zǒu le	He left by himself.
我自己来。	wǒ zìjǐ lái	I'll do it (by) myself./
		I'll help myself.
		(e.g. at a meal)

Note: 来 **lái** which basically means ‘to come’ is used here in an idiomatic sense to indicate personal involvement.

(ii) It may also be used as a reflexive object:

别骂自己。 **bié mà zìjǐ** Don't blame yourself.

(iii) With the addition of the particle 的 **de**, it means ‘one's own’:

这是我自己的事儿。 **zhè shì wǒ zìjǐ de shìr**

This is my (own) business.

G There are a few less conventional pronouns like 大家 **dàjiā** ‘everybody’, 人家 **rénjia** ‘others’, etc. 人 **rén** ‘person’ when used on its own as the object of a verb means ‘anybody’:

大家好！ **dàjiā hǎo**

Good morning/afternoon/evening, everybody!

(lit. everybody good)

你会，人家不会。 **nǐ huì | rénjia bù huì**

You know how to do it; but other people (me included) don't.

那本书不是我自己的，是人家的。

nèi běn shū bù shì wǒ zìjǐ de | shì rénjia de

That book is not my own; it is somebody else's.

来人哪！ **lái rén na** Help! (lit. come anybody)

有人吗？ **yǒu rén ma** Anybody there/in? (lit. have anybody)

Note: 哪 **na** is an exclamatory sentence particle. (See Unit 20 **J**)

3

Personal
pronouns

Exercise 3.1

Complete the Chinese translations of the English sentences below by adding the correct personal pronouns where necessary. (Bear in mind that it may not be necessary to fill in the blanks in all cases.)

- 1 I like him, and he likes me, too.

_____ 喜欢 _____, _____ 也喜欢 _____. (也 **yě** 'also')
_____ **xǐhuan** _____ | _____ **yě xǐhuan** _____

- 2 We want to see them, but they don't want to see us.

_____ 想去见 _____, 但是 _____ 不想
见 _____. (但是 **dànshì** 'but')
_____ **xiǎng qù jiàn** _____ | **dànshì** _____ **bù xiǎng jiàn**

- 3 You don't know her, but she knows you.

_____ 不认识 _____, 但是 _____ 认识 _____.
_____ **bù rènshi** _____ | **dànshì** _____ **rènshi** _____

- 4 Dad, Mum, would you like some coffee?

爸爸、妈妈, _____ 要喝咖啡吗?
bàba | **māma** | _____ **yào hē kāfēi ma**

- 5 Where is she? I want to talk to her.

_____ 在哪儿? _____ 想跟 _____ 谈谈。
_____ **zài nǎr** | _____ **xiǎng gēn** _____ **tántán**

- 6 We have two dogs. They live in his room.

_____ 有两条狗。_____ 都住在 _____ 房
间里。(条 **tiáo** measure word for dogs)
_____ **yǒu liǎng tiáo gǒu** | _____ **dōu zhù zài** _____
fángjiān li

- 7 I don't like those flowers. Do you like them?

_____ 不喜欢那些花儿。_____ 喜欢 _____ 吗?
_____ **bù xǐhuan nà/nèi xiē huār** | _____ **xǐhuan** _____ **ma**

- 8 Do you want to see that film? Let's go and see it.

你想看那个电影吗? 咱们去看 _____ 吧。
nǐ xiǎng kàn nà/nèi gè diànyǐng ma | **zánmen qù kàn** _____ **ba**

Exercise 3.2

Complete the Chinese translations of the following by filling in the blanks:

- 1 I like my work.

我喜欢 _____ 工作。 **wǒ xǐhuan** _____ **gōngzuò**

- 2 Is Li Ming a good friend of yours?

李明是 _____ (_____) 好朋友吗?

lǐ míng shì _____ (_____) **háo péngyou ma**

- 3 My family live in the country.
_____ 家住在乡村。
_____ **jiā zhù zài xiāngcūn** (乡村 **xiāngcūn** ‘the countryside’)
- 4 This book is my older brother’s.
这本书是 _____ 。
zhè běn shū shì _____
- 5 That hat is hers.
那顶帽子是 _____ 。**nèi dǐng màozi shì** _____
- 6 Those three children are all our neighbours’.
那三个孩子都是 _____ 。
nà sān gè háizi dōu shì _____
- 7 Their parents don’t live in London.
_____ (_____) (_____) 父母不住在伦敦。
_____ (_____) **fùmǔ bù zhù zài lúndūn** (父母 **fùmǔ** ‘parents’)
- 8 This is her daughter and that is my son.
这是 _____ (_____) 女儿；那是 _____ (_____) 儿子。
zhè shì _____ (_____) **nǚ’ér** | **nà shì** _____ (_____) **érzi**
- 9 The kitten is sleeping on Father’s chair.
小猫睡在 _____ 椅子上。
xiǎo māo shuì zài _____ **yǐzi shang**
- 10 This is our classroom.
这是 _____ 教室。
zhè shì _____ **jiàoshì** (教室 **jiàoshì** ‘classroom’)
- 11 He often repairs his car himself.
他常常 _____ 修汽车。
tā chángcháng _____ **xiū qìchē**
- 12 That child doesn’t have a bicycle of his own.
那个孩子没有 _____ 自行车。
nèi gè háizi méi yǒu _____ **zìxíngchē**

Exercise 3.3

Complete the Chinese translations below with nouns or personal pronouns in their possessive forms:

- 1 This pen is my elder brother’s; that pen is my own.
这支笔是 _____ ，那支是 _____
_____ 。
zhè zhī bǐ shì _____ | **nèi zhī shì** _____
- 2 This umbrella is his. Where is mine?
这把(雨)伞是 _____ ， _____ 在哪儿？
zhè bǎ (yǔ)sǎn shì _____ | _____ **zài nǎr**

3

Personal
pronouns

- 3 This cat is from his house. Where is our cat?
这只猫是 _____ , 我家的猫在哪儿?
zhèi zhī māo shì _____ | wǒ jiā de māo zài nǎr
- 4 This jumper is mine. Yours is in the wardrobe.
这件毛衣是 _____ , _____ 在柜子里。
zhèi jiàn máoyī shì _____ | _____ zài guìzi li
- 5 Have you ever met my parents?
你见过 _____ 父母吗?
nǐ jiàn guo _____ fùmǔ ma
- 6 Do you know his father?
你认识 _____ 爸爸吗?
nǐ rènshi _____ bàba ma
- 7 Your apples taste nice; mine are awful.
_____ 苹果很好吃, _____ 不好吃。
_____ **píngguǒ hěn hǎochī | _____ bù hǎochī**
- 8 These three pictures are yours; those two are hers.
这三幅画儿是 _____ , 那两幅是 _____ 。
zhè sān fú huà shì _____ | nà/nèi liǎng fú shì _____
- 9 My elder sister likes driving Father's car, but doesn't like riding her own bicycle.
我姐姐喜欢开 _____ 车, 但是不喜欢骑 (_____)
_____ 自行车。
wǒ jiějie xǐhuan kāi _____ chē | dànshì bù xǐhuan qí
(_____) _____ **zìxíngchē**
- 10 The garden at your home is very pretty.
_____ 花园很好看。
_____ **huāyuán hěn hǎokàn**
- 11 I like those goldfish of our neighbours.
我喜欢 _____ 金
鱼。
wǒ xǐhuan _____ jīnyú
- 12 My younger brother does not like wearing that jumper of his.
我弟弟不喜欢穿 (_____) _____
毛衣。
wǒ dìdi bù xǐhuan chuān (_____) _____
máoyī

Exercise 3.4

Replace 你 **nǐ** and 你们 **nǐmen** in the following sentences with their polite forms:

- 你想喝茶吗？ **nǐ xiǎng hē bēi chá ma**
Would you like some tea?
- 你们是哪国人？ **nǐmen shì nǎ guó rén**
Which country are you all from?
- 你们请坐 **nǐmen qǐng zuò** (请 **qǐng** ‘please’; 坐 **zuò** ‘to sit’)
Please take a seat. (addressing a few visitors)
- 你是英国人吗？ **nǐ shì yīngguó rén ma**
Are you from Britain?
- 你们要吃点儿蛋糕吗？
nǐmen yào chī diǎnr dàngāo ma (点儿 **diǎnr** ‘a bit (of)’)
Would you like some cake?
- 我够了，谢谢你。 **wǒ gòu le | xièxie nǐ** (够 **gòu** ‘enough’)
I’m fine/I’ve had enough, thanks.

Exercise 3.5

Decide whether 我们 **wǒmen** or 咱们 **zánmen** should strictly be used in the following situations:

- We must be off now. Goodbye.
_____ 走了。再见！ _____ **zǒu le | zàijiàn**
- Let’s be friends.
_____ 交个朋友吧！ _____ **jiāo gè péngyou ba**
- We would like some beer. Thank you.
_____ 想喝点儿啤酒。谢谢您！
_____ **xiǎng hē diǎnr píjiǔ | xièxie nín** (啤酒 **píjiǔ** ‘beer’)
- I am Li. What’s your name? Do let us introduce ourselves.
我姓李。您贵姓？ _____ 认识一下吧！
wǒ xìng lǐ | nín guìxìng | _____ rènshi yíxià ba (一下 **yíxià** ‘briefly’)
- Let’s go together.
_____ 一起走吧！ _____ **yìqǐ zǒu ba** (一起 **yìqǐ** ‘together’)
- We live in London. Where do you live?
_____ 住在伦敦。你们住在哪儿？
_____ **zhù zài lúndūn | nǐmen zhù zài nǎr**

Pattern and vocabulary drill 3.1

Translate the following sentences into English, making intelligent guesses at the meaning with the help of the words given in brackets:

- 1 祝你/您生日快乐！**zhù nǐ/nín shēngrì kuàilè**
- 2 祝你/您新年快乐！**zhù nǐ/nín xīnnián kuàilè** (新年 **xīnnián** ‘new year’)
- 3 祝你/您圣诞快乐！**zhù nǐ/nín shèngdàn kuàilè** (圣诞 **shèngdàn** ‘Christmas’)
- 4 祝你/您身体健康！**zhù nǐ/nín shēntǐ jiànkāng** (身体 **shēntǐ** ‘body’; 健康 **jiànkāng** ‘healthy’)
- 5 祝你/您一路平安！**zhù nǐ/nín yìlù píng’ān** (一路 **yìlù** ‘all the way’; 平安 **píng’ān** ‘safe and sound’)
- 6 祝你/您成功！**zhù nǐ/nín chénggōng** (成功 **chénggōng** ‘succeed’)

Pattern and vocabulary drill 3.2

Translate the following sentences into Chinese, following the model of the examples. Pay particular attention to how adjectives are coined with 有 **yǒu** ‘to have’ and 好 **hǎo** ‘good’. Don’t forget to include the degree adverb 很 **hěn** in each instance:

My work is interesting.

我的工作很有趣。 **wǒ de gōngzuò hěn yǒuqù**

This piece of cake is delicious.

这块蛋糕很好吃。 **zhè kuài dànāo hěn hǎochī**

- 1 Those books of yours are interesting. (有趣 **yǒuqù** ‘interesting’)
- 2 His parents are famous. (有名 **yǒumíng** ‘famous (*lit.* to have name)’)
- 3 Those three Chinese (persons) are very rich. (有钱 **yǒuqián** ‘rich (*lit.* to have money)’)
- 4 Your father’s book is really useful. (有用 **yǒuyòng** ‘useful (*lit.* to have use)’)
- 5 This method is truly effective. (方法 **fāngfǎ** ‘method’; 有效 **yǒuxiào** ‘effective (*lit.* to have effect)’)
- 6 That cake of yours is really tasty.
This cup of coffee is really nice. (好吃 **hǎochī**/ 好喝 **hǎohē** ‘tasty, nice (*lit.* good to eat/good to drink)’)
- 7 That jumper of my younger sister is beautiful. (好看 **hǎokàn** ‘pleasant to the eye’)
- 8 That song is pleasant to the ear. (歌 **gē** ‘song’; 首 **shǒu** measure word for songs; 好听 **hǎotīng** ‘pleasant to the ear’)
- 9 That suggestion of his was ridiculous. (好笑 **hǎoxiào** ‘laughable/ridiculous’)
- 10 That kitten of our neighbours is really playful. (好玩儿 **hǎowánr** ‘amusing (*lit.* good to play with)’)

Pattern and vocabulary drill 3.3

As we have seen, when a noun is placed at the beginning of a sentence, it is to some extent emphasized, as it registers what is foremost in the speaker's mind. Following the model below, construct ten questions using the noun and verb given and translate the questions into English. The assumption is that the noun object has already been alluded to and is therefore of definite reference.

笔 **bǐ** 带 **dài**

Have you brought the pen(s) with you?

笔你带了没有？ **bǐ nǐ dài le méiyǒu**

- 1 钥匙 **yàoshi** 带 **dài**
- 2 雨伞 **yǔsǎn** 带 **dài**
- 3 毛衣 **máoyī** 带 **dài**
- 4 照片 **zhàopiàn** 带 **dài**
- 5 书 **shū** 看 **kàn**
- 6 碗 **wǎn** 筷子 **kuàizi** 买 **mǎi**
- 7 茶 **chá** 喝 **hē**
- 8 蛋糕 **dàngāo** 吃 **chī**
- 9 猫 **māo** 找到 **zhǎo dào**
- 10 电影 **diànyǐng** 看 **kàn**

UNIT FOUR

Interrogative pronouns

A The main interrogative pronouns in Chinese are:

谁 shéi (shuí – less colloquial)	who/whom
谁的 shéi de	whose
什么 shénme	what
哪 nǎ/něi + measure word	which
哪儿 nǎr /什么地方 shénme dìfang	where/what place

B The most important feature about Chinese interrogative pronouns is that, unlike English practice which shifts all interrogative pronouns to the beginning of the question, Chinese keeps them in the position in the sentence where the answers would be expected:

他是谁？	tā shì shéi	Who is he?
他是我的老师。	tā shì wǒ de lǎoshī	He is my teacher.
谁是你们的中文老师？	shéi shì nǐmen de zhōngwén lǎoshī	Who is your Chinese teacher?
黎老师是我们的中文老师。	lí lǎoshī shì wǒmen de zhōngwén lǎoshī	Mr Li is our Chinese teacher

Note 1: 谁是你们的中文老师？ **shéi shì nǐmen de zhōngwén lǎoshī** is a straightforward question, which may be used interchangeably with 你们的中文老师是谁？ **nǐmen de zhōngwén lǎoshī shì shéi**. However, if expressed in more emphatic tones, the latter may convey the feeling that the speaker is curious or eager to find out who the teacher really is.

Note 2: One does not ask: *谁是他？ **shéi shì tā**

谁走了？ 李先生走了。 你去见谁？	shéi zǒu le lǐ xiānsheng zǒu le nǐ qù jiàn shéi	Who has left? Mr Li has left. Who did you go to see?
我去见张经理。	wǒ qù jiàn zhāng jīnglǐ	I went to see Mr/Mrs Zhang, the manager.
这是谁的书包？	zhè shì shéi de shūbāo	Whose is this satchel?
这是我同学的书包。	zhè shì wǒ tóngxué de shūbāo	This is my coursemate's satchel.
你想喝点儿什么？	nǐ xiǎng hē diǎnr shénme	What would you like to drink?
我想喝点儿啤酒。	wǒ xiǎng hē diǎnr píjiǔ	I would like to have some beer.
你找什么？	nǐ zhǎo shénme	What are you looking for?
我找我的手表。	wǒ zhǎo wǒ de shǒubiǎo	I'm looking for my watch.
我的大衣在哪儿？ 你的大衣在这儿。	wǒ de dàyī zài nǎr nǐ de dàyī zài zhèr	Where is my coat? Your coat is here.

C In addition to 谁 **shéi/shuí**, 哪位 **nǎ/něi wèi** (*lit.* 'which person') may be used to express a more respectful personal enquiry:

哪位是你爸爸？	něi wèi shì nǐ bàba	Which person is your father?
您要见哪位？	nín yào jiàn něi wèi	Who do you want to see?

Note: 什么人 **shénme rén** (*lit.* 'what person') on the other hand has a tone of rudeness or contempt:

她是什么人？	tā shì shénme rén	Who's she (anyway)?
你碰见了什么人？	nǐ pèngjiàn le shénme rén	Who were those people you met?

D 谁的 **shéi de** 'whose' may be used as an interrogative adjective to qualify a noun, or as an interrogative pronoun:

这是谁的钱包？ **zhè shì shéi de qiánbāo** (adjective)
Whose purse/wallet is this?

这是我的钱包。 **zhè shì wǒ de qiánbāo**
This is my purse/wallet.

这把钥匙是谁的？ **zhè bǎ yàoshi shì shéi de** (pronoun)
Whose is this key?

这把钥匙是我的。 **zhè bǎ yàoshi shì wǒ de**
This key is mine.

你喜欢谁的画儿？ **nǐ xǐhuan shéi de huàr** (adjective)
Whose picture do you like?

我喜欢那个画家的画儿。 **wǒ xǐhuan nèi gè huàjiā de huàr**
I like pictures by that artist.

E 什么 **shénme** ‘what’ likewise may be used as an adjective or a pronoun:

这些是什么蔬菜？ **zhèxiē shì shénme shūcài** (adjective)
What kind of vegetables are these?

这些是白菜。 **zhèxiē shì báicài**
These are Chinese cabbages.

这些是什么？ **zhèxiē shì shénme** (pronoun)
What are these?

这些是梨。 **zhèxiē shì lí**
These are pears.

你想吃(一)点儿什么？ **nǐ xiǎng chī (yī)diǎnr shénme** (pronoun)
What would you like (to eat)?

我想吃(一)点儿蛋糕。 **wǒ xiǎng chī (yī)diǎnr dàngāo**
I'd like (to eat) some cake.

你买了(一)些什么东西？ **nǐ mǎi le (yī)xiē shénme dōngxi** (adjective)
What things did you buy?

我买了一瓶咖啡、一包茶叶和一束鲜花。

wǒ mǎi le yī píng kāfēi | yī bāo chá yè hé yī shù xiānhuā
I bought a bottle of coffee, a packet of tea and a bunch of flowers.

你明天想做什么？ **nǐ míngtiān xiǎng zuò shénme** (pronoun)
What do you want to do tomorrow?

我明天想去游泳。 **wǒ míngtiān xiǎng qù yóuyǒng**
I want to go swimming tomorrow.

F 哪 **nǎ/něi** meaning ‘which’ (not to be confused with 哪儿 **nǎr** ‘where’) can only be used in conjunction with a measure word or ‘numeral + measure word’ phrase:

哪张？	nǎi zhāng	Which one? (e.g. newspaper, sheet of paper, table, etc.)
这张。	zhèi zhāng	This one.
你要哪三个？	nǐ yào nǎ sān gè	Which three do you want?
我要那三个。	wǒ yào nà sān gè	I want those three.
哪些便宜点儿？	něi xiē piányi diǎnr	Which ones are cheaper?
这些便宜点儿。	zhèi xiē piányi diǎnr	These ones are cheaper.
你买哪两本书？	nǐ mǎi nǎ liǎng běn shū	Which two books are you going to buy?
我买那两本书。	wǒ mǎi nà liǎng běn shū	I'm buying those two books.
哪把伞是你的？	něi bǎ sǎn shì nǐ de	Which umbrella is yours?
这把伞是我的。	zhèi bǎ sǎn shì wǒ de	This umbrella is mine.

G 哪儿 **nǎr** ‘where’ and 什么地方 **shénme dìfang** ‘what place’ naturally ask about location.

- (i) They may occur at the object position, particularly after 去 **qù** ‘to go (to)’ and 在 **zài** ‘to be at/in/on’:

你去哪儿/什么地方？ **nǐ qù nǎr/shénme dìfang**

Where are you going?

我去朋友家。 **wǒ qù péngyou jiā**

I'm going to my friend's place.

你的自行车在哪儿/什么地方？

nǐ de zìxíngchē zài nǎr/shénme dìfang

Where is your bike?

我的自行车在家里。 **wǒ de zìxíngchē zài jiā li**

My bicycle is at home.

- (ii) They are also regularly used at the beginning of the sentence followed by the verb 有 **yǒu** ‘to exist’:

哪儿/什么地方有邮筒？ **nǎr/shénme dìfang yǒu yóutǒng**

Where is there/can I find a pillar-box?

马路对面有邮筒。 **mǎlù duìmiàn yǒu yóutǒng**

There's a pillar-box across the road.

哪儿/什么地方有东西吃？ *nǎr/shénme dìfang yǒu dōngxi chī*

Where can I find something to eat?

(*lit.* Where is there something to eat?)

冰箱里有东西吃。 *bīngxiāng li yǒu dōngxi chī*

There are things to eat in the fridge.

The second example above illustrates the common pattern: ‘location + 有 **yǒu** + noun object + verb’ in which 有 **yǒu** and the verb in fact share the same object. The verb which comes last in the sentence is similar to an English infinitive qualifying the noun object which precedes it.

Here are some more examples:

哪儿有好电影看？ *nǎr yǒu hǎo diànyǐng kàn*

Where can we go to see a good film?

(*lit.* Where is there a good film (to) see?)

那家电影院有好电影看。

nèi jiā diànyǐngyuàn yǒu hǎo diànyǐng kàn

There is a good film on show in that cinema.

(*lit.* At that cinema there is a good film (to) see.)

哪儿有冰激凌卖？ *nǎr yǒu bīngjīlíng mài*

Where can (we) buy ice-cream?

(*lit.* Where is there ice-cream to be sold/for sale?)

马路对面有。那儿有一辆冰激凌车。

mǎlù duìmiàn yǒu | nàr yǒu yī liàng bīngjīlíng chē

Across the road. There’s an ice-cream van there.

(*lit.* Across the road there is (some). There there is an ice-cream van.)

哪儿有车租？ *nǎr yǒu chē zū*

Where are there cars for/to hire?

对不起，这儿没有车租。 *duìbuqǐ | zhèr méi yǒu chē zū*

I’m sorry, there aren’t any cars for hire here.

(*lit.* Here there are not cars (to) hire.)

- (iii) 哪儿 **nǎr** and 什么地方 **shénme dìfang** are also commonly used after a coverb (see Unit 24) such as 在 **zài** ‘in, at, on’, 到 **dào** ‘to’, etc., to create a coverbal phrase. These coverbal phrases come before the verb:

你孩子在哪儿学习？ *nǐ hái zi zài nǎr xué xí*

Where is/are your child(ren) studying?

我孩子在大学学习。 *wǒ hái zi zài dà xué xué xí*

My child(ren) is/are studying at the university.

你爸爸在什么地方工作？ *nǐ bà ba zài shénme dìfang gōng zuò*

Where does your father work?

我爸爸在一家银行工作。 **wǒ bàba zài yī jiā yínháng gōngzuò**
My father works at a bank.

他到哪儿/什么地方去？ **tā dào nǎr/shénme dìfang qù**
Where is he going?

他到办公室去。 **tā dào bàngōngshì qù**
He's going to his office.

Note: 家 **jiā**, as you may have noticed, is the measure word for 电影院 **diànyǐngyuàn** 'cinema', 银行 **yínháng** 'bank', 商店 **shāngdiàn** 'shop', etc. The noun 家 **jiā** also means 'home; house; family'.

Exercise 4.1

Formulate questions based on the sentences below focusing on the words in bold italics. Use interrogative pronouns and switch the first-person and second-person pronouns as necessary.

我去商店买东西。 **wǒ qù shāngdiàn mǎi dōngxi**
I'm going to the shops to buy something.

- (a) **wǒ qù shāngdiàn mǎi dōngxi**
谁去商店买东西？ *shéi qù shāngdiàn mǎi dōngxi*
- (b) **wǒ qù shāngdiàn mǎi dōngxi**
你去哪儿买东西？ *nǐ qù nǎr mǎi dōngxi*
- (c) **wǒ qù shāngdiàn mǎi dōngxi**
你去商店买什么？ *nǐ qù shāngdiàn mǎi shénme*
- (d) **wǒ qù shāngdiàn mǎi dōngxi**
你去商店做什么？ *nǐ qù shāngdiàn zuò shénme*

1 妈妈去市场买鸡蛋。 **māma qù shìchǎng mǎi jīdàn**
Mother is going to the market to buy eggs.

- (a) **māma qù shìchǎng mǎi jīdàn**
- (b) **māma qù shìchǎng mǎi jīdàn**
- (c) **māma qù shìchǎng mǎi jīdàn**
- (d) **māma qù shìchǎng mǎi jīdàn**

2 爸爸在办公室写推荐信。 **bàba zài bàngōngshì xiě tuījiànxin**
Father is writing a reference/a letter of recommendation in the office.

- (a) **bàba zài bàngōngshì xiě tuījiànxin**
 (b) **bàba zài bàngōngshì xiě tuījiànxin**
 (c) **bàba zài bàngōngshì xiě tuījiànxin**
 (d) **bàba zài bàngōngshì xiě tuījiànxin**
- 3 姐姐在厨房里喂猫。 **jiějie zài chùfáng li wèi māo**
 (My) elder sister is feeding the cat in the kitchen.
 (a) **jiějie zài chùfáng li wèi māo**
 (b) **jiějie zài chùfáng li wèi māo**
 (c) **jiějie zài chùfáng li wèi māo**
- 4 哥哥在外面修车。 **gēge zài wàimian xiū chē**
 (My) elder brother is repairing the car outside.
 (a) **gēge zài wàimian xiū chē**
 (b) **gēge zài wàimian xiū chē**
 (c) **gēge zài wàimian xiū chē**
 (d) **gēge zài wàimian xiū chē**
- 5 弟弟去游泳池学游泳。 **dìdi qù yóuyǒngchí xué yóuyǒng**
 (My) younger brother is going to the swimming-pool to learn to swim.
 (a) **dìdi qù yóuyǒngchí xué yóuyǒng**
 (b) **dìdi qù yóuyǒngchí xué yóuyǒng**
 (c) **dìdi qù yóuyǒngchí xué yóuyǒng**
- 6 弟弟想请姐姐帮他的忙。 **dìdi xiǎng qǐng jiějie bāng tā de máng**
 (My) younger brother would like to ask his elder sister to lend him a hand. (i.e. give him some help)
 (a) **dìdi xiǎng qǐng jiějie bāng tā de máng**
 (b) **dìdi xiǎng qǐng jiějie bāng tā de máng**
 (c) **dìdi xiǎng qǐng jiějie bāngmáng**
- 7 邻居的孩子在街上骑自行车。 **línjū de háizi zài jiē shang qí zìxíngchē**
 (Our) neighbour's child is riding a bicycle in the street.
 (a) **línjū de háizi zài jiē shang qí zìxíngchē**
 (b) **línjū de háizi zài jiē shang qí zìxíngchē**
 (c) **línjū de háizi zài jiē shang qí zìxíngchē**
 (d) **línjū de háizi zài jiē shang qí zìxíngchē**
 (e) **línjū de háizi zài jiē shang qí zìxíngchē**
- 8 妹妹明年想跟爷爷去中国旅行。 **mèimei míngnián xiǎng gēn yéye qù zhōngguó lǚxíng**
 (My) younger sister wants to go travelling in China with Grandpa next year.
 (a) **mèimei míngnián xiǎng gēn yéye qù zhōngguó lǚxíng**
 (b) **mèimei míngnián xiǎng gēn yéye qù zhōngguó lǚxíng**
 (c) **mèimei míngnián xiǎng gēn yéye qù zhōngguó lǚxíng**

- (d) mèimei míngnián xiǎng gēn yéye qù zhōngguó lǚxíng
 (e) mèimei míngnián xiǎng gēn yéye qù zhōngguó lǚxíng

Exercise 4.2

Translate the following sentences into Chinese using the pattern:

‘哪儿 + 有 + noun + verb’

Where can we buy pears? (Where are there pears to be sold/for sale?)

哪儿有梨卖? nǎr yǒu lí mài

- 1 Where can we hire bicycles?
- 2 Where can we have coffee?
- 3 Where can we buy flowers?
- 4 Where is there any beer to drink?
- 5 Where can I find something to eat?
- 6 Where can I see a film?
- 7 Where can you buy a newspaper? (报纸 **bàozhǐ** ‘newspaper’)
- 8 Where can you borrow books? (借 **jiè** ‘borrow’)
- 9 Where can you buy fresh vegetables? (新鲜 **xīnxiān** ‘fresh’)
- 10 Where can we hire a good car?

Exercise 4.3

Translate these sentences into Chinese:

- 1 Who would like some tea?
- 2 Who would like some cake?
- 3 Whose is this mug?
- 4 What would you like to eat?
- 5 Which picture do you prefer?
- 6 Who can speak Chinese? (会 **huì** ‘can; be skilful with’)
- 7 Which child is yours?
- 8 Whose teacher is Mr Zhang?
- 9 Which oranges are you going to buy?
- 10 What kind of vegetables do you like?
- 11 Who can repair cars?
- 12 Who can help me? (能 **néng** ‘can; be able to’)
- 13 Who do you want to see?
- 14 Which two books have you brought with you?

- 15 What place did you go to?
- 16 Which countries are you going to?
- 17 Where is my purse/wallet?
- 18 Where do you go for coffee?
- 19 Who are you going to China with?
- 20 Where did you get acquainted with her?

Note: 会 **huì** ‘can’ indicates permanent skills whereas 能 **néng** ‘can’ indicates whether someone is able or in a position to do something on a particular occasion, e.g. 我会游泳，但是今天病了，不能游。
wǒ huì yóuyǒng | dànrì jiāntiān bìng le | bù néng yóu ‘I know how to swim, but as I am unwell today, I can’t.’

Pattern and vocabulary drill 4.1

Provide the answers to the following questions using the pattern of the example:

你想喝点儿什么？ **nǐ xiǎng hē diǎnr shénme**

What would you like to drink?

Answer (a) some tea (b) some coffee

(a) 我想喝点儿茶。 **wǒ xiǎng hē diǎnr chá**

(b) 我想喝点儿咖啡。 **wǒ xiǎng hē diǎnr kāfēi**

1 你想吃点儿什么？ **nǐ xiǎng chī diǎnr shénme**

What would you like to eat?

Answer (a) some cake (b) some ice cream

2 你想买点儿什么？ **nǐ xiǎng mǎi diǎnr shénme**

What would you like to buy?

Answer (a) Chinese cabbage (白菜 **báicài**) (b) fish (鱼 **yú**)

3 你这个礼拜天想做什么？ **nǐ zhèi gè lǐbàitiān xiǎng zuò shénme**

What would you like to do this coming Sunday?

Answer (a) go to see a film (b) go swimming

4 你找什么？ **nǐ zhǎo shénme**

What are you looking for?

Answer (a) my key (b) my umbrella

5 你找谁？ **nǐ zhǎo shéi**

Who are you looking for?

Answer (a) Mr Li (b) my father

- 6 你到/上哪儿去？ **nǐ dào/shàng nǎr qù** (上 **shàng** 'go to')
Where are you off to?
Answer (a) the bank (b) the university

Pattern and vocabulary drill 4.2

First translate the following sentences into English and then replace the particle 吗 **ma** by 吧 **ba** so as to turn a general question into a surmise question as if you were saying, instead of 'Do you like drinking coffee?', 'You like drinking coffee, don't you?'

- 1 你喜欢养猫吗？ **nǐ xǐhuan yǎng māo ma** (养 **yǎng** 'to keep; to rear')
- 2 你喜欢养狗吗？ **nǐ xǐhuan yǎng gǒu ma**
- 3 你喜欢养金鱼吗？ **nǐ xǐhuan yǎng jīnyú ma**
- 4 你喜欢骑自行车吗？ **nǐ xǐhuan qí zìxíngchē ma**
- 5 你喜欢骑马吗？ **nǐ xǐhuan qí mǎ ma**
- 6 你喜欢住在伦敦吗？ **nǐ xǐhuan zhù zài lúndūn ma**
- 7 你喜欢住在巴黎吗？ **nǐ xǐhuan zhù zài bālí ma** (巴黎 **bālí** 'Paris')
- 8 你喜欢买便宜的东西吗？ **nǐ xǐhuan mǎi piányi de dōngxi ma**
- 9 你喜欢这些鲜花吗？ **nǐ xǐhuan zhèxiē xiānhuā ma**
- 10 你喜欢你的邻居吗？ **nǐ xǐhuan nǐ de línjū ma**
- 11 你喜欢你的工作吗？ **nǐ xǐhuan nǐ de gōngzuò ma**
- 12 你喜欢这件毛衣吗？ **nǐ xǐhuan zhèjiàn máoyī ma**

UNIT FIVE

Numbers

A Numbers in Chinese follow a system based on tens, hundreds, etc.:

一	yī	one	十一	shí yī	eleven
二	èr	two	十二	shí èr	twelve
三	sān	three	十三	shí sān	thirteen
四	sì	four	十七	shí qī	seventeen
五	wǔ	five	十九	shí jiǔ	nineteen
六	liù	six	二十	èr shí	twenty
七	qī	seven	三十一	sān shí yī	thirty-one
八	bā	eight	五十四	wǔ shí sì	fifty-four
九	jiǔ	nine	八十六	bā shí liù	eighty-six
十	shí	ten	九十九	jiǔ shí jiǔ	ninety-nine
零	líng	zero			

Note 1: 幺 **yāo** is sometimes used instead of 一 **yī** in speech (e.g. on the telephone) to avoid the confusion between 一 **yī** 'one' and 七 **qī** 'seven'.

Note 2: The numeral 2 before a measure word is 两 **liǎng** and not 二 **èr**:

两个梨	liǎng gè lí	two pears
两个星期/礼拜	liǎng gè xīngqī/lǐbài	two weeks

B While in English you count up to a thousand and then repeat up to a million, Chinese counts up to ten thousand (万 **wàn**) and then repeats up to a hundred million (亿 **yì**). The higher numbers are:

一百	yī bǎi	100	one hundred
一千	yī qiān	1,000	one thousand
一万	yī wàn	10,000	ten thousand
一亿	yī yì	100,000,000	one hundred million

Figures are expressed from higher to lower units:

一百二十五 **yī bǎi èr shí wǔ**
125 one hundred and twenty-five

一千二百三十五 **yī qiān èr bǎi sān shí wǔ**
1,235 one thousand two hundred and thirty-five

一万二千三百四十五 **yī wàn èr qiān sān bǎi sì shí wǔ**
12,345 twelve thousand three hundred and forty-five

十二万三千四百五十六 **shí èr wàn sān qiān sì bǎi wǔ shí liù**
123,456 one hundred and twenty-three thousand four hundred and fifty-six

一百二十三万四千五百六十七 **yī bǎi èr shí sān wàn sì qiān wǔ bǎi liù shí qī**
1,234,567
one million two hundred and thirty-four thousand five hundred and sixty-seven

一千二百三十四万五千六百七十八。
yī qiān èr bǎi sān shí sì wàn wǔ qiān liù bǎi qī shí bā
12,345,678
twelve million three hundred and forty-five thousand six hundred and seventy-eight

一亿二千三百四十五万六千七百八十九。
yī yì èr qiān sān bǎi sì shí wǔ wàn liù qiān qī bǎi bā shí jiǔ
123,456,789
one hundred and twenty-three million four hundred and fifty-six thousand seven hundred and eighty-nine

It is useful to remember that a million in Chinese is 一百万 **yī bǎi wàn** (= $100 \times 10,000$).

Note: 零 **líng** 'zero' is used as a filler for any missing unit or units within a figure:

一百零五	yī bǎi líng wǔ	105	one hundred and five
一千零四	yī qiān líng sì	1004	one thousand and four
一千一百零二	yī qiān yī bǎi líng èr	1102	one thousand one hundred and two

C A fraction is expressed by the pattern: 'denominator 分之 **fēn zhī** numerator'. (分 **fēn** means 'part; component' and 之 **zhī** means 'of'):

5
Numbers

三分之一	sān fēn zhī yī	1/3	one third
四分之一	sì fēn zhī yī	1/4	one quarter
四分之三	sì fēn zhī sān	3/4	three quarters
八分之七	bā fēn zhī qī	7/8	seven eighths

D 半 **bàn** ‘half’ followed by a noun functions like a numeral and requires a measure word:

半杯酒	bàn bēi jiǔ	half a glass of wine (or any alcoholic drink)
半个西瓜	bàn gè xīguā	half a watermelon
半年	bàn nián	six months (<i>lit.</i> half a year)
半(个)小时	bàn (gè) xiǎoshí /	half an hour
半个钟头	bàn gè zhōngtóu	
半个月	bàn gè yuè	two weeks (<i>lit.</i> half a month)

半 **bàn** is used *after* a ‘number + measure word’ phrase to mean ‘and a half’:

一杯半酒	yī bēi bàn jiǔ	a glass and a half of wine (or any alcoholic drink)
两个半西瓜	liǎng gè bàn xīguā	two and a half watermelons
三年半	sān nián bàn	three and a half years
五个半小时	wǔ gè bàn xiǎoshí	five and a half hours
一个月半	yī gè bàn yuè	a month and a half

E Percentages take the form of fractions of 100:

百分之四十	bǎi fēn zhī sì shí	40%
百分之一百零七	bǎi fēn zhī yī bǎi líng qī	107%

F The decimal point is expressed as 点 **diǎn**:

三点六九	sān diǎn liù jiǔ	3.69
三十三点三三	sān shí sān diǎn sān sān	33.33
六点一七	liù diǎn yī qī	6.17

Note: When 零 **líng** ‘nought; zero’ occurs after the decimal point, it is not a ‘filler’ but functions as a separate unit and is therefore repeated as necessary. See for instance the following:

一千零二点零零二	yī qiān líng èr diǎn líng líng èr	one thousand and two point zero zero two
1,002.002		

G Ordinal numbers in Chinese are formed by placing 第 **dì** before the numeral:

第一	dì yī	(the) first
第十	dì shí	(the) tenth

Ordinal numbers, like cardinals, require a measure with a noun:

第一个学生	dì yī gè xuésheng	the first student
第十次会议	dì shí cì huìyì	the tenth meeting
第三本书	dì sān běn shū	the third book

They also regularly occur with frequency, time and unit measures:

第一次	dì yī cì	the first time
第二周	dì èr zhōu	the second week
第五课	dì wǔ kè	Lesson Five

Note 1: The numeral 2 in an ordinal is 二 **èr** and not 两 **liǎng** even before a measure word:

第二场足球比赛 **dì èr chǎng zúqiú bǐsài** the second soccer match

One cannot say:

* 第二场 **dì liǎng chǎng** the second match

Note 2: In some cases Chinese does not use ordinal numbers where the equivalent phrase in English would:

一年级 **yī niánjí** the first year/the first form (in school, etc.)
 二楼 **èr lóu** the first floor ('ground floor' in English is counted as 一楼 **yī lóu** or 地下 **dì xià** and 'first floor' therefore becomes 二楼 **èr lóu**.)

H When referring to an item or items adjacent or next to the one in question, one does not usually make use of 第 **dì**. One uses 上 **shàng** 'previous, last' or 下 **xià** 'next' followed by a numeral, a measure and the noun. The noun is often omitted, particularly when its meaning can be readily derived from the context or from the measure word itself, e.g.:

上两场(比赛)	shàng liǎng chǎng (bǐsài)	the last two matches
下三课(书)	xià sān kè (shū)	the next three lessons

Where the numeral is 一 **yī** 'one', it is regularly omitted, leaving just the measure and noun:

上(一)个世纪	shàng (yī) gè shìjì	the previous century
下(一)个月	xià (yī) gè yuè	next month
上(一)个星期/礼拜	shàng (yī) gè xīngqī/ lǐbài	last week
上(一)个节目	shàng (yī) gè jiémù	the previous programme

However, when the noun is understood and omitted, 一 **yī** 'one' must be used:

下一个	xià yī gè	the next one (e.g. 'the next person in the queue')
上一集	shàng yī jí	the previous volume, etc. in a series

Therefore notice the following:

下(一)个站(下车) **xià (yī) gè zhàn (xià chē)**
(I'm getting off at) the next stop, please

As 站 **zhàn** itself may be used as a measure word, one may often hear this expressed as 下一站(下车) **xià yī zhàn (xià chē/xia)**.

I Approximate numbers in Chinese can be expressed by placing 左右 **zuǒyòu** or 上下 **shàngxià** 'approximately' after the 'numeral + measure word' phrase or 大约 **dàyuē** 'about' or 差不多 **chàbùduō** 'almost' before it:

三公斤左右	sān gōngjīn zuǒyòu	about three kilograms
五米上下	wǔ mǐ shàngxià	about five metres
大约两点钟	dàyuē liǎng diǎn zhōng	about two o'clock
大约两个 小时/钟头	dàyuē liǎng gè xiǎoshí/zhōngtóu	about two hours
差不多三十英里	chàbùduō sān shí yīnglǐ	almost thirty miles

Note: Observe the difference between 两点钟 **liǎng diǎn zhōng** 'two o'clock' and 两个钟头/小时 **liǎng gè zhōngtóu/xiǎoshí** 'two hours' (see Unit 8).

Approximation with the number 10 and its multiples, up to and including 100, may also be expressed using 来 **lái** or 多 **duō**:

十来/多年	shí lái/duō nián	around ten years
四十来/多岁	sì shí lái/duō suì	about forty years old
(一)百来/多个	(yī) bǎi lái/duō gè	a little over a hundred

Note: 几 **jǐ** may also be used to indicate approximation with round numbers above 10 and below 100, e.g.:

二十几年	èr shí jǐ nián	twenty odd years
七十几岁	qī shí jǐ suì	over seventy years of age

But not:

*一百几人	yī bǎi jǐ rén	over a hundred people
-------	----------------------	-----------------------

However, with 千 **qiān** ‘thousand’ and 万 **wàn** ‘ten thousand’, only 多 **duō** is used for a similar purpose:

两千多年	liǎng qiān duō nián	over two thousand years
三万多人	sān wàn duō rén	over thirty thousand people

Note: Observe the difference between 年 **nián** ‘year’ (period of time) and 岁 **suì** ‘year (of age)’.

Any two consecutive numbers from one to nine may also be used to express approximation:

一、两年	yī liǎng nián	one or two years
两、三天	liǎng sān tiān	two or three days
十七、八个人	shí qī bā gè rén	seventeen or eighteen people
二、三十个老师	èr sān shí gè lǎoshī	twenty to thirty teachers
一、二百个学生	yī èr bǎi gè xuésheng	a hundred to two hundred students
两、三千(个)人	liǎng sān qiān (gè) rén	two to three thousand people

Note: In relation to ‘two’, to say simply ‘one or two’ or ‘two or three’, 一、两 **yī | liǎng** or 两、三 **liǎng | sān** are generally used. For ‘eleven or twelve’ and ‘twelve to thirteen’ you must say 十一、二 **shí yī | èr** or 十二、三 **shí èr | sān**. ‘Ten or twenty’, ‘twenty or thirty’ must also be 一、二十 **yī | èr shí** or 二、三十 **èr | sān shí**. For higher numbers in these sequences 两 **liǎng** is usually preferred (e.g. 两、三百 **liǎng | sān bǎi** ‘two or three hundred’, 一、两千 **yī | liǎng qiān** ‘one or two thousand’) but 二 **èr** is also possible.

J To ask ‘how many’, 多少 **duōshao** ‘how many; how much’ (*lit.* many few) or 几 **jǐ** ‘how many’ with a measure are used. 几 **jǐ** implies that the number involved is below ten whereas 多少 **duōshao** is unlimited. 几 **jǐ** always requires a measure, whereas 多少 **duōshao** normally does not:

你有几个孩子？

nǐ yǒu jǐ gè hái zi

How many children do you have?

你女儿今年几岁(了)？

nǐ nǚ'ér jīnnián jǐ suì (le)

How old is your daughter (this year)?

你喝了几杯啤酒？ **nǐ hē le jǐ bēi píjiǔ**

How many glasses of beer did you drink?

你身上带了多少钱？ **nǐ shēn shang dài le duōshao qián**

How much money do you have on you?

中国有多少人？ **zhōngguó yǒu duōshao rén**

How many people are there in China?

你去过多少国家？ **nǐ qù guo duōshao guójiā**

How many countries have you been to?

Note 1: 几 **jǐ** may be used with 十 **shí**, 百 **bǎi**, 千 **qiān**, etc.:

中国有几千年的历史？ **zhōngguó yǒu jǐ qiān nián de lìshǐ**

How many thousand years of history does China have?

那天晚会，你请了几十个同学？

nèi tiān wǎnhuì | nǐ qǐng le jǐ shí gè tóngxué

How many (*lit.* tens of) classmates did you invite to the party that evening?

Note 2: 过 **guo** is an aspect marker indicating experience (see Unit 15).

Exercise 5.1

Express the following Chinese numbers in figures:

- 1 八十九 **bā shí jiǔ**
- 2 十六 **shí liù**
- 3 一万 **yī wàn**
- 4 六亿 **liù yì**
- 5 七百万 **qī bǎi wàn**
- 6 一万三千五百二十六 **yī wàn sān qiān wǔ bǎi èr shí liù**
- 7 十八万 **shí bā wàn**
- 8 六千九百三十四 **liù qiān jiǔ bǎi sān shí sì**
- 9 三千六百五十二 **sān qiān liù bǎi wǔ shí èr**
- 10 七亿八千万零四百六十九 **qī yì bā qiān wàn líng sì bǎi liù shí jiǔ**
- 11 六万四千五百零四 **liù wàn sì qiān wǔ bǎi líng sì**
- 12 四千零四点零零五 **sì qiān líng sì diǎn líng líng wǔ**

Exercise 5.2

Translate the figures below into Chinese:

- | | |
|---------------|------------|
| 1 80,205 | 7 3% |
| 2 6,329,814 | 8 97% |
| 3 600,000,000 | 9 4.1316 |
| 4 1,080 | 10 586.23 |
| 5 7/36 | 11 7,005 |
| 6 1/4 | 12 601.007 |

Exercise 5.3

Translate the following phrases into Chinese:

- | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1 half a day | 8 five and a half pears |
| 2 two weeks | 9 the fifth week |
| 3 three and a half years | 10 the fourth child |
| 4 six months | 11 the twelfth match |
| 5 the first floor | 12 the third year (at school) |
| 6 half an orange | 13 the second day |
| 7 half a bottle of wine | 14 seven and a half hours |

Exercise 5.4

Fill in the blanks below with either 二 èr or 两 liǎng to complete the translation of the English:

- | | | | |
|----|-----------------|-------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1 | _____ 次 | _____ cì | twice |
| 2 | _____ 万人 | _____ wàn rén | twenty thousand people |
| 3 | _____ 分之一 | _____ fēn zhī yī | half |
| 4 | 十 _____ 米 | shí _____ mǐ | twelve metres |
| 5 | _____ 十五条金鱼 | _____ shí wǔ tiáo | twenty-five goldfish |
| 6 | _____ 条裙子 _____ | jīnyú
tiáo qúnzi | two skirts |
| 7 | 第 _____ 课 | dì _____ kè | Lesson Two |
| 8 | _____ 、三打鸡蛋 | _____ sān dá | two or three dozen eggs |
| 9 | 十 _____ 、三把牙刷 | jīdàn
shí _____ sān bǎ | twelve to thirteen toothbrushes |
| 10 | 一、_____ 把雨伞 | yáshuā
yī _____ bǎ yǔsǎn | one or two umbrellas |

Exercise 5.5

Translate the following phrases into Chinese:

- 1 one or two weeks
- 2 two hundred years
- 3 about sixty years old
- 4 thirty to forty bicycles
- 5 ten days and more
- 6 some two hundred shops
- 7 ten per cent
- 8 twenty or so
- 9 fifteen metres or so
- 10 a month or so
- 11 over ten thousand students
- 12 two or three children
- 13 about fifty friends and neighbours
- 14 about seventy miles
- 15 over eight kilograms
- 16 ten cities or more

Exercise 5.6

Translate the following sentences into Chinese:

- 1 There are three oranges, two pears, a loaf of bread and a bottle of wine in the cupboard.
- 2 There is a bowl, a mug and a pair of chopsticks on the table. (双 **shuāng** 'pair')
- 3 There are half a dozen eggs, a kilo of Chinese cabbage and some ice-cream in the fridge.
- 4 There are two sweaters and twelve skirts in the wardrobe.
- 5 Li Ming has invited (请了 **qǐng le**) thirty to forty friends and fellow students.
- 6 My boyfriend (男朋友 **nán péngyou**) has brought (带来了 **dài lái le**) a bunch of flowers and a few bottles of beer.
- 7 I have written (写了 **xiě le**) around five references. (封 **fēng** is the measure word for letters, etc.)
- 8 My girlfriend (女朋友 **nǚ péngyou**) has been to ten countries or more.
- 9 I bumped into (碰见了 **pèngjiàn le**) over twenty fellow students.
- 10 My son saw (看了 **kàn le**) about a dozen films this year. (今年 **jīnnián** 'this year')
- 11 How much is that sweater?
- 12 How many younger sisters does he have?
- 13 How many people are there in Beijing?
- 14 How many Chinese people does your father know?
- 15 How many kilos of Chinese cabbage do you want to buy?

Pattern and vocabulary drill 5.1

Try to work out the English translation of the following. You can use the vocabulary at the end of the book if it helps.

- 1 下一位！请进来。 **xià yī wèi | qǐng jìn lái**
- 2 下(一)班车几点开？ **xià (yī) bān chē jǐ diǎn kāi**
- 3 上半场很精彩。 **shàng bàn chǎng hěn jīngcǎi**
- 4 我们下星期四走。 **wǒmen xià xīngqī sì zǒu**
- 5 他上个学年很努力。 **tā shàng gè xuénián hěn nǔlì** (努力 **nǔlì** 'hard-working; industrious')
- 6 你下个站下车吗？ **nǐ xià gè zhàn xià chē ma**
- 7 上一期卖完了。 **shàng yī qī mài wán le**
- 8 下(一)次再见！ **xià (yī) cì zài jiàn**

Pattern and vocabulary drill 5.2

Translate the following questions into Chinese, using the alternative 没有 **méiyǒu** format and the experience aspect marker 过 **guo**:

Have you ever ridden a bike?

你骑过自行车没有？ **nǐ qí guo zìxíngchē méiyǒu**

- 1 Have you met these few engineers before? (见过 **jiàn guo** 'to have met/seen')
- 2 Have you ever been to Britain? (去过 **qù guo** 'to have been')
- 3 Have you ever kept a dog? (养过 **yǎng guo** 'to have had the experience of rearing')
- 4 Have you ever ridden a camel? (骆驼 **luòtuō** 'camel')
- 5 Have you used chopsticks before? (用过 **yòng guo** 'to use')
- 6 Have you ever had any Chinese friends? (交过 **jiāo guo** 'to have made (friends with)')
- 7 Have you ever tried English beer?
- 8 Have you had Chinese tea before?
- 9 Have you seen a Chinese film before?
- 10 Have you ever driven a car? (开过 **kāi guo** 'to have driven')
- 11 Have you ever hired a car? (租过 **zū guo** 'to have hired')
- 12 Have you ever been to your friend's place?
- 13 Have you met her parents before?
- 14 Have you ever helped your friends? (帮过 **bāng guo** 'to have helped')
- 15 Have you ever learned how to swim? (学过 **xué guo** 'to have learned')

UNIT SIX

Measure words

Measure words are a particular feature of Chinese syntax, but they do not present an insuperable problem for the learner. With a certain amount of practice, they can soon be generally mastered. This unit compartmentalizes some of the most common and important measure words to provide a structure for understanding their usage and an easy reference.

A A measure word is always necessary when a noun is modified by a numeral or a demonstrative:

一本词典	yī běn cídiǎn	a/one dictionary
一支毛笔	yī zhī máobǐ	a/one writing brush
两只鸟	liǎng zhī niǎo	two birds
三条毛巾	sān tiáo máojīn	three towels
这杯牛奶	zhè bēi niúniǎi	this glass of milk
那瓶啤酒	nèi píng píjiǔ	that bottle of beer
哪个人	nǎi gè rén	which person

One would not normally say:

* 一笔	yī bǐ	(lit. a/one pen)
* 两书	liǎng shū	(lit. two books)
* 这鸟	zhè niǎo	(lit. this bird)
* 哪车	nǎ chē	(lit. which car)

Some nouns may be associated with more than one measure word:

一座/所/幢/栋房子	yī zuò/suǒ/zhuàng/ dòng fángzi	a/one house
这只/条/艘船	zhè zhī/tiáo/sōu chuán	this boat/ship
三辆/部车	sān liàng/bù chē	three cars
哪幅/张画儿	nǎ fú/zhāng huàr	which picture or painting

B 个 *gè*, as we have seen (in Unit 1), is by far the most common of the measures and can be used with virtually any noun:

一个看法	yī gè kànfǎ	a view, opinion
一个想法	yī gè xiǎngfǎ	an idea
一个电影	yī gè diànyǐng	a film/movie
一个舞	yī gè wǔ	a dance
两个客人	liǎng gè kèrén	two visitors/guests
三个国家	sān gè guójiā	three countries
这个机会	zhèi gè jīhuì	this opportunity
那个青年	nèi gè qīngnián	which young man

C Most of the other measures can be placed in general categories, depending on their relationship to the nouns or sets of nouns they accompany:

(i) Associated with particular nouns or sets of nouns

clothing

一顶帽子	yī dǐng màozi	a/one hat
两件衬衫	liǎng jiàn chènshān	two shirts
一条裙子	yī tiáo qúnzi	a skirt

shops, schools and buildings

三、四家商店	sān sì jiā shāngdiàn	three or four shops
几间学校	jǐ jiān xuéxiào	a few schools
一座大楼	yī zuò dà lóu	a large building

vehicles

一架飞机	yī jià fēijī	a/one plane
一辆巴士	yī liàng bāshì	a bus
一辆小巴	yī liàng xiǎobā	a minibus
一辆的士	yī liàng dīshì	a taxi

publications, writing and performance

一本书	yī běn shū	a book
一篇文章	yī piān wénzhāng	a composition
一封信	yī fēng xìn	a letter
一出戏	yī chū xì	a play
一、两首歌	yī liǎng shǒu gē	one or two songs
几句话	jǐ jù huà	a few words

plants

一朵花儿	yī duǒ huār	a/one flower
那棵树	nèi kē shù	that tree
这棵草	zhèi kē cǎo	this tuft/clump of grass
一棵玫瑰花	yī kē méiguì huā	a rosebush
	(cf. 一朵玫瑰花 yī duǒ méiguì huā a rose)	

weather

一阵风	yī zhèn fēng	a gust of wind
一阵雷	yī zhèn léi	a peal of thunder
一场雨	yī cháng yǔ	a shower of rain
一场大雪	yī cháng dà xuě	a heavy fall of snow
一朵云	yī duǒ yún	a cloud

Note: 朵 **duǒ** is also the measure word for ‘flowers’.

games

一场球	yī chǎng qiú	a football/basketball/tennis match
一局棋	yī jú qí	a game of chess

Note 1: 几 **jǐ** means ‘a few’ when used in a statement but ‘how many’ in a question (see Unit 5):

我买了几件衬衫。 **wǒ mǎi le jǐ jiàn chènshān**

I bought a few shirts.

你买了几件衬衫？ **nǐ mǎi le jǐ jiàn chènshān**

How many shirts have you bought (or did you buy)?

Note 2: 场 **cháng** for weather and 场 **chǎng** for games are homographs, but note their different tones.

(ii) Portion of whole

三滴水	sān dī shuǐ	three drops of water
五片面包	wǔ piàn miànbāo	five slices of bread
这块肉	zhèi kuài ròu	this piece of meat
六块蛋糕	liù kuài dàngāo	six pieces of cake

Note: Observe the difference between 一个蛋糕 **yī gè dàngāo** ‘a (whole) cake’ and 一块蛋糕 **yī kuài dàngāo** ‘a piece of cake’ (i.e. a portion of a whole cake).

(iii) Container

两杯茶	liǎng bēi chá	two cups of tea
三碗饭	sān wǎn fàn	three bowls of (cooked) rice
四瓶酒	sì píng jiǔ	four bottles of wine
一罐牛奶	yī guàn niúniǎi	a bottle of milk
一桶水	yī tǒng shuǐ	a pail/bucket of water
一桌子菜	yī zhuōzi cài	a table laden with food

Note: Most containers occur as nouns themselves and then take on other measure words:

两个杯子	liǎng gè bēizi	two cups/glasses/mugs
三只碗	sān zhī wǎn	three bowls
四个瓶子	sì gè píngzi	four bottles

But 一个罐头 **yī gè guàntou** does not mean ‘a can/tin’ in general, but specifically ‘a can/tin of food’.

Portion and container measure words are often further qualified by 大 **dà** ‘big’ or 小 **xiǎo** ‘small’ to indicate their relative size:

一大块肉 **yī dà kuài ròu**
a large piece of meat

一小片面包 **yī xiǎo piàn miànbāo**
a small slice of bread

一大碗饭 **yī dà wǎn fàn**
a large bowl of (cooked) rice/a bowl of (cooked) rice filled to the top

一小碗饭 **yī xiǎo wǎn fàn**
a small bowl of (cooked) rice/a bowl of (cooked) rice partially filled

两小罐午餐肉 **liǎng xiǎo guàn wǔcānròu**
two small cans of luncheon meat, etc.

(iv) Shape

(a) 条 **tiáo** long and narrow; a strip

一条面包	yī tiáo miànbāo	a loaf of bread
一条路	yī tiáo lù	a road (street)
一条绳子	yī tiáo shéngzi	a rope/piece of string
一条鱼	yī tiáo yú	a fish
一条河	yī tiáo hé	a river
这条裙子	zhè tiáo qúnzi	this skirt
那条被子	nèi tiáo bèizi	that quilt

(b) 根 **gēn** stick-like

一根火柴	yī gēn huǒchái	a match
一根草	yī gēn cǎo	a blade of grass
一根线	yī gēn xiàn	a piece of thread

(c) 支 (枝) **zhī** like a branch or a twig

一支铅笔	yī zhī qiānbǐ	a pencil
两支烟	liǎng zhī yān	two cigarettes

一支部队 **yī zhī bùduì** an army
一枝枪 **yī zhī qiāng** a rifle/pistol

- (d) 张 **zhāng** a flat surface
 一张纸 **yī zhāng zhǐ** a piece of paper
 哪张桌子 **nǎ zhāng zhuōzi** which table
 一张报纸 **yī zhāng bàozhǐ** a newspaper
 一张床 **yī zhāng chuáng** a bed
 一张地图 **yī zhāng dìtú** a map

- (e) 粒 **lì** granular
 一粒沙 **yī lì shā** a grain of sand
 一粒米 **yī lì mǐ** a grain of rice

- (f) 颗 **kē** small and round (not to be confused with its homophone
 棵 **kē** ‘measure word for plants’)
 一颗珠子 **yī kē zhūzi** a pearl
 一颗黄豆 **yī kē huángdòu** a soya bean

(v) Relating to noun groups

- (a) 把 **bǎ** is used with nouns which indicate something held by
 the hand:
 一把刀 **yī bǎ dāo** a knife
 这把椅子 **zhè bǎ yǐzi** this chair
 一把(雨)伞 **yī bǎ (yǔ)sǎn** an umbrella
 一把牙刷 **yī bǎ yáshuā** a toothbrush

- (b) 座 **zuò** is used with nouns which indicate something large and
 imposing:
 一座山 **yī zuò shān** a hill/mountain
 一座桥 **yī zuò qiáo** a bridge
 那座房子 **nèi zuò fángzi** that house/building

- (c) 只 **zhǐ** is used with the following noun groups:
 • animals, birds and insects
 一只鸟 **yī zhǐ niǎo** a bird
 一只猫 **yī zhǐ māo** a cat
 一只老鼠 **yī zhǐ lǎoshǔ** a mouse
 一只羊 **yī zhǐ yáng** a sheep
 一只苍蝇 **yī zhǐ cāngying** a fly

Note: The following animals take individual measure words:

一头牛 **yī tóu niú** a cow
 一匹马 **yī pǐ mǎ** a horse
 这条狗 **zhè tiáo gǒu** this dog

- utensils

一只碗	yī zhī wǎn	a bowl
一只锅	yī zhī guō	a wok
- one of a pair

一只手套	yī zhī shǒutào	a glove
那只鞋	nèi zhī xié	that shoe
一只袜子	yī zhī wàzi	a sock
一只眼睛	yī zhī yǎnjīng	an eye
一只耳朵	yī zhī ěrduo	an ear

(vi) Referring to weight, volume, length, etc.

两公斤马铃薯	liǎng gōngjīn mǎlíngshǔ	two kilos of potatoes
一磅牛肉	yī bàng niúròu	a pound of beef
八升汽油	bā shēng qìyóu	eight litres of petrol
五英里路	wǔ yīnglǐ lù	five miles (distance)

D Objects in pairs. In Chinese ‘a pair of’ is usually 一双 **yī shuāng** or 一对 **yī duì**:

一双鞋子	yī shuāng xiézi	a pair of shoes
一双筷子	yī shuāng kuàizi	a pair of chopsticks
一双手	yī shuāng shǒu	a pair of hands
一双手套	yī shuāng shǒutào	a pair of gloves
一对袜子	yī duì wàzi	a pair of socks
一对耳环	yī duì ěrhuan	a pair of earrings

Note 1: 一双 **yī shuāng** and 一对 **yī duì** are generally interchangeable, although 一对 **yī duì** is more often used for people or animals forming partnerships:

一对夫妇	yī duì fūfù	husband and wife
一对鸽子	yī duì gēzi	a pair of pigeons
一对鸳鸯	yī duì yuānyāng	a pair of mandarin ducks/an affectionate couple

Note 2: In English one may use ‘a pair of’ with objects which are, in fact, a single entity. In Chinese these objects take specific measure words:

一把剪刀	yī bǎ jiǎndāo	a pair of scissors
一条裤子	yī tiáo kùzi	a pair of trousers
哪副眼镜	nǎ fù yǎnjìng	which pair of glasses?

E Objects in clusters or held together in one way or another adopt different measure words:

一串香蕉	yī chuàn xiāngjiāo	a bunch of bananas
一串葡萄	yī chuàn pútáo	a bunch of grapes
一束花	yī shù huā	a bouquet (of flowers)
一把米	yī bǎ mǐ	a handful of rice
一撮盐	yī cuō yán	a pinch of salt
一笔钱	yī bǐ qián	a sum of money

F Some nouns, particularly those referring to time, can be measure words in themselves and do not require a measure word:

一天	yī tiān	a/one day
两年	liǎng nián	two years

In some cases the measure word is optional:

一个星期	yī gè xīngqī	or	一星期	yī xīngqī	a/one week
三个小时	sān gè xiǎoshí	or	三小时	sān xiǎoshí	three hours

Note: 礼拜 **lǐbài**, an alternative for ‘week’ and 钟头 **zhōngtóu**, an alternative for ‘hour’, and 月 **yuè** ‘month’ always take the measure word 个 **gè**:

两个礼拜	liǎng gè lǐbài	not	*两礼拜	liǎng lǐbài	two weeks
三个钟头	sān gè zhōngtóu	not	*三钟头	sān zhōngtóu	three hours
六个月	liù gè yuè	not	*六月	liùyuè	six months

However, 月 **yuè** is used without 个 **gè** for the calendar months, e.g.

一月	yīyuè	January
二月	èryuè	February
六月	liùyuè	June
十二月	shíèryuè	December

G A few Chinese measure words have a variety of translations in English according to context and to the noun they are linked with:

一杯茶	yī bēi chá	a cup of tea
一杯咖啡	yī bēi kāfēi	a mug of coffee
一杯水	yī bēi shuǐ	a glass of water
一群狼	yī qún láng	a pack of wolves
一群羊	yī qún yáng	a flock of sheep
一群人	yī qún rén	a crowd of people

6
Measure
words

Conversely some measure words in English have a range of translations in Chinese:

一条新闻	yī tiáo xīnwén	a piece of news
一块肥皂	yī kuài féizào	a piece of soap
一张纸	yī zhāng zhǐ	a piece of paper
一个信息	yī gè xìnxī	a piece of information
一支乐曲	yī zhī yuèqǔ	a piece of music
一支粉笔	yī zhī fěnbǐ	a piece of chalk

H As we have seen from the examples in the unit, demonstratives 这 **zhè** and 那 **nà** and interrogative adjective 哪 **nǎ** are used with measure words in the same way as numerals:

这杯酒	zhè bēi jiǔ	this glass of wine (or any alcoholic drink)
那瓶牛奶	nèi píng niúniǎi	that bottle of milk
哪双鞋？	něi shuāng xié?	which pair of shoes?

When 这 **zhè** or 那 **nà** or 哪 **nǎ** occurs together with a numeral, the former always precedes the latter:

这两杯酒	zhè liǎng bēi jiǔ	these two glasses of wine, etc.
那三瓶牛奶	nà sān píng niúniǎi	those three bottles of milk
哪四双鞋？	nǎ sì shuāng xié?	which four pairs of shoes?

这 **zhè**, 那 **nà** and 哪 **nǎ** are also used regularly with (一) 些 **(yī)xiē** ‘some’ to identify an indefinite plural number or amount:

这(一)些书	zhè (yī)xiē shū	these books
那(一)些袜子	nèi (yī)xiē wàzi	those socks/stockings
哪(一)些钱？	něi (yī)xiē qián?	which (amount of) money?

Note: 一些 **(yī)xiē** ‘some’ is a set expression. 些 **xiē** cannot be used with other numerals.

One cannot say:

* 两些书 **liǎng xiē shū**

I There are a number of collective nouns which consist of a measure word suffixed to a noun. These collective nouns are only used in more formal contexts:

车辆	chēliàng	vehicles	信件	xìnjiàn	correspondence
船只	chuánzhī	shipping	花朵	huāduǒ	flowers
书本	shūběn	books	马匹	mǎpǐ	horses
纸张	zhǐzhāng	paper	人群	rénqún	crowd (of people)

These collective nouns *cannot* be modified by a ‘numeral + measure word’ phrase:

*两朵花朵	liǎng duǒ huāduǒ	(lit. two flowers)
*三只船只	sān zhī chuánzhī	(lit. three boats)

J In more descriptive writing, plurality may also be formed by using the numeral 一 **yī** ‘one’ followed by a reduplicated measure word *with* or *without* the attributive marker 的 **de**:

一朵朵(的)花儿	yī duǒduǒ (de) huār	many a flower
一阵阵(的)风	yī zhènzhèn (de) fēng	gusts of wind/gust after gust of wind

In poetic writing or proverbial sayings, an alternative version can be ‘reduplicated measure + noun’:

朵朵花儿向阳开。 **duǒduǒ huār xiàng yáng kāi**
Many a flower opens towards the sun.

条条大路通罗马。 **tiáotiáo dà lù tōng luómǎ**
All roads lead to Rome.

人人为我，我为人人。 **rénrén wèi wǒ | wǒ wèi rénren**
All for one and one for all.

Exercise 6.1

Match each noun below with the correct measure word and translate the resulting phrase into English:

1 一匹	yī pǐ	商店	shāngdiàn
2 两架	liǎng jià	蛋糕	dàngāo
3 三个	sān gè	椅子	yǐzi
4 四、五把	sì wǔ bǎ	山	shān
5 几张	jǐ zhāng	马	mǎ
6 六家	liù jiā	国家	guójiā
7 七所	qī suǒ	桌子	zhuōzi
8 八座	bā zuò	书	shū

9 九本	jiǔ běn	飞机	fēijī
10 十块	shí kuài	学校	xuéxiào

Exercise 6.2

See if you can find a measure word out of the eight below to replace the measure words in the following phrases:

部 **bù** 副 **fù** 对 **duì** 座 **zuò** 所 **suǒ** 个 **gè** 张 **zhāng** 床 **chuáng**

1 一份报纸	yī fèn bàozhǐ	a newspaper
2 一条被子	yī tiáo bèizi	a quilt
3 一间学校	yī jiān xuéxiào	a school
4 一对耳环	yī duì ěrhuán	a pair of earrings
5 一辆汽车	yī liàng qìchē	a car
6 一部电影	yī bù diànyǐng	a film
7 一幢房子	yī zhuàng fángzi	a house
8 一双筷子	yī shuāng kuàizi	a pair of chopsticks

Exercise 6.3

Translate the phrases below into Chinese:

1 a day	11 a piece of soap
2 a bowl of (cooked) rice	12 a pair of trousers
3 a year	13 a month
4 this pair of spectacles	14 two pounds of apples
5 a pair of shoes	15 three miles
6 a week	16 seven litres of petrol
7 an earring	17 which writing brush?
8 a sock	18 a boat
9 a piece of bread	19 two songs
10 that pair of scissors	20 a map

Exercise 6.4

Translate the following phrases into Chinese (note that some nouns may share the same measure word):

1 a flock of sheep	3 a crowd of people
2 a glass of beer	4 an umbrella

- | | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 5 a knife | 13 a cup of tea |
| 6 that bird | 14 which flower? |
| 7 those two bunches of flowers | 15 a (piece of) string |
| 8 a piece of music | 16 a bed |
| 9 this newspaper | 17 a pair of trousers |
| 10 which three pencils? | 18 a pair of scissors |
| 11 an opportunity | 19 this dog |
| 12 a drop of water | 20 these three cigarettes |

Exercise 6.5

Complete the Chinese translations of the English sentences below, choosing appropriate measures from the following list (note that some measure words may be used more than once):

条 **tiáo** 本 **běn** 辆 **liàng** 碗 **wǎn** 些 **xiē** 张 **zhāng**
杯 **bēi** 把 **bǎ** 顶 **dǐng** 支 **zhī** 家 **jiā** 只 **zhī**
间 **jiān** 个 **gè**

- There are only four tables and five chairs in this classroom.
教室里只有 _____ 桌子和 _____ 椅子。
_____ **jiàoshì li zhǐ yǒu** _____ **zhuōzi hé** _____ **yǐzi**
- Our neighbour has two dogs and three cats.
我们邻居有 _____ 狗和 _____ 猫。
wǒmen línjū yǒu _____ **gǒu hé** _____ **māo**
- We've got four cars in the family.
我家有 _____ (汽)车。 **wǒ jiā yǒu** _____ (qì)**chē**
- My younger brother bought a new hat.
弟弟买了 _____ 新帽子。 **dìdi mǎi le** _____ **xīn màozi**
- I had four cups of coffee today.
我今天喝了 _____ 咖啡。 **wǒ jīntiān hē le** _____ **kāfēi**
- That person made a few suggestions.
_____ 人提了 _____ 建议。
_____ **rén tí le** _____ **jiànyì**
- My uncle brought some fruit.
叔叔带来了 _____ 水果。 **shūshu dài lái le** _____ **shuǐguǒ**
- Li Ming walked into a restaurant and ordered a bowl of fried noodles.

李明走进 _____ 饭馆，叫了 _____ 炒面。

lǐ míng zǒu jìn _____ fànguǎn | jiào le _____ chǎomiàn

- 9 My uncle wants to go to France by car. He's borrowed a map of France.

我舅舅想开车去法国。他借了 _____ 法国地图。

wǒ jiùjiu xiǎng kāi chē qù fǎguó | tā jiè le _____ fǎguó dìtú

- 10 My younger sister likes birds. She keeps those two parrots.

妹妹喜欢鸟。她养了 _____ 鸚鵡。

mèimei xǐhuan niǎo | tā yǎng le _____ yīngwǔ

Note: There is a difference in Chinese between 叔叔 **shūshu** 'uncle (on father's side)' and 舅舅 **jiùjiu** 'uncle (on mother's side)'.

Exercise 6.6

Translate into Chinese:

- 1 I have two children. How many do you have?
- 2 You had three glasses of beer. I had only one.
- 3 I like this dog. I don't like that one.
- 4 My mother has a dozen pairs of shoes. My sister has over twenty.
- 5 We have one car. You have two, don't you?
- 6 She had one bowl of rice. He had three or four.
- 7 Whose is this one?
- 8 Which one is hers?

Note: In sentence 4 'a dozen pairs' which brings together two measures is unacceptable in Chinese. You therefore have to say 'twelve pairs'.

Pattern and vocabulary drill 6.1

Complete the following Chinese sentences with the help of the English translations:

- 1 书架上有 _____ 。 **shūjià shang yǒu ...**
There are more than ten books on the bookshelf.
- 2 花瓶里有 _____ 。 **huāpíng li yǒu ...**
There is a bouquet of flowers in the vase.

- 3 桌子上有_____和_____。° **zhuōzi shang yǒu ... hé ...**
There are two bowls and two pairs of chopsticks on the table.
- 4 衣柜里有_____、_____和_____。° **yīguì li yǒu ... hé ...**
There are two shirts, two skirts and two pairs of trousers in the wardrobe.
- 5 我父母家有_____和_____。° **wǒ fùmǔ jiā yǒu ... hé ...**
There are two cats and a dog in my parents' home.
- 6 冰箱里有_____和_____。° **bīngxiāng li yǒu ... hé ...**
There is a piece of meat and some vegetables in the fridge.
- 7 电影院有_____座位 (zuòwèi 'seat')。° **diànyǐng yuàn yǒu ... zuòwèi**
There are over three hundred seats in the cinema.
- 8 商店里有_____。° **shāngdiàn li yǒu ...**
There is a large crowd of people in the shop.
- 9 他银行里有_____。° **tā yínháng li yǒu ...**
He has a small sum of money in the bank.
- 10 市场上有_____、_____、_____和_____卖 (mài 'to sell')。° **shìchǎng shang yǒu ... hé ... mài**
There are apples, oranges, pears and bananas on sale at the marketplace.
- 11 厨房里有_____和_____。° **chúfáng li yǒu ... hé ...**
There is a big table and six chairs in the kitchen.
- 12 街上有来来往往的_____和行人 (xíng rén 'pedestrians')。° **jiē shang yǒu lái lái wǎng wǎng de ... hé xíng rén**
In the street there are cars and pedestrians going to and fro.
- 13 办公室里_____。° **bàngōngshì li yǒu ...**
There are four bookshelves in the office.
- 14 她身上没有_____。° **tā shēn shang méi yǒu ...**
She has no money on her.
- 15 池里有_____。° **chí li yǒu ...**
There are eleven fish in the pond.
- 16 碗里有_____。° **wǎn li yǒu ...**
There is some (cooked) rice in the bowl.
- 17 床上有_____。° **chuáng shang yǒu ...**
There are two quilts on the bed.
- 18 碗柜里有_____。° **wǎnguì li yǒu ...**
There are over ten bowls in the cupboard.
- 19 树上有_____。° **shù shang yǒu ...**
There are a few birds in the tree.

- 20 山上有 _____ ° **shān shang yǒu ...**
There is a pack of wolves on the mountain.
- 21 车上有 _____ 乘客 (**chéngkè** ‘passenger’) °
chē shang yǒu ...
There are over twenty passengers on the train/coach/bus.
- 22 船上有 _____ °
chuán shang yǒu ...
There are three hundred and fifty-six passengers on board the ship.

Pattern and vocabulary drill 6.2

Pluralize the following phrases, using a more descriptive tone:

一幅画儿 **yī fú huàr**

a picture/painting

一幅幅(的)画儿 **yī fúfú (de) huàr**

many a picture/painting after painting

- 1 一张桌子 **yī zhāng zhuōzi**
- 2 一串香蕉 **yī chuàn xiāngjiāo**
- 3 一座大山 **yī zuò dà shān**
- 4 一群羊 **yī qún yáng**
- 5 一双鞋子 **yī shuāng xiézi**
- 6 一双袜子 **yī shuāng wàzi**
- 7 一朵云 **yī duǒ yún**
- 8 一架飞机 **yī jià fēijī**
- 9 一封信 **yī fēng xìn**
- 10 一只小鸟 **yī zhī xiǎo niǎo**

UNIT SEVEN

Indefinite plurals

A A large (but unspecified) number or amount may be expressed in Chinese by using the adjectival phrases: 很多 **hěnduō** ‘many; a lot of’ and 不少 **bùshǎo** (*lit.* not few) ‘many; quite a few’. They may modify all types of nouns:

很多钱	hěnduō qián	a lot of money	(material)
不少书	bùshǎo shū	many books	(common)
很多朋友	hěnduō péngyou	many friends	(common)
不少建议	bùshǎo jiànyì	quite a few suggestions	(abstract)
很多意见	hěnduō yìjiàn	a lot of opinions	(abstract)

Another adjective 许多 **xǔduō** ‘many; much; a great deal’ may be used interchangeably with 很多 **hěnduō**: e.g. 许多问题 **xǔduō wèntí** ‘many problems’, 许多人 **xǔduō rén** ‘a lot of people’, etc. As 许多 **xǔduō** is more descriptive in tone, it can be used in a reduplicated form often followed by the attributive marker 的 **de**: e.g. 许许多多的商店 **xǔxūduōduō de shāngdiàn** ‘a great many shops’, 许许多多的人 **xǔxūduōduō de rén** ‘a great many people’, etc.

Note: When possessive adjectives are present, they precede these indefinite plurals: e.g.

我(的)很多朋友	wǒ (de) hěnduō péngyou	many of my friends
他(的)不少意见	tā (de) bùshǎo yìjiàn	quite a few of his opinions

B To express an unspecified number or quantity, 一些 **yīxiē** ‘some; a few’, is used, again with all types of nouns:

一些纸	yīxiē zhǐ	some paper	(material)
一些葡萄	yīxiē pútáo	a few grapes	(common)
一些水	yīxiē shuǐ	some water	(material)
有(一)些希望	yǒu (yī)xiē xīwàng	there is some hope	(abstract)

7
Indefinite
plurals

A smaller number or amount can be expressed respectively by ‘几 **jǐ** + measure word’ ‘some; a few’ and 一点(儿) **yīdiǎn(r)** ‘some; a little; a bit’. The former is generally used with common nouns and the latter, mostly with material nouns (e.g. ‘iron, water, cloth’, etc.) or abstract notions (e.g. ideas, feelings, etc.):

几个人	jǐ gè rén	a few people	(common)
几幅画儿	jǐ fú huàr	a few pictures	(common)
几辆自行车	jǐ liàng zìxíngchē	a few bicycles	(common)

一点(儿)盐	yīdiǎn(r) yán	a bit of salt	(material)
一点儿道理	yīdiǎnr dàoli	some sense	(abstract)

有(一)点(儿)紧张 **yǒu (yī)diǎn(r) jǐnzhāng** (to be) a bit nervous
(*lit.* have/having a bit of nervousness) (abstract)

没有一点(儿)希望 **méi yǒu yīdiǎn(r) xīwàng**
(to be) without any hope (abstract)

Note: 有(一)些 **yǒu (yī)xiē**/有(一)点(儿) **yǒu (yī)diǎn(r)** + nouns/verbs or noun/verb phrases may often constitute adjectival predicates: e.g. 他有(一)些失望。 **tā yǒu (yī)xiē shīwàng** ‘He was somewhat disappointed’; 我有(一)点(儿)不舒服。 **wǒ yǒu (yī)diǎn(r) bù shūfu** ‘I felt somewhat uncomfortable’, etc.

C Though a ‘几 **jǐ** + measure word’ phrase is usually used with common nouns, it may also be used with material nouns if the measure word is a container or a standard measurement (e.g. bottle, kilo, etc.):

几瓶酒 **jǐ píng jiǔ**
a few bottles of wine (container)

几碗饭 **jǐ wǎn fàn**
a few bowls of rice (container)

几升汽油 **jǐ shēng qìyóu**
several litres of petrol (standard measure)

几公斤马铃薯 **jǐ gōngjīn mǎlíngshǔ**
several kilos of potatoes (standard measure)

Note: Compare the different uses of 几 **jǐ** in statements and questions:

我买了几瓶酒。 **wǒ mǎi le jǐ píng jiǔ**
I have bought a few bottles of wine.

你买了几瓶酒？ **nǐ mǎi le jǐ píng jiǔ**
How many bottles of wine have you bought?

D These noun phrases, being indefinite plurals, naturally occur after the verb in the object position:

那天我见到了不少朋友。
nèi tiān wǒ jiàn dào le bùshǎo péngyou
I met quite a few friends that day.

那天我碰到了许多问题。
nèi tiān wǒ pèng dào le xǔduō wèntí
I came across many problems that day.

These indefinite plurals can be moved to a pre-verbal position by using the verb 有 **yǒu** before them to retain their indefinite reference:

那天有许多朋友来看我。 **nèi tiān yǒu xǔduō péngyou lái kàn wǒ**
Many friends came to see me that day.

E Only 一点(儿) **yīdiǎn(r)** and ‘几 **jǐ** + measure word’ phrases can be used in negative sentences (unlike 一些 **yī xiē** which cannot):

这儿没有一点(儿)水。 **zhèr méi yǒu yīdiǎn(r) shuǐ**
There isn't any water here.

我没有一点(儿)钱。 **wǒ méi yǒu yīdiǎn(r) qián**
I don't have any money.

我没(有)碰见几个朋友。 **wǒ méi(yǒu) pèngjiàn jǐ gè péngyou**
I didn't bump into many friends.

One does not say, for example:

*我没有一些钱。 **wǒ méi yǒu yī xiē qián** I don't have any money

The negative emphasis is intensified if 一点(儿) **yīdiǎn(r)** and its noun is moved to a position before the verb with 也 **yě** or 都 **dōu** coming right after it:

这儿一点(儿)水也没有。 **zhèr yīdiǎn(r) shuǐ yě méi yǒu**
(more emphatic)
There isn't any water here at all.

我一点(儿)钱也没有。

wǒ yīdiǎn(r) qián yě méi yǒu (more emphatic)

I don't have any money at all.

这个人一点(儿)道理都不讲。

zhèi gè rén yīdiǎn(r) dào lǐ dōu bù jiǎng

This person was totally unreasonable.

(lit. This person was not concerned with reason in any way.)

Note: 一点(儿) **yīdiǎn(r)** may, of course, occur without a noun:

她一点(儿)也不吃。 **tā yīdiǎn(r) yě bù chī**

She didn't eat anything at all.

This emphatic construction is also regularly used with ‘一 **yī** + measure (+ noun)’ phrases:

这儿一个人也没有。 **zhèr yī gè rén yě méi yǒu**

There isn't anyone here at all.

我身上一分钱也没有。 **wǒ shēn shang yī fēn qián yě méi yǒu**

I don't have a cent/penny on me.

她一口饭也不想吃。 **tā yī kǒu fàn yě bù xiǎng chī**

She doesn't want to eat a single mouthful.

The emphasis can be increased still further by placing 连 **lián** ‘even’ before 一点(儿) **yīdiǎn(r)** or ‘一 **yī** + measure word (+ noun)’ phrases:

这儿连一个人也没有。 **zhèr lián yī gè rén yě méi yǒu**

There isn't even one person here.

我身上连一分钱也没有。 **wǒ shēn shang lián yī fēn qián yě méi yǒu**

I've got absolutely no money at all on me.

F Interrogative pronouns discussed in Unit 4 (e.g. 谁 **shéi/shuí**, 什么 **shénme**, 哪儿 **nǎr**, etc.) may also be used as indefinite plurals in pre-verb positions in conjunction with 都 **dōu**/也 **yě**:

谁都来了。 **shéi/shuí dōu lái le**

Everybody has turned up.

谁也没有来。 **shéi/shuí yě méi(yǒu) lái**

Nobody has turned up.

他什么也没(有)买。 **tā shénme yě méi(yǒu) mǎi**
He did not buy anything.

她哪儿都去过。 **tā nǎr dōu qù guo**
She's been everywhere./There's no place she's not been to.

Note: The difference between 也 **yě** and 都 **dōu** is that the former tends to be used more often in a negative context.

These interrogative pronouns may be used as objects in negative sentences in a similar way:

我没(有)碰见谁。 **wǒ méi(yǒu) pèngjiàn shéi/shuí**
I did not bump into anybody.

他不想吃什么。 **tā bù xiǎng chī shénme**
He did not want to eat anything.

你去过哪儿吗？ **nǐ qù guo nǎr ma**
Didn't you go anywhere?

G Human nouns which take the suffix 们 **men** are of definite reference and cannot therefore be modified by measure word phrases (see Unit 1 **D**) or adjectives like 很多 **hěnduō**, 不少 **bùshǎo**, 一些 **yīxiē** or 一点(儿) **yīdiǎn(r)**, etc. which express indefinite plurals. One cannot say:

*很多学生们 **hěnduō xuéshengmen** (*lit.* many students)
*一些朋友们 **yīxiē péngyoumen** (*lit.* some friends)

Exercise 7.1

Pick out the Chinese phrases/sentences below that are incorrect and make necessary corrections:

- | | | |
|----------|--------------------------|---|
| 1 不少学生 | bùshǎo xuésheng | many students |
| 2 不少个孩子 | bùshǎo gè háizi | many children |
| 3 不少朋友们 | bùshǎo péngyoumen | many friends |
| 4 一些葡萄 | yīxiē pútáo | some grapes |
| 5 很多个面子 | hěnduō gè miànbào | a lot of bread |
| 6 很多意见 | hěnduō yìjian | a lot of criticism
(<i>lit.</i> opinions) |
| 7 一点(儿)水 | yīdiǎn(r) shuǐ | a little water |

7
Indefinite
plurals

8	几个橙子	jǐ gè chéngzi	a few oranges
9	很多人们	hěn duō rénmen	quite a lot of people
10	一些工程师们	yīxiē gōngchéng shīmen	some engineers
11	一些盐	yīxiē yán	some salt
12	一些钱也没有	yīxiē qián yě méi yǒu	have no money at all
13	一点(儿)希望也没有	yīdiǎn(r) xīwàng yě méi yǒu	have no hope at all
14	没有一碗饭	méi yǒu yī wǎn fàn	there isn't a single bowl of (cooked) rice
15	连家里一粒米也没有。	lián jiā li yī lì mǐ yě méi yǒu	There isn't a single grain of rice at home.
16	花园里一朵花儿也没有。	huāyuán li yī duǒ huār yě méi yǒu	There isn't a single flower in the garden.

Exercise 7.2

Complete the Chinese sentences below by filling the gaps with one of the following expressions:

一些 **yīxiē** 很多 **hěn duō** 不少 **bù shǎo** 一点(儿) **yīdiǎn(r)** 一个 **yī gè**

- 弟弟买了 _____ 玩具。
dìdì mǎi le _____ wánjù
My younger brother has bought a lot of toys.
- 奶奶没喝 _____ (_____) 牛奶。
nǎinai méi hē _____ niúniǎi
Grandma didn't drink any milk at all.
- 爷爷吃了 _____ 葡萄。
yéye chī le _____ pútao
Grandpa ate quite a lot of grapes.
- 姐姐 _____ 橙子也没吃。
jiějie _____ chéngzi yě méi chī
(My) elder sister didn't eat a single orange.
- 妈妈讲了 _____ 故事。
māma jiǎng le _____ gùshi
Mother told many stories.
- 爸爸去过 _____ 国家。
bàba qù guo _____ guójiā
My father has been to a lot of countries.
- 哥哥烤了 _____ 面包。
gēge kǎo le _____ miànbāo
My elder brother baked some bread.

- 8 妹妹没带 _____ (_____) 钱。
mèimei méi dài _____ qián
My younger sister hasn't got any money with her.
- 9 我在学校交了 _____ 朋友。
wǒ zài xuéxiào jiāo le _____ péngyou
I made a lot of friends at school.
- 10 爸爸写了 _____ 信。
bàba xiě le _____ xìn
Father wrote quite a few letters.

Exercise 7.3

Rephrase the following Chinese sentences to make them more emphatic:

- 1 我身上没有一分钱。 **wǒ shēn shang méi yǒu yī fēn qián**
I haven't got any money on me.
- 2 我家里没有一本词典。 **wǒ jiā li méi yǒu yī běn cídiǎn**
I don't have a single dictionary in my house.
- 3 冰箱里没有一点儿水果。
bīngxiāng li méi yǒu yīdiǎnr shuǐguǒ (水果 **shuǐguǒ** 'fruit')
There aren't any fruit in the fridge.
- 4 她没说什么。 **tā méi shuō shénme**
She didn't say anything.
- 5 他没吃什么东西。 **tā méi chī shénme dōngxi**
He didn't eat anything.
- 6 妈妈没买什么肉。 **māma méi mǎi shénme ròu**
Mother didn't buy any meat at all.
- 7 我们没去哪儿。 **wǒmen méi qù nǎr**
We didn't go anywhere.
- 8 我昨天没碰见谁。 **wǒ zuótiān méi pèngjiàn shuí/shéi**
I didn't bump into anybody yesterday.

Exercise 7.4

Fill in the gaps in the following exchanges with 一些 **yīxiē** or 一点(儿) **yīdiǎn(r)** as appropriate:

- 1 你想买两双新袜子吗？ **nǐ xiǎng mǎi liǎng shuāng xīn wàzi ma**
Do you want to buy two new pairs of socks?
不！我只要买一双。我只有 _____ 钱了。
bù ! wǒ zhǐ yào mǎi yī shuāng | wǒ zhǐ yǒu _____ qián le
No, I only want to buy one pair. I've only got a little money.

- 2 今天你喝过啤酒吗？ **jīntiān nǐ hē guo píjiǔ ma**
Have you had any beer today?
没有，今天我 _____ 啤酒也没(有)喝。
méi yǒu | jīntiān wǒ _____ píjiǔ yě méi(yǒu) hē
No, I haven't had any beer today.
- 3 你妈妈好吗？ **nǐ māma hǎo ma**
How is your mother?
她病了！三天没吃 _____ (_____) 东西了。
tā bìng le | sān tiān méi chī _____ dōngxi le
She's ill. She hasn't touched anything for three days.
- 4 我饿了。 **wǒ è le** (饿 è 'to be hungry')
I am hungry.
我这儿还有 _____ 面包。你想吃吗？
wǒ zhèr hái yǒu _____ miànbāo | nǐ xiǎng chī ma
I've got some bread here. Would you like it?
- 5 你带了钱吗？ **nǐ dài le qián ma**
Have you any money with you?
对不起。我身上 _____ 钱也没带。
duìbuqǐ | wǒ shēn shang _____ qián yě méi dài
I'm sorry. I haven't brought any money with me.
- 6 这件事儿有希望吗？ **zhèi jiàn shìr yǒu xīwàng ma**
(事儿 **shìr** 'affair; matter')
Is there any hope with this?
对不起。 _____ 希望也没有。
duìbuqǐ | _____ xīwàng yě méi yǒu
I'm sorry. There's no hope at all.
- 7 你要在茶里加糖吗？ **nǐ yào zài chá li jiā táng ma**
(加 **jiā** 'to add'; 糖 **táng** 'sugar')
Would you like some sugar in your tea?
谢谢。 _____ 糖也不加。 **xièxie | _____ táng yě bù jiā**
No, thank you. I won't have any sugar.
- 8 你喝了很多啤酒吗？ **nǐ hē le hěn duō píjiǔ ma**
Have you had a lot of beer?
不，我只喝了 _____ 啤酒。 **bù | wǒ zhǐ hē le _____ píjiǔ**
I have only had a little (beer).

Pattern and vocabulary drill 7.1

First translate the following phrases into English and then turn them into yes or no questions using the formula 你有...吗？ **nǐ yǒu ... ma** 'Have you got ...?':

- 1 很多书 **hěnduō shū**
- 2 不少孩子 **bùshǎo háizi**
- 3 一点儿汽油 **yīdiǎnr qìyóu**
- 4 一些米 **yīxiē mǐ**
- 5 许多菜 **xǔduō cài** (菜 **cài** ‘dishes’; cf. 蔬菜 **shūcài** ‘vegetables’)
- 6 几把椅子 **jǐ bǎ yǐzi**
- 7 几块钱 **jǐ kuài qián** (块 **kuài** ‘Chinese currency unit for one *yuan*’)
- 8 一些纸 **yīxiē zhǐ**
- 9 一点儿盐 **yīdiǎnr yán**
- 10 一点儿时间 **yīdiǎnr shíjiān** (时间 **shíjiān** ‘time’)

Note: Observe the difference in meaning between questions with and without 吗 **ma** when using the word 几 **jǐ**:

你有几块钱？ **nǐ yǒu jǐ kuài qián**

How many yuan have you got?

你有几块钱吗？ **nǐ yǒu jǐ kuài qián ma**

Have you got a few yuan (on you)?

Pattern and vocabulary drill 7.2

Formulate sentences following the given model:

街上 **jiē shang** ‘in the street’ 人 **rén** ‘person’

街上一个人也没有。 **jiē shang yī gè rén yě méi yǒu**

There isn’t a single person in the street.

- 1 车上 **chē shang** 乘客 **chéngkè**
There isn’t a single passenger on the bus.
- 2 我钱包里 **wǒ (de) qiánbāo li** 钱 **qián**
There isn’t a single penny in my purse.
- 3 瓶子里 **pīngzi li** 酒 **jiǔ**
There isn’t a single drop of wine in the bottle.
- 4 书架上 **shūjià shang** 书 **shū**
There isn’t a single book on the bookshelf.
- 5 河上 **hé shang** 船 **chuán**
There isn’t a single boat on the river.
- 6 他的话 **tā de huà** 道理 **dàoli**
There isn’t a single grain of truth in what he says.
- 7 衣柜里 **yīguì li** 裙子 **qúnzi**
There isn’t a single skirt in the wardrobe.

7
Indefinite
plurals

- 8 碗柜里 **wǎnguì li** 碗 **wǎn**
There isn't a single bowl in the cupboard.
- 9 那个人 **nèi gè rén** 朋友 **péngyou**
That person doesn't have a single friend.
- 10 这件事 **zhèi jiàn shì** 希望 **xīwàng**
There isn't a single ray of hope in this (matter).

UNIT EIGHT

Times and dates

A The hours of the day are expressed by 点 **diǎn** or 点钟 **diǎn zhōng**. 点 **diǎn** ‘hour’ is essentially a measure and 钟 **zhōng** means ‘clock’:

两点	liǎng diǎn	two o'clock
十一点钟	shí yī diǎn zhōng	eleven o'clock

B 分 **fēn** ‘minute’ and 刻 **kè** ‘quarter of an hour’ are placed after 点 **diǎn**:

三点二十(分)	sān diǎn èr shí (fēn)	twenty minutes past three
六点一刻	liù diǎn yī kè	a quarter past six
八点三刻	bā diǎn sān kè	a quarter to nine
九点五十(分)	jiǔ diǎn wǔ shí (fēn)	nine fifty

零 **líng** ‘zero’ is used as a filler when the minutes after the hour are less than ten:

五点零五分	wǔ diǎn líng wǔ fēn	five past five
四点零二分	sì diǎn líng èr fēn	two minutes past four

C For ‘half past’ 半 **bàn** ‘half’ comes immediately after 点 **diǎn**:

两点半	liǎng diǎn bàn	half past two
十点半	shí diǎn bàn	half past ten

D Expressions for ‘to’ the hour use 差 **chà** (*lit.*) ‘lack, be short of’ which can form a phrase before or after 点 **diǎn**:

差十分四点	chà shí fēn	<i>or</i>	四点差十分	sì diǎn chà shí fēn	ten to four
差一刻七点	chà yī kè	<i>or</i>	七点差一刻	qī diǎn chà yī kè	a quarter to seven

As we can see from the above examples, when the time expression contains other time units apart from the hour, only 点 **diǎn** and not 点钟 **diǎn zhōng** can be used to mean ‘o’clock’.

One does not say:

* 三点钟二十(分)	sān diǎn zhōng èr shí (fēn)
* 六点钟一刻	liù diǎn zhōng yī kè
* 两点钟半	liǎng diǎn zhōng bàn

E To indicate a.m. and p.m., time expressions for particular periods of the day are used:

早上	zǎoshang	morning (early)
上午	shàngwǔ	morning (before noon)
下午	xiàwǔ	afternoon
晚上	wǎnshang	evening (night)
半夜	bànyè	midnight

晚上十一点半 **wǎnshang shí yī diǎn bàn**
half past eleven in the evening (11.30 p.m.)

下午三点 **xiàwǔ sān diǎn**
three o’clock in the afternoon (3 p.m.)

早上七点一刻 **zǎoshang qī diǎn yī kè**
a quarter past seven in the morning (7.15 a.m.)

上午十点二十分 **shàngwǔ shí diǎn èr shí fēn**
twenty past ten in the morning (10.20 a.m.)

F With the exception of Sunday, days of the week, starting from Monday, are formed by placing the numbers one to six after 星期 **xīngqī** or 礼拜 **lǐbài** ‘week’ and for Sunday 天 **tiān** ‘heaven’ or 日 **rì** ‘sun’ come after 星期 **xīngqī**/礼拜 **lǐbài**:

星期/礼拜一	xīngqī/lǐbài yī	Monday
星期/礼拜二	xīngqī/lǐbài èr	Tuesday
星期/礼拜三	xīngqī/lǐbài sān	Wednesday
星期/礼拜四	xīngqī/lǐbài sì	Thursday
星期/礼拜五	xīngqī/lǐbài wǔ	Friday
星期/礼拜六	xīngqī/lǐbài liù	Saturday
星期/礼拜日/天	xīngqī/lǐbài rì/tiān	Sunday

G Months are also formed numerically by putting the numbers one to twelve before 月 **yuè** ‘month (or moon)’:

一月	yīyuè	January
五月	wǔyuè	May
八月	bāyuè	August
十二月	shíèryuè	December

Note 1: January is also 正月 **zhēngyuè**.

Note 2: The word 份 **fèn** ‘portion’ is often added to a particular month (except 正月 **zhēngyuè**, an alternative for 一月 **yīyuè**) to mean the whole of that month or a certain period of time within that month: e.g. 你一月份在哪儿? **nǐ yī yuè fèn zài nǎr** ‘Where are you in January?’

H Dates of the month are expressed by 号 **hào** or, in writing, 日 **rì**:

二月三号/日	èryuè sān hào/rì	3rd February
十一月二十九号/日	shíyīyuè èr shí jiǔ hào/rì	29th November

I Years, unlike English, are pronounced in numerical sequence:

一九九六年	yī jiǔ jiǔ liù nián	nineteen ninety-six	1996
一九四五年	yī jiǔ sì wǔ nián	nineteen forty-five	1945
一九一一年	yī jiǔ yī yī nián	nineteen eleven	1911

J Other common time expressions indicating the recent past, present or near future are:

今天	jīntiān	today
明天	míngtiān	tomorrow
后天	hòutiān	the day after tomorrow
大后天	dà hòutiān	in three days time
昨天	zuótiān	yesterday
前天	qiántiān	the day before yesterday
大前天	dà qiántiān	three days ago
这个月	zhè gè yuè	this month
下个月	xià gè yuè	next month
下下个月	xià xià gè yuè	the month after next
上个月	shàng gè yuè	last month
上星期一	shàng xīngqī yī	last Monday
下礼拜五	xià libài wǔ	next Friday
今年	jīnnián	this year

明年	míngnián	next year
后年	hòunián	the year after next
去年	qùnián	last year
前年	qiánnián	the year before last
大前年	dà qiánnián	three years ago
今年春天	jīnnián chūntiān	this spring
去年夏天	qùnián xiàtiān	last summer
明年秋天	míngnián qiūtiān	next autumn
前年冬天	qiánnián dōngtiān	winter the year before last

K Questions about time, apart from the general enquiry 什么时候 **shénme shíhou** or 几时 **jǐ shí** ‘when?’, are linked with the particular time expression and all involve the use of 几 **jǐ** ‘how many’:

几点(钟)?	jǐ diǎn (zhōng)	What time (of the day) is it?
今天星期/	jīntiān xīngqī/	What day is it today?
礼拜几?	lǐbài jǐ	
今天几号?	jīntiān jǐ hào	What is the date today?
现在几月?	xiànzài jǐ yuè	What month is it (now)?

Note: 哪 **nǎ/něi** ‘which?’ can also be used with time words like 天 **tiān** ‘day’, 月 **yuè** ‘month’, 年 **nián** ‘year’. With 月 **yuè** ‘month’, one can also use 哪个 **nǎ/něi gè**, which also occurs with 星期/礼拜 **xīngqī/lǐbài** ‘week’:

你哪天走? **nǐ nǎ tiān zǒu**
Which day are you leaving?

你们哪(个)月回来? **nǐmen nǎ (gè) yuè huí lái**
In which month are you (pl.) coming back?

你哪(个)星期/礼拜回家? **nǐ nǎ (gè) xīngqī/lǐbài huí jiā**
Which week are you going home?

In questions (as above) or statements about time the link verb 是 **shì** ‘to be’ is not normally used:

现在九点半。 **xiànzài jiǔ diǎn bàn**
It’s half past nine (now).

今天八月二十一号/日。 **jīntiān bāyuè èr shí yī hào/rì**
Today is 21st August.

However it is not wrong to say:

现在是六点半。 **xiànzài shì liù diǎn bàn** It's half past six (now).
今天是星期三。 **jīntiān shì xīngqī sān** Today is Wednesday.

Further question-and-answer examples:

你几点起床？ **nǐ jǐ diǎn qǐchuáng**
What time do you (usually) get up?
我早上七点半起床。 **wǒ zǎoshang qī diǎn bàn qǐchuáng**
I (usually) get up at half past seven.

客人们几点(钟)来？ **kèrénmen jǐ diǎn (zhōng) lái**
What time are the guests/visitors arriving?
他们下午三点(钟)来。 **tāmen xiàwǔ sān diǎn (zhōng) lái**
They are coming at three o'clock in the afternoon.

你几时回英国？ **nǐ jǐ shí huí yīngguó**
When are you going back to Britain?
我明年九月回去。 **wǒ míngnián jiǔyuè huí qù**
I'm going back in September next year.

你几号动身到欧洲去？ **nǐ jǐ hào dòngshēn dào ōuzhōu qù**
Which day of the month are you setting out for Europe?
我四号走。 **wǒ sì hào zǒu**
I'm leaving on the fourth.

你星期/礼拜几回来？ **nǐ xīngqī/lǐbài jǐ huí lái**
On which day of the week are you coming back?
我星期/礼拜五回来。 **wǒ xīngqī/lǐbài wǔ huí lái**
I am coming back on Friday.

In dates and complex time expressions larger units always precede smaller ones:

一九九六年三月二十七号下午两点零五分
yī jiǔ jiǔ liù nián sānyuè èr shí qī hào xiàwǔ liǎng diǎn líng wǔ fēn
Five past two on the afternoon of the twenty-seventh of March nineteen ninety-six

L Time expressions can also be formed by using verbs or activity nouns followed by 前 **qián** 'before', 后 **hòu** 'after', or 中 **zhōng** 'during' (see also Unit 14):

出发前	chūfā qián	before setting out
放学后	fàngxué hòu	after school

演出中	yǎnchū zhōng	during the performance
饭后	fàn hòu	after a meal
课后	kè hòu	after class

M As we can see from all the sentence examples above, the time expressions are always placed next to the subject (often after it and sometimes before it as a sentence opener for emphasis) and before the main verb. They in fact have a similar function to the tense indicators of English verbs. (See Unit 14.)

你礼拜天做什么？ **nǐ lǐbài tiān zuò shénme**
What do you do on Sundays?/What are you going to do on Sunday?

你昨天下午做什么？ **nǐ zuótiān xiàwǔ zuò shénme**
What did you do yesterday afternoon?

我们今天晚上去酒吧间。 **wǒmen jīntiān wǎnshang qù jiǔbājiān**
We're going to a pub this evening.

我明年三月去北京。 **wǒ míngnián sānyuè qù běijīng**
I'm going to Beijing next March.

你明天来我家吗？ **nǐ míngtiān lái wǒ jiā ma**
Are you coming to my place tomorrow?

前天你去了哪儿？ **qiántiān nǐ qù le nǎr**
Where were you the day before yesterday?

下班后你去哪儿？ **xià bān hòu nǐ qù nǎr**
Where are you going after work?

Exercise 8.1

Translate the following Chinese phrases into English:

- | | |
|----------|-------------------------|
| 1 三点钟 | sān diǎn zhōng |
| 2 十二点钟 | shí èr diǎn zhōng |
| 3 两点二十分 | liǎng diǎn èr shí fēn |
| 4 七点五十五分 | qī diǎn wǔ shí wǔ fēn |
| 5 差十分八点 | chà shí fēn bā diǎn |
| 6 十一点一刻 | shí yī diǎn yī kè |
| 7 九点半 | jiǔ diǎn bàn |
| 8 十点零一分 | shí diǎn líng yī fēn |
| 9 十二点零五分 | shí èr diǎn líng wǔ fēn |
| 10 六点三刻 | liù diǎn sān kè |

Exercise 8.2

Provide answers to the Chinese questions below using the information in brackets:

现在几点(钟)? **xiànzài jǐ diǎn (zhōng)**

What time is it (now)? (7.15 a.m.)

现在上午七点一刻/十五分。 **xiànzài shàngwǔ qī diǎn yī kè/shí wǔ fēn**
It's 7.15 a.m.

- 1 你几点钟去学校? **nǐ jǐ diǎn zhōng qù xuéxiào**
What time are you going to school? (8.30 a.m.)
- 2 你什么时候去游泳? **nǐ shénme shíhou qù yóuyǒng**
What time are you going swimming? (8.55 a.m.)
- 3 你朋友下午几点下班? **nǐ péngyou xiàwǔ jǐ diǎn xiàbān**
What time does your friend finish work in the afternoon? (5.45 p.m.)
- 4 你们几点吃晚饭? **nǐmen jǐ diǎn chī wǎnfàn**
What time do you have your supper? (about 9.00 p.m.)
- 5 你哪天碰见我叔叔? **nǐ nǐ tiān pèngjiàn wǒ shūshu**
On which day of the month did you bump into my uncle? (the sixth)
- 6 你爸爸几号去中国? **nǐ bàba jǐ hào qù zhōngguó**
Which day of the month is your father going to China? (the eleventh)
- 7 你妹妹几点钟睡觉? **nǐ mèimei jǐ diǎn zhōng shuìjiào**
What time does your younger sister go to bed? (around 12 midnight)
- 8 你下个月几号给他写信? **nǐ xià gè yuè jǐ hào gěi tā xiě xìn**
On which day of next month are you going to write to him? (the 21st)
- 9 你下星期几来这儿开座谈会? **nǐ xià xīngqī jǐ lái zhèr kāi zuòtánhuì**
(开 **kāi** 'to attend (a meeting)') (座谈会 **zuòtánhuì** 'discussion; seminar')
On which day next week are you coming for a seminar? (Thursday)
- 10 你哪年毕业? **nǐ nǐ nián bìyè** (毕业 **bìyè** 'to graduate')
When will you graduate? (1999)
- 11 你几时到欧洲去? **nǐ jǐ shí dào ōuzhōu qù**
When are you going to Europe? (next September)
- 12 你同学明年几月回国? **nǐ tóngxué míngnián jǐ yuè huí guó**
Which month next year are your classmates going back to their home country? (December)

Exercise 8.3

Form questions in Chinese that would elicit the answers specified in bold italics below, making appropriate adjustments, where necessary, to the personal pronouns involved:

我二月五号去我朋友家 **wǒ èryuè wǔ hào qù wǒ péngyou jiā**
I am going to my friend's house on the fifth of February.
你什么时候/几号去你朋友家?
nǐ shénme shíhou/jǐ hào qù nǐ péngyou jiā
When/what date are you going to your friend's house?

- 1 她六点半吃晚饭。 **tā liù diǎn bàn chī wǎnfàn**
She has her dinner at half past six.
- 2 我礼拜五晚上七点来你家。 **wǒ lǐbài wǔ wǎnshàng qī diǎn lái nǐ jiā**
I'll come to your house at 7 o'clock on Friday evening.
- 3 我们八月十号去度假。 **wǒmen bāyuè shí hào qù dùjià**
(度假 **dùjià** 'to go on holiday')
We're going on holiday on the tenth of August.
- 4 我一九九五年第一次见到她。
wǒ yī jiǔ jiǔ wǔ nián dì yī cì jiàn dào tā
I met her for the first time in 1995.
- 5 我妈妈五点半回家。 **wǒ māma wǔ diǎn bàn huí jiā**
Mother comes home at half past five.
- 6 新经理下星期二来这儿上班。
xīn jīnglǐ xià xīngqī èr lái zhèr shàngbān
The new manager will start work here next Tuesday.
- 7 我们下个月去找你。 **wǒmen xià gè yuè qù zhǎo nǐ**
We'll go and see you next month.
- 8 他们明年毕业。 **tāmen míngnián bìyè**
They will graduate next year.
- 9 我姐姐上星期三下午在学开车。
wǒ jiějie shàng xīngqī sān xiàwǔ zài xué kāichē
My elder sister was learning to drive last Wednesday afternoon.
- 10 我去年十一月买这幅画儿。
wǒ qùnián shíyīyuè mǎi zhè fú huà
I bought this painting in November last year.
- 11 座谈会上九点半开始。 **zuòtánhuì shàngwǔ jiǔ diǎn bàn kāishǐ**
The discussion starts at half past nine in the morning.
- 12 我明天早上在家里休息。 **wǒ míngtiān zǎoshang zài jiā li xiūxi**
I am resting at home tomorrow morning.

Exercise 8.4

Translate the following sentences into Chinese:

- 1 What time are you going to school tomorrow? (学校 **xuéxiào** 'school')
- 2 I am coming here to attend the seminar next month. (开座谈会 **kāi zuòtánhuì** 'to attend a seminar')

- 3 When are you going on a trip to Europe? (旅行 **lǚxíng** 'to travel')
- 4 What time are you going to work tomorrow? (上班 **shàngbān** 'to go to work')
- 5 What time in the afternoon are you going to the swimming-pool for a swim? (游泳池 **yóuyǒngchí** 'swimming-pool')
- 6 Which day are you going there to play football? (踢足球 **tī zúqiú** 'to play football')
- 7 Which month are you going to the seaside for a holiday? (海边 **hǎi biān** 'beach; seaside')
- 8 What time are you going to the railway station to buy the ticket? (火车站 **huǒchēzhàn** 'railway station')
- 9 What time in the morning are you going to the market? (买东西 **mǎi dōngxi** 'to do some shopping')
- 10 When are you going to the library to borrow books? (借书 **jiè shū** 'to borrow books')

Pattern and vocabulary drill 8.1

Following the given pattern, formulate questions about what someone may be going to do at a particular time, using the times and activities specified in each of the twelve cases:

- Model: Time: 明天下午 **míngtiān xiàwǔ** tomorrow afternoon
 Activity: 看电影 **kàn diànyǐng** see a film/movie
- Answer: 你明天下午去看电影吗?
nǐ míngtiān xiàwǔ qù kàn diànyǐng ma
 Are you going to the cinema tomorrow afternoon?

Include 去 **qù** if the activity requires the person to go out.

- 1 这个星期天 **zhèi gè xīngqī tiān** this coming Sunday
看球赛 **kàn qiú sài** see a football match
- 2 下(个)礼拜 **xià (gè) lǐbài** next week
见你的导师 **jiàn nǐ (de) dǎoshī** see your supervisor
- 3 明天上午 **míngtiān shàngwǔ** tomorrow morning
看医生 **kàn yīshēng** see a doctor
- 4 下星期二 **xià xīngqī èr** next Tuesday
学太极拳 **xué tàijíquán** learn T'ai Chi
- 5 今天下午 **jīntiān xiàwǔ** this afternoon
喂猫 **wèi māo** feed the cat
- 6 今天晚上 **jīntiān wǎnshang** this evening
上网 **shàng wǎng** go on the internet
- 7 明天放学后 **míngtiān fàngxué hòu** tomorrow after school
钓鱼 **diàoyú** go fishing/angling

- 8 明天下班后 **míngtiān xiàbān hòu** tomorrow after work
学开车 **xué kāichē** take driving lessons
- 9 今晚 **jīn wǎn** this evening
看电视 **kàn diànshì** watch television
- 10 明年毕业后 **míngnián biyè hòu** next year after graduation
旅行 **lǚxíng** go travelling
- 11 下个月 **xià gè yuè** next month
探望你父母 **tàn(wàng) nǐ fùmǔ** see your parents
- 12 今年六月份 **jīnnián liù yuè fèn** this June
度假 **dù jià** go on holiday

Note: 看 **kàn** 'to watch; see; visit' is used in the context of entertainment or visit whereas 见 **jiàn** 'to see' is used for an appointment (except in the case of seeing a doctor).

Pattern and vocabulary drill 8.2

The following sentences are answers you have given to questions about timing. Work out in each case what Chinese question was put to you. The model provides an example.

你早上几点钟起床？ **nǐ zǎoshang jǐ diǎn zhōng qǐchuáng**
我早上八点钟起床。 **wǒ zǎoshang bā diǎn zhōng qǐchuáng**
I get up at eight in the morning.

- 我晚上十一点半(上床)睡觉。
wǒ wǎnshang shí yī diǎn bàn (shàngchuáng) shuìjiào
I go to bed at half past eleven.
- 我早上九点钟上班。 **wǒ zǎoshang jiǔ diǎn zhōng shàngbān**
I go to work at nine o'clock in the morning.
- 我六号动身到中国去。 **wǒ liù hào dòngshēn dào zhōngguó qù**
I am setting out for China on the 6th.
- 我大约五点半下班。 **wǒ dàyuē wǔ diǎn bàn xiàbān**
I finish work around half past five.
- 我下星期四走。 **wǒ xià xīngqī sì zǒu**
I am leaving next Thursday.
- 我明晚来找你。 **wǒ míng wǎn lái zhǎo nǐ**
I'll come to see you tomorrow evening.
- 我后天请你来我家。 **wǒ hòutiān qǐng nǐ lái wǒ jiā**
I'll invite you to my place the day after tomorrow.

- 8 我明天下午在家。 **wǒ míngtiān xiàwǔ zài jiā**
I am home tomorrow afternoon.
- 9 我前年春天住在北京。 **wǒ qiánnián chūntiān zhù zài běijīng**
I lived in Beijing in the spring of the year before last.
- 10 我去年在北京认识他。 **wǒ qùnián zài běijīng rènshi tā**
I got to know him last year in Beijing.

UNIT NINE

More interrogative expressions

In the last unit we discussed interrogative time expressions which include 几点钟 **jǐ diǎn zhōng** ‘what time (of the day)’ and 几时 **jǐ shí** or 什么时候 **shénme shíhou** ‘when’, etc., and in Unit 4 we dealt with a number of interrogative pronouns including the interrogative location expression 哪儿 **nǎr** ‘where’. In this unit we shall look at some more interrogative idioms and expressions.

A 多久 **duō jiǔ** and 多长时间 **duō cháng shíjiān** ‘how long’ are placed immediately after the verb, as are more precise questions such as 多少天(年)/几天(年) **duōshao tiān (nián)/jǐ tiān (nián)** ‘how many days (years)’, 多少个/几个月(星期/礼拜) **duōshao gè/jǐ gè yuè (xīngqī/lǐbài)** ‘how many months (weeks)’, etc.:

你待(呆)了多长时间？ **nǐ dāi le duō cháng shíjiān**
How long did you stay?

他等了多久？ **tā děng le duō jiǔ**
How long did he wait?

你们在那个国家住了多少年？
nǐmen zài nèi gè guójiā zhù le duōshao nián
How many years did you live in that country?

Note: These question phrases, like all time duration expressions, are placed after the verb and are essentially complements. For further discussion of duration expressions, see Unit 14.

When there is an object with the verb, if it is a pronoun it precedes the interrogative expression; if it is a noun it follows the interrogative expression with or without 的 **de**:

你等了他多久？ **nǐ děng le tā duō jiǔ**
How long did you wait for him?

你学了多长时间(的)中文？ **nǐ xué le duō cháng shíjiān (de) zhōngwén**
How long did you learn Chinese for?

你姐姐当了多少年(的)护士？ **nǐ jiějie dāng le duōshao nián (de) hùshi**
How many years was your elder sister a nurse?

Another common way to formulate questions of this type where the verb has an object is to repeat the verb after the object and then place the question expression after this repeated verb (see Unit 14):

你学中文学了多久/多长时间？
nǐ xué zhōngwén xué le duō jiǔ/duō cháng shíjiān
How long did you learn Chinese for?

你姐姐当护士当了多少年？ **nǐ jiějie dāng hùshi dāng le duōshao nián**
How many years was your elder sister a nurse?

A considerable number of common verbs in Chinese are intrinsically of a ‘verb + object’ construction, e.g. 游泳 **yóuyǒng** ‘to swim’, 跳舞 **tiàowǔ** ‘to dance’, 唱歌 **chànggē** ‘to sing’, 睡觉 **shuìjiào** ‘to sleep’, 走路 **zǒulù** ‘to walk’, etc. With these verbs the same rule applies:

你和你朋友跳了几个钟头(的)舞？
nǐ hé nǐ péngyou tiào le jǐ gè zhōngtóu (de) wǔ

or

你和你朋友跳舞跳了几个钟头？
nǐ hé nǐ péngyou tiàowǔ tiào le jǐ gè zhōngtóu
How many hours did you dance with your friend?

One cannot say:

*你和你朋友跳舞了几个钟头？
nǐ hé nǐ péngyou tiàowǔ le jǐ gè zhōngtóu
(*lit.* How many hours did you dance with your friend?)

B 多 duō ‘how’ may in fact be used with many adjectives in questions of degree, for example, of size, weight, etc. The pattern of such enquiries is usually ‘有 **yǒu** + 多 **duō** + adjective’:

中国有多大？ **zhōngguó yǒu duō dà**
How big is China?

你的行李有多重？ **nǐ de xíngli yǒu duō zhòng**
How heavy is your luggage?

9

More
inter-
rogative
expres-
sions

你姐姐有多高？ **nǐ jiějie yǒu duō gāo**

How tall is your elder sister?

这个游泳池有多长？ **zhè gè yóuyǒngchí yǒu duō cháng**

How long is this swimming-pool?

学校离这儿有多远？ **xuéxiào lí zhèr yǒu duō yuǎn**

How far is the school from here?

Note: 离 **lí** in the last example is a coverb which occurs with other verbs or adjectives to mean ‘distance (away) from (a place)’ (see Unit 24).

C 多 **duō** may also be used in conjunction with an adjective as an adverbial or an attributive:

(i) as an adverbial to modify a verb

你多快能完成这件工作？

nǐ duō kuài néng wánchéng zhè jiàn gōngzuò

How fast can you finish this work?

(ii) as an attributive with 的 **de** to modify a noun

你穿多大的鞋？ **nǐ chuān duō dà de xié**

What size (*lit.* how big) shoes do you take?

D 怎样 **zěnyàng**, 怎么 **zěnmě** and 怎么样 **zěnmě yàng** are used adverbially before verbs to mean ‘how; in what way’:

我怎么样去伦敦？ **wǒ zěnmě yàng qù lúndūn**

How do I get to London?

去游泳池怎么走？ **qù yóuyǒngchí zěnmě zǒu**

How do you get to the swimming-pool?

Note: Observe the different meanings of 走 **zǒu**: (i) ‘to walk; to come/go on foot’ in 我走路去。 **wǒ zǒulù qù** ‘I’ll go on foot’; (ii) ‘to leave’ in 他走了。 **tā zǒu le** ‘He’s left’; and (iii) ‘to get to (a place) (often with 怎么 **zěnmě** or 怎样 **zěnyàng**)’ in 去车站怎样走？ **qù chēzhàn zěnyàng zǒu** ‘How do you get to the station?’

E 怎么样 **zěnmě yàng** can be used as a predicate to mean ‘what is (something or somebody) like’/‘how is (somebody or something)’:

那儿的天气怎么样？ **nàr de tiānqì zěnmě yàng**

What’s the weather like there?

你弟弟怎么样？ **nǐ dìdì zěnmē yàng**
How is your younger brother?

工作怎么样？ **gōngzuò zěnmē yàng**
How's work?

F 怎么样 **zěnmē yàng** in addition, can occur after a statement and convert that statement into a question 'what/how about ...' (it is often used when making suggestions about future actions or activities):

晚上我们去看电影，怎么样？
wǎnshàng wǒmen qù kàn diànyǐng | zěnmē yàng
How about going to the cinema this evening?

咱们明天去跳舞，怎么样？
zánmen míngtiān qù tiàowǔ | zěnmē yàng
What about going dancing tomorrow?

G 为什么 **wèi shénme** 'why' is usually placed before the verb:

你为什么学中文？ **nǐ wèi shénme xué zhōngwén**
Why do you study Chinese?

小李昨天为什么不来？ **xiǎo lǐ zuótiān wèi shénme bù lái**
Why didn't Xiao Li come yesterday?

Note: 小 **xiǎo** is often used before the family name or given name (which must be a monosyllable) of a person who is younger than the speaker. It implies a degree of familiarity with the person addressed. In addressing someone older than oneself, 老 **lǎo** is used in a similar way.

H 怎么 **zěnmē** is also used colloquially to mean 'how is it? how come?':

你怎么不去看他？ **nǐ zěnmē bù qù kàn tā**
Why aren't you going to see him?

她怎么会讲日语？ **tā zěnmē huì jiǎng rìyǔ**
How come she can speak Japanese?

Exercise 9.1

Convert the Chinese statements below into questions, focusing on the elements in bold italics. Please also make adjustments to the pronouns as necessary:

9

More
inter-
rogative
expres-
sions

我在这儿住了六年。 **wǒ zài zhèr zhù le liù nián**

I lived here for six years.

你在这儿住了多久/多长时间？

nǐ zài zhèr zhù le duō jiǔ/duō cháng shíjiān

How long did you live here?

- 1 我在路上花了两小时。 **wǒ zài lù shang huā le liǎng xiǎoshí**
It took me two hours to get here.
- 2 我在教室里看了一个多小时的书。
wǒ zài jiàoshì lǐ kàn le yī gè duō xiǎoshí de shū
I read for over an hour in the classroom.
- 3 足球比赛开始半个钟头了。 **zúqiú bǐsài kāishǐ bàn gè zhōngtóu le**
The soccer match started half an hour ago.
- 4 我和姐姐在花园里坐了十来分钟。
wǒ hé jiějie zài huāyuán lǐ zuò le shí lái fēn zhōng
My elder sister and I sat in the garden for over ten minutes.
- 5 妈妈在厨房里忙了几个钟头。
māma zài chúfáng lǐ máng le jǐ gè zhōngtóu
Mother was busy cooking in the kitchen for several hours.
- 6 妹妹帮了我两天的忙。 **mèimei bāng le wǒ liǎng tiān de máng**
My younger sister helped me for two days.
- 7 我开了一年车，骑了两年自行车。
wǒ kāi le yī nián chē | qí le liǎng nián zìxíngchē
I drove for a year and travelled by bike for two years.
- 8 足球场有八十米长。 **zúqiúchǎng yǒu bā shí mǐ cháng**
The football pitch is 80 metres long.
- 9 我哥哥有一米七高。 **wǒ gēge yǒu yī mǐ qī gāo**
My elder brother is 1 metre 70 tall.
- 10 巴黎离伦敦有二百英里远。 **bālí lí lúndūn yǒu èr bǎi yīnglǐ yuǎn**
Paris is two hundred miles from London.

Exercise 9.2

Translate into English the following sentences with 怎么 **zěnmē**, 怎样 **zěnyàng** or 怎么样 **zěnmeyàng**:

- 1 咱们下星期一去他家看他，怎么样？
zánmen xià xīngqī yī qù tā jiā kàn tā | zěnmeyàng
- 2 去汽车站怎样/怎么走？ **qù qìchēzhàn zěnyàng/zěnmē zǒu**
- 3 伦敦的交通怎么样？
lúndūn de jiāotōng zěnmeyàng (交通 **jiāotōng** ‘transport; traffic’)
- 4 去电影院怎么/怎样走？ **qù diànyǐngyuàn zěnmeyàng/zěnyàng zǒu**
- 5 明晚咱们去酒吧间喝啤酒，怎么样？
míng wǎn zánmen qù jiǔbājiān hē píjiǔ | zěnmeyàng

- 6 北京的天气怎么样？
běijīng de tiānqì zěnmeyàng
- 7 那家商店的东西怎么样？
nèi jiā shāngdiàn de dōngxi zěnmeyàng
- 8 咱们下个月去度假，怎么样？
zánmen xià gè yuè qù dùjià | zěnmeyàng

Exercise 9.3

Translate the following questions into Chinese:

- 1 How much did you eat?
- 2 How did you get to London?
- 3 Why did he leave?
- 4 How long are you going to stay?
- 5 How did you make this cake?
- 6 What's your new house like?
- 7 How much money have you got?
- 8 What was the film like?
- 9 How about a drink?
- 10 Why are you learning Chinese?
- 11 How do I get to know Xiao Li?
- 12 What do you think of the Chinese teacher?
- 13 How do you go to work?
- 14 How long have you been waiting for her?
- 15 How many hours did she sleep?
- 16 How many days did you (pl.) drive?
- 17 How long did you wait for the bus?
- 18 How far did you walk?

Exercise 9.4

Complete the Chinese translations of the English sentences below with '多 **duō** + adjective' (as appropriate):

- 1 How far is it to London?
去伦敦有 _____ ? **qù lúndūn yǒu** _____
- 2 How tall is your younger brother?
你弟弟有 _____ ? **nǐ dìdì yǒu** _____
- 3 How many people are there in Beijing?
北京有 _____ 人 ? **běijīng yǒu** _____ **rén**
- 4 How far is the post office from here?
邮局离这儿有 _____ ? **yóujú lí zhèr yǒu** _____

- 5 How heavy is this piece of luggage?
这件行李有 _____ ?
zhè jiàn xíngli yǒu _____
- 6 How heavy is the rain outside?
外面的雨有 _____ ? **wàimian de yǔ yǒu _____**
- 7 How much is that pair of trousers?
(买)那条裤子要 _____ 钱?
(mǎi) nèi tiáo kùzi yào _____ qián
- 8 What size is that pair of shoes?
那双鞋有 _____ ? **nèi shuāng xié yǒu _____**
- 9 How many miles did he run?
他跑了 _____ 英里路? **tā páo le _____ yīnglǐ lù**
- 10 How long has Li Ming been gone?
李明走了 _____ / _____ 了?
lǐ míng zǒu le _____ / _____ le
- 11 Have you been dancing the whole evening?
你们跳了 _____ / _____ (的)舞?
nǐmen tiào le _____ / _____ (de) wǔ
- 12 How much time have we still got?
我们还有 _____ 时间? **wǒmen hái yǒu _____ shíjiān**
- 13 How long have you been here?
你们在这儿待了 _____ / _____ ?
nǐmen zài zhèr dāi le _____ / _____
- 14 How much work have you done?
你们做了 _____ 工作? **nǐmen zuò le _____ gōngzuò**

Pattern and vocabulary drill 9.1

Formulate suggestions with the 15 verb phrases given below by tagging on the final phrase 怎么样 **zěnmě yàng** 'How about ...?' Begin each sentence with 我们 **wǒmen** 'we', and add the time expression given in brackets, and 去 **qù** 'to go' where appropriate.

- 喝(一)杯啤酒 **hē (yī) bēi píjiǔ** 'to have a glass of beer' (this evening)
- 跳舞 **tiàowǔ** 'to go dancing' (tomorrow)
- 度假 **dùjià** 'to go on holiday' (next year)
- 讲中文 **jiǎng zhōngwén** 'to speak Chinese' (now)
- 买(一)些香蕉 **mǎi (yī) xiē xiāngjiāo** 'to buy some bananas' (in the afternoon)
- 茶里加(一)点儿糖 **chá li jiā (yī) diǎnr táng** 'to put some sugar in the tea'
- 游泳 **yóuyǒng** 'to go swimming' (today)

- 8 看(一)场足球(比)赛 **kàn (yī) chǎng zúqiú (bǐ)sài** ‘to go and see a football match’ (on Saturday)
- 9 学太极拳 **xué tàijíquán** ‘to learn T’ai Chi’ (next month)
- 10 完成这件工作 **wánchéng zhèi jiàn gōngzuò** ‘to complete this task’ (at three o’clock)
- 11 找经理 **zhǎo jīnglǐ** ‘to see the manager’ (on Tuesday)
- 12 探望他 **tànwàng tā** ‘to visit him’ (以后 **yǐhòu** ‘afterwards’)
- 13 在家里休息 **zài jiā li xiūxi** ‘to have a rest at home’ (this afternoon)
- 14 打球 **dǎ qiú** ‘to play a game (of basketball, tennis, badminton, ping pong, etc.)’ (next Friday)
- 15 踢球 **tī qiú** ‘to play a game (of soccer)’ (tomorrow afternoon)

Pattern and vocabulary drill 9.2

First, use the phrase 多长时间 **duō cháng shíjiān** to ask the questions below.

How long did you wait for me there?

你在那儿等了我多长时间？ **nǐ zài nàr děng le wǒ duō cháng shíjiān**

- 1 How long did you stay there?
- 2 How long did you live there?
- 3 How long did you wait there?
- 4 How long did you work there?
- 5 How long did you study there?
- 6 How long did you stay in the pub?
- 7 How long have you been resting at home?
- 8 How long have you been driving?
- 9 How long have you been travelling in Europe?
- 10 How long have you known her?

Second, use the phrase 要多长时间 **yào duō cháng shíjiān** ‘how long does it take’ to complete the following questions.

How long does it take to go to London by train?

坐火车去伦敦要多长时间？

zuò huǒchē qù lúndūn yào duō cháng shíjiān

- 1 How long does it take to drive down to London?
- 2 How long does it take to fly to Beijing? (坐飞机 **zuò fēijī** ‘to fly; to go by plane’)
- 3 How long does it take to get to the railway station by taxi? (的士 **dìshì** ‘taxi’)

9

More
inter-
rogative
expres-
sions

- 4 How long does it take to get to the university on foot? (走路 zǒulù 'to go on foot')
- 5 How long does it take to get to the city centre by bus?
- 6 How long does it take to cycle to your place?
- 7 How long does it take to get to the bank on foot?
- 8 How long does it take to get to the coach station by taxi?
- 9 How long does it take to cycle to the football pitch?
- 10 How long does it take to get to the post office on foot?

UNIT TEN

Adjectives: attributive and predicative

Attributives are words placed before nouns to qualify or describe them. Adjectives are obvious examples of attributives.

A When a monosyllabic adjective is used as an attributive, it is placed directly before the noun it qualifies:

红花	hóng huā	red flowers
白云	bái yún	white clouds
长裙子	cháng qúnzi	a long skirt
脏衣服	zāng yīfu	dirty clothes

Disyllabic adjectives, on the other hand, are normally followed by 的 **de**:

干净的街道	gānjìng de jiēdào	a clean street
漂亮的车	piàoliang de chē	a beautiful car
古老的楼房	gǔlǎo de lóufáng	ancient buildings

Where there is a ‘numeral + measure’ phrase or a ‘demonstrative + measure’ phrase, it always precedes the adjectival attributive:

一所新房子	yī suǒ xīn fángzi	a new house
两本旧书	liǎng běn jiù shū	two old books
这家大商店	zhè jiā dà shāngdiàn	this big store
那匹黑马	nèi pǐ hēi mǎ	that black horse
一场精彩的比赛	yī chǎng jīngcǎi de bǐsài	an exciting match
两个有趣的故事	liǎng gè yǒuqù de gùshi	two interesting stories

Note: When a disyllabic adjective qualifies a disyllabic noun, 的 **de** may sometimes be omitted, especially when the combination becomes a set expression:

新鲜蔬菜	xīnxiān shūcài	fresh vegetables
精彩表演	jīngcǎi biǎoyǎn	excellent performance

10

Adjectives:
attributive
and
predicative

B Adjectives themselves are commonly modified by degree adverbs such as 很 **hěn** ‘very’, 太 **tài** ‘too’, 十分 **shífēn** ‘extremely’, 非常 **fēicháng** ‘extremely’ (*lit.* ‘unusually’):

很大	hěn dà	(very) big
太小	tài xiǎo	too small
十分干净	shífēn gānjìng	extremely clean
非常古老	fēicháng gǔlǎo	incredibly ancient

Note: Adjectives modified by degree adverbs also require the particle 的 **de** when used as attributives:

很大的屋子	hěn dà de wūzi	a (very) big room
非常古老的城市	fēicháng gǔlǎo de chéngshì	a really ancient city

An exception to this rule are adjectives that indicate indefinite plurals like 很多 **hěn duō**, 许多 **xǔduō**, and 不少 **bù shǎo** ‘many’ (see Unit 7):

他们有很多钱。 **tāmen yǒu hěn duō qián**

They have a lot of money.

每年有不少人来这儿看风景。

měi nián yǒu bù shǎo rén lái zhèr kàn fēngjǐng

Quite a number of people come here for the scenery every year.

C When the context is clear, the noun following an adjective can be omitted but a demonstrative and/or numeral is usually present. In all these cases, 的 **de** is indispensable, whether the adjective is monosyllabic or disyllabic:

一件新的	yī jiàn xīn de	a new one (e.g. sweater, shirt, etc.)
那朵红的	nèi duǒ hóng de	that red one (e.g. flower, blossom, etc.)
这些白的	zhèxiē bái de	these white ones
哪些大的?	nǎxiē dà de	which big ones?

这双筷子很脏，我要(一)双干净的。

zhèxiē shuāng kuàizi hěn zāng | wǒ yào (yī) shuāng gānjìng de

These chopsticks are dirty. I want a clean pair.

这条裤子太短，我买那条长的。

zhèxiē tiáokùzi tài duǎn | wǒ mǎi nàxiē tiáo cháng de

These trousers are too short. I'll have (buy) that longer pair.

Where the adjective occurs with a demonstrative and measure, the adjective may also come first:

这条裤子太短，我买长的那条。

zhèi tiáo kùzi tài duǎn | wǒ mǎi cháng de nèi tiáo

These trousers are too short. I'll have (buy) that longer pair.

In addition, an adjective with 的 **de** may be used on its own and imply a noun which may be singular or plural depending on the context:

我不要贵的，我要便宜的。wǒ bù yào guì de | wǒ yào piányi de

I don't want an/the expensive one, I want a/the cheaper one.

I don't want (the) expensive ones, I want (the) cheaper ones

D A distinctive feature of Chinese is that when an adjective is used as a predicative, it follows the subject/topic immediately and does not require the link verb 是 **shì** 'to be'. In addition, it should *always* be modified by a degree adverb:

那条街道很干净。nèi tiáo jiēdào hěn gānjìng

The street is (very) clean.

这双鞋子太小。zhèi shuāng xiézi tài xiǎo

This pair of shoes is too small.

这个故事非常有趣。zhèi gè gùshi fēicháng yǒuqù

This story is extremely interesting.

那场比赛十分精彩。nèi chǎng bǐsài shífēn jīngcǎi

That match was extremely exciting.

One does not normally say (unless speaking emphatically to reiterate or contradict a statement):

街道是干净。jiēdào shì gānjìng

(lit. The street is clean.)

[implying, e.g. who says it isn't or I did say that it was clean]

Note: The degree adverb 很 **hěn**, though when stressed it means 'very', otherwise carries little meaning.

An unmodified adjective, when used as a predicative, always implies some form of contrast and sounds incomplete.

街道干净... **jiēdào gānjìng ...**

The street is clean [but it is perhaps too narrow]

这双鞋子小... **zhèi shuāng xiézi xiǎo ...**

This pair of shoes is small [but they are comfortable to wear]

In fact, to imply such contrasts, the more usual and colloquial form is to incorporate 是 **shì** and repeat the adjective with or without 不 **bù** according to the meaning intended:

街道干净是干净，可是... **jiēdào gānjìng shì gānjìng | kěshì ...**

It is true that the street is clean, but ...

这双鞋子小是不小，不过... **zhèi shuāng xiézi xiǎo shì bù xiǎo | bùguò ...**

It is true that this pair of shoes isn't small; nevertheless ...

E An adjectival predicative is negated by 不 **bù** 'not':

这双鞋子不贵。 **zhèi shuāng xiézi bù guì**

This pair of shoes isn't expensive.

那瓶牛奶不新鲜。 **nèi píng niúniǎi bù xīnxiān**

That bottle of milk isn't fresh.

今天的天气不好。 **jīntiān de tiānqì bù hǎo**

Today's weather is bad.

The negator 不 **bù** and a degree adverb may both come before the adjectival predicative. When this happens, the positioning of 不 **bù** in relation to the degree adverb affects the meaning of the adjective:

这所房子不很好。 **zhèi suǒ fángzi bù hěn hǎo**

This house isn't very good/nice.

这所房子很不好。 **zhèi suǒ fángzi hěn bù hǎo**

This house is really bad. (*lit.* This house is very not good.)

这瓶牛奶不太新鲜。 **zhèi píng niúniǎi bù tài xīnxiān**

This bottle of milk isn't very/too fresh.

这瓶牛奶太不新鲜了。 **zhèi píng niúniǎi tài bù xīnxiān le**

This bottle of milk isn't fresh at all.

Note: 了 **le** which comes at the end of the sentence seems indispensable with any predicative that incorporates the degree adverb 太 **tài** 'simply too much of a certain quality or quantity', though this does not apply to 不太 **bù tài** with its understated meaning.

The negator 不 **bù** is regularly linked with 够 **gòu** ‘enough’ to modify an adjectival predicative:

这条裙子不够长。 **zhèi tiáo qúnzi bù gòu cháng**

This skirt isn't long enough.

我这杯咖啡不够甜。 **wǒ zhèi bēi kāfēi bù gòu tián**

This cup of coffee (of mine) isn't sweet enough.

不 **bù** is also used in conjunction with 一点儿也/都 **yīdiǎnr yě/dōu** for emphasis or to contradict a previous statement:

这条裤子一点儿也/都不短。 **zhèi tiáo kùzi yīdiǎnr yě/dōu bù duǎn**

This pair of trousers is not short at all.

这杯茶一点儿也/都不热。 **zhèi bēi chá yīdiǎnr yě/dōu bù rè**

This cup of tea isn't hot at all.

F Most monosyllabic adjectives may be reduplicated to intensify their meaning, particularly in descriptive writing. Reduplicated adjectives take the particle 的 **de** when qualifying nouns:

蓝蓝的天 **lánlán de tiān**

a really blue sky (*lit.* blue blue sky)

高高的楼房 **gāogāo de lóufáng**

really tall buildings (*lit.* tall tall buildings)

一些红红的桔子 **yīxiē hónghóng de júzi**

some bright red tangerines (*lit.* some red red tangerines)

A limited number of disyllabic adjectives may also be reduplicated. The pattern for reduplication is: AB > AABB

干净	gānjìng	clean and tidy	>
干干净净	gāngānjìngjìng	spotlessly clean	
整齐	zhěngqí	orderly/tidy	>
整整齐齐	zhěngzhengqíqí	very orderly/tidy	
老实	lǎoshí	honest/naïve	>
老老实实	lǎolaoshíshí	very honest/very naïve	
一张干干净净的桌子	yī zhāng gāngān jìngjìng de zhuōzi	a spotlessly clean table	
一个整整齐齐的房间	yī gè zhěngzhengqíqí de fángjiān	an extremely tidy room	
一个老老实实的人	yī gè lǎolaoshíshí de rén	a very honest person	

10

Adjectives:
attributive
and
predicative

Reduplicated adjectives, being already emphatic in form, cannot be further modified by a degree adverb or a negator.

One cannot say:

- | | | |
|---------|--------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| * 很红红 | hěn hónghóng | (<i>lit.</i> very red) |
| * 不干干净净 | bù gānganjìngjìng | (<i>lit.</i> not spotlessly clean) |

Exercise 10.1

Translate the following phrases into Chinese, paying attention to the inclusion or omission of 的 **de**:

- 1 a very big swimming-pool
- 2 new buildings
- 3 white cats
- 4 a large bowl
- 5 a beautiful garden
- 6 a little child
- 7 an interesting film
- 8 an exciting match
- 9 fresh vegetables
- 10 a lot of money
- 11 an old car
- 12 extremely heavy luggage
- 13 clean clothes
- 14 a tidy room
- 15 very narrow streets
(狭窄 **xiázhǎi** 'narrow')
- 16 ancient cities
- 17 an extremely good concert
- 18 dirty shoes

Exercise 10.2

Indicate which of the Chinese translations given for the English sentences below is correct:

- 1 The weather is nice today.
今天天气很好。 **jīntiān tiānqì hěn hǎo**
今天天气是好。 **jīntiān tiānqì shì hǎo**

- 2 She is rich.
她很有钱。 tā hěn yǒu qián
她是有钱。 tā shì yǒu qián
- 3 This sofa [armchair] isn't very comfortable.
这个沙发不很舒服。 zhèi gè shāfā bù hěn shūfu
这个沙发很不舒服。 zhèi gè shāfā hěn bù shūfu
- 4 The classroom is really clean.
那个教室非常干干净净。 nèi gè jiàoshì fēicháng gāngānjìngjìng
那个教室是非常干净。 nèi gè jiàoshì shì fēicháng gānjìng
那个教室非常干净。 nèi gè jiàoshì fēicháng gānjìng
- 5 My younger brother isn't very tall.
我弟弟不太高。 wǒ dìdì bù tài gāo
我弟弟太不高。 wǒ dìdì tài bù gāo
我弟弟不高高。 wǒ dìdì bù gāogāo
- 6 This match isn't particularly exciting.
这场比赛不十分精彩。 zhèi chǎng bǐsài bù shífēn jīngcǎi
这场比赛不精精彩彩。 zhèi chǎng bǐsài bù jīngjīngcǎicǎi
这场比赛十分不精彩。 zhèi chǎng bǐsài shífēn bù jīngcǎi
- 7 There were toys of all colours on the floor.
地上都是红红绿绿玩具。 dì shang dōu shì hónghonglǜlǜ wánjù
地上都是红红绿绿的玩具。 dì shang dōu shì hónghonglǜlǜ de wánjù
地上都有红红绿绿的玩具。 dì shang dōu yǒu hónghonglǜlǜ de wánjù
- 8 Mr Wang is a very interesting person.
王先生是一个非常有趣的人。 wáng xiānsheng shì yī gè fēicháng yǒuqù rén
王先生一个非常有趣的人。 wáng xiānsheng yī gè fēicháng yǒuqù de rén
王先生是个非常有趣的人。 wáng xiānsheng shì gè fēicháng yǒuqù de rén

Exercise 10.3

Translate the following into Chinese:

- 1 Beijing is an extremely ancient city.
- 2 That old book is not too expensive.
- 3 The library is extremely big.
- 4 I don't have any new clothes.

10

Adjectives:
attributive
and
predicative

- 5 Those fresh flowers are very beautiful.
- 6 That pair of shoes is too large.
- 7 The weather here is really nice.
- 8 That street is not clean enough.
- 9 I don't like milk which isn't fresh.
- 10 That cup of coffee is too sweet.

Exercise 10.4

Add emphasis to the adjectives in bold italics by means of reduplication:

- 1 路旁坐著一个高大的小伙子。
lù páng zuò zhe yī gè gāodà de xiǎohuǒzi
A tall young man sat by the roadside.
- 2 小王长著弯眉毛，高鼻子，小嘴巴和一双大眼睛，留著一头整齐的短发。
xiǎo wáng zhǎng zhe wān méimao | gāo bízi | xiǎo zuǐba hé yī shuāng dà yǎnjīng | liú zhe yī tóu zhěngqí de duǎn fà
Xiao Wang had curved eyebrows, a straight nose, a small mouth, big eyes and hair cut in a neat bob.
- 3 这是一间干净的房间。白床单，蓝窗帘，红炉火，给你一种舒适的感觉。
zhè shì yī jiān gānjìng de fángjiān | bái chuángdān | lán chuānglián | hóng lúhuǒ | gěi nǐ yī zhǒng shūshì de gǎnjué
This is a neat and tidy room. The white sheets, blue curtains and warm fire make it feel very cosy.
- 4 她那朴素的衣著，大方的举止，甜美的声音给人留下了深刻的印象。
tā nà pǔsù de yīzhuó | dàfāng de jǔzhǐ | tiánměi de shēngyīn gěi rén liú xià le shēnkè de yìnxàng
Her plain clothes, dignified bearing and clear, sweet voice made a deep impression on people.

Exercise 10.5

Translate into Chinese, paying particular attention to the pronominal expressions:

- 1 Whose are those?
- 2 These are mine.
- 3 The white skirt is yours. The red one is mine.

- 4 We don't have any new ones.
- 5 The big ones are expensive. The small ones are not too cheap either.
- 6 These stories are too long. Those two aren't.
- 7 This cup is dirty. I need a clean one.
- 8 These three students are going to Japan. Which two are going to China?
- 9 I like these two books. Which two do you like?
- 10 Which ones are yours?

Pattern and vocabulary drill 10.1

In the model below two sentences are constructed using a noun phrase and two adjectives. In these sentences the second clause contrasts with the first (a positively and b negatively). Use the ten sets of words given below to form pairs of similar sentences.

这辆车 **zhè liàng chē** this car
贵 **guì** expensive 好开 **hǎo kāi** nice to drive

- a 这辆车贵是贵，不过很好开。
zhè liàng chē guì shì guì | bùguò hěn hǎo kāi
It is true that this car is expensive, but it is a very good drive.
- b 这辆车贵是不贵，可是不好开。
zhè liàng chē guì shì bù guì | kěshì bù hǎo kāi
It is true that this car isn't expensive, but it isn't a very good drive.

Remember that once the implication is there, you need the conjunction 可是 **kěshì** 'but' or 不过 **bùguò** 'nevertheless' to signal the transition, and a degree adverb like 很 **hěn** 'very' or a negator in the second clause to emphasize the contrast.

- 1 这瓶酒 **zhè píng jiǔ** this bottle of wine
贵 **guì** expensive 好喝 **hǎo hē** good to drink
- 2 那个苹果 **nèi gè píngguǒ** that apple
小 **xiǎo** small 好吃 **hǎo chī** delicious
- 3 那把椅子 **nèi bǎ yǐzi** that chair
矮 **ǎi** low 好坐 **hǎo zuò** comfortable to sit on
- 4 这首歌 **zhè shǒu gē** this song
难唱 **nán chàng** difficult to sing 好听 **hǎo tīng** pleasant to listen to
- 5 那个花瓶 **nèi gè huāpíng** that vase
便宜 **piányi** cheap 好看 **hǎo kàn** pretty

10

Adjectives:
attributive
and
predicative

- 6 那支笔 **nèi zhī bǐ** that pen
旧 **jiù** old 好写 **hǎo xiě** good to write with
- 7 这杯牛奶 **zhè bēi niú nǎi** this bottle of milk
冷 **lěng** cold 新鲜 **xīnxiān** fresh
- 8 这条街道 **zhè tiáo jiē(dào)** that street
干净 **gānjìng** clean 整齐 **zhěngqí** orderly
- 9 那个人 **nèi gè rén** that person
聪明 **cōngmíng** intelligent 老实 **lǎoshi** honest
- 10 那座楼房 **nèi zuò lóufáng** that building
古老 **gǔlǎo** ancient 漂亮 **piàoliang** pretty

Pattern and vocabulary drill 10.2

Use the formula 一点儿也/都不 **yīdiǎnr yě/dōu bù** ‘not . . . at all’ to contradict both statements made in each of the ten groupings in Drill 10.1 above:

这辆车一点儿也/都不贵。 **zhè liàng chē yīdiǎnr yě/dōu bù guì**

This car isn't expensive at all.

这辆车一点儿也/都不好开。 **zhè liàng chē yīdiǎnr yě/dōu bù hǎo kāi**

This car isn't a good drive at all.

UNIT ELEVEN

是 shì and 有 yǒu

A The verb 是 shì ‘to be’ in Chinese is not exactly equivalent to the English verb ‘to be’. It is similar to its English counterpart in that it may generally be followed by a noun which defines the subject/topic:

我们是学生。	wǒmen shì xuésheng	We are students.
他是老师。	tā shì lǎoshī	He is a teacher.
今天是星期日。	jīntiān shì xīngqī rì	Today is Sunday.

The noun which follows 是 shì may, of course, be modified in many ways. It may, for instance, be preceded by a possessive adjective or pronoun, another noun usually, with or without 的 de, a ‘numeral/demonstrative + measure word’ phrase or an adjective qualifier:

他是我丈夫。 **tā shì wǒ zhàngfu**
He is my husband.

那是他的大衣。 **nà shì tā de dàyī**
That is his coat.

这位是张先生的朋友。
zhè wèi shì zhāng xiānsheng de péngyou
This is Mr Zhang’s friend.

这些是中国画。 **zhèxiē shì zhōngguó huà**
These are Chinese paintings.

那是一个馒头。 **nà shì yī gè mántou**
That is a steamed bun.

这是一本很有意思的书。 **zhè shì yī běn hěn yǒu yìsi de shū**
This is a very interesting book.

If the noun that follows 是 shì is qualified by an attributive and repeats the topic or if it is understood from the context, it may be omitted:

这支笔是我的。 **zhèi zhī bǐ shì wǒ de** (pronoun attributive)
This pen is mine.

那匹马是张先生的。 **nèi pǐ mǎ shì zhāng xiānsheng de**
(noun attributive)
That horse is Mr Zhang's.

这一个 是好的。 **zhèi yī gè shì hǎo de** (adjective attributive)
This is a good one.

B However, 是 shì is not normally followed by an adjective on its own unless one is speaking emphatically to reiterate a case, contradict a previous speaker, etc. (see Unit 10):

这本书是贵。 **zhèi běn shū shì guì**
This book *is* expensive. (I admit, but another may be more expensive, etc.)

她是非常聪明。 **tā shì fēicháng cōngmíng**
She *is* extremely intelligent. (The problem is that she isn't really conscientious.)

Normal unemphasized sentences have an adjectival predicative without 是 shì (see previous unit):

这本书很贵。 **zhèi běn shū hěn guì**
This book is (very) expensive.

她非常聪明。 **tā fēicháng cōngmíng**
She's extremely intelligent.

Note: There is however a group of adjectives which can be called 'non-gradable' in that they are not purely descriptive but define an 'either-or' quality or situation (e.g. 活 huó 'alive', i.e. 'not dead'; 黑 hēi 'black', i.e. not of any other colour, etc.). These adjectives, when used predicatively, require 是 shì to link them to the topic and they are followed by the particle 的 de:

这条鱼是活的。 **zhèi tiáo yú shì huó de** This fish is alive.
这辆车是黑的。 **zhèi liàng chē shì hēi de** This car is black.

C 是 shì is negated by 不 bù:

今天不是星期天。 **jīntiān bù shì xīngqī tiān**
Today is not Sunday.

明年不是猪年。 **míngnián bù shì zhū nián**

Next year is not the year of the pig.

这是绿茶，不是红茶。 **zhè shì lǜchá | bù shì hóngchá**

This is green tea, not black tea. (*lit.* this is green tea, not red tea)

那张桌子是方的，不是圆的。

nèi zhāng zhuōzi shì fāng de | bù shì yuán de

That table is square, not round.

这些都不是我的，是李太太的。

zhèi xiē dōu bù shì wǒ de | shì lǐ tàitai de

None of these are mine, they're Mrs Li's.

Note 1: Notice that if the adverb 都 **dōu** 'both; all' is also present, the positioning of the negator 不 **bù** with reference to 都 **dōu** may affect the meaning of the sentence:

这些不都是我的。	zhèi xiē bù dōu shì wǒ de	Not all of these are mine.
这些都不是我的。	zhèi xiē dōu bù shì wǒ de	None of these are mine.

Note 2: The twelve animals of the Chinese zodiac, which are often used to identify the year of one's birth, come in the following order: (老)鼠 (**lǎo**)shǔ 'rat', 牛 **niú** 'ox', (老)虎 (**lǎo**)hǔ 'tiger', 兔(子) **tù(zì)** 'rabbit', 龙 **lóng** 'dragon', 蛇 **shé** 'snake', 马 **mǎ** 'horse', 羊 **yáng** 'goat', 猴(子) **hóu(zì)** 'monkey', 鸡 **jī** 'rooster', 狗 **gǒu** 'dog', 猪 **zhū** 'pig'.

D 是 **shì** is also used as an intensifier to highlight the initiator, recipient, time, place, means, purpose, etc. of the action expressed in the verb. It is placed immediately before the word or phrase to be highlighted, which may mean that it can sometimes be placed at the very beginning of the sentence if the subject is to be emphasized:

你是早上洗澡吗？ **nǐ shì zǎoshang xǐzǎo ma**

Do you take a bath *in the morning*?

是谁在敲门？ **shì shéi zài qiāo mén**

Who is it knocking at the door?

她明天是坐船去。 **tā míngtiān shì zuò chuán qù**

She is going *by boat* tomorrow.

我们是来找经理。 **wǒmen shì lái zhǎo jīnglǐ**

We are coming to see *the manager*.

Note 1: As we can see in the last two examples, 是 shì is placed immediately before the verb when the object is emphasized.

One cannot say:

*我们来找是经理。*wǒmen lái zhǎo shì jīnglǐ

Note 2: It is not unusual for speakers to include 的 de at the end of the statement where 来 lái is used to indicate immediate purpose (see the last example above):

我们是来找经理的。wǒmen shì lái zhǎo jīnglǐ de

We have come to see *the manager*.

我们是来这儿旅行的。wǒmen shì lái zhèr lǚxíng de

We are tourists here. (*lit.* We have come here to travel.)

If the action to be emphasized took place in the past, 是 shì is always used with 的 de:

他是昨天走的吗？ tā shì zuótiān zǒu de ma Did he leave *yesterday*?

我们不是走路来的。 wǒmen bù shì zǒulù lái de We did not come *on foot*.

Under such circumstances, to highlight the object, 是 shì is placed before the verb while 的 de is inserted between the verb and the object:

我小时候是学的中文。 wǒ xiǎo shíhou shì xué de zhōngwén
I studied *Chinese* when I was little.

我们刚才是叫的炒面。 wǒmen gāngcái shì jiào de chǎomiàn
What we ordered just now was *fried noodles*.

It is however not unusual to find native speakers express this similar notion by using an alternative structure, where the topic assumes the form of an attributive marked by 的 de with the qualified noun understood and the comment uses 是 shì to introduce the element to be highlighted:

我小时候学的是中文。 wǒ xiǎo shíhou xué de shì zhōngwén
It was *Chinese* that I studied when I was little.

我们刚才叫的是炒面。 wǒmen gāngcái jiào de shì chǎomiàn
It was *fried noodles* that we ordered just now.

E 有 yǒu indicates *either* possession ‘to have’:

她有一个电脑。 tā yǒu yī gè diànnǎo She’s got a computer.
他只有两个儿子。 tā zhǐ yǒu liǎng gè érzi He only has two sons.

or existence ‘there is/are’. A regular pattern is ‘location phrase + 有 yǒu + noun’, which normally translates into English as ‘There is/are (something/some things) (somewhere)’ (see Unit 2):

抽屉里有信纸。 chōuti li yǒu xìnzhǐ
There is some writing paper in the drawer.

操场上有很多运动员。 cāochǎng shang yǒu hěn duō yùndòngyuán
There are a lot of athletes on the sportsfield.

树下有一只兔子。 shù xià yǒu yī zhī tùzi
There is a hare under the tree.

湖上有一群鸭子。 hú shang yǒu yī qún yāzi
There is a flock of ducks on the lake.

Note: The noun following 有 yǒu is always of indefinite reference (see Unit 2).

F 有 yǒu is negated by 没 méi:

我没有电脑。 wǒ méi yǒu diànnǎo
I haven’t got a computer.

屋子里没有人。 wūzi li méi yǒu rén
There isn’t anybody in the room.

抽屉里只有信纸，没有信封。
chōuti li zhǐ yǒu xìnzhǐ | méi yǒu xìnfēng
There is only writing paper in the drawer, and no envelopes.

Note: When 有 yǒu is negated, the noun object is not usually modified by a ‘numeral + measure word’ phrase unless the number is the central issue:

柜子里只有一件毛衣，没有两件毛衣。
guizi li zhǐ yǒu yī jiàn máoyī | méi yǒu liǎng jiàn máoyī
There is only one sweater in the wardrobe, not two.

G 是 shì may also be used to indicate existence like 有 yǒu, but it differs from 有 yǒu in two ways.

- (i) 是 shì (but not 有 yǒu) may be preceded by 全 quán or 都 dōu 'all; entirely' to suggest that the location is occupied solely by one kind of being or thing:

地上全是水。 **dì shang quán shì shuǐ**
The ground was covered with water.

街上都是人。 **jiē shang dōu shì rén**
The street was full of people.

- (ii) while 有 yǒu focuses mainly on what exists, 是 shì tends to emphasize the location as well:

电影院对面有几家商店。
diànyǐngyuàn duìmiàn yǒu jǐ jiā shāngdiàn
There are a few shops (amongst other things) opposite the cinema.

房子后面是个菜园。 **fángzi hòumian shì gè càiyuán**
Behind the house is a vegetable garden.

Exercise 11.1

Translate the following sentences into Chinese, bearing in mind that 是 shì may, or may not, have to be present:

- 1 She is my neighbour.
- 2 My younger sister is beautiful.
- 3 Yesterday was Tuesday.
- 4 My car is red.
- 5 This fish is alive.
- 6 Our room is clean.
- 7 That story is very interesting.
- 8 These vegetables are fresh.
- 9 This skirt isn't too dirty.
- 10 The concert was wonderful.
- 11 All these clothes are old.
- 12 Whose is that pair of glasses?

Exercise 11.2

Rewrite the Chinese sentences below in the negative to match the English:

- 1 小王有一条狗。 **xiǎo wáng yǒu yī tiáo gǒu**
Xiao Wang hasn't got a dog.

- 2 花园里有很多花儿。 **huāyuán li yǒu hěn duō huār**
There aren't many flowers in the garden.
- 3 他们都是英国人。 **tāmen dōu shì yīngguó rén**
None of them is English.
- 4 这幢房子是他的。 **zhè zhuàng fángzi shì tā de**
This house isn't his.
- 5 那杯咖啡是我朋友的。 **nèi bēi kāfēi shì wǒ péngyou de**
That cup of coffee isn't my friend's.
- 6 楼下有人。 **lóuxià yǒu rén**
There's no one downstairs.
- 7 她是经理。 **tā shì jīnglǐ**
She isn't the manager.
- 8 他有两件行李。 **tā yǒu liǎng jiàn xíngli**
He doesn't have two pieces of luggage.
- 9 我的同学都是中国人。 **wǒ de tóngxué dōu shì zhōngguó rén**
Not all my classmates are Chinese.
- 10 图书馆后面是电影院。 **túshūguǎn hòumian shì diànyǐngyuàn**
It isn't the cinema behind the library.

Exercise 11.3

Indicate which of the two Chinese translations for the English sentences below is correct in each case:

- 1 There is some writing paper in the drawer.
抽屉是信纸。 **chōuti li shì xìnzhǐ**
抽屉有信纸。 **chōuti li yǒu xìnzhǐ**
- 2 The picture is beautiful.
那幅画儿很美。 **nèi fú huàr hěn měi**
那幅画儿是美的。 **nèi fú huàr shì měi de**
- 3 This snake is alive. (蛇 **shé** 'snake')
这条蛇是活。 **zhèi tiáo shé shì huó**
这条蛇是活的。 **zhèi tiáo shé shì huó de**
- 4 I haven't got a pair of gloves.
我没有手套。 **wǒ méi yǒu shǒutào**
我没有一双手套。 **wǒ méi yǒu yī shuāng shǒutào**
- 5 He isn't a manager.
他没是经理。 **tā méi shì jīnglǐ**
他不是经理。 **tā bù shì jīnglǐ**
- 6 There aren't any rabbits under the tree.
树下不有兔子。 **shù xià bù yǒu tùzi**
树下没有兔子。 **shù xià méi yǒu tùzi**
- 7 Those trousers aren't mine.
那条裤子不是我的。 **nèi tiáo kùzi bù shì wǒ de**
那条裤子没是我的。 **nèi tiáo kùzi méi shì wǒ de**

- 8 The bookshelf was filled with books.
书架上都是书。shūjià shang dōu shì shū
书架上都有书。shūjià shang dōu yǒu shū

Exercise 11.4

Translate the following sentences into Chinese:

- 1 There are two red jumpers in the wardrobe.
- 2 There is a large cooker in the kitchen. (炉子 **lúzi** 'cooker')
- 3 There are many books on the bookshelf.
- 4 There are many students in the classroom.
- 5 The swimming-pool is full of people.
- 6 There isn't a single chair in the room.
- 7 There is nothing in the drawer.
- 8 There are no flowers in the garden.
- 9 There isn't a telephone in the office.
- 10 There is a flock of sheep at the foot of the hill.
- 11 Opposite the restaurant is the cinema.
- 12 There is quite a lot of cooked rice in the pot.
- 13 There is only a little milk in the bottle.
- 14 There are toys all over the floor. (地板 **dìbǎn** 'floor')
- 15 There is nobody in the house.

Exercise 11.5

Translate the sentences below into Chinese:

- 1 This is a bus ticket, not a cinema ticket.
- 2 That is a pair of mandarin ducks, not ordinary ducks.
(普通 **pǔtōng** 'ordinary')
- 3 Those are potatoes, not sweet potatoes. (番薯 **fānshǔ** 'sweet potato')
- 4 These are bees, not flies. (蜜蜂 **mìfēng** 'bee')
- 5 This is petrol, not vegetable oil. (菜油 **càiyóu** 'vegetable oil')
- 6 That is Mr Zhang, the manager, not Mr Li, the engineer.
- 7 There is only a bicycle outside, not a car.
- 8 There are pearls but no earrings in the box. (盒子 **hézi** 'box')
- 9 There is only a map on the wall, not a picture.
- 10 I have a packet of cigarettes, but not a box of matches. (包 **bāo** 'packet')
- 11 There is a cooker but no fridge in the kitchen.

- 12 I have only got a knife, but not a pair of scissors.
13 None of these is hers.
14 Not all of those are good.
15 Those are all bad/no good.

Pattern and vocabulary drill 11.1

Translate the following into Chinese, using 是 **shì** or 是... 的 **shì**... **de** to highlight the italicized parts of the sentences:

Are you going to China *this summer*? Are you coming back to the UK *next year*?

你是今年夏天去中国吗? **nǐ shì jīnnián xiàtiān qù zhōngguó ma**
你是明年回(来)英国吗? **nǐ shì míngnián huí (lái) yīngguó ma**

- 1 I am going to China *in the autumn of next year*.
2 I am coming back to the UK *the year after the next*.
3 I am not going *by boat*.
4 I am going *by plane*.
5 *When* are you going to China?
6 *Where* are you going next year?
7 Are *you* going to China tomorrow?
8 It is *my friend*, not *me*.
9 Did your friend leave *yesterday*?
10 No, he left *the day before yesterday*.
11 He went/left *by plane*.
12 He will come back to the UK *on Saturday*.
13 *Who* was it made by?
14 Did *she* make it?
15 *She* didn't make it. *He* did.

Pattern and vocabulary drill 11.2

Translate the sentences below into Chinese. Notice that the noun in the first clause is replaced or represented by an attributive phrase or a demonstrative and measure in the second. Remember however that in Chinese human nouns or nouns that represent institutions are not usually omitted.

The fried noodles you ordered are delicious, but the ones I ordered aren't.

你叫的炒面很好吃，我叫的不好吃。

nǐ jiào de chǎomiàn hěn hǎochī | wǒ jiào de bù hǎochī

11

是 shì
and 有
yǒu

- 1 The bottle of milk you bought is fresh, (but) the one I bought isn't.
- 2 This table is square (but) that one's round.
- 3 Her book is interesting, (but) mine is boring.
- 4 Father's car is blue, (but) mother's is red.
- 5 This shirt is mine, (but) whose is that one?
- 6 Those trousers are long enough, (but) these aren't.
- 7 His friends are all very rich (有钱 yǒuqián), (but) mine aren't.
- 8 Your room is clean, (but) his isn't clean enough.
- 9 Mr Zhang's horse is black, (but) Mrs Li's is white.
- 10 These apples are expensive, (but) those are cheap.

UNIT TWELVE

Comparisons

A The standard way to express a comparison in Chinese is to use the word 比 **bǐ** ‘to compare with’ in conjunction with an adjectival predicate. ‘X is better/larger, etc. than Y’ in English, for example, becomes ‘X + 比 **bǐ** + Y + good/large, etc.’ in Chinese:

这个比那个好。 **zhèi gè bǐ nài gè hǎo**

This one is better than that one.

这个学校比那个学校大。

zhèi gè xuéxiào bǐ nài gè xuéxiào dà

This school is larger than that school.

这个箱子比那个箱子重。

zhèi gè xiāngzi bǐ nài gè xiāngzi zhòng

This box is heavier than that box.

As an adjective on its own in the predicative position implies a contrast in Chinese (see Unit 10), it therefore follows that 比 **bǐ** comparisons require an adjective used by itself that does not have an adverbial modifier like 很 **hěn** ‘very’, 十分 **shífēn** ‘extremely’, 非常 **fēicháng** ‘exceptionally’, etc.

One cannot say, for example,

*这个比那个很好。 **zhèi gè bǐ nài gè hěn hǎo**

This one is better than that one.

However, the adjective may be modified by degree adverbs like 更 **gèng** and 还(要) **hái (yào)** ‘even (more)’ or followed by degree complements like 一点儿 **yídiǎnr** ‘slightly’, 一些 **yìxiē** ‘a little’ and 得多 **de duō** or 多了 **duō le** ‘much’:

(i) with degree adverbs:

这个比那个更好。 **zhèi gè bǐ nài gè gèng hǎo**

This one is even better than that one.

这个学校比那个(学校)更大。

zhèi gè xuéxiào bǐ nèi gè (xuéxiào) gèng dà
This school is even larger than that school.

这个箱子比那个(箱子)还(要)重。

zhèi gè xiāngzi bǐ nèi gè (xiāngzi) hái (yào) zhòng
This box is even heavier than that box.

两件大衣都很长，红大衣比蓝大衣更长。

liǎng jiàn dàyī dōu hěn cháng | hóng dàyī bǐ lán dàyī gèng cháng
Both coats are very long, but the red one is even longer than the blue one.

这种帽子很贵，那种帽子(比这种帽子)还(要)贵。

zhèi zhǒng màozi hěn guì | nèi zhǒng màozi (bǐ zhèi zhǒng màozi) hái (yào) guì

A hat like this is very expensive, but one like that is even more expensive (than this one).

(ii) with degree complements:

这个比那个好多了。 **zhèi gè bǐ nèi gè hǎo duō le**

This one's much better than that one.

这幢房子比那幢(房子)大一点儿。

zhèi zhuàng fángzi bǐ nèi zhuàng (fángzi) dà yīdiǎnr
This house is slightly larger than that house.

这件行李比那件(行李)重得多。

zhèi jiàn xíngli bǐ nà jiàn (xíngli) zhòng de duō
This case is much heavier than that one. (*lit.* This piece of luggage is much heavier than that piece.)

上海比北京暖一些。 **shànghǎi bǐ běijīng nuǎn yīxiē**

Shanghai is a bit warmer than Beijing.

Sometimes a degree complement registers an actual amount or extent:

我比爸爸矮一寸。 **wǒ bǐ bàba ǎi yī cùn**

I'm an inch shorter than my father.

哥哥比弟弟重两公斤。 **gēge bǐ dìdì zhòng liǎng gōngjīn**

(The) elder brother is two kilos heavier than the younger brother.

B Negative comparison is expressed by either placing the negator **不 bù** 'not' directly before **比 bǐ** or using the pattern: 'X + 没(有) **méi(yǒu)**

+ Y + 那么 **nàme**/这么 **zhème** ‘so’ + adjective’. The difference between the two is that the former emphasizes the fact that A is no better (etc.) than B, whereas the latter, the fact that A is worse (etc.) than B:

这个不比那个好。 **zhèi gè bù bǐ nèi gè hǎo**
This one isn’t better than that one.

这个学校不比那个学校大。
zhèi gè xuéxiào bù bǐ nèi gè xuéxiào dà
This school isn’t larger than that school.

这个箱子不比那个箱子重。
zhèi gè xiāngzi bù bǐ nèi gè xiāngzi zhòng
This box isn’t heavier than that box.

or

我没(有)你那么/这么聪明。 **wǒ méi(yǒu) nǐ nàme/zhème cōngmíng**
I’m not as intelligent as you.

这个没(有)那个那么/这么好。
zhèi gè méi(yǒu) nèi gè nàme/zhème hǎo
This (one) is not as good as that (one).

我姐姐没(有)我这么高。 **wǒ jiějie méi(yǒu) wǒ zhème gāo**
My elder sister isn’t as tall as I am.

老鼠没(有)松鼠那么大。 **lǎoshǔ méi(yǒu) sōngshǔ nàme dà**
Mice aren’t as big as squirrels.

The latter pattern can occur in the positive with 有 **yǒu**, usually when a question is being asked:

你姐姐有你这么高吗？ **nǐ jiějie yǒu nǐ zhème gāo ma**
Is your elder sister as tall as you are?

老鼠有松鼠那么大吗？ **lǎoshǔ yǒu sōngshǔ nàme dà ma**
Are mice as big as squirrels?

C Similarity is conveyed by 一样 **yīyàng** ‘the same’ (*lit.* ‘one type’), in conjunction with the word 跟 **gēn** (or 和 **hé**, 同 **tóng**, 与 **yǔ**) ‘with; and’. 一样 **yīyàng** itself functions as an adjectival predicative:

那两个一样。	nà liǎng gè yīyàng	Those two are the same.
我跟你一样。	wǒ gēn nǐ yīyàng	I’m the same as you.
这个跟那个一样。	zhèi gè gēn nèi gè yīyàng	This (one) is the same as that (one).

一样 **yīyàng** is also followed by an adjective to express more specific similarity, in the pattern: 'X + 跟 **gēn** (和 **hé**, 同 **tóng**, 与 **yǔ**) + Y + 一样 **yīyàng** + adjective':

我跟你一样大。 **wǒ gēn nǐ yīyàng dà**
I'm as old as you.

这个跟那个一样好。 **zhè gè gēn nèi gè yīyàng hǎo**
This (one) is as good as that (one).

小吴跟小红一样重。 **xiǎo wú gēn xiǎo hóng yīyàng zhòng**
Xiao Wu and Xiao Hong are the same weight./Xiao Wu weighs as much as Xiao Hong.

妈妈和爸爸一样高。 **māma hé bàba yīyàng gāo**
Mother and Father are the same height./Mother is as tall as Father.

Note: In expressing dissimilarity, 不 **bù** comes before 一样 **yīyàng**, e.g. 小吴跟小红不一样大。 **xiǎo wú gēn xiǎo hóng bù yīyàng dà** therefore means 'Xiao Wu and Xiao Hong are not the same age.' It *does not* mean 'Xiao Wu is not as young (or old) as Xiao Hong' (see section B above).

D So far, the comparisons discussed have related to an entity's attributes (expressed as adjectival predicates). If the comparison involves an action, 得 **de** is placed immediately after the verb that expresses the action whilst the comparative formats discussed above, positive or negative, similarity or otherwise, come either before or after the 'verb + 得 **de**' phrase:

我比你做得好。 **wǒ bǐ nǐ zuò de hǎo**
我做得比你好。 **wǒ zuò de bǐ nǐ hǎo**
I did it better than you.

我跟你做得一样好。 **wǒ gēn nǐ zuò de yīyàng hǎo**
我做得跟你一样好。 **wǒ zuò de gēn nǐ yīyàng hǎo**
I did it as well as you.

我不比你做得好。 **wǒ bù bǐ nǐ zuò de hǎo**
我做得不比你好。 **wǒ zuò de bù bǐ nǐ hǎo**
I did not do it better than you.

我没有你做得好。 **wǒ méiyǒu nǐ zuò de hǎo**
我做得没有你好。 **wǒ zuò de méiyǒu nǐ hǎo**
I did it worse than you.

我不跟你做得一样好。 **wǒ bù gēn nǐ zuò de yīyàng hǎo**
 我做得不跟你一样好。 **wǒ zuò de bù gēn nǐ yīyàng hǎo**
 I did not do it as well as you.

Here are some more examples:

一号运动员跑得比二号(运动员)快。
yī hào yùndòngyuán pǎo de bǐ èr hào (yùndòngyuán) kuài
 Athlete No. 1 ran faster than athlete No. 2.

一号运动员跑得跟二号(运动员)一样快。
yī hào yùndòngyuán pǎo de gēn èr hào (yùndòngyuán) yīyàng kuài
 Athlete No. 1 ran as fast as athlete No. 2.

他吃得比我多。 **tā chī de bǐ wǒ duō**
 He ate more than I did./He eats more than I do.

他吃得跟我一样多。 **tā chī de gēn wǒ yīyàng duō**
 He ate as much as I did./He eats as much as I do.

If the action verb has an object, the verb is repeated with 得 **de** after the verb-object expression in either of the above patterns:

她跳舞跳得比我好。 **tā tiàowǔ tiào de bǐ wǒ hǎo**
 她跳舞比我跳得好。 **tā tiàowǔ bǐ wǒ tiào de hǎo**
 She dances better than I do./She is a better dancer than I am.

他爬山爬得跟我一样快。 **tā páshān pá de gēn wǒ yīyàng kuài**
 他爬山跟我爬得一样快。 **tā páshān gēn wǒ pá de yīyàng kuài**
 He climbs a hill as fast as I do.

E The superlative degree is expressed simply by placing the adverb 最 **zuì** before the adjective:

这三种花儿，白花最香。 **zhè sān zhǒng huār | bái huā zuì xiāng**
 Of these three flowers, the white one smells the nicest.
 (*lit.* is the most fragrant)

班上二十几个学生，小张最勤奋。
bān shàng èr shí jǐ gè xuésheng | xiǎo zhāng zuì qínfèn
 Out of the twenty or so pupils in the class, Xiao Zhang is the most diligent.

我有四个孩子。第二个孩子考得最好。
wǒ yǒu sì gè hái zi | dì èr gè hái zi kǎo de zuì hǎo
 I have four children. The second child did best in the examination.

F Increasing or intensifying comparison in the pattern ‘more . . . and more . . .’ follows the pattern: ‘越来越 **yuè lái yuè** + adjective’:

白天/黑夜越来越长 **báitiān/hēiyè yuè lái yuè cháng**
The days/nights are growing longer and longer.

天气越来越热/冷。 **tiānqì yuè lái yuè rè/lěng**
The weather is getting hotter and hotter/colder and colder.

我们的生活越来越好。 **wǒmen de shēnghuó yuè lái yuè hǎo**
Our life is getting better and better.

The ‘越 **yuè** . . . 越 **yuè** . . .’ pattern is in fact used in a number of ways:

(i) ‘越 **yuè** + adjective + 越 **yuè** + adjective’:

越多越好。 **yuè duō yuè hǎo**
The more the better (merrier).

姜越老越辣。 **jiāng yuè lǎo yuè là**
The older ginger gets the hotter it is (i.e. old ginger gets hotter).

(ii) ‘越 **yuè** + verb + 越 **yuè** + adjective’:

她越跳越高。 **tā yuè tiào yuè gāo**
She jumped higher and higher.

他越跑越快。 **tā yuè pǎo yuè kuài**
He ran faster and faster.

(iii) ‘越 **yuè** + verb + 越 **yuè** + verb’:

他越赌越输，越输越赌。 **tā yuè dǔ yuè shū | yuè shū yuè dǔ**
The more he gambled the more money he lost, and the more money he lost the more he gambled.

她越说越气。 **tā yuè shuō yuè qì**
The more she spoke, the angrier she became.

(iv) where meaning allows, each ‘越 **yuè** + verb’ construction may have its own subject:

她越说我越气。 **tā yuè shuō wǒ yuè qì**
The more she spoke, the angrier I became.

咖啡越甜我越喜欢。 **kāfēi yuè tián wǒ yuè xǐhuan**
The sweeter the coffee, the better I like it.

G Finally, it is not uncommon to make comparisons using adverbs such as 早/先 **zǎo/xiān** ‘early’ or 晚/迟 **wǎn/chí** ‘late’ and the usual construction is:

他比我先/迟到。 **tā bǐ wǒ xiān/chí dào**
He arrived earlier/later than I did.

他比我早/晚起床。 **tā bǐ wǒ zǎo/wǎn qǐchuáng**
He gets up earlier/later than I do.

If a degree complement is used, it usually comes after the verb if the verb is monosyllabic:

他比我早来半(个)小时。 **tā bǐ wǒ zǎo lái bàn (gè) xiǎoshí**
He came half an hour earlier than I did.

However, if the verb is disyllabic, the degree complement is more likely to come after the adverb:

他比我早半(个)小时起床。 **tā bǐ wǒ zǎo bàn (gè) xiǎoshí qǐchuáng**
He got up half an hour earlier than I did.

In fact, the longer the verbal expression, the more likely it is that the degree complement will come after the adverb:

他比我早半(个)小时到达目的地。
tā bǐ wǒ zǎo bàn (gè) xiǎoshí dàodá mùdìdì
He reached the destination half an hour earlier than I did.

Exercise 12.1

Using the words supplied, construct Chinese sentences expressing comparison or similarity and then translate them into English.

我 **wǒ** 你 **nǐ** 大 **dà** 跟 **gēn** 一样 **yīyàng**

我跟你一样大。 **wǒ gēn nǐ yīyàng dà**
You and I are the same age.

- | | | | | | |
|---|------------------------------|--------------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------|
| 1 | 飞机
fēijī
plane | 火车
huǒchē
train | 比
bǐ | 快
kuài
fast | |
| 2 | 法国
fǎguó
France | 美国
měiguó
America | 不一样
bù yīyàng | 大
dà | 跟
gēn |

12
Compar-
isons

3	冬天 dōngtiān winter	春天 chūntiān spring	比 bǐ	暖和 nuǎnhuo warm	
4	猫 māo cat	老虎 lǎohǔ tiger	得多 de duō a lot	小 xiǎo	比 bǐ
5	阿尔卑斯山 ā'ěrbēisī shān The Alps	喜马拉雅山 xǐmǎlāyǎ shān The Himalayas	高 gāo high	那么 nàme	没有 méiyǒu
6	中国的人口 zhōngguó de rénkou China's population	俄国的人口 éguó de rénkou Russia's population	多 duō many	比 bǐ	
7	长城 chángchéng The Great Wall	金字塔 jīnzìtǎ The Pyramids	有名 yǒumíng well-known	和 hé	一样 yīyàng
8	小李 xiǎo lǐ Xiao Li	老张 lǎo zhāng Lao Zhang	那么 nàme	勤奋 qínfèn industrious	没有 méiyǒu
9	炒饭 chǎofàn fried rice	炒面 chǎomiàn fried noodles	好吃 hǎochī delicious	得多 de duō a lot	比 bǐ
10	我的行李 wǒ de xíngli my luggage	你的行李 nǐ de xíngli your luggage	两公斤 liǎng gōngjīn two kilos	重 zhòng heavy	比 bǐ

Exercise 12.2

Rewrite the following negative comparison sentences using 比 **bǐ** without changing the meaning, and then translate them into English.

弟弟没有我这么高。 **dìdi méiyǒu wǒ zhème gāo**
My younger brother isn't as tall as I am.

我比弟弟高。 **wǒ bǐ dìdi gāo**
I am taller than my younger brother.

- 1 鲨鱼没有鲸鱼那么大。 **shāyú méiyǒu jīngyú nàme dà**
Sharks are not as big as whales.
- 2 照相机没有摄像机那么贵。
zhàoxiàngjī méiyǒu shèxiàngjī nàme guì
Cameras aren't as expensive as video cameras.
- 3 桃子没有苹果那么硬。 **táozi méiyǒu píngguǒ nàme yìng**
Peaches are not as hard as apples.

- 4 这个城市没有那个城市那么美丽。
zhèi gè chéngshì méiyǒu nèi gè chéngshì nàme měilì
This city isn't as beautiful as that one.
- 5 英国的春天没有夏天这么热。
yīngguó de chūntiān méiyǒu xiàtiān zhème rè
The spring isn't as hot as the summer in Britain.
- 6 法语没有德语这么难。**fǎyǔ méiyǒu déyǔ zhème nán**
French is not as difficult as German.
- 7 你没有我那么重。**nǐ méiyǒu wǒ nàme zhòng**
You are not as heavy as me.
- 8 黄河没有长江那么长。**huánghé méiyǒu chángjiāng nàme cháng**
The Yellow River is not as long as the Yangtze River.
- 9 他的肩膀没有你的那么宽。
tā de jiānbǎng méiyǒu nǐ de nàme kuān (宽 **kuān** 'broad')
His shoulders are not as broad as yours.
- 10 这首歌没有那首歌那么好听。
zhèi shǒu gē méiyǒu nèi shǒu gē nàme hǎotīng
This song is not as nice as that one.

Exercise 12.3

Complete the Chinese sentences below with either: '(adjective) + 一些 **yìxiē**/一点儿 **yīdiǎnr**/得多 **de duō**' or '(adjective) + numeral + measure word', to match the English translations (note: 一点儿 **yīdiǎnr** is represented as two spaces _____):

- 1 那个厨师比我 _____。
nèi gè chúshī bǐ wǒ _____ (胖 **pàng** 'fat')
That cook is much fatter than I am.
- 2 猫的尾巴比兔子的尾巴 _____。
māo de wěiba bǐ tùzi de wěiba _____
A cat's tail is much longer than a rabbit's tail.
- 3 球鞋比皮鞋 _____ (_____)。
qiúxié bǐ píxié _____
Sports shoes are slightly cheaper than leather shoes.
- 4 妹妹比姐姐 _____。
mèimei bǐ jiějie _____ (瘦 **shòu** 'thin')
The younger sister is slightly thinner than the older sister.
- 5 爷爷比奶奶 _____。
yéye bǐ nǎinai _____
Grandma is two years younger than Grandpa.
- 6 这件衣服比那件衣服 _____。
zhèi jiàn yīfú bǐ nèi jiàn yīfú _____
This dress is two pounds more expensive than that one.

- 7 这个故事比那个故事 _____ 。
zhèi gè gùshi bǐ nài gè gùshi _____
This story is much more interesting than that one.
- 8 这幢房子比那幢 _____ 。
zhèi zhuàng fāngzi bǐ nài zhuàng _____
This house is slightly prettier than that one.
- 9 那些香蕉比这些 _____ 。
nèi xiē xiāngjiāo bǐ zhèi xiē _____
Those bananas are much fresher than these.
- 10 我的牛仔褲比你的 _____ 。
wǒ de niúzáikù bǐ nǐ de _____
My jeans are a little cleaner than yours.

Exercise 12.4

Complete these sentences with either 更 **gèng**/还要 **hái yào** or 最 **zuì**:

- 1 这么多的鞋子，黑的那双 _____ 漂亮。
zhème duō de xiézi | hēi de nài shuāng _____ **piàoliang**
Of all these shoes that black pair is the most beautiful.
- 2 这些书都很有意思，那本 _____ 有意思。
zhèi xiē shū dōu hěn yǒu yìsi | nài běn _____ **yǒu yìsi**
All these books are interesting, but that book is even more interesting.
- 3 那三个西瓜都很甜，这个 _____ 甜一点儿。
nài sān gè xīguā dōu hěn tián | zhèi gè _____ **tián yīdiǎnr**
Those three water melons are sweet, but this one is even sweeter.
- 4 到市中心去，这条路 _____ 近。
dào shìzhōngxīn qù | zhèi tiáo lù _____ **jìn**
This is the quickest way to the city centre.
- 5 我去过的城市中，布拉格 _____ 美丽。
wǒ qù guo de chéngshì zhōng | bùlāgé _____ **měilì**
Of all the cities I have been to, Prague is the most beautiful.
- 6 三年级五十个学生，她 _____ 勤奋。
sān niánjí wǔ shí gè xuésheng | tā _____ **qínfèn**
Amongst the fifty students of the Third Year, she is the most industrious.
- 7 这些菜都很好吃，可是那个菜 _____ 好吃。
zhèi xiē cài dōu hěn hǎochī | kěshì nài gè cài _____ **hǎochī** (菜 **cài**
'dish (of food)')
These dishes are tasty, but that dish is even more tasty.

- 8 那首歌很好听，可是这首歌 _____ 好听。
nèi shǒu gē hěn hǎotīng | kěshì zhèi shǒu gē _____ hǎotīng
 That song is nice, but this song is even nicer.
- 9 这种花很香，那种花 _____ 香。
zhèi zhǒng huā hěn xiāng | nài zhǒng huā _____ xiāng
 This kind of flower is fragrant; but that kind is even more fragrant.
- 10 二号运动员跑得比一号运动员 _____ 快。
èr hào yùndòngyuán pǎo de bǐ yī hào yùndòngyuán _____ kuài
 Athlete No. 2 runs even faster than athlete No. 1.

Exercise 12.5

Translate the sentences below into Chinese (more than one version of the translation may be possible):

- 1 He came earlier than others. (早 **zǎo** 'early') (其他人 **qítā rén** 'others/other people')
- 2 She walks more slowly than he does. (走路 **zǒulù** 'to walk')
- 3 Yesterday he went to bed later than I did. (晚 **wǎn** 'late')
- 4 My wife is a better driver than I am. (妻子 **qīzi** 'wife')
- 5 One of my classmates sings better than I do. (唱歌 **chànggē** 'sing')
- 6 My husband is a better tennis player than I am.
 (丈夫 **zhàngfu** 'husband'; 打网球 **dǎ wǎngqiú** 'to play tennis')
- 7 My elder brother is an inch taller than I am. (高 **gāo** 'tall')
- 8 (The) younger sister is a half kilo lighter than the elder sister.
 (轻 **qīng** 'light')
- 9 Is a squirrel as big as a mouse?
- 10 This house isn't as pretty as that one. (房子 **fángzi** 'house')

Exercise 12.6

Translate the following sentences into Chinese, using the patterns for intensifying comparison:

- 1 I am growing more and more hungry.
- 2 The chef was getting fatter and fatter. (厨师 **chúshī** 'chef')
- 3 That horse runs more and more slowly in races.
 (在比赛中 **zài bǐsài zhōng** 'in races')
- 4 The soccer match became more and more exciting.
- 5 The road gets wider and wider.

- 6 Grandfather's illness was growing more and more serious.
(^更重 **yánzhòng** 'serious')
- 7 The more he drinks the more drunk he becomes.
- 8 The quicker the better.
- 9 The more he sings, the unhappier I become.
- 10 The more peppery the food, the more I like it.

Pattern and vocabulary drill 12.1

Reformulate the following Chinese sentences as two different negative comparisons:

这瓶牛奶比那瓶新鲜。 **zhè píng niǔnǎi bǐ nài píng xīnxiān**
This bottle of milk is fresher than that one.

a 这瓶牛奶不比那瓶新鲜。
zhè píng niǔnǎi bù bǐ nài píng xīnxiān
This bottle of milk is no fresher than that one.

b 那瓶牛奶没有这瓶新鲜。
nài píng niǔnǎi méiyǒu zhè píng xīnxiān
That bottle of milk is less fresh than this one.

- 1 这张桌子比那张(桌子)干净。 **zhè zhāng zhuōzi bǐ nài zhāng (zhuōzi) gānjìng**
This table is cleaner than that one.
- 2 这个房间比那个(房间)整齐。 **zhè gè fángjiān bǐ nài gè (fángjiān) zhěngqí**
This room is tidier than that one.
- 3 这个人比那个人老实。 **zhè gè rén bǐ nài gè rén lǎoshi**
This person is more honest than that person.
- 4 这个故事比那个(故事)有趣。 **zhè gè gùshi bǐ nài gè (gùshi) yǒuqù**
This story is more interesting than that one.
- 5 这场比赛比那场(比赛)精彩。 **zhè chǎng bǐsài bǐ nài chǎng (bǐsài) jīngcǎi**
This match is more exciting than that one.
- 6 这条裙子比那条(裙子)长。 **zhè tiáo qúnzi bǐ nài tiáo (qúnzi) cháng**
This skirt is longer than that one.
- 7 这双鞋子比那双(鞋子)小。 **zhè shuāng xiézi bǐ nài shuāng (xiézi) xiǎo**
This pair of shoes is smaller than that pair.
- 8 这件衣服比那件(衣服)脏。 **zhè jiàn yīfu bǐ nài jiàn (yīfu) zāng**
This shirt/jacket/etc. is dirtier than that one.
- 9 这辆车比那辆(车)漂亮。 **zhè liàng chē bǐ nài liàng (chē) piàoliang**
This car is better looking than that one.

- 10 这座楼房比那座(楼房)古老。 **zhè zuò lóufáng bǐ nèi zuò (lóufáng) gǔlǎo**
This building is more ancient than that one.
- 11 这些蔬菜比那些(蔬菜)新鲜。 **zhèi xiē shūcài bǐ nèi xiē (shūcài) xīnxiān**
These vegetables are fresher than those.
- 12 这家商店比那家(商店)大。 **zhèi jiā shāngdiàn bǐ nèi jiā (shāngdiàn) dà**
This shop is bigger than that one.
- 13 这杯咖啡比那杯(咖啡)甜。 **zhèi bēi kāfēi bǐ nèi bēi (kāfēi) tián**
This cup of coffee is sweeter than that one.
- 14 这个孩子比那个孩子聪明。 **zhèi gè hái zi bǐ nèi gè (hái zi) cōngmíng**
This child is more intelligent than that child.
- 15 这件行李比那件(行李)重。 **zhèi jiàn xíng li bǐ nèi jiàn (xíng li) zhòng**
This piece of luggage is heavier than that one.
- 16 这儿的天气比那儿的(天气)好。 **zhèr de tiān qì bǐ nàr de (tiān qì) hǎo**
The weather here is better than the weather there.
- 17 这块姜比那块(姜)辣。 **zhèi kuài jiāng bǐ nèi kuài (jiāng) là**
This piece of ginger is hotter than that one.
- 18 这个运动员比那个运动员高。 **zhèi gè yùndòngyuán bǐ nèi gè yùndòngyuán gāo**
This athlete is taller than that athlete.
- 19 这种花儿比那种(花儿)香。 **zhèi zhǒng huār bǐ nèi zhǒng (huār) xiāng**
This flower smells sweeter than that one.
- 20 去年冬天比今年冬天冷。 **qùnián dōngtiān bǐ jīnnián dōngtiān lěng**
Last year's winter was colder than this year's winter.

Note: In comparisons, positive or negative, if the second item is similar to the first, it may often be omitted for the sake of brevity; but it is less likely to be omitted if it refers to people rather than things or if misunderstanding might occur.

Pattern and vocabulary drill 12.2

Translate the sentences below into Chinese, adding a degree complement in each case as indicated:

I am two centimetres taller than my younger brother. (两公分 **liǎng gōngfēn** 'two centimetres')
我比弟弟高两公分。 **wǒ bǐ dìdì gāo liǎng gōngfēn**

12
Compar-
isons

- 1 I am heavier than my younger brother. (五公斤 **wǔ gōngjīn** ‘five kilograms’)
- 2 My friend is shorter than me. (三寸 **sān cùn** ‘three inches’)
- 3 Your luggage is heavier than mine. (四公斤 **sì gōngjīn** ‘four kilograms’)
- 4 Today is warmer than yesterday. (两度 **liǎng dù** ‘two degrees’)
- 5 Last winter was colder than this one. (两、三度 **liǎng | sān dù** ‘two to three degrees’)
- 6 This road is broader than that one. (两公尺 **liǎng gōngchǐ** ‘two metres’)
- 7 His trousers are longer than yours. (一、两寸 **yī | liǎng cùn** ‘one to two inches’)
- 8 Your camera is more expensive than mine. (一百块钱 **yī bǎi kuài qián** ‘one hundred yuan’)
- 9 Your watch (表 **biǎo**) is faster than mine. (十分钟 **shí fēn zhōng** ‘ten minutes’)
- 10 This journey (路程 **lùchéng**) is farther than that one. (二十公里左右 **èr shí gōnglǐ zuǒyòu** ‘twenty kilometers or so’)
- 11 I got up earlier than he did. (一个钟头 **yī gè zhōngtóu** ‘one hour’)
- 12 He graduated later than I did. (一年 **yī nián** ‘a year’)
- 13 They set out earlier than we did. (两天 **liǎng tiān** ‘two days’)
- 14 She came later than I did. (半(个)小时 **bàn (gè) xiǎoshí** ‘half an hour’)
- 15 The train arrived earlier than the bus. (五分钟 **wǔ fēn zhōng** ‘five minutes’)

UNIT THIRTEEN

Verbs and location expressions

A A number of the most common words that indicate place may be formed by linking the root words 里 **lǐ**, 外 **wài**, 上 **shàng**, 下 **xià**, 前 **qián** and 后 **hòu** with 边 **bian**, 面 **mian** or 头 **tou**:

里边	lǐbian	(里面 lǐmian ,	里头 lǐtou)	inside
外边	wàibian	(外面 wàimian ,	外头 wàitou)	outside
上边	shàngbian	(上面 shàngmian ,	上头 shàngtou)	above
下边	xiàbian	(下面 xiàmian ,	下头 xiàtou)	below
前边	qiánbian	(前面 qiánmian ,	前头 qiántou)	in front
后边	hòubian	(后面 hòumian ,	后头 hòutou)	behind

Others are linked with 边 **bian** or 面 **mian**:

左边	zuǒbian	(左面 zuǒmiàn)	left
右边	yòubian	(右面 yòumiàn)	right
东边	dōngbian	(东面 dōngmiàn)	east
南边	nánbian	(南面 nánmiàn)	south
西边	xībian	(西面 xīmiàn)	west
北边	běibian	(北面 běimiàn)	north

Others have only one form:

旁边	pángbiān	at/by the side of
对面	duìmiàn	opposite
中间	zhōngjiān	in the middle/between

Note: A colloquial variant of 下边 **xiàbian**/下头 **xiàtou**/下面 **xiàmian** is 底下 **dǐxia**.

B These place words may all be used after nouns to form more complex location expressions:

13

Verbs and location expressions

桌子上边	zhuōzi shàngbian	on the table
学校前面	xuéxiào qiánmian	in front of the school
柜子里头	guizi lǐtou	in(side) the cupboard
房子外面	fángzi wàimian	outside the house
游泳池旁边	yóuyǒngchí pángbiān	next to/by the side of the swimming-pool
礼堂对面	lǐtáng duìmiàn	opposite the auditorium
大厅中间	dàtīng zhōngjiān	in the centre of the hall
客厅和卧室中间	kètīng hé wòshì zhōngjiān	between the sitting-room and the bedroom
我家南面	wǒ jiā nánmiàn	(to the) south of my home
上海北面	shànghǎi běibian	(to the) north of Shanghai

There are a few other words which convey less specific locations:

四周/周围	sìzhōu/zhōuwéi	around
附近	fùjìn	near
那儿	nàr	at the home of/where someone is

For example,

大学附近	dàxué fùjìn	near the university
李先生那儿	lǐ xiānsheng nàr	at Mr Li's place or over there where Mr Li is
花园四周	huāyuán sìzhōu	on all sides of/around the garden

C For some of these disyllabic place words that are often suffixed to nouns and which can be called postpositions (comparable to English prepositions), there are a number of monosyllabic variants, which are in fact the root or stem of these disyllabic forms (as we have seen in **A** above):

里	lǐ	in/inside
外	wài	outside
上	shàng	on/above/over
下	xià	under/below/beneath
前	qián	in front of
后	hòu	behind
中	zhōng	in/among/between
旁	páng/边 biān	by/beside

里 **lǐ** and 上 **shàng** are the most widely used of these monosyllabic postpositions, but they all regularly occur:

椅子上	yǐzi shang	on the chair
房子里	fángzi li	in the house
城外	chéng wài	outside the city
门前	mén qián	in front of the door
树下	shù xià	under the tree
朋友中	péngyou zhōng	amongst friends
路边	lù biān	by the side of the road
背后	bèi hòu	behind someone's back

Note: As we can see from the last example, these monosyllabic postpositions are often used in contexts where idiom rather than the strict concept of location prevails:

心中	xīn zhōng	in one's heart
会上	huì shang	at the meeting
理论上	lǐlùn shang	in theory

Also Chinese postpositions in actual use do not always match their English prepositional counterparts:

钥匙在门上。	yàoshi zài mén shang	The key is in the door.
书上没这么说。	shū shang méi zhème shuō	It doesn't say so in the book.

D Location expressions are used in the following positions in a Chinese sentence:

- (i) before the verb, in conjunction with words such as 在 **zài** 'in; at', 到 **dào** 'to', 从 **cóng** 'from', etc., to indicate location, destination or direction:

他们在墙上写标语。 **tāmen zài qiáng shang xiě biāoyǔ**
They are writing slogans on the wall.

孩子们在草地上玩儿。 **háizimen zài cǎodì shang wánr**
The children are playing on the grass.

我们到城里去买书。 **wǒmen dào chéng li qù mǎi shū**
We went to town to buy some books.

请在里面等他。 **qǐng zài lǐmian děng tā**
Please wait for him inside.

她从盒子里拿出一支铅笔来。
tā cóng hézi li ná chū yī zhī qiānbǐ lái
She took a pencil out of the box.

他们在学校旁边盖一座新房子。

tāmen zài xuéxiào pángbiān gài yī zuò xīn fángzi

They are putting up a new building next to the school.

Note: Verbs that follow the location expressions usually have more than one syllable (see Section F).

- (ii) after a verb which denotes an action that will naturally end up in a location:

爷爷坐在沙发上。 **yéye zuò zài shāfā shang**

Grandpa is sitting on the sofa.

她待(呆)在家里。 **tā dāi zài jiā li**

She stayed at home.

他们都住在城外。 **tāmen dōu zhù zài chéng wài**

All of them live in the outskirts. (*lit.* out of the town)

很多人躺在草地上晒太阳。

hěn duō rén tǎng zài cǎodi shang shài tàiyang

There are many people lying on the grass, sunbathing.

请坐在前面。 **qǐng zuò zài qiánmian**

Please sit in front.

别扔到窗外去。 **bié rēng dào chuāng wài qù**

Don't throw it out of the window.

Note: Verbs which do not denote actions that will naturally end up in a location cannot, of course, follow the pattern discussed in (ii), therefore

One cannot say:

* 他们学习在图书馆。 **tāmen xuéxí zài túshūguǎn**

(*lit.* They are studying at the library.)

- (iii) at the beginning of a sentence to indicate the location of something or someone (see Unit 11):

动物园右边是植物园。 **dòngwùyuán yòubian shì zhíwùyuán**

To the right of the zoo is the botanical garden.

站台上有很多人。 **zhàntái shang yǒu hěn duō rén**

There are a lot of people on the (station) platform.

外边没有椅子。 **wàibian méi yǒu yǐzi**
There are no chairs outside.

E The postposition 里 **li** (or 里边 **lǐbian**/里头 **lǐtou**/里面 **lǐmian**) is not used after geographical names. For example,

他们在中国旅游。 **tāmen zài zhōngguó lǚyóu**
They are on a tour in China.

北京有很多剧场。 **běijīng yǒu hěnduō jùchǎng**
There are a lot of theatres in Beijing.

One cannot say:

*他们在中国里旅游。 **tāmen zài zhōngguó li lǚyóu**
*北京里有很多剧场。 **běijīng li yǒu hěnduō jùchǎng**

On the other hand 里 **li** is optional after a location noun of two syllables:

她在花园(里)种花。 **tā zài huāyuán (li) zhòng huā**
She is planting flowers in the garden.

弟弟从学校(里)出来。 **dìdì cóng xuéxiào (li) chū lái**
(My) younger brother came out of the school.

姐姐和她的朋友在饭馆(里)吃饭。
jǐějie hé tā de péngyou zài fànguǎn (li) chīfàn
(My) elder sister and her friends are having a meal in a restaurant.

However, it is less likely for the omission to take place if the location noun is of one syllable. For example:

妈妈在城里买东西。 **māma zài chéng li mǎi dōngxi**
Mother is shopping in town.

but not:

*妈妈在城买东西。 **māma zài chéng mǎi dōngxi**

unless, of course, the noun refers to a location very familiar to the person:

我在家(里)学习。 **wǒ zài jiā (li) xuéxí** I was studying at home.
他在校值班。 **tā zài xiào zhíbān** He is on duty at school.

13

Verbs and
location
expressions

If the location noun has three syllables, 里 *lǐ* 'in' is generally not used:

我在阅览室看报。 **wǒ zài yuèlǎnshì kàn bào** I am reading newspapers in the reading room.

我在火车站等你。 **wǒ zài huǒchēzhàn děng nǐ** I'll wait for you at the railway station.

F Where location expressions with 在 *zài* come before the verb (see examples under **D** (i) above), the verb that follows usually consists of more than one syllable:

他在教室里学习。 **tā zài jiàoshì lǐ xuéxí** (a disyllabic verb)
He is studying in the classroom.

病人在床上躺着。 **bìngrén zài chuáng shang tǎng zhe**
(a monosyllabic verb with an aspect marker)
The patient is lying in bed.

有很多人在站台上等车。 **yǒu hěnduō rén zài zhàntái shang děng chē** (a verb with an object)
There are a lot of people on the platform waiting for the train.

One cannot say:

*他在教室里学。 **tā zài jiàoshì lǐ xué** (*lit.* He is studying in the classroom.)

*病人在床上躺。 **bìngrén zài chuáng shang tǎng** (*lit.* The patient is lying in bed.)

Note 1: The aspect marker that changes a monosyllabic verb into a two-syllabled verb phrase, as we can see from the second example above, is usually 着 *zhe*, which indicates a continuous action or state and gives the sentence a descriptive nature.

Note 2: The exception to this rule is that monosyllabic verbs may be used in questions (and their associated answers) and in imperatives:

你在哪儿等？ **nǐ zài nǎr děng** Where are you going to wait?

我在火车站等 **wǒ zài huǒchēzhàn děng** I'll wait at the railway station.

你在这儿坐。 **nǐ zài zhèr zuò** You sit here!

Exercise 13.1

13

Verbs and location expressions

Complete the sentences below by adding correct postpositions:

- 1 风很大，路 _____ 行人很少。 **fēng hěn dà | lù _____ xíng rén hěn shǎo** (行人 **xíng rén** ‘pedestrian’)
The wind was strong and there were very few people on the street.
- 2 鸡在烤箱 _____ 烤着。 **jī zài kǎoxiāng _____ kǎo zhe**
The chicken was cooking in the oven.
- 3 她站在门 _____ (_____)，看着爸爸离去。
tā zhàn zài mén _____ (_____) kàn zhe bàba lí qù
She stood by the door and watched her father leave.
- 4 窗 _____ 传来汽车的喇叭声。
chuāng _____ chuán lái qìchē de lǎba shēng (喇叭 **lǎba** ‘horn (of a car)’)
The sound of a car horn came from outside./A car horn sounded outside the window.
- 5 老鼠躲在床 _____ _____。
lǎoshǔ duǒ zài chuáng _____ (躲 **duǒ** ‘to hide’)
The mouse hid under the bed.
- 6 车站在学校 _____ _____。 **chēzhàn zài xuéxiào _____**
The station is near the school.
- 7 我们的作业本子在老师 _____ _____。 **wǒmen de zuòyè běnzì zài lǎoshī _____**
Our course-work books are with the teacher.
- 8 英国 _____ _____ 都是海。 **yīngguó _____ dōu shì hǎi**
Britain is surrounded by sea.
- 9 日本在中国 _____ _____。 **rìběn zài zhōngguó _____**
Japan is east of China.
- 10 银行 _____ _____ 是鞋店， _____ _____ 是服装店。
yínháng _____ shì xié diàn | _____ shì fúzhuāng diàn
On the left of the bank is a shoe shop and on the right, a clothes shop.
- 11 厕所在电梯 _____ _____。 **cèsuǒ zài diàntī _____**
The toilet is next to the lift.
- 12 英吉利海峡在英国和法国 _____ _____。
yīngjīlǐ hǎixiá zài yīngguó hé fǎguó _____
The English Channel lies between England and France.
- 13 袜子和手套都放在柜子 _____ (_____)。
wàzi hé shǒutào dōu fàng zài guìzi _____ (_____)
(放 **fàng** ‘put; keep’) Socks and gloves are all kept in the wardrobe.
- 14 冰箱在洗衣机 _____ _____。 **bīngxiāng zài xǐyījī _____**
The fridge is on the left of the washing-machine.

13

Verbs and location expressions

- 15 病人坐在医生和护士 _____ 。
- bìng rén zuò zài yīshēng hé hùshì** _____ (医生 **yīshēng** ‘doctor: either physician or surgeon’)
- The patient was sitting between the doctor and the nurse.
- 16 地图挂在黑板 _____ 。
- dì tú guà zài hēibǎn** _____
- The map is hanging on the right-hand side of the blackboard.
- 17 博物馆在银行 _____ 。
- bó wù guǎn zài yínháng** _____ (博物馆 **bó wù guǎn** ‘museum’)
- The museum is behind the bank.
- 18 一群人站在大楼 _____ 。
- yī qún rén zhàn zài dà lóu** _____
- A crowd of people were standing all around the building.

Exercise 13.2

Translate the following phrases into Chinese. In some cases there may be two possible versions:

- | | |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1 at the university | 11 next to Mother |
| 2 at the bus-stop | 12 above the swimming-pool |
| 3 in the wardrobe | 13 in front of the library |
| 4 in the north of the city | 14 behind the house |
| 5 in a box | 15 by the river |
| 6 in bed | 16 on the table |
| 7 in the middle of the room | 17 near the park |
| 8 at the foot of the mountain | 18 around the child |
| 9 on the bus | 19 at my grandpa’s house |
| 10 under a tree | 20 in the west |

Exercise 13.3

Decide which of the following sentences is incorrect and make corrections where necessary, paying special attention to the use of appropriate postpositions:

- 1 报纸在桌子。 **bào zhǐ zài zhuō zi**
The newspaper is on the table.
- 2 屋子里他们在开会。 **wū zi li tā men zài kāi huì**
They are having a meeting in the room.
- 3 泰晤士河是英国里有名的河。 **tài wù shì hé shì yīng guó li yǒu míng de hé**
The Thames is a famous river in Britain.

- 4 医生在病人的床站了一会儿，没有说话。
yīshēng zài bìngrén de chuáng zhàn le yīhuìr | méiyǒu shuō huà
The doctor stood by the patient's bed for a while without saying a word.
- 5 妹妹在图书馆看书。**mèimei zài túshūguǎn kàn shū**
My younger sister was reading in the library.
- 6 爷爷在床上躺着。**yéye zài chuáng shang tǎng zhe**
Grandpa was lying in bed.
- 7 你的钥匙在门里。**nǐ de yàoshi zài mén li**
Your key is in the door.
- 8 叔叔工作在伦敦。**shūshu gōngzuò zài lúndūn**
My uncle works in London.
- 9 她在门前站。**tā zài mén qián zhàn**
She was standing in front of the house. (*lit.* in front of the door)
- 10 奶奶坐在沙发上。**nǎinai zuò zài shāfā shang**
Grandmother is sitting on the sofa.
- 11 金鱼游在水池里。**jīnyú yóu zài shuǐchí li**
The goldfish are swimming in the pool.
- 12 电影院在鞋店左。**diànyǐngyuàn zài xiédiàn zuǒ**
The cinema is to the left of the shoe shop.
- 13 报纸里有不少广告。**bàozhǐ li yǒu bù shǎo guǎnggào**
There are quite a few advertisements in the newspaper.
- 14 天里没有云。**tiān li méi yǒu yún**
There are no clouds in the sky.

Exercise 13.4

Six people have rooms in a block of flats. The diagram shows where they live in relation to one another. Complete these sentences with the words in the list. (Each word may only be used once):

左边 **zuǒbian** 楼下 **lóuxià** 下面 **xiàmiàn**
中间 **zhōngjiān** 东面 **dōngmiàn** 楼上 **lóushàng**

WEST A B C (upstairs)
D E F (downstairs) EAST

- 1 **B** 住在 _____ ，住在 **A** 和 **C** _____ 。
B zhù zài _____ | zhù zài A hé C _____
- 2 **E** 住在 **D** _____ ，住在 **F** _____ 。 **E zhù zài D _____ | zhù zài F _____**
- 3 **F** 住在 _____ ，住在 **C** _____ 。 **F zhù zài _____ | zhù zài C _____**

Exercise 13.5

Tick the correct Chinese translation(s) for each of the English sentences below, paying particular attention to the positioning of the location phrase:

- The beef is cooking in the pot. (牛肉 **niúròu** 'beef')
 牛肉在锅里煮着。 **niúròu zài guō li zhǔ zhe**
 牛肉在锅煮着。 **niúròu zài guō zhǔ zhe**
 牛肉煮在锅里。 **niúròu zhǔ zài guō li**
- A friend of mine works in a hospital.
 我的一个朋友在一家医院工作。
wǒ de yī gè péngyou zài yī jiā yīyuàn gōngzuò
 我的一个朋友工作在一家医院。
wǒ de yī gè péngyou gōngzuò zài yī jiā yīyuàn
 我的一个朋友在一家医院里工作。
wǒ de yī gè péngyou zài yī jiā yīyuàn li gōngzuò
- We live in Paris.
 我们住在巴黎。 **wǒmen zhù zài bālí**
 我们住在巴黎里。 **wǒmen zhù zài bālí li**
 我们在巴黎住。 **wǒmen zài bālí zhù**
- She is waiting for you at the museum.
 她在博物馆等你。 **tā zài bówùguǎn děng nǐ**
 她等你在博物馆。 **tā děng nǐ zài bówùguǎn**
 她在博物馆里等你。 **tā zài bówùguǎn li děng nǐ**
- A flock of sheep is feeding at the foot of the hill.
 有一群羊在山脚下吃草。 **yǒu yī qún yáng zài shānjiǎo xià chī cǎo**
 有一群羊吃草在山脚下。 **yǒu yī qún yáng chī cǎo zài shānjiǎo xià**
- My uncle is sunbathing by the sea.
 我叔叔在海边晒太阳。 **wǒ shūshu zài hǎi biān shài tàiyang**
 我叔叔晒太阳在海边。 **wǒ shūshu shài tàiyang zài hǎi biān**

Pattern and vocabulary drill 13.1

Put the given subject, location, and verb phrase together into a sentence, using first 在 **zài** and then 到...去 **dào...qù** (following the models given below), and translate the finished sentences into English:

- 姐姐在草地上晒太阳。 **jiějie zài cǎodì shang shài tàiyang**
 Sister is sunbathing on the grass.

b 姐姐到草地上去晒太阳。 **jiějie dào cǎodì shang qù shài tàiyang**
Sister went sunbathing on the grass.

- 1 弟弟 **dìdi** younger brother 沙发上 **shāfā shang** on the sofa
睡觉 **shuìjiào** sleep
- 2 爷爷 **yéye** grandpa 公园里 **gōngyuán li** in the park
打太极拳 **dǎ tàijíquán** practise T'ai Chi
- 3 爸爸 **bàba** father 河边 **hé biān** by the river
钓鱼 **diào yú** go fishing/angling
- 4 妈妈 **māma** mother 城里 **chéng li** in town
买菜 **mǎi cài** buy food
- 5 奶奶 **nǎinai** grandma 朋友家 **péngyou jiā** a friend's place
打麻将 **dǎ májiàng** play mah-jong
- 6 妹妹 **mèimei** younger sister 学校里 **xuéxiào li** at school
学唱歌 **xué chànggē** learn singing/take singing lessons
- 7 哥哥 **gēge** elder brother 图书馆 **túshūguǎn** library
看书 **kàn shū** do some reading
- 8 伯伯 **bóbo** father's elder brother (paternal uncle)
博物馆 **bówùguǎn** museum
工作 **gōngzuò** work
- 9 叔叔 **shūshu** father's younger brother (paternal uncle)
菜园里 **càiyuán li** in the vegetable garden
种菜 **zhòng cài** plant vegetables
- 10 姑母 **gūmǔ** father's elder sister (paternal aunt)
花园里 **huāyuán li** in the garden
种花 **zhòng huā** plant flowers
- 11 姨母 **yímǔ** mother's elder/younger sister (maternal aunt)
医院 **yīyuàn** in the hospital
看病 **kànbìng** see a doctor
- 12 舅舅 **jiùjiu** mother's elder/younger brother (maternal uncle)
操场上 **cāochǎng shang** on the sports ground
跑步 **pǎobù** go jogging
- 13 伯伯和伯母 **bóbo hé bómǔ** father's elder brother and his wife
(paternal uncle and aunt)
巴黎 **bālí** Paris
度假 **dùjià** spend their holidays
- 14 姑母和姑丈 **gūmǔ hé gūzhàng** father's elder sister and her husband
(paternal uncle and aunt)
北京 **běijīng** Beijing
旅行 **lǚxíng** on a tour
- 15 姨母和姨丈 **yímǔ hé yízhàng** mother's elder/younger sister and her
husband (maternal aunt and uncle)
伦敦 **lúndūn** London
看球赛 **kàn qiú sài** watch a football/tennis/etc. match

13

Verbs and
location
expres-
sions

- 16 哥哥和我 **gēge hé wǒ** my elder brother and I
电影院 **diànyǐngyuàn** cinema
看电影 **kàn diànyǐng** see a film/movie
- 17 我和弟弟 **wǒ hé dìdì** my younger brother and I 家里 **jiā li** at home
看电视 **kàn diànshì** watch television (Please note that only one
version is possible here.)
- 18 哥哥和他的女朋友 **gēge hé tā de nǚ péngyou** elder brother and his
girlfriend
咖啡馆 **kāfēiguǎn** coffee bar
喝咖啡 **hē kāfēi** drink coffee
- 19 姐姐和她的男朋友 **jiějie hé tā de nán péngyou** elder sister and her
boyfriend
一家商店里 **yī jiā shāngdiàn li** in a shop
买衣服 **mǎi yīfu** buy clothes
- 20 舅母带(着)我 **jiùmǔ dài (zhe) wǒ** mother's elder/younger brother's
wife (maternal aunt) taking me with her
外卖店 **wàimàidiàn** a Chinese/etc. take-away
买外卖 **mǎi wàimài** buy take-away food
- 21 舅舅带(着)我弟弟 **jiùjiu dài (zhe) wǒ dìdì** mother's elder/younger
brother (maternal uncle) taking my younger brother with him
沙滩上 **shātān shang** on the beach
骑马 **qí mǎ** ride on horseback/ride horses, go horse riding
- 22 叔叔带(着)我哥哥 **shūshu dài (zhe) wǒ gēge** father's younger
brother (paternal uncle) taking my elder brother with him
街上 **jiē shang** in the street
骑自行车 **qí zìxíngchē** cycle, ride bicycles

Pattern and vocabulary drill 13.2

Translate into Chinese:

- 1 Inside is better than outside.
- 2 I'll wait for you inside the cinema.
- 3 There is no one upstairs.
- 4 There's someone behind you.
- 5 Is there a public toilet in here?
- 6 In the photograph, my father is sitting on the left, my mother is sitting on the right and I am standing between them.
- 7 Where do you live in China?
- 8 Please park your car on the road in front of the library.
- 9 Don't sit on that chair.
- 10 His money is in a box under the bed.

UNIT FOURTEEN

Verbs and time expressions

A Expressions which indicate the time at which something happens are generally placed before the verb. They have an important relationship with the verb, which in Chinese does not inflect or change its form to indicate tense (see also Unit 15). They therefore set the time context for the action of the verb. The following examples illustrate this:

我们明天去散步。 **wǒmen míngtiān qù sànbù**
We'll go for a walk tomorrow.

我们昨天去散步。 **wǒmen zuótiān qù sànbù**
We went for a walk yesterday.

我们每天(都)去散步。 **wǒmen měi tiān (dōu) qù sànbù**
We go for a walk every day.

We can see from the above that the verbal phrase 去散步 **qù sànbù** 'go for a walk' remains unchanged in each case though the English translations differ to convey tense.

Note: A time expression may also be placed before the subject at the beginning of the sentence, where it tends to have a slightly more emphatic meaning:

明天我们去散步。 **míngtiān wǒmen qù sànbù**
We are going for a walk *tomorrow*.

夏天我们每天(都)去散步。
xiàtiān wǒmen měi tiān (dōu) qù sànbù
We go for a walk every day *in the summer*.

An unmarked verb in Chinese without a preceding time expression usually indicates either habit or intention:

我走路上班。 **wǒ zǒulù shàngbān** I go to work (habit)
on foot.

我们去散步。 **wǒmen qù sànbù** We are going for (intention)
a walk.

14

Verbs
and time
expres-
sions

B Time expressions may take a number of different forms from the simple, as in the examples in **A** above, to the more complex (see also Unit 8). Other examples of simple time expressions are:

现在	xiànzài	now/nowadays
以前	yǐ qián	previously
以后	yǐ hòu	afterwards
过去	guòqù	in the past
将来	jiānglái	in the future
月初	yuèchū	at the beginning of the month
月底	yuèdǐ	at the end of the month
周末	zhōumò	at the weekend
前几年	qián jǐ nián	over/in the past few years
过几天	guò jǐ tiān	in a few days' time
上个世纪	shàng gè shìjì	in the last century
有一天	yǒu yī tiān	one day

他们周末去海边度假。 **tāmen zhōumò qù hǎi biān dùjià**
They are going on holiday by the sea at the weekend.

我的大儿子现在在邮局工作。

wǒ de dà érzi xiànzài zài yóujú gōngzuò

My eldest son is working at the post office now.

过几天我的父母来这儿探望我们。

guò jǐ tiān wǒ de fùmǔ lái zhèr tànwàng wǒmen

In a few days my parents will come here to visit us.

有一天他来我家看我。 **yǒu yī tiān tā lái wǒ jiā kàn wǒ**

One day he came to my place to see me.

Note: When both time and location expressions are present in a sentence, the time expression always precedes the location expression.

Other more complex phrases indicating before, after and during an action or (period of) time are formed by putting one of the following at the end of the time or verb phrase: ... (以/之)前... (**yǐ/zhī**) **qián** 'ago/before'; ... (以/之)后... (**yǐ/zhī**) **hòu** 'later/after'; ... (的)时(候)... (**de**) **shí(hou)** 'when ... /while ...'; and ... (之)中 (**zhī**) **zhōng** 'during':

三个星期以前	sān gè xīngqī yǐ qián	three weeks ago/three weeks before
回家之前	huí jiā zhī qián	before going home
两个月前	liǎng gè yuè qián	two months ago/two months before

五分钟之后	wǔ fēn zhōng zhī hòu	five minutes later/in five minutes' time/after five minutes
吃晚饭以后 一年后	chī wǎnfàn yǐ hòu yī nián hòu	after (eating) supper a year later/in a year's time/after a year
采草莓的时候	cǎi cǎoméi de shíhou	while picking strawberries
我们去中国的时候	wǒmen qù zhōngguó de shíhou	when we went to China
看书时 训练中	kàn shū shí xùnliàn zhōng	when reading during training

两个月以后我去看他们。 **liǎng gè yuè yǐ hòu wǒ qù kàn tāmen**
I went to see them two months later.

她吃晚饭以后去看电影。 **tā chī wǎnfàn yǐ hòu qù kàn diànyǐng**
After (she's had) supper she is going to see a film./After supper she went to see a film.

我下班的时候碰见他。 **wǒ xiàbān de shíhou pèngjiàn tā**
I met him when I came off work.

回家之前她去图书馆借书。 **huí jiā zhī qián tā qù túshūguǎn jiè shū**
She is going to borrow some books from the library before she goes home./She went to borrow some books from the library before she went home.

Note 1: A more general time expression always precedes a more specific one when both are present:

那天训练中 **nèi tiān xùnliàn zhōng**
that day during the training session

下星期六上午十点零五分
xià xīngqī liù shàngwǔ shí diǎn líng wǔ fēn
five past ten/10:05 a.m. next Saturday morning

Note 2: Specific time expressions formed by a 'verb or activity noun + 前/后/时/中 **qián/hòu/shí/zhōng**' may sometimes incorporate the word 在 **zài** 'at/in/on'.

那个运动员昨天在训练中受了伤。
nèi gè yùndòngyuán zuótiān zài xùnliàn zhōng shòu le shāng
That athlete was injured yesterday during a training session.

C Time words like 常常 **chángcháng** ‘frequently/often’, 已经 **yǐjīng** ‘already’ and 马上 **mǎshàng** ‘immediately/at once’, etc., which indicate less specific time, must follow (and not precede) the subject, if there is one:

他常常去游泳。 **tā chángcháng qù yóuyǒng** He often goes swimming.
我马上(就)来。 **wǒ mǎshàng (jiù) lái** I’ll be with you in a minute.
(*lit.* I immediately come)

One cannot say:

*常常他去游泳。 **chángcháng tā qù yóuyǒng**
*马上我(就)来。 **mǎshàng wǒ (jiù) lái**

D Time words or expressions are sometimes used in conjunction with aspect markers which indicate the completion, the continuation, the experience, etc. of an action (see Unit 15):

我已经看完了那本小说。 **wǒ yǐjīng kàn wán le nà běn xiǎoshuō**
I’ve already finished reading that novel.

他三岁的时候生过痢疾 **tā sān suì de shíhòu shēng guo lìjí** (痢疾 **lìjí**
dysentery)
He suffered from dysentery when he was three.

E Duration expressions, which indicate the length of time an action lasts or the time since an action has taken place, are generally placed immediately *after* the verb (compare the discussion of the time duration question in Unit 9):

他在这儿住了半年。 **tā zài zhèr zhù le bàn nián**
He stayed here for six months. (*lit.* He stayed here for half a year.)

我今天工作了八小时。 **wǒ jīntiān gōngzuò le bā xiǎoshí**
I worked for eight hours today.

你的朋友已经等了二十分钟了。
nǐ de péngyou yǐjīng děng le èr shí fēn zhōng le
Your friend has already been waiting twenty minutes.

我们到了/来了一个半月了。 **wǒmen dào le/lái le yī gè bàn yuè le**
It’s one month and a half since we arrived./We’ve been here for a month and a half.

李先生离开了三个多星期了。 **lǐ xiānsheng líkāi le sān gè duō xīngqī le**
It's over three weeks now since Mr Li left./Mr Li has been gone for
over three weeks.

Note 1: In the last two examples, the verbs 到 **dào** 'to arrive', 来 **lái** 'to come', 离开 **líkāi** 'to leave', do not themselves express any duration of action, but the time phrase that follows indicates the time since the action took place.

Note 2: The implication of the presence of 了 **le** at the end of the sentence, as seen in a number of the sentences above, is analysed in *Intermediate Chinese*, Units 1 and 8.

If the verb has a noun object, the duration expression is placed between the verb and the noun object with or without 的 **de**:

我看了两个小时(的)书。 **wǒ kàn le liǎng gè xiǎoshí (de) shū**
I read for two hours.

我们跳了一个晚上(的)舞。 **wǒmen tiào le yī gè wǎnshang (de) wǔ**
We danced all evening.

他学过三年(的)中文。 **tā xué guo sān nián (de) zhōngwén**
He's studied Chinese for three years.

However, if the object is a personal (pro)noun or a noun indicating location, the duration expression is normally placed after the object:

王老师教了我们/我们孩子两年。
wáng lǎoshī jiāo le wǒmen/wǒmen háizi liǎng nián
Mr/Miss Wang, our teacher, taught us/our children for two years.

我父母来北京五个月了。 **wǒ fùmǔ lái běijīng wǔ gè yuè le**
My parents have been in Beijing for five months now.

An alternative for that is to repeat the verb after the verb object phrase and then follow this verb with the duration expression (compare duration questions in Unit 9):

我们谈天谈了一个钟头。 **wǒmen tán tiān tán le yī gè zhōngtóu**
We chatted for an hour.

他们学中文足足学了三年。 **tāmen xué zhōngwén zú zú xué le sān nián**
They studied Chinese for fully three years.

In this format the emphasis is more on the actual period of time and involves some degree of comment on the part of the speaker.

F Brief duration is generally expressed by the idiomatic expression 一下 **yīxià** ‘a moment’ or 一会儿 **yīhuìr** ‘a while’:

请你先坐一下。 **qǐng nǐ xiān zuò yīxià**
Please first take a seat for a moment.

请等一下。 **qǐng děng yīxià**
Please wait a minute.

咱们休息一会儿吧！ **zánmen xiūxi yīhuìr ba**
Let's rest for a while.

你能在这儿等我一下吗？ **nǐ néng zài zhèr děng wǒ yīxià ma**
(following a pronoun object)
Can you wait here a minute for me?

Note: 吧 **ba** is a sentence particle indicating a tentative request (see Unit 20).

If the verb has a noun object, the brief duration expression is likewise placed between the verb and the noun object but without 的 **de**:

我们在公园里散了一会儿/一下步。
wǒmen zài gōngyuán li sàn le yīhuìr/yīxià bù
We went for a walk in the park.

One does not usually say:

*我们在公园里散了一会儿的/一下的步。
wǒmen zài gōngyuán li sàn le yīhuìr de/yīxià de bù

An alternative way of expressing brief duration is to repeat the verb. If the verb is a monosyllable, 一 **yī** may be placed between the two verbs, or 了 **le** if a past action is referred to:

咱们研究研究。 **zánmen yánjiū yánjiū**
We'll look into/consider it.

请你在外面等一等。 **qǐng nǐ zài wàimian děng yī děng**
Please wait outside for a moment.

请大家看一看今天的报纸。 **qǐng dàjiā kàn yī kàn jīntiān de bàozhǐ**
Will everyone please have a look at today's newspaper.

姑娘笑了笑。 **gūniang xiào le xiào**

The girl gave a smile.

他点了点头。 **tā diǎn le diǎn tóu**

He nodded.

咱们去散散步。 **zánmen qù sàn sàn bù**

Let's go for a walk.

G A duration expression may be placed before the verb with 都 **dōu** and/or a negator to emphasize the fact that for that whole specified period of time something did/does/will happen all the time or did/does/will not happen at all.

她整天都在家里看管孩子。 **tā zhěngtiān dōu zài jiā li kānguǎn háizi**

All day she was looking after the children at home.

他一个礼拜(都)没抽烟了。 **tā yī gè lǐbài (dōu) méi chōuyān le**

He hasn't smoked for a whole week.

H Expressions indicating frequency, like those indicating duration, are placed immediately after the verb:

我们谈过两次。 **wǒmen tán guo liǎng cì**

We have talked to each other twice./We've had a couple of talks.

他们来了三趟。 **tāmen lái le sān tàng**

They came three times.

If the verb has a noun object, the frequency expression is placed between the verb and the noun object:

我复习了两遍课文。 **wǒ fùxí le liǎng biàn kèwén**

I revised my lessons twice.

她已经开过三次刀了。 **tā yǐjīng kāi guo sān cì dāo le**

She's been operated on three times already.

我们见过很多次面。 **wǒmen jiàn guo hěn duō cì miàn**

We have met many times.

Note: Unlike duration expressions, 的 **de** is not used with frequency expressions.

One cannot say:

*我复习了两遍的课文。 **wǒ fùxí le liǎng biàn de kèwén**

If the object is a noun indicating place, the frequency expression may also follow the object:

我去了银行两趟。 **wǒ qù le yínháng liǎng tàng**
I went to the bank twice. (*lit.* I made two trips to the bank.)

If the object is a personal (pro)noun the frequency expression must normally follow the pronoun:

队长找了你/你哥哥几次。 **duìzhǎng zhǎo le nǐ/nǐ gēge jǐ cì**
The team captain looked for you/your elder brother several times.

Note: 次 **cì** indicates the number of times (in general), 趟 **tàng**, the number of trips made and 遍 **biàn** the number of times from beginning to the end.

It is also possible, but not particularly common, for the frequency expression to follow a repeated verb (as with duration expressions discussed above):

我找他找了三次。 **wǒ zhǎo tā zhǎo le sān cì**
I looked for him three times.

他们去北京去过好几趟。 **tāmen qù běijīng qù guo hǎo jǐ tàng**
They have been to Beijing quite a number of times.

Like duration expressions, frequency expressions may also be placed immediately before the verb with 都 **dōu** and/or a negator to indicate that for all the specified time or times something did/does/will happen or did/does/will not happen:

他们每次都带孩子来。 **tāmen měi cì dōu dài háizi lái**
They brought (their) children each time.

队长三场比赛都没进球了。
duìzhǎng sān chǎng bǐsài dōu méi jìn qiú le
The team captain hasn't scored in the last three matches.

他十次都没中。 **tā shí cì dōu méi zhòng**
He hasn't won (a prize) in ten attempts. (*lit.* for ten times)

Exercise 14.1

Place the time/duration/frequency expression or expressions given in brackets, in the Chinese sentences below, to provide a correct translation of the English:

- 1 I am going to Beijing tomorrow.
我去北京。 **wǒ qù běijīng** (明天 **míngtiān** ‘tomorrow’)
- 2 I am going to Beijing for two days.
我去北京。 **wǒ qù běijīng** (两天 **liǎng tiān** ‘for two days’)
- 3 I went to Beijing last year.
我去了北京。 **wǒ qù le běijīng** (去年 **qùnián** ‘last year’)
- 4 I am going to Beijing in two days’ time.
我去北京。 **wǒ qù běijīng** (两天后 **liǎng tiān hòu** ‘two days later’)
- 5 I am going to Beijing before I get married.
我去北京。 **wǒ qù běijīng** (结婚前 **jiéhūn qián** ‘before getting married’)
- 6 I am going to Beijing twice next year.
我要去北京。 **wǒ yào qù běijīng**
(明年 **míngnián** ‘next year’; 两次 **liǎng cì** ‘twice’)
- 7 I have not been to Beijing for six months.
我没去北京了。 **wǒ méi qù běijīng le**
(半年 **bàn nián** ‘half a year; six months’)
- 8 I go to Beijing for a fortnight every summer.
我去北京。 **wǒ qù běijīng**
(半个月 **bàn gè yuè** ‘half a month; a fortnight’; 每年夏天 **měi nián xiàtiān** ‘every summer’ (*lit.* every year summer))

Exercise 14.2

Re-write the following sentences to include the time expressions given in brackets:

- 1 他去了上海。 **tā qù le shànghǎi**
He went to Shanghai. (the year before last)
- 2 妈妈离开英国。 **māma líkāi yīngguó**
My mother left Britain. (last month)
- 3 哥哥去游泳。 **gēge qù yóuyǒng**
(My) elder brother went swimming. (on Tuesday)
- 4 爷爷每天都看小说。 **yéye měi tiān dōu kàn xiǎoshuō**
Grandpa reads novels every day. (for 2 or 3 hours)
- 5 我在学习汉语。 **wǒ zài xuéxí hànyǔ**
I’m learning Chinese. (now)
- 6 我们全家去海滨。 **wǒmen quán jiā qù hǎibīn**
Our whole family are going to the seaside. (next weekend)
- 7 我们去跳舞。 **wǒmen qù tiàowǔ**
We go to a dance. (every Thursday evening)
- 8 小张去银行。 **xiǎo zhāng qù yínháng**
Xiao Zhang is going to the bank. (next Monday)
- 9 请在这儿等我。 **qǐng zài zhèr děng wǒ**
Please wait for me here. (for five minutes)

- 10 我去年去探望我父母。 **wǒ qùnián qù tànwàng wǒ fùmǔ**
I went to see my parents last year. (twice)

Exercise 14.3

Decide which of these sentences are incorrect and make corrections as required:

- 1 他们常常去看电影。 **tāmen chángcháng qù kàn diànyǐng**
They often go to see a film.
- 2 他在海里游了泳一会儿。 **tā zài hǎi li yóu le yǒng yīhuìr**
He swam in the sea for a while.
- 3 马上我上班。 **mǎshàng wǒ shàngbān**
I am going to work immediately.
- 4 音乐会刚刚开始。 **yīnyuèhuì gānggāng kāishǐ**
The concert has just started.
- 5 我们记得他永远。 **wǒmen jìde tā yǒngyuǎn** (永远 yǒngyuǎn 'for ever')
We will remember him for ever.
- 6 我爸爸总是很晚睡觉。 **wǒ bàba zǒngshì hěn wǎn shuìjiào**
(总是) zǒngshì 'always')
My father always goes to bed late.
- 7 我写了信已经了。 **wǒ xiě le xìn yǐjīng le**
I have already written the letter.
- 8 队长看见刚刚小李。 **duìzhǎng kànjiàn gānggāng xiǎo lǐ**
The team captain saw Xiao Li just now.
- 9 这对夫妇整年都在外地旅游。
zhèi duì fūfù zhěng nián dōu zài wàidì lǚyóu
This couple were away travelling all the year long.
- 10 她两次都来了。 **tā liǎng cì dōu lái le**
She turned up both times.
- 11 她两次来了这儿。 **tā liǎng cì lái le zhèr**
She's been here twice.
- 12 爷爷和奶奶今天半个钟头散步。
yéye hé nǎinai jīntiān bàn gè zhōngtóu sànbù
My grandparents went for a walk for half an hour today.

Exercise 14.4

Translate these sentences into English, paying attention to the way in which Chinese time expressions affect the tenses of the English verb.

- 1 今天早上我游了两个小时(的)泳。
jīntiān zǎoshang wǒ yóu le liǎng gè xiǎoshí (de) yǒng
- 2 我的英国朋友在中国住了两个月。
wǒ de yīngguó péngyou zài zhōngguó zhù le liǎng gè yuè
- 3 他们已经学了两年中文了。
tāmen yǐjīng xué le liǎng nián zhōngwén le
- 4 会议开始了四十分钟了。
huìyì kāishǐ le sì shí fēn zhōng le (会议 huìyì ‘meeting’)
- 5 明天下午我和同学去踢足球。
míngtiān xiàwǔ wǒ hé tóngxué qù tī zúqiú
(踢足球 **tī zúqiú** ‘to play football’ (*lit.* to kick football))
- 6 妹妹整晚都在那儿写信。
mèimei zhěng wǎn dōu zài nàr xiě xìn
(整晚 **zhěng wǎn** ‘the whole evening’)
- 7 王先生和他的妻子明年去中国度假。
wáng xiānsheng hé tā de qīzi míngnián qù zhōngguó dùjià
- 8 他去年六月毕业。
tā qùnián liùyuè bìyè (毕业 bìyè ‘to graduate’)
- 9 弟弟买了一双很漂亮的球鞋。
dìdì mǎi le yī shuāng hěn piàoliang de qiúxié (球鞋 qiúxié ‘sports shoes’)
- 10 我爸爸常常骑自行车去上班。
wǒ bàba chángcháng qí zìxíngchē qù shàngbān
- 11 我三次都在他家待了半个钟头。
wǒ sān cì dōu zài tā jiā dāi le bàn gè zhōngtóu
- 12 那天晚上她跳了三个钟头的舞。
nèi tiān wǎnshang tā tiào le sān gè zhōngtóu de wǔ

Exercise 14.5

Translate the following sentences into Chinese:

- 1 Did you try steamed bread when you were in China?
- 2 Can you wait outside for a minute?
- 3 Let’s sit in the park for a while.
- 4 Can you look after my child for a while?
- 5 We went strawberry-picking for an hour.
- 6 She glanced briefly at that photograph. (照片 **zhàopiàn** ‘photograph’)
- 7 Please have a look at today’s paper first.
- 8 He hasn’t touched alcohol for the whole year.
- 9 I have known him for three years.
- 10 I’ve already had a bath. (洗澡 **xǐzǎo** ‘to have a bath’)

Pattern and vocabulary drill 14.1

Formulate sentences after the given model:

person: I

time: 过去 **guòqù** 'in the past'

venue: 在一家银行 **zài yī jiā yínháng** 'in a bank'

action: work

我过去在一家银行上班/工作。

wǒ guòqù zài yī jiā yínháng shàngbān/gōngzuò

I used to work in a bank.

1 person: my neighbour

time: next month

venue: at home

action: 请客 **qǐngkè** *lit.* 'invite guests to dinner'

2 person: 我的一个中学同学 **wǒ de yī gè zhōngxué tóngxué** a secondary schoolmate of mine

time: next week

venue: 在一间教堂 **zài yī jiān jiàotáng** in a church

action: 举行婚礼 **jǔxíng hūnlǐ** get married (*lit.* hold a wedding ceremony)

3 person: I

time: next week

destination: 到教堂去 **dào jiàotáng qù** go to the church

action: 参加婚礼 **cānjiā hūnlǐ** attend the wedding ceremony

4 person: my (maternal) uncle

time: last year

destination: China

action: 参加奥林匹克运动会 **cānjiā àolínpǐkè yùndònghuì** take part in the Olympic Games

5 persons: my elder sister and her boyfriend

time: last month

destination: Europe

action: spend their holidays

6 persons: my grandpa and grandma

time: next year

destination: Beijing

action: visit their Chinese friends

7 person: my Chinese teacher

time: six months ago

destination: 到英国来 **dào yīngguó lái** come to Britain

action: see me

8 person: my paternal aunt's husband

time: tomorrow morning

destination: hospital
action: have an injection

- 9 persons: my two fellow students
time: next Saturday
venue: in London
action: watch a football match
- 10 persons: my younger brother and I
time: last Sunday
venue: in a park near the university
action: learn T'ai Chi

Pattern and vocabulary drill 14.2

Formulate sentences after the given model:

person: I
time: yesterday afternoon
venue: in the university library
action: read

duration: two hours and a half

我昨天下午在大学图书馆看了两个半小时/钟头的书。

wǒ zuótiān xiàwǔ zài dàxué túshūguǎn kàn le liǎng gè bàn xiǎoshí/zhōngtóu de shū

- 1 person: 有一个英国运动员 **yǒu (yī) gè yīngguó yùndòngyuán**
a British athlete
general time: last summer
specific time: 在训练中 **zài xùnliàn zhōng** during training
action: 打破了自己的记录 **dǎpò le zìjǐ de jìlù** break his/her own record
frequency: three times
- 2 person: a bank manager
time: last March
venue: in China
action: stay
duration: two weeks
- 3 person: a friend of mine
time: three years ago
venue: in Britain
action: 学电脑 **xué diànnǎo** learn computing
duration: two months
- 4 person: my younger brother
time: next autumn
destination: China

14Verbs
and time
expres-
sions

- action: learn Chinese
duration: two months and a half
- 5 person: I
time: the day before yesterday
venue: in the street
action: ride a bicycle
duration: half an hour
- 6 person: a Chinese chef
time: a year and a half ago
venue: 在电视上 **zài diànshì shàng** on television
action: 表演了/演示了 **biǎoyǎn le/yǎnshì le** demonstrated (his skills)
frequency: many times
- 7 persons: my parents
time: yesterday evening
venue: at the railway station
action: wait for me
duration: 20 minutes
- 8 person: my uncle (i.e father's younger brother)
time: this morning
venue: on the beach
action: sunbathe
duration: an hour and a half
- 9 persons: we (the speaker and the listener)
time: tomorrow after school
destination: park
action: go for a walk
duration: an hour
- 10 person: my elder brother
time: every week
venue: in the post office
action: work
duration: two days

Pattern and vocabulary drill 14.3

Translate the following sentences into Chinese, making use of the rhetorical effect of placing a duration or frequency expression before the verb and being aware of the need for the sentence particle 了 **le**, where appropriate, to highlight the changed or changing situation:

- 1 The patient did not eat anything for the last three days.
- 2 I haven't seen my doctor even once for the last two years.
- 3 I stayed at my parents' home the whole summer.

- 4 For the whole month she looked after her children at home.
- 5 He has not smoked for a year now.
- 6 I haven't touched beer for a whole week now.
- 7 He brought a bottle of wine with him every time he came.
- 8 I haven't bumped into him for the last few years.
- 9 He goes to Beijing once a year.
- 10 They see each other twice a week.

UNIT FIFTEEN

Verbs and aspect markers

A Although as indicated in Unit 14 Chinese verbs do not express tense they are often linked with an aspect marker which may indicate the completion, experience, continuation, etc. of an action. With the exception of 在 **zài** (see below) aspect markers are placed directly after the verb.

The most common aspect markers are:

了	le	completed action
过	guo	past experience
在	zài	an action in progress
着	zhe	a continuous state resulting from an action/an accompanying action
起来	qǐlái	an action/a state which has just started
下去	xiàqù	an action which is to be continued
下来	xiàlái	an action/a state which is gradually changing into non-action or a quieter state

B 了 **le** indicates that the action of the verb has been completed. It therefore often occurs in narrative sentences, where the marking of an action as being completed becomes important. However, a verb with 了 **le** is naturally followed by a noun which is the subject/initiator's premeditated goal, that is, something which the subject/initiator sets out to do. This means that all nouns that occur after 了 **le** on their own are bound to be of definite reference unless they are specified as indefinite. For example,

(i) nouns that occur after 了 **le** on their own:

*我写了信... **wǒ xiě le xìn**

I wrote the letter...

*他买了苹果... **tā mǎi le píngguǒ**

He bought the apples...

(ii) nouns that occur after 了 **le** with some kind of extension:

我写了(一)封信。 **wǒ xiě le (yī) fēng xìn**
I wrote a letter.

他买了很多苹果。 **tā mǎi le hěn duō píngguǒ**
He bought a lot of apples.

As we can see from the sentences in (ii), 信 **xìn** is modified by (一)封 **(yī)fēng** and 苹果 **píngguǒ** by 很多 **hěn duō**. If 了 **le** is followed by an unmodified noun as in (i), for example: *我写了信。 **wǒ xiě le xìn** or *他买了苹果。 **tā mǎi le píngguǒ**, the sentence will sound incomplete and it cannot stand on its own.

Grammatically, there are two ways to make such a sentence sound complete: one is to end the sentence with the particle 了 **le**; the other is to add another clause to round it off:

1 Add the sentence particle 了 **le**

我写了信了。 **wǒ xiě le xìn le** I have finished writing
the letter(s).

我买了苹果了。 **wǒ mǎi le píngguǒ le** I have bought the apples
(we need).

2 Add another verb or verb phrase

我写了信就去寄信了。 **wǒ xiě le xìn jiù qù jì xìn le**
As soon as I had written the letter, I went to post it.

我买了苹果就回家了。 **wǒ mǎi le píngguǒ jiù huí jiā le**
I went home as soon as I had bought the apples.

Completed action of course in most cases refers to something completed in the past and an English translation would naturally use the present perfect tense or the simple past (or even past perfect) tense. A completed action, however, may take place in the future, as the following examples show:

我下了班就去找你。 **wǒ xià le bān jiù qù zhǎo nǐ**
When I finish work/have come off work I will come (*lit.* go) and see you.

请你看了医生就去打针。 **qǐng nǐ kàn le yīshēng jiù qù dǎzhēn**
When you have seen the doctor, please go and have the injection.

Note 1: 就 **jiù** is usually placed before the verb in the second part of the sentence and implies that the action of this verb follows from the action of the verb in the first part of the sentence.

Note 2: 了 **le** is also used after adjectives, intransitive verbs or verbs indicating or incorporating complements of results to indicate a situation or state which has emerged or is emerging. This use of 了 **le**, particularly when it occurs at the end of a statement, links with the sentence particle 了 **le** at the end of sentences to indicate a change of state as the speaker sees it. (For a full discussion of sentence 了 **le** see *Intermediate Chinese*, Unit 1.)

爷爷的病好了。 **yéye de bìng hǎo le** (adjective)

Grandpa is well again.

我的表停了。 **wǒ de biǎo tíng le** (intransitive verb)

My watch has stopped.

他的裤子破了。 **tā de kùzi pò le** (verb indicating result)

His trousers are torn.

弟弟的衣服全淋湿了。 **dìdi de yīfu quán lín shī le** (verb incorporating result complement)

(My) younger brother got soaked.

C 过 **guo** implies past experience. It occurs often in expository sentences, where statements are of a factual nature:

我吃过饺子。 **wǒ chī guo jiǎozi**

I have had (tried) Chinese dumplings before.

我妹妹去过长城。 **wǒ mèimei qù guo chángchéng**

My younger sister has been to the Great Wall.

这三个月我只见过经理一次。 **zhè sān gè yuè wǒ zhǐ jiàn guo jīnglǐ yī cì**

I have seen the manager only once in the last three months.

Note: We can see that the experience indicated by *guo* does not necessarily refer to what has been experienced in one's lifetime. It may also refer to a specified period – e.g. 'the last three months' as in the last example. Likewise, the common enquiry or greeting: 你吃过饭没有? **nǐ chī guo fàn méiyǒu** 'Have you eaten?' refers in the speaker's mind to the immediate past. The distinction between

completed action 了 **le** and experience 过 **guo** can be seen from the following:

他们去了中国了。 **tāmen qù le zhōngguó le**
They have gone to China (and they are in China now).

他们去过中国。 **tāmen qù guo zhōngguó**
They have been to China before (and they are now back here or somewhere else).

过 **guo** like 了 **le**, as we have seen in Unit 2, is often associated with yes/no questions using 没有 **méiyǒu**:

你吃了饺子没有？ **nǐ chī le jiǎozi méiyǒu**
Have you tried the Chinese dumplings?

你吃过饺子没有？ **nǐ chī guo jiǎozi méiyǒu**
Have you ever tried Chinese dumplings before?

D (正)在 (**zhèng**)**zài**, which precedes the verb, indicates that an action is in progress:

爸爸(正)在修(理)汽车。 **bàba (zhèng)zài xiū(lǐ) qìchē** Father is repairing his car.

他们(正)在开会。 **tāmen (zhèng)zài kāihuì** They are having a meeting.

Note 1: If a location phrase with 在 **zài** precedes the verb the aspect marker 在 **zài** is not needed:

他(正)在花园里割草。 **tā (zhèng)zài huāyuán li gē cǎo**
He is/was in the garden mowing the grass.

One does not say:

* 他(正)在在花园里割草。 **tā (zhèng)zài zài huāyuán li gē cǎo**
(*lit.* He is/was mowing the grass in the garden.)

Note 2: Like 了 **le**, (正)在 (**zhèng**)**zài** itself carries no indication of tense, since the action may be in progress at any time, in the past, present or future (other particles indicating progress will be discussed in *Intermediate Chinese*):

她现在(正)在学习中文。 **tā xiànzài (zhèng)zài xuéxí zhōngwén**
She is studying Chinese now.

她那年(正)在学习中文。 **tā nèi nián (zhèng)zài xuéxí zhōngwén**
She was studying Chinese that year.

明天早上她一定在学习中文。 **míngtiān zǎoshang tā yīdìng zài xuéxí zhōngwén**
She'll certainly be studying Chinese tomorrow morning.

E 着 **zhe** conveys either

- (i) a continuous state resulting from an action:

她穿着一条红裙子。 **tā chuān zhe yī tiáo hóng qúnzi**
She is/was wearing a red skirt.

他戴着一顶白帽子。 **tā dài zhe yī dǐng bái màozi**
He is/was wearing a white hat.

(The action of 'putting on' the skirt or the hat results in the 'wearing' of them.)

墙上挂着一幅山水画。 **qiáng shàng guà zhe yī fú shānshuǐ huà**
A Chinese landscape painting is hanging on the wall. (*lit.* On the wall is hanging a Chinese landscape painting.)
(The action of 'hanging a picture' results in the picture 'being hung'.)

or

- (ii) an accompanying action (an action which takes place at the same time as another action):

他们坐着聊天。 **tāmen zuò zhe liáotiān**
They sit/sat chatting./They are/were sitting there chatting.

她笑着点了点头。 **tā xiào zhe diǎn le diǎn tóu**
She nodded smiling.

他们哼着歌儿走了进来。 **tāmen hēng zhe gē er zǒu le jìn lái**
They came in humming a tune.

As we can see from the above illustrations, if (正)在 (**zhèng**)zài occurs more often in narrative sentences, recounting an action in progress, 着 **zhe** occurs more often in descriptive sentences, where it associates an action with a manner of execution or a resultant state.

F 起来 **qǐlái** implies that an action or state has just started:

他们吵起来了。 **tāmen chǎo qǐlái le**
They (have) started to quarrel.

她哭起来了。 **tā kū qǐlái le**
She (has) started crying.

天冷起来了。 **tiān lěng qǐlái le**
It began/has begun to get colder.

When an object follows the verb, it is placed between 起 **qǐ** and 来 **lái**:

他们打起架来了。 **tāmen dǎ qǐ jià lái le**
They (have) started fighting.

他们唱起歌来了。 **tāmen chàng qǐ gē lái le**
They (have) started to sing.

外面下起雨来了。 **wàimian xià qǐ yǔ lái le**
It began/has begun to rain (outside).

One cannot say:

*打架起来 **dǎjià qǐlái**/*打起来架 **dǎ qǐlái jià** (*lit.* start/have started fighting)

*唱歌起来 **chànggē qǐlái** (*lit.* start/have started singing)

G 下去 **xiàqù** indicates the continuation of an action:

你说下去！ **nǐ shuō xiàqù** Go on!/Carry on
(talking)!

他们会待下去吗？ **tāmen huì dāi xiàqù ma** Will they stay on?

下去 **xiàqù** is not used where the verb has an object.

One cannot say:

*你说下话去。 **nǐ shuō xià huà qù**/*你说话下去。 **nǐ shuō huà xiàqù**
(*lit.* Go on!/Carry on (talking)!)

H 下来 **xiàlái** implies that an action has gradually ceased or subsided or a situation has become more settled or quiet:

车停下来了。 **chē tíng xiàlái le**
The car came to a stop.
(originally, the car was moving.)

15

Verbs and aspect markers

我想在这儿住下来。 **wǒ xiǎng zài zhèr zhù xiàlái**
I would like to settle down here.
(originally, I was always on the move)

大家都静下来了。 **dàjiā dōu jìng xiàlái le**
Everybody has become quiet.
(originally there was a lot of noise)

As with 起来 **qǐlái**, if the verb has an object, the object comes between 下 **xià** and 来 **lái**:

他停下车来。 **tā tíng xià chē lái**
He brought the car to a stop.

她安下心来。 **tā ān xià xīn lái**
She feels at ease (now)./She is no longer worried.

Note: In most of the examples for 起来 **qǐlái** and 下来 **xiàlái**, 了 **le** occurs at the end of the sentence. Here 了 **le** is functioning as a sentence particle, not an aspect marker, and implies a change of circumstance (see *Intermediate Chinese*, Unit 1). For further uses of 起来 **qǐlái**, 下去 **xiàqù** and 下来 **xiàlái** as directional complements, see Unit 21.

Exercise 15.1

Add 着 **zhe**, 了 **le**, 过 **guo** or 在 **zài** to the sentences below to complete the translation of the English in each case. In some cases there may be more than one possibility:

- 1 他 _____ 唱歌。 **tā _____ chànggē**
He is singing.
- 2 爷爷戴 _____ 一副眼镜。 **yéye dài _____ yī fù yǎnjìng**
Grandpa is wearing a pair of glasses.
- 3 我见 _____ 大熊猫。 **wǒ jiàn _____ dà xióngmāo**
I have seen a giant panda.
- 4 她笑 _____ 说话。 **tā xiào _____ shuōhuà**
She spoke smiling.
- 5 他背 _____ 背包去爬山。 **tā bēi _____ bēibāo qù pá shān**
He went climbing with a rucksack on his back.
- 6 我丢 _____ 一把钥匙。 **wǒ diū _____ yī bǎ yàoshi**
I (have) lost a key.

- 7 我朋友喝 _____ 中国啤酒。 **wǒ péngyou hē _____ zhōngguó píjiǔ**
My friend has tried Chinese beer.
- 8 老师 _____ 讲解课文。 **lǎoshī _____ jiǎngjiě kèwén**
The teacher is explaining the text.
- 9 姐姐买 _____ 一双皮鞋。 **jiějie mǎi _____ yī shuāng píxié**
(My) elder sister bought a pair of leather shoes.
- 10 他们去 _____ 北京。 **tāmen qù _____ běijīng**
They have been to Beijing.
- 11 世界 _____ 变化。 **shìjiè _____ biànhuà**
The world is changing.
- 12 谁 _____ 帮你的忙？ **shéi/shuí _____ bāng nǐ de máng**
Who is helping you?
- 13 她 _____ 减肥。 **tā _____ jiǎnféi**
She is slimming/trying to lose weight.
- 14 我已经吃 _____ 晚饭了。 **wǒ yǐjīng chī _____ wǎnfàn le**
I've already had dinner.
- 15 小王刚生 _____ 一个孩子。
xiǎo wáng gāng shēng _____ yī gè hái zi
Xiao Wang has just had a baby.

Exercise 15.2

Translate the following sentences into Chinese, paying particular attention to the use of appropriate aspect markers:

- 1 He was wiping the window. (擦窗(户) **cā chuāng(hu)** 'to wipe the window')
- 2 They have been here.
- 3 I was watering the flowers. (浇 **jiāo** 'to water')
- 4 My friend is drinking beer.
- 5 The teacher was standing teaching the lesson.
(站 **zhàn** 'to stand', 讲课 **jiǎngkè** 'to teach the lesson')
- 6 He started dancing.
- 7 He is driving.
- 8 She bought a pair of shoes. (一双 **yī shuāng** 'a pair of')
- 9 Grandfather is watching television.
(看电视 **kàn diànshì** 'to watch television')
- 10 Mother is wearing a beautiful hat.

Exercise 15.3

Complete these sentences with either 起来 **qǐlái**, 下去 **xiàqù** or 下来 **xiàlái**, according to the English translation:

15

Verbs and aspect markers

- 1 他们唱 _____ 了。 **tāmen chàng _____ le**
They began to sing.
- 2 火车停 _____ 了。 **huǒchē tíng _____ le**
The train came to a halt.
- 3 你们做 _____ 吧。 **nǐmen zuò _____ ba**
Carry on (with what you are doing).
- 4 天气热 _____ 了。 **tiānqì rè _____ le**
The weather got warmer.
- 5 大家静 _____ 了。 **dàjiā jìng _____ le**
Everyone quietened down.
- 6 请你说 _____ ! **qǐng nǐ shuō _____**
Please go on!
- 7 小孩哭 _____ 了。 **xiǎohái kū _____ le**
The child began to cry.
- 8 两条运河连 _____ 了。 **liǎng tiáo yùnhé lián _____ le**
The two canals were connected together.
- 9 这件事我想 _____ 了。 **zhèjiàn shì wǒ xiǎng _____ le**
I recalled this matter.
- 10 计划定 _____ 了。 **jìhuà dìng _____ le**
The plan was decided upon.

Exercise 15.4

Decide which of the following Chinese phrases are wrong and make corrections as necessary:

- 1 讲下来 **jiǎng xiàlái** Carry on (with your story)!
- 2 学起习来 **xué qǐ xí lái** begin to study
- 3 写起来信 **xiě qǐlái xìn** start to write letters
- 4 学下来 **xué xiàlái** carry on learning
- 5 雨停下来了 **yǔ tíng xiàlái le** the rain stopped
- 6 吵起来架 **chǎo qǐlái jià** start quarrelling
- 7 游泳起来 **yóuyǒng qǐlái** start swimming
- 8 暖和起来 **nuǎnhuo qǐlái** get warmer
- 9 聪明下来 **cōngmíng xiàlái** become more intelligent
- 10 慢下来 **màn xiàlái** gradually become slower

Pattern and vocabulary drill 15.1

Form sentences with the 12 nouns and verbs/adjectives below using 起来 **qǐlái** to imply that the action or state specified by the verb has just started. Sentence particle 了 **le** must be added in each case to indicate

that a new situation has emerged or begun. Translate the resultant sentences into English.

- | | |
|----------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 妹妹 mèimei | 哭 kū |
| 2 弟弟 dìdi | 笑 xiào |
| 3 同学们 tóngxuémen | 唱歌 chàngē |
| 4 爸爸和妈妈 bàba hé māma | 跳舞 tiàowǔ |
| 5 天 tiān | 冷 lěng |
| 6 天 tiān | 下雨 xià yǔ |
| 7 哥哥 gēge | 学中文 xué zhōngwén |
| 8 姐姐 jiějie | 穿红裙子 chuān hóng qúnzi |
| 9 天气 tiānqì | 热 rè |
| 10 白天 báitiān | 长 cháng |
| 11 老李和小李 lǎo lǐ hé xiǎo lǐ | 吵 chǎo |
| 12 那个孩子 nèi gè háizi | 抽烟 chōuyān |

Pattern and vocabulary drill 15.2

The following sentences feature the aspect markers 着 **zhe** and 在 **zài**. Indicate in each case whether the sentence presents (a) a narrative, recounting an action, or (b) a description. If it is (b), say whether it describes a manner of execution or a resultant state.

- 舅舅戴着一副黑眼镜/太阳镜。jiùjiu dài zhe yī fù hēiyǎnjìng/tàiyángjìng (黑眼镜/太阳镜 hēiyǎnjìng/tàiyángjìng 'sunglasses')
- 妹妹哭着走了进来。mèimei kū zhe zǒu le jìn lái
- 爸爸和叔叔正在谈天。bàba hé shūshu zhèngzài tán tiān
- 弟弟在沙发上躺着。dìdi zài shāfā shàng tǎng zhe
- 妈妈在厨房里做饭。māma zài chúfáng li zuò fàn
- 舅母穿着一双黑皮鞋。jiùmǔ chuān zhe yī shuāng hēi píxié
- 外面在下雨。wàimian zài xià yǔ
- 爷爷在花园里坐着。yéye zài huāyuán li zuò zhe
- 姐姐在房间里写信。jiějie zài fángjiān li xiě xìn
- 爸爸说着笑了起来。bàba shuō zhe xiào le qǐ lái

Pattern and vocabulary drill 15.3

Translate the following sentences into English and point out for each sentence whether 起来 **qǐ lái**, 下来 **xià lái**, or 下去 **xià qù** are indicative of time or of space:

15

Verbs and
aspect
markers

- 1 孩子们都站了起来。 **háizimen dōu zhàn le qǐlái**
- 2 女士们都坐了下来。 **nǚshìmen dōu zuò le xiàlái**
- 3 她们坐着聊起天来。 **tāmen zuò zhe liáo qǐ tiān lái**
- 4 这时候外面下起雪来了。 **zhè shíhòu wàimian xià qǐ xuě lái le**
- 5 这件事我记不起来了。 **zhè jiàn shì wǒ jì bu qǐlái le** (记 jì ‘to recall’)
- 6 妹妹说着哭了起来。她说不下去了。 **mèimei shuō zhe kū le qǐlái | tā shuō bu xiàqù le**
- 7 我们在那儿住了下来。 **wǒmen zài nàr zhù le xiàlái**
- 8 这时候老师走了进来。同学们都静下来了。 **zhè shíhòu lǎoshī zǒu le jìnlái | tóngxuémen dōu jìng xiàlái le**
- 9 车到了车站就停了下来。个个乘客都走下车来。 **chē dào le chēzhàn jiù tíng le xiàlái | gègè chéngkè dōu zǒu xià chē lái**
- 10 哥哥拿起一本书来。他看着笑了起来，再也看不下去了。 **gēge ná qǐ yī běn shū lái | tā kàn zhe xiào le qǐlái | zài yě kàn bu xiàqù le** (拿 ná ‘to hold in hand’; 再也 zài yě ‘ever again, any more’; 看不下去 kàn bù xiàqù ‘could no longer carry on reading’)

UNIT SIXTEEN

Modal verbs

Modal verbs in Chinese are very much like those in English (e.g. can, must, should, etc.). They are placed directly before other verbs to indicate particular moods or attitudes. They are generally negated by 不 **bù**.

A 要 **yào** and 想 **xiǎng** are used to express wishes or desires:

我要/想喝茶。 **wǒ yào/xiǎng hē bēi chá**

I would like a cup of tea. (*lit.* I would like to drink a cup of tea.)

我要/想喝咖啡，不要/想喝茶。

wǒ yào/xiǎng hē kāfēi | bù yào/xiǎng hē chá

I'd like coffee not tea. (*lit.* I would like to drink coffee not tea.)

你要/想学中文/英文吗？ **nǐ yào/xiǎng xué zhōngwén/yīngwén ma**

Do you want/Are you going to learn Chinese/English?

Note: In an instruction or command 要 **yào** used with a second-person pronoun can only express obligation:

你要早点回来。 **nǐ yào zǎo diǎn huí lái**

You must come back early.

你要小心。 **nǐ yào xiǎoxīn**

You must take care.

不要对我撒谎！ **bù yào duì wǒ sāhuǎng**

You mustn't lie to me./Don't lie to me.

B 愿意 **yuànyì** and 肯 **kěn** both indicate 'willingness':

他肯/愿意帮助你吗？ **tā kěn/yuànyì bāngzhù nǐ ma**

Is he willing to help you?

她不肯/愿意认错。 **tā bù kěn/yuànyì rèn cuò**

She is unwilling to admit her mistakes.

C 敢 **gǎn** ‘dare’:

他敢提出自己的看法。 **tā gǎn tíchū zìjǐ de kànfǎ**
He dares/dared to put forward his own ideas.

我不敢去见她。 **wǒ bù gǎn qù jiàn tā**
I daren’t go and see her.

你敢？ **nǐ gǎn**
Dare you (do it)?

你敢打他？ **nǐ gǎn dǎ tā**
Dare you hit him?

D (应)该 **(yīng)gāi** ‘ought to’ and 得 **děi** ‘have to’:

你(应)该睡了/起床了。 **nǐ (yīng)gāi shuì le/qǐchuáng le**
You ought to go to bed/get up.

我得走了。 **wǒ děi zǒu le**
I must be off now.

Negative sentences with (应)该 **(yīng)gāi**, on the other hand, imply reproach or blame for something that has already happened, and those with 不得 **bù dé** indicate (official) prohibition:

你不该告诉他。 **nǐ bù gāi gàosu tā**
You shouldn’t have told him.

你不该骂她。 **nǐ bù gāi mà tā**
You shouldn’t have scolded her.

闲人不得入内。 **xiánrén bù dé rù nèi**
No admittance./Admittance to staff only. (*lit.* casual people shouldn’t enter)

Note: Note that 不得 **bù dé** is used only for official prohibition. The negative equivalent for the colloquial 得 **děi** ‘must’ is in fact 不用 **bù yòng** ‘no need’ or 不必 **bù bì** ‘no need’.

E 必须 **bìxū** ‘must; have to’ is, strictly speaking, an adverb but is used like a modal verb:

明天我必须到达那儿。 **míngtiān wǒ bìxū dàodá nàr**
I must get there by tomorrow.

我们今天必须完成这个工作。

wǒmen jīntiān bìxū wánchéng zhèi gè gōngzuò

We must finish this work today.

Note: As 必须 **bìxū** is an adverb, it does not have a negative form, and 不必 **bù bì**/不用 **bù yòng** ‘need not’ are used instead:

你不必/不用去了。 **nǐ bù bì/bù yòng qù le**

You needn't go. (*lit.* There is no need for you to go.)

F 能 **néng** ‘can; may; be able to; be capable of’ and 可以 **kěyǐ** ‘can; may’ to some extent overlap in function:

你现在可以走了。 **nǐ xiànzài kěyǐ zǒu le**

You may leave/can go now.

他十分钟能跑一英里。 **tā shí fēn zhōng néng pǎo yī yīnglǐ**

He can run a mile in ten minutes.

我能进来吗？ **wǒ néng jìn lái ma**

May I come in?

Note: 可以 **kěyǐ** implies permission from an outside authority, whereas 能 **néng** refers to the ability to do something in particular circumstances:

你不可以在这儿吸烟/抽烟。

nǐ bù kěyǐ zài zhèr xīyān/chōuyān

You can't smoke here.

我昨晚不能来。 **wǒ zuó wǎn bù néng lái**

I wasn't able to come last night [because something cropped up, I missed the train, etc.].

G 会 **huì** indicates either probability: ‘be likely to; be sure to’ or inherent or acquired ability/skill: ‘can; be able to; be good at; be skilful in’:

明天会下雨/下雪吗？ **míngtiān huì xià yǔ/xià xuě ma**

Will it rain/snow tomorrow? (probability)

你会说中文吗？ **nǐ huì shuō zhōngwén ma**

Can you speak Chinese? (ability)

Note: The difference between 会 **huì** and 能 **néng** which both mean 'can; be able to' can be illustrated by the following:

我会开车，但是现在喝了酒，我不能开。

wǒ huì kāichē | dànshì xiànzài hē le jiǔ | wǒ bù néng kāi

I can drive, but, as I have been drinking, I can't.

我会喝酒，但是现在要开车，我不能喝。

wǒ huì hē jiǔ | dànshì xiànzài yào kāichē, wǒ bù néng hē

I can drink, but, as I am going to drive, I can't have one.

Exercise 16.1

Replace 要 **yào** with 想 **xiǎng** in the following where it is appropriate to do so:

- 1 我要休息一会儿。 **wǒ yào xiūxi yīhuìr**
I would like to have a rest.
- 2 你要早点儿起床。 **nǐ yào zǎo diǎnr qǐchuáng**
You must get up early.
- 3 他要去中国旅游。 **tā yào qù zhōngguó lǚyóu**
He wants to go travelling in China.
- 4 你要喝点儿什么？ **nǐ yào hē diǎnr shénme**
What would you like to drink?
- 5 你要好好儿学习。 **nǐ yào hǎohǎor xuéxí**
You must study hard.
- 6 妈妈要买一件外套。 **māma yào mǎi yī jiàn wàitào**
Mother would like to buy a coat.

Exercise 16.2

Choose the appropriate modal verb for the Chinese sentences so that they match the English translations:

- 1 你 _____ 帮我的忙吗？ **nǐ _____ bāng wǒ de máng ma**
Can you help me?
a 会 **huì** b 能 **néng** c 要 **yào**
- 2 今晚 _____ 刮风吗？ **jīn wǎn _____ guā fēng ma**
Is it going to be windy tonight?
a 会 **huì** b 能 **néng** c 要 **yào**

3 很晚了。我 _____ 回家了。 **hěn wǎn le | wǒ _____ huí jiā le**
It's getting very late. I must go home now.

a 要 yào b 该 gāi c 可以 kěyǐ

4 对不起。你不 _____ 在这儿抽烟。
duìbuqǐ | nǐ bù _____ zài zhèr chōuyān
I'm sorry. You can't smoke here.

a 要 yào b 能 néng c 会 huì

5 我 _____ _____ 在这儿停车吗？
wǒ _____ zài zhèr tíng chē ma
May I park my car here?

a 可以 kěyǐ b 必须 bìxū c 应该 yīnggāi

6 他 _____ 说中文，可是他现在不 _____ 说。
tā _____ shuō zhōngwén | kěshì tā xiànzài bù _____ shuō
He can speak Chinese, but he's not willing to speak it at this moment.

a 能 néng; 要 yào b 会 huì; 肯 kěn c 会 huì; 能 néng

7 我感冒了。我今天 _____ _____ 呆/待在家里。
wǒ gǎnmào le | wǒ jīntiān _____ dāi/dāi zài jiā li
I have a cold. I should stay at home today.

a 必须 bìxū b 应该 yīnggāi c 愿意 yuànyì

8 她搭公共汽车来。你不 _____ 去接她了。
tā dā gōnggòng qìchē lái | nǐ bù _____ qù jiē tā le
She'll come by bus. You don't have to go and meet her.

a 得 děi b 必 bì c 该 gāi

Exercise 16.3

Add modal verbs with negatives, where necessary, to the Chinese sentences below so that they are a correct translation of the English:

- 1 He is not willing to do this.
他 _____ _____ 做这件事。
tā _____ _____ zuò zhè jiàn shì

- 2 She doesn't dare to go climbing at night.
她 _____ 在夜里爬山。 **tā** _____ **zài yè li pá shān**
- 3 You may go home now.
你现在 _____ 回家了。 **nǐ xiànzài** _____ **huí jiā le**
- 4 He is not willing to admit his mistakes.
他 _____ 认错。 **tā** _____ **rèncuò**
- 5 I wouldn't want to write a novel.
我 _____ 写小说。 **wǒ** _____ **xiě xiǎoshuō**
- 6 She wants to go and see her friend in hospital.
她 _____ 去医院看朋友 **tā** _____ **qù yīyuàn kàn péngyou**
- 7 Don't you dare ask her?
你 _____ 问她吗? **nǐ** _____ **wèn tā ma**
- 8 I have to tell her the truth about the matter.
我 _____ 告诉她事情的真相。 **wǒ** _____ **gàosu tā shìqing de zhēnxiàng**
- 9 You don't have to go to school.
你今天 _____ 去上学。 **nǐ jīntiān** _____ **qù shàngxué**
- 10 I ought to phone her this evening.
今晚我 _____ 给她打电话。 **jīn wǎn wǒ** _____ **gěi tā dǎ diànhuà**
- 11 We must call the doctor.
我们 _____ 叫医生。 **wǒmen** _____ **jiào yīshēng**
- 12 The prize shouldn't have gone to him/been his.
这个奖 _____ 是他的。 **zhèi gè jiǎng** _____ **shì tā de**
- 13 Can I bring my cat?
我 _____ 带猫来吗? **wǒ** _____ **dài māo lái ma**
- 14 Do you know how to use chopsticks?
你 _____ 用筷子吗? **nǐ** _____ **yòng kuàizi ma**
- 15 Can the patient go jogging?
病人 _____ 去跑步吗? **bìngrén** _____ **qù pǎobù ma**
- 16 Please may I have a piece of cake.
请问, 我 _____ 吃一块蛋糕吗?
qǐng wèn | wǒ _____ **chī yī kuài dànɡāo ma**
- 17 Mr Wang was ill and wasn't able to come to class.
王老师病了, _____ 来上课。
wáng lǎoshī bìng le | _____ **lái shàngkè**
- 18 Will it snow tomorrow?
明天 _____ 下雪吗? **míngtiān** _____ **xià xuě ma**
- 19 He can swim.
他 _____ 游泳。 **tā** _____ **yóuyǒng**
- 20 I can dance, but the floor was too slippery so I couldn't dance on it.
我 _____ 跳舞, 但是地板太滑, 我 _____ 在上面跳舞。
wǒ _____ **tiàowǔ | dànshì dìbǎn tài huá | wǒ** _____ **zài shàngmian tiàowǔ**

- 21 You can speak both English and Chinese so you can be our interpreter.
你 _____ 说英语和汉语，你 _____ 做我们的翻译。
nǐ _____ shuō yīngyǔ hé hànyǔ | nǐ _____ zuò wǒmen de fānyì
- 22 You can't cheat me.
你 _____ 欺骗我。 **nǐ _____ qīpiàn wǒ**
- 23 I shall be able to come tomorrow.
明天我 _____ 来。 **míngtiān wǒ _____ lái**
- 24 This girl is small but she can eat a lot.
这个女孩子很小，但是她 _____ 吃很多。
zhèi gè nǚ hái zi hěn xiǎo | dàn shì tā _____ chī hěn duō
- 25 Do you know how to repair cars?
你 _____ 修理汽车吗？ **nǐ _____ xiūlǐ qìchē ma**
- 26 Is Manager Li likely to turn up tomorrow?
李经理明天 _____ 来吗？ **lǐ jīnglǐ míngtiān _____ lái ma**
- 27 Can you wait for me here?
你 _____ 在这儿等我吗？ **nǐ _____ zài zhèr děng wǒ ma**
- 28 You shouldn't quarrel (with each other).
你们 _____ 吵架。 **nǐmen _____ chǎojià**

Exercise 16.4

Translate the following sentences into Chinese:

- 1 Do you know how to drive?
- 2 Is it likely to rain at the weekend?
- 3 Do you want to go and visit your parents?
- 4 You must go and revise your lessons.
- 5 Can we go to the beach this week?
- 6 I must remember the time of the concert.
- 7 You shouldn't have come to blows (with each other).
- 8 May I take a holiday next March?
- 9 Are you willing to help him?
- 10 She daren't fly in a plane.

Pattern and vocabulary drill 16.1

Translate the following sentences into English to show that you understand the meanings of all the modal verbs in their particular contexts:

- 1 他肯吗？ **tā kěn ma**
- 2 你明天要进城吗？ **nǐ míngtiān yào jìn chéng ma**
- 3 你要劝劝他。 **nǐ yào quàn quàn tā**

- 4 你会打太极拳吗？ **nǐ huì dǎ tàijíquán ma**
- 5 不要骗人！ **bù yào piàn rén**
- 6 谁能帮我一下忙？ **shuí néng bāng wǒ yíxià máng ma**
- 7 这儿有人会说英文吗？ **zhèr yǒu rén huì shuō yīngwén ma**
- 8 你能帮我翻译这句话吗？ **nǐ néng bāng wǒ fānyì zhè jù huà ma**
- 9 我该走了。 **wǒ gāi zǒu le**
- 10 你该休息了。 **nǐ gāi xiūxi le**
- 11 谁愿意留下来？ **shuí yuànyì liú xiàlái**
- 12 我们明天必须回去。 **wǒmen míngtiān bìxū huí qù**
- 13 (Mother to a child) 你下次还敢撒谎吗！ **nǐ xià cì hái gǎn sāhuǎng ma**
- 14 明天早上会有雾吗？ **míngtiān zǎoshang huì yǒu wù ma**
- 15 你得去看医生。 **nǐ děi qù kàn yīshēng**

Pattern and vocabulary drill 16.2

In the groups of sentences below, translate each one into Chinese, making use of the appropriate modal verb. In some cases more than one modal verb may be possible and in others a modal verb may not be necessary. Also note that there are no one-to-one equivalents between English and Chinese modal verbs.

- 1 (a) Are you going home tomorrow?
(b) Do you have to go home tomorrow?
(c) Do you want to go home tomorrow?
(d) Can you go home tomorrow? (Do you have the means?)
(e) Can you go home tomorrow? (Will you be allowed?)
- 2 (a) I daren't tell him.
(b) I mustn't tell him.
(c) I won't tell him.
(d) I don't want to tell him.
(e) I needn't tell him.
(f) I shouldn't have told him.
- 3 (a) Do you want to get off at the next stop?
(b) Do you have to get off at the next stop?
(c) Are you going to get off at the next stop?
(d) Can you get off at the next stop?
(e) Are you willing to get off at the next stop?
- 4 (a) Can you help me?
(b) You are going to help me, aren't you?

- (c) Are you willing to help me?
 - (d) You must help me!
 - (e) Shall I help you?
 - (f) I would like very much to help you, but I can't.
- 5
- (a) Do you speak Chinese?
 - (b) Is it possible for you to speak Chinese?
 - (c) May I speak Chinese?
 - (d) Shall I speak Chinese?
 - (e) Must I speak Chinese?
 - (f) I should speak Chinese, shouldn't I?
 - (g) I know English. You needn't speak Chinese.
 - (h) I would like very much to speak English, but . . .

UNIT SEVENTEEN

Negators: 不 bù and 没(有) méi(yǒu)

We have already discussed some uses of 不 bù and 没(有) méi(yǒu) in previous units (see Units 11 and 12). Here we shall review the functions of these two negators and draw attention to differences in the ways they are employed.

A 不 bù generally refers to the present or the future. It precedes the verb to indicate that something does not happen *habitually* or *intentionally* or that something will not happen in the future:

我不去看电影。 wǒ bù qù kàn diànyǐng

I don't go and see films./I'm not going to see the film.

那个运动员不穿运动鞋。

nèi gè yùndòngyuán bù chuān yùndòngxié

That athlete doesn't wear sports shoes.

图书馆明天不开门。 túshūguǎn míngtiān bù kāimén

The library isn't/won't be open tomorrow.

陈小姐不抽烟，不喝酒，不打牌。

chén xiǎojiě bù chōuyān | bù hē jiǔ | bù dǎ pái

Miss Chen doesn't smoke or drink or play mah-jong.

However, 不 bù may also be used to highlight intentional or wilful action even though the context is set in the past:

那个运动员以前不穿运动鞋。

nèi gè yùndòngyuán yǐqián bù chuān yùndòngxié

That athlete didn't wear sports shoes in the past.

小时候我常常不去上课。

xiǎo shíhou wǒ chángcháng bù qù shàngkè

When I was a child, I often missed classes.

B In contrast with 不 bù, 没(有) méi(yǒu), which likewise goes before the verb, refers to the past and indicates that something has not

taken place or did not take place *on one particular occasion* or, if 过 **guo** is suffixed to the verb, *as a past experience*:

她上个月没(有)碰见李先生。

tā shàng gè yuè méi(yǒu) pèngjiàn lǐ xiānsheng

She didn't bump into Mr Li last month.

弟弟那天没(有)去游泳。

dìdì nèi tiān méi(yǒu) qù yóuyǒng
(My) younger brother didn't go swimming that day.

我没(有)吃过北京烤鸭。

wǒ méi(yǒu) chī guo běijīng kǎoyā
I've never had/eaten Peking duck.

17

Negators:
不 **bù** and
没(有)
méi(yǒu)

Note: 没有 **méiyǒu** may be abbreviated to 没 **méi**:

那个孩子昨天没吃饭。

nèi gè hái zǐ zuótiān méi chīfàn
That child didn't eat (any food) yesterday.

C The two negators are different in the way they are used with aspect markers:

- (i) 不 **bù**, and not 没(有) **méi(yǒu)**, is normally used with the continuous action marker 在 **zài**:

妈妈不在吸尘。

māma bù zài xīchén
Mother is not vacuuming (at the moment).

那时候妈妈不在吸尘。

nèi shíhòu māma bù zài xīchén
Mother was not vacuuming at that moment.

It is unusual to say:

*那时候妈妈没在吸尘。

However, 不 **bù** does not usually occur with the aspect markers 着 **zhe**, 下去 **xiàqù** and 下来 **xiàlái** except in the form of 不要 **bù yào** or 别 **bié** 'don't' in prohibitions:

不要唱下去了！

bù yào chàng xiàqù le Don't sing any more!

别停下来！

bié tíng xiàlái Don't stop!

别站着！

bié zhàn zhe Don't just stand there.

(Do something!)

不 **bù** may not be used with 了 **le**, 过 **guo** or 起来 **qǐlái** though it does occur with 了 **le** as sentence particle (see *Intermediate Chinese*, Unit 8):

他不咳嗽了。 **tā bù késou le** He's not coughing any more.
她不抽烟了。 **tā bù chōuyān le** She's quit smoking. (*lit.* She's no longer smoking.)

(ii) 没(有) **méi(yǒu)** may only be used with the aspect markers 过 **guo**, 起来 **qǐlái**, 下去 **xiàqù** and 下来 **xiàlái**:

我没(有)见过他。	wǒ méi(yǒu) jiàn guo tā	I have never met him.
他们没(有)打起来。	tāmen méi(yǒu) dǎ qǐlái	They did not fight with each other.
老大爷没(有)待下去。	lǎodàye méi(yǒu) dāi xiàqù	The old man didn't stay on.
钱太太没(有)安下心来。	qián tàitai méi(yǒu) ān xià xīn lái	Mrs Qian did not stop worrying.

没(有) **méi(yǒu)** is not used with 了 **le** and 着 **zhe**. It must be emphasized that as a negator of past actions, 没(有) **méi(yǒu)** replaces 了 **le** and does not occur with it:

Compare:

摄影师拍了很多照片。 **shèyǐngshī pāi le hěn duō zhàopiàn**
The photographer took a lot of photographs.

摄影师没(有)拍很多照片。

shèyǐngshī méi(yǒu) pāi hěn duō zhàopiàn
The photographer didn't take many photographs.

One does not say:

*她没碰见了李先生。 **tā méi pèngjiàn le lǐ xiānsheng**
(*lit.* She didn't bump into Mr Li.)

Compare also:

他穿着大衣。	tā chuān zhe dàyī	He's wearing an overcoat.
他没(有)穿大衣。	tā méi(yǒu) chuān dàyī	He did not wear/was not wearing an overcoat.

One does not usually say:

*他没(有)穿着大衣。 **tā méi(yǒu) chuān zhe dàyī**
(*lit.* He wasn't wearing his overcoat.)

D Time expressions like 昨天 **zuótiān**, 已经 **yǐjīng**, 刚才 **gāngcái**, etc. usually come before 不 **bù** or 没(有) **méi(yǒu)**:

约翰已经不学中文了。 **yuēhàn yǐjīng bù xué zhōngwén le**
John doesn't study Chinese any more.

我们刚才没有看见她。 **wǒmen gāngcái méiyǒu kànjiàn tā**
We didn't see her just now.

玛丽昨晚没睡觉。 **mǎlì zuó wǎn méi shuìjiào**
Mary didn't sleep last night.

Note: The time expression 从来 **cónglái** 'all along' is always linked with a negator:

这个人我从来没见过。	zhè gè rén wǒ cónglái méi jiàn guo	I have never met this person (before).
他从来不赌博。	tā cónglái bù dǔbó	He has never gambled.

E If there are location expressions in the sentence, they usually come after 不 **bù** or 没(有) **méi(yǒu)**:

我爸爸不在大使馆工作。 **wǒ bàba bù zài dàshǐguǎn gōngzuò**
My father doesn't work at the Embassy.

我家没在美国住过。 **wǒ jiā méi zài měiguó zhù guo**
Our family has never lived in America.

F Monosyllabic adverbs like 都 **dōu** 'both'; 'all', 也 **yě** 'also', 又 **yòu** 'once again', 还 **hái** 'still; yet', etc. usually come before 不 **bù** or 没(有) **méi(yǒu)**:

他们都没来。	tāmen dōu méi lái	None of them came.
我也不喜欢乌鸦	wǒ yě bù xǐhuan wūyā	I don't like crows either.
他又不来上课了。	tā yòu bù lái shàngkè le	He did not turn up for his class again.
我弟弟还没上学。	wǒ dìdì hái méi shàngxué	My younger brother hasn't started school yet.

Note 1: The only exception is 都 **dōu** which may also come after the negator when it has a different meaning. Compare the following sentences:

他们都没去。 **tāmen dōu méi qù** None of them went.
他们没都去。 **tāmen méi dōu qù** Not all of them went./They didn't all go.

Note 2: Remember that when used in a past context, 没(有) **méi(yǒu)** implies what is 'factual' whereas 不 **bù** indicates what is 'deliberate or intentional'.

G 不 **bù**, in keeping with its use in *intentional* contexts, and not 没(有) **méi(yǒu)**, is used with modal verbs or verbs that express attitude.

(i) It is generally placed before the modal/attitudinal verb:

他们不愿意帮助我。 **tāmen bù yuànyì bāngzhù wǒ**
They are/were not willing to help me.

那个小偷不敢说实话。 **nèi gè xiǎotōu bù gǎn shuō shíhuà**
That thief doesn't/didn't dare to tell the truth.

我不喜欢吃肉。 **wǒ bù xǐhuan chī ròu**
I don't like meat. (*lit.* I don't like eating meat.)

(ii) However, it may also occur between the modal verb and the main verb when the meaning requires or allows it:

我想不喝酒，喝汽水。 **wǒ xiǎng bù hē jiǔ | hē qìshuǐ**
I would rather have a fizzy drink than alcohol.
(*lit.* I would like not to drink alcohol (but) to drink a fizzy drink.)

Compare:

你不可以走。 **nǐ bù kěyǐ zǒu** You can't leave (now).
你可以不走。 **nǐ kěyǐ bù zǒu** You can stay. (*lit.* You can NOT leave.)

Note: With the modal verb 该 **gāi** the different positioning of the negator does not make much difference in meaning but with 会 **huì**, the alternative changes the meaning drastically:

你不该告诉他。 **nǐ bù gāi gàosu tā** You shouldn't have told him.
你该不告诉他。 **nǐ gāi bù gàosu tā** You shouldn't have told him.
(*lit.* You should have not told him.)

他不会说中文吗？ **tā bù huì shuō zhōngwén ma**
Can't he speak Chinese?

他会不说中文吗？ **tā huì bù shuō zhōngwén ma**
Is it possible that he won't speak Chinese?

With 得 **děi**, the second alternative simply does not exist:

*你得不走。 **nǐ děi bù zǒu** You should not go.

H Adjectival predicatives may only be negated by 不 **bù**:

那条裙子不漂亮。	nèi tiáo qúnzi bù piàoliang	That skirt isn't pretty.
这间屋子不干净。	zhèi jiān wūzi bù gānjìng	This room isn't clean.
我的办公室不大。	wǒ de bàngōngshì bù dà	My office isn't big.
这儿的空气不新鲜。	zhèr de kōngqì bù xīnxiān	The air here isn't fresh.
那儿的人不多。	nàr de rén bù duō	There aren't many people there.

Note: Only adjectival idioms beginning with 有 **yǒu** will have to be negated by 没 **méi**:

这本小说没(有)意思。 **zhèi běn xiǎoshuō méi(yǒu) yìsi**
This novel isn't interesting.

我今晚没(有)空。 **wǒ jīn wǎn méi(yǒu) kòng**
I am busy tonight. (*lit.* I tonight am not free.)

I 没(有) **méi(yǒu)**, however, is generally used to negate adjectives that are used as state verbs (as opposed to action verbs), with the sentence particle 了 **le** (see *Intermediate Chinese*, Unit 8). Compare the following pairs of sentences:

他的病好了。	tā de bìng hǎo le	He's well again.
他的病还没(有)好。	tā de bìng hái méi(yǒu) hǎo	He isn't well yet.

天晴了。

天还没(有)晴。

tiān qíng le**tiān hái méi(yǒu)****qíng**

The sky has cleared up.

It is still raining. (*lit.* The sky hasn't cleared up yet.)**Exercise 17.1**

Complete the sentences below with either 不 **bù** or 没 **méi** to provide a correct translation of the English:

- 1 爸爸 _____ 喝酒。 **bàba** _____ **hē jiǔ**
Father doesn't drink.
- 2 他 _____ 去看京剧。 **tā** _____ **qù kàn jīngjù**
He didn't go to watch the Beijing Opera.
- 3 昨天 _____ 下雪。 **zuótiān** _____ **xià xuě**
It didn't snow yesterday.
- 4 以前我 _____ 学过汉语。 **yǐqián wǒ** _____ **xué guo hànǚ**
I have never studied Chinese before.
- 5 她从来 _____ 抽过烟。 **tā cónglái** _____ **chōu guo yān**
She has never smoked.
- 6 过去王先生常常 _____ 戴帽子。
guòqù wáng xiānsheng chángcháng _____ **dài màozi**
Mr Wang didn't often wear a hat before.
- 7 我 _____ 去游泳。 **wǒ** _____ **qù yóuyǒng**
I am not going swimming.
- 8 他已经 _____ 骑自行车了。 **tā yǐjīng** _____ **qí zìxíngchē le**
He has stopped riding a bike.
- 9 姐姐那天 _____ 跳舞。 **jiějie nàitiān** _____ **tiàowǔ**
My elder sister didn't dance that day.
- 10 妹妹 _____ 买裙子。 **mèimei** _____ **mǎi qúnzi**
My younger sister didn't buy a skirt.
- 11 我 _____ 读昨天的报纸。 **wǒ** _____ **dú zuótiān de bàozhǐ**
I didn't read yesterday's newspaper.
- 12 哥哥 _____ 喜欢唱歌。 **gēge** _____ **xǐhuan chànggē**
My older brother doesn't like singing.
- 13 我从来 _____ 吃牛肉。 **wǒ cónglái** _____ **chī niúròu**
I have never eaten beef.
- 14 我从来 _____ 喝过绿茶。 **wǒ cónglái** _____ **hē guo lǜchá**
I have never drunk green tea before.
- 15 弟弟 _____ 会开车。 **dìdì** _____ **huì kāichē**
My younger brother can't drive.

Exercise 17.2

Add the adverb in brackets to the Chinese sentences below and then adjust the English translation to take account of this:

- 1 孩子们不喜欢吃蔬菜。 **háizimen bù xǐhuan chī shūcài**
The children don't like eating vegetables. (都 **dōu**)
- 2 他们没有去看京剧。 **tāmen méiyǒu qù kàn jīngjù**
They didn't go to watch the Beijing Opera. (也 **yě**)
- 3 他吃饭前不洗手。 **tā chīfàn qián bù xǐ shǒu**
He didn't wash his hands before meals. (常常 **chángcháng**)
- 4 我不抽烟。 **wǒ bù chōuyān**
I don't smoke. (从来 **cónglái**)
- 5 她没喝茶。 **tā méi hē chá**
She didn't drink any tea. (刚才 **gāngcái**)
- 6 他没看电视。 **tā méi kàn diànshì**
He didn't watch TV. (今天 **jīntiān**)
- 7 她没吃蛋糕。 **tā méi chī dàngāo**
She didn't eat any/touch the cake. (那天 **nèitiān**)
- 8 妹妹没坐过飞机。 **mèimei méi zuò guo fēijī**
(My) younger sister has not flown in a plane before. (从来 **cónglái**)

Exercise 17.3

Indicate which of the Chinese sentences below is the correct translation of the English in each case:

- 1 I don't think the answer is correct.
我认为那个答案不对。 **wǒ rènwéi nèi gè dá'àn bù duì**
我不认为那个答案对。 **wǒ bù rènwéi nèi gè dá'àn duì**
- 2 I don't think it is worth considering any more.
我不认为这值得多想。 **wǒ bù rènwéi zhè zhíde duō xiǎng**
我认为这不值得多想。 **wǒ rènwéi zhè bù zhíde duō xiǎng**
- 3 I have never taken a liking to her.
我从来没有喜欢过她。 **wǒ cónglái méiyǒu xǐhuan guo tā**
我从来不喜欢过她。 **wǒ cónglái bù xǐhuan guo tā**
- 4 He was not wearing an overcoat.
他没穿大衣。 **tā méi chuān dàyī**
他没穿着大衣。 **tā méi chuān zhe dàyī**
他不穿大衣。 **tā bù chuān dàyī**

Exercise 17.4

Insert an appropriate negator or negators in the right position in each of the following Chinese sentences to match the meaning of the English sentences:

- 1 他可以在那幢房子的墙上写标语。
tā kěyǐ zài nèi zhuàng fángzi de qiáng shang xiě biāoyǔ
He is not supposed to write any slogans on the wall of that house.
- 2 你会包饺子吗？**nǐ huì bāo jiǎozi ma**
Can't you make Chinese dumplings?
- 3 经理愿意加陈先生的工资。**jīnglǐ yuànyì jiā chén xiānsheng de gōngzī**
The manager was unwilling to give Mr Chen a pay rise.
- 4 我这个星期/礼拜能来吗？**wǒ zhèi gè xīngqī/lǐbài néng lái ma**
Can I not come this week?
- 5 她来英国前见过松鼠。**tā lái yīngguó qián jiàn guo sōngshǔ**
She had never seen squirrels before she came to Britain.
- 6 妹妹敢去邻居那儿借椅子。**mèimei gǎn qù línjū nàr jiè yǐzi**
My younger sister dare not go and borrow chairs from our neighbour.
- 7 裤子太短。弟弟肯/愿意穿。**kùzi tài duǎn | dìdì kěn/yuànyì chuān**
The trousers were too short and my younger brother was not willing to wear them.
- 8 水果很新鲜。大家都想吃。**shuǐguǒ hěn xīnxiān | dàjiā dōu xiǎng chī**
The fruit was not fresh at all and nobody wanted to touch it.
- 9 昨天下大雨。我们去操场踢足球。
zuótiān xià dà yǔ | wǒmen qù cāochǎng tī zúqiú
There was heavy rain yesterday. We didn't go and play football on the sports field.
- 10 你应该告诉他们这件事。**nǐ yīnggāi gàosu tāmen zhèi jiàn shì**
You shouldn't have told them about this.
- 11 这些花儿香。蜜蜂来采蜜。**zhèxiē huār xiāng | mìfēng lái cǎi mì**
These flowers aren't fragrant and the bees don't come to collect honey from them.
- 12 草莓比桃子好吃。**cǎoméi bǐ táozi hǎochī**
Strawberries are not as delicious as peaches.

Pattern and vocabulary drill 17.1

Translate the following pairs of sentences, making clear how one sentence differs in meaning from the other in each pair owing to the different positioning of the negator:

他不敢去。 **tā bù gǎn qù** He dare not go.
他敢不去！ **tā gǎn bù qù** Dare he not go!

没(有)人不敢去。 **méi(yǒu) rén bù gǎn qù**
There is nobody who dare not go.

没(有)人敢不去。 **méi(yǒu) rén gǎn bù qù**
There is nobody who dare stay behind. (*lit.* dares not to go)

- 1 你不愿意去看电影吗？ **nǐ bù yuànyì qù kàn diànyǐng ma**
你愿意不去看电影吗？ **nǐ yuànyì bù qù kàn diànyǐng ma**
- 2 谁不想吃肉？ **shuí bù xiǎng chī ròu**
谁想不吃肉？ **shuí xiǎng bù chī ròu**
- 3 孩子们不肯喝汽水吗？ **háizimen bù kěn hē qìshuǐ ma**
孩子们肯不喝汽水吗？ **háizimen kěn bù hē qìshuǐ ma**
- 4 姑娘们不肯穿裙子吗？ **gūniangmen bù kěn chuān qúnzi ma**
姑娘们肯不穿裙子吗？ **gūniangmen kěn bù chuān qúnzi ma**
- 5 你不想喝咖啡吗？ **nǐ bù xiǎng hē kāfēi ma**
你想不喝咖啡吗？ **nǐ xiǎng bù hē kāfēi ma**
- 6 有人不想很早起床。 **yǒu rén bù xiǎng hěn zǎo qǐchuáng**
有人想不很早起床。 **yǒu rén xiǎng bù hěn zǎo qǐchuáng**
- 7 她不敢回家吗？ **tā bù gǎn huí jiā ma**
她敢不回家吗？ **tā gǎn bù huí jiā ma**
- 8 谁不愿意学中文？ **shéi bù yuànyì xué zhōngwén**
谁愿意不学中文？ **shéi yuànyì bù xué zhōngwén**
- 9 没有人不愿意学中文。 **méi(yǒu) rén bù yuànyì xué zhōngwén**
没有人愿意不学中文。 **méi(yǒu) rén yuànyì bù xué zhōngwén**
- 10 谁不能喝酒？ **shéi bù néng hē jiǔ**
谁能不喝酒？ **shéi néng bù hē jiǔ**

Pattern and vocabulary drill 17.2

Make the following sentences more emphatic in two ways by adding (1) the word 再 **zài** ‘again’ and (2) the phrase 再也 **zài yě** ‘never ever again’, and translate the two emphatic versions into English:

他不抽烟了。 **tā bù chōuyān le** He has quit smoking.
他不再抽烟了。 **tā bù zài chōuyān le** He is not smoking any more.
他再也不抽烟了。 **tā zài yě bù chōuyān le** He will never smoke again.

- 1 我爸爸不在厕所里抽烟了。 **wǒ bàba bù zài cèsuǒ lǐ chōuyān le**
- 2 我邻居不养狗了。 **wǒ línjū bù yǎng gǒu le**
- 3 他的女朋友不喝酒了。 **tā de nǚ péngyou bù hē jiǔ le**

17

Negators:
不 bù and
没(有)
méi(yǒu)

- 4 她舅舅不赌博了。 **tā jiùjiu bù dǔbó le**
- 5 她喝咖啡不加糖了。 **tā hē kāfēi bù jiā táng le**
- 6 孩子们不在街上踢球了。 **háizimen bù zài jiē shang tí zúqiú le**
- 7 我妹妹不撒谎了。 **wǒ mèimei bù sāhuǎng le**
- 8 我的一个同学不打人和骂人了。 **wǒ de yī gè tóngxué bù dǎ rén hé
mà rén le**
- 9 我哥哥不开车了。 **wǒ gēge bù kāichē le**
- 10 我妈妈不吃肉了。 **wǒ māma bù chī ròu le**

UNIT EIGHTEEN

Types of question (1)

A General questions in Chinese can be formed by adding the particle 吗 **ma** to the end of a statement. Answers to such questions often employ the verb or adjective in the question with or without a negator as required by the meaning:

你是英国人吗？	nǐ shì yīngguó rén ma	Are you English?
是的。	shì de	Yes. (<i>lit.</i> be)
不是，我是法国人。	bù shì wǒ shì fǎguó rén	No (<i>lit.</i> not be), I am French.
你有零钱吗？	nǐ yǒu língqián ma	Have you got change?
有。	yǒu	Yes. (<i>lit.</i> have)
对不起，我没有。	duìbuqǐ wǒ méi yǒu	Sorry, I haven't.
你忙吗？	nǐ máng ma	Are you busy?
很忙。	hěn máng	Yes. (<i>lit.</i> busy)
不忙。	bù máng	No, I'm not. (<i>lit.</i> not busy)
你去学校吗？	nǐ qù xuéxiào ma	Are you going to the school?
去啊。	qù a	Yes. (<i>lit.</i> go)
今天不去。	jīntiān bù qù	I'm not going today. (<i>lit.</i> today not go)

Note: 啊 **a**, as seen in the last example, is a particle often placed at the end of an affirmative response either to emphasize the answer or to query the true meaning of the question, depending on the tone used by the speaker. 去啊。 **qù a** in this case means either 'Yes, I am definitely going' or 'Yes, I am going, so what?'

In the answer to 吗 **ma** questions, it is also possible to use words or phrases indicating confirmation or denial, for example 是 **shì** or 是的 **shì de** ‘yes’ (*lit.* it is/does), 对 **duì** ‘yes’ (*lit.* right; correct), or 不 **bù** or 不是 **bù shì** ‘no’ (*lit.* it isn’t/doesn’t):

你的办公室很脏吗？ **nǐ de bàngōngshì hěn zāng ma**

Is your office very dirty?

是的，确实很脏。 **shì de | quèshí hěn zāng**

Yes, it’s really filthy.

不，一点儿也不脏。 **bù | yīdiǎnr yě bù zāng**

No, it’s not at all dirty!

明天开会吗？ **míngtiān kāihuì ma**

Is the meeting tomorrow?

对，明天开会。 **duì | míngtiān kāihuì**

Yes, the meeting’s tomorrow.

不，后天才开。 **bù | hòutiān cái kāi**

No, it’s not till the day after tomorrow.

(才 **cái** is an adverb indicating ‘not . . . until . . .’)

你不喜欢吃鱼吗？

nǐ bù xǐhuan chī yú ma

Don’t you like fish?

是的，我不喜欢吃鱼。

shì de | wǒ bù xǐhuan chī yú

No, I don’t (like fish).

不，我很喜欢吃鱼。

bù | wǒ hěn xǐhuan chī yú

Yes, I do (like fish).

你身上没有钱吗？

nǐ shēn shang méi yǒu qián ma

Don’t you have any money with you?

不，我身上有钱。

bù | wǒ shēnshang yǒu qián

Yes, I do.

对，我身上没有钱。

duì | wǒ shēnshang méi yǒu qián

No, I don’t.

Note: From the last two examples you can observe that in answering a question, Chinese will first use ‘yes’ or ‘no’ to signal agreement or disagreement with the proposition, before a precise answer is given, whereas English generally uses ‘yes’ or ‘no’ depending on whether the answer itself is in the affirmative or in the negative.

B General questions may also be expressed in an ‘affirmative-negative’ form by repeating the verb or adjective with the negator 不 **bù** or in the case of the verb 有 **yǒu** with the negator 没 **méi**. Answers to such ‘affirmative-negative’ questions likewise use the verb or adjective in the question with or without a negator:

你是不是王先生？ **nǐ shì bù shì wáng xiānsheng** Are you Mr Wang?
是。/不是。 **shì/bù shì** Yes./No. (*lit.* be/not be)

你买不买水果？ **nǐ mǎi bù mǎi shuǐguǒ** Are you going to buy any fruit?
买。/不买。 **mǎi/bù mǎi** Yes./No. (*lit.* buy/not buy)

你今晚有没有事儿？ **nǐ jīn wǎn yǒu méi yǒu shìr**
Have you got anything to do tonight?
有。/没有。 **yǒu/méi yǒu** Yes./No. (*lit.* have/not have)

昨天冷不冷？ **zuótiān lěng bù lěng** Was it cold yesterday?
冷啊。/不冷。 **lěng a/bù lěng** Yes./No. (*lit.* cold/not cold)

这个孩子乖不乖？ **zhè gè hái zi guāi bù guāi**
Is this child disobedient?

这个孩子真乖。/这个孩子一点儿也不乖。

zhè gè hái zi zhēn guāi/zhè gè hái zi yīdiǎnr yě bù guāi
This child is really obedient./This child is not at all obedient.

你的行李重不重？ **nǐ de xíng li zhòng bù zhòng** Is your luggage
heavy?

(我的行李)一点儿也不重。 **(wǒ de xíng li) yīdiǎnr yě bù zhòng**
My luggage isn't heavy at all.

Note: As we can see in the answers above, it is not unusual to emphasize one's agreement or disagreement by modifying the adjectival predicative used in the questions with 很 **hěn** 'very', 真 **zhēn** 'truly', 啊 **a**, 一点儿也不 **yīdiǎnr yě bù** 'not at all', etc.

C It must be pointed out that 没有 **méiyǒu**, when employed to negate a completed action or past experience (see Unit 17), follows two patterns in the formulation of affirmative-negative questions:

(i) 没有 **méiyǒu** is placed at the end of a positive statement which uses 了 **le** or 过 **guo**:

你吃了饭没有？ 吃了。/没有。	nǐ chī le fàn méiyǒu chī le/méiyǒu	Have you eaten yet? Yes (I have)/No (I haven't).
--------------------	---	--

小王来了没有？ 来了。/还没有。	xiǎo wáng lái le méiyǒu lái le/hái méiyǒu	Has Xiao Wang arrived yet? Yes (he has)/No, not yet.
---------------------	--	---

你去过中国没有？	nǐ qù guo zhōngguó méiyǒu	Have you ever been to China?
----------	--	---------------------------------

去过。/没(有) **qù guo/méi(yǒu)** Yes (I have)./No
去过。 **qù guo** (I haven't).

- (ii) 有没有 **yǒu méiyǒu** is inserted before the verb (retaining 过 **guo** but omitting 了 **le**) in the question:

你有没有买香蕉？ **nǐ yǒu méiyǒu mǎi xiāngjiāo**
Did you buy any bananas?
买了。/没有。 **mǎi le/méiyǒu**
Yes (I did)./No (I didn't).

昨晚你们有没有看电视？ **zuó wǎn nǐmen yǒu méiyǒu kàn diànshì**
Did you watch television yesterday?
看了。/没有。 **kàn le/méiyǒu**
Yes (I did)./No (I didn't).

你有没有谈过这个问题？ **nǐ yǒu méiyǒu tán guo zhèi gè wèntí**
Have you talked about this question?
谈过。/没有。 **tán guo/méiyǒu**
Yes (I have)./No (I haven't).

没有 **méiyǒu** may also be added to an adjectival predicative with 了 **le** which indicates a change of state (see *Intermediate Chinese*, Unit 8) to form the affirmative-negative question:

她的病好了没有？ **tā de bìng hǎo le méiyǒu**
Has she recovered from her illness?
(*lit.* Her illness has got well or not?)
好了。/还没(有)好。 **hǎo le/hái méi(yǒu) hǎo**
Yes (she has)./No, not yet.

他醉了没有？ **tā zuì le méiyǒu**
Is he drunk?
醉了。/没(有)醉。 **zuì le/méi(yǒu) zuì**
Yes (he is)./No (he isn't).

树上的苹果熟了没有？ **shù shàng de píngguǒ shú/shóu le méiyǒu**
Are the apples on the tree ripe? (*lit.* Have the apples on the tree ripened?)
熟了。/还没(有)熟。 **shú/shóu le/hái méi(yǒu) shú/shóu**
Yes (they are)./No, not yet.

Note: **shú** and **shóu** are pronunciation variants of 熟 'to ripen'.

D If modal verbs are present, they (rather than the main verb) alternate in their positive and negative forms to formulate the affirmative-negative question:

你今晚能不能去跳舞？	nǐ jīn wǎn néng bù néng qù tiàowǔ	Can you go dancing tonight?
明天会不会下雪？	míngtiān huì bù huì xià xuě	Will it snow tomorrow?
你可(以)不可以帮帮我的忙？	nǐ kě(yǐ) bù kěyǐ bāngbāng wǒ de máng	Can you help me?
她愿(意)不愿意帮助你？	tā yuàn(yì) bù yuànyì bāngzhù nǐ	Is she willing to help you?

One does not say,

* 你今晚能去不去跳舞？	nǐ jīn wǎn néng qù bù qù tiàowǔ	Can you go dancing tonight?
--------------	--	-----------------------------

Note: With a disyllabic modal verb the affirmative part of the affirmative-negative sequence may often drop the second syllable, as the last two examples show.

E Questions can, of course, be formulated with question words. In Chinese, the question word is located where the answer is to be expected. That is to say, Chinese, unlike English, does not necessarily have to move the question word to the beginning of the sentence (see Units 4 and 9):

他是谁？	tā shì shéi	Who is he?
他是这儿的医生。	tā shì zhèr de yīshēng	He is the doctor here.
你去哪儿？	nǐ qù nǎr	Where are you going?
我去火车站。	wǒ qù huǒchēzhàn	I'm going to the railway station.
谁来了？	shéi lái le	Who has arrived?
张小姐来了。	zhāng xiǎojiě lái le	Miss Zhang has arrived.
这是谁的包裹？	zhè shì shéi de bāoguǒ	Whose parcel is this?
这是那位先生的包裹。	zhè shì nèi wèi xiānsheng de bāoguǒ	It is that gentleman's parcel.

你想喝点儿什么？	nǐ xiǎng hē diǎnr shénme	What would you like to drink?
我想喝点儿可乐。	wǒ xiǎng hē diǎnr kělè	I'd like (to have) some coke.
你在哪儿学习？	nǐ zài nǎ xuéxí	Where are you studying?
我在北京大学学习。	wǒ zài běijīng dàxué xuéxí	I am studying at Peking University.
你要哪一个？	nǐ yào nǎi yī gè	Which one do you want?
我要这个。	wǒ yào zhèi gè	I want this one.
哪辆车是你的？	nǎ liàng chē shì nǐ de	Which car is yours?
那辆黑车是我的。	nèi liàng hēi chē shì wǒ de	That black one is mine.

F The particle 呢 **ne** is also used to formulate a variety of questions.

- (i) It may be placed after a noun, noun phrase or pronoun when the speaker is expecting something (or someone) and queries this:

钥匙呢？ **yàoshi ne**

Where are the keys? (Shouldn't they be here; you have not forgotten them, have you; etc.)

他呢？ **tā ne**

Where is he? (Shouldn't he be here too/by now)

结果呢？ **jiéguǒ ne**

And what was the result?/What happened then?

- (ii) It also occurs after a noun, noun phrase or pronoun to ask about the condition of somebody or something with reference to a statement that has just been made. Here it is usually translated as 'And how about . . ./And what about . . .?':

我很好，你呢？ **wǒ hěn hǎo | nǐ ne**

I'm very well. And you?

我的作业交了，你的呢？ **wǒ de zuòyè jiāo le | nǐ de ne**

I've handed in my course-work. How about you? (*lit.* how about yours?)

(Compare: 我交了作业了，你呢？ **wǒ jiāo le zuòyè le | nǐ ne**)

衬衫洗了，裤子呢？ **chènshān xǐ le | kùzi ne**

The shirt has been washed but what about the trousers?

Note: Observe the formulation of the last two examples. They are very similar to English passive voice sentences.

- (iii) It can raise a question relating to a particular situation (couched in terms of a general statement) and is often roughly equivalent to English ‘what if . . .’:

他不同意呢？ **tā bù tóngyì ne** What if he doesn’t agree (to it)?

老师没空呢？ **lǎoshī méi kòng ne** What if the teacher hasn’t got time?

明天下雨呢？ **míngtiān xià yǔ ne** What if it rains tomorrow?

- (iv) It may be added to a question-word question or an affirmative-negative question to introduce a tone of surprise or impatience:

她是谁呢？ **tā shì shéi ne** Who can she be?

小猫在哪儿呢？ **xiǎo māo zài nǎr ne** Where can the kitten be?

他们忙不忙呢？ **tāmen máng bù máng ne** Are they really busy?

Exercise 18.1

Change the statements below into two forms of questions using 吗 **ma** and the ‘affirmative-negative’ structure, providing answers in both the affirmative and the negative:

他抽烟。 **tā chōuyān**

He smokes.

他抽烟吗？ **tā chōuyān ma**/他抽(烟)不抽烟？ **tā chōu(yān) bù chōuyān**

Does he smoke?

抽。 **chōu**

Yes.

不抽。 **bù chōu**

No.

1 他们是农民。 **tāmen shì nóngmín**

They are farmers.

2 他想打乒乓球。 **tā xiǎng dǎ pīngpāngqiú**

He wants to play table-tennis.

- 3 他去过动物园。 **tā qù guo dòngwùyuán**
He has been to the zoo.
- 4 那条街很干净。 **nèi tiáo jiē hěn gānjìng**
That street is very clean.
- 5 她明天会来。 **tā míngtiān huì lái**
She will come tomorrow.
- 6 他有图书证。 **tā yǒu túshūzhèng**
He's got a library card.
- 7 她带了钥匙。 **tā dài le yàoshi**
She's brought her keys.
- 8 火很旺。 **huǒ hěn wàng**
The fire was burning brightly.
- 9 你的朋友会哼那个曲子。 **nǐ de péngyou huì hēng nèi gè qǔzi**
Your friend can hum that tune.
- 10 他的弟弟喜欢穿牛仔褲。 **tā de dìdì xǐhuan chuān niúzáikù**
His younger brother likes wearing jeans.

Exercise 18.2

Convert the questions below into the aspect marker 了 **le** structure and translate the questions into English:

你有没有游泳？ **nǐ yǒu méiyǒu yóuyǒng**
你游了泳没有？ **nǐ yóu le yǒng méiyǒu**
Did you swim?/Did you go swimming?

- 1 你有没有洗衬衫？ **nǐ yǒu méiyǒu xǐ chènshān**
- 2 你昨天有没有读报？ **nǐ zuótiān yǒu méiyǒu dú bào**
- 3 上个月你有没有看电影？
shàng gè yuè nǐ yǒu méiyǒu kàn diànyǐng
- 4 昨晚你有没有写信？ **zuó wǎn nǐ yǒu méiyǒu xiě xìn**
- 5 你有没有买票？ **nǐ yǒu méiyǒu mǎi piào**
- 6 她有没有碰见张先生？
tā yǒu méiyǒu pèngjiàn zhāng xiānsheng
- 7 你们前天有没有上酒吧间？
nǐmen qiántiān yǒu méiyǒu shàng jiǔbājiān
- 8 你们那儿上星期有没有下雪？
nǐmen nàr shàng xīngqī yǒu méiyǒu xià xuě
- 9 他家去年夏天有没有去海边度假？
tā jiā qùnián xiàtiān yǒu méiyǒu qù hǎi biān dùjià
- 10 这件事小黄有没有告诉你？
zhè jiàn shì xiǎo huáng yǒu méiyǒu gàosu nǐ

Exercise 18.3

Translate the following sentences into Chinese, expressing the question in two ways in each case:

- 1 Have you ever been mountain-climbing?
- 2 Have you ever met your neighbour?
- 3 Have you ever blamed yourself?
- 4 Have you ever been to a soccer match?
- 5 Have you ever ridden a horse?
- 6 Have you ever been to the seaside?
- 7 Have you ever tried Chinese dumplings?
- 8 Have you ever seen a whale? (鲸鱼 **jīngyú** 'whale')
- 9 Have you ever kept a dog?
- 10 Have you ever been to a pub?

Exercise 18.4

Translate the following sentences into Chinese:

- 1 Is it quiet in the library? (安静 **ānjìng** 'quiet')
- 2 Is it hot in Beijing?
- 3 Are your friends happy? (高兴 **gāoxìng** 'happy')
- 4 Are the dishes tasty?
- 5 Was that television programme interesting?
- 6 Was the soccer match exciting?
- 7 Is this chair comfortable? (舒服 **shūfu** 'comfortable')
- 8 Do the flowers smell nice? (香 **xiāng** 'sweet-smelling')
- 9 Was the cake sweet? (甜 **tián** 'sweet (to the taste)')
- 10 Is the table clean? (干净 **gānjìng** 'clean')
- 11 Is the room tidy? (整齐 **zhěngqí** 'tidy')
- 12 Was the manager generous? (慷慨 **kāngkǎi** 'generous')

Exercise 18.5

Translate these questions into Chinese using 呢 **ne**:

- 1 What if he gets drunk?
- 2 The trousers have been washed but what about the skirt?
- 3 What if it rains tomorrow evening?
- 4 What if I haven't got time?
- 5 The coffee is nice but what do you think of the cake?
- 6 I'm very busy. How about you?

- 7 Where can she have gone?
- 8 Whose computer is this then?
- 9 Where are my keys?
- 10 Where can the kitten be?

Pattern and vocabulary drill 18.1

In a Chinese sentence where the human initiator of the action of the verb is unambiguous and the relationship of the verb with its inanimate object is clear, the order of the verb and object can be reversed to form what is called a notional passive. Following the model shown, change the 12 sentences below into notional passives, with or without the human initiator:

我买了票了。 **wǒ mǎi le piào le**

I have bought the ticket.

票我买了。 **piào wǒ mǎi le**

票买了。 **piào mǎi le**

- 1 我修好了车了。 **wǒ xiū hǎo le chē le** I have mended the car.
- 2 我带了雨伞了。 **wǒ dài le yǔsǎn le** I have had my umbrella with me.
- 3 你带了钥匙了吗？ **nǐ dài le yàoshi le ma** Have you brought your key with you?
- 4 你吃过北京烤鸭吗？ **nǐ chī guo běijīng kǎoyā ma** Have you ever tried Peking duck?
- 5 你交了作业没有？ **nǐ jiāo le zuòyè méiyǒu** Have you handed in your homework?
- 6 她寄了信没有？ **tā jì le xìn méiyǒu** Has she put the letter in the post?
- 7 你喝过绿茶没有？ **nǐ hē guo lǜchá méiyǒu** Have you ever drunk green tea?
- 8 我洗了衣服了。 **wǒ xǐ le yīfu le** I have washed the clothes.
- 9 你去过北京没有？ **nǐ qù guo běijīng méiyǒu** Have you ever been to Beijing?
- 10 你到过长城没有？ **nǐ dào guo chángchéng méiyǒu** Have you been to the Great Wall?
- 11 你带了钱没有？ **nǐ dài le qín méiyǒu** Have you got any money on you?
- 12 你看了今天的报纸(了)吗？ **nǐ kàn le jīntiān de bàozhǐ (le) ma** Have you read today's paper?

Note: All Chinese notional passives normally end with the sentence particle 了 **le**.

Pattern and vocabulary drill 18.2

You will see below two general questions, which each have different alternative forms. Following these patterns, restructure each of the 15 sentences into an appropriate alternative form:

这几天你去跑步吗？ **zhè jǐ tiān nǐ qù pǎobù ma**
Are you going jogging in the coming few days?
这几天你去不去跑步？ **zhè jǐ tiān nǐ qù bù qù pǎobù**

他当了经理了吗？ **tā dāng le jīnglǐ le ma**
Has he been promoted to the managership?
他当了经理没有？ **tā dāng le jīnglǐ méiyǒu**

- 1 这几天你去学太极拳吗？ **zhè jǐ tiān nǐ qù xué tàijíquán ma**
Are you going to take T'ai Chi lessons in the coming few days?
- 2 这几天会下雨吗？ **zhè jǐ tiān huì xià yǔ ma**
Is it going to rain in the next few days?
- 3 你能在这儿等一下吗？ **nǐ néng zài zhèr děng yíxià ma**
Can you wait a little here?
- 4 你买了车了吗？ **nǐ mǎi le chē le ma**
Have you bought your car?
- 5 你喜欢穿牛仔褲吗？ **nǐ xǐhuan chuān niúzáikù ma**
Do you like wearing jeans?
- 6 你带了图书证了吗？ **nǐ dài le túshūzhèng le ma**
Have you brought your library card with you?
- 7 你同意我的建议吗？ **nǐ tóngyi wǒ de jiànyì ma**
Are you agreeable to my suggestion?
- 8 你的朋友会打乒乓球吗？ **nǐ de péngyou huì dǎ pīngpāngqiú ma**
Does your friend know how to play ping-pong?
- 9 你明天早上有空吗？ **nǐ míngtiān zǎoshang yǒukòng ma**
Are you free tomorrow morning?
- 10 你想吃北京烤鸭吗？ **nǐ xiǎng chī běijīng kǎoyā ma**
Do you want to try Peking duck?
- 11 你愿意帮他的忙吗？ **nǐ yuànyì bāng tā de máng ma**
Are you willing to help him?
- 12 你家里有电脑吗？ **nǐ jiā li yǒu diànnǎo ma**
Do you have a computer at home?
- 13 你完成了那件工作了吗？ **nǐ wánchéng le nài jiàn gōngzuò le ma**
Have you finished that work?
- 14 你当过老师吗？ **nǐ dāng guo lǎoshī ma**
Have you ever been a teacher?
- 15 你见了经理了吗？ **nǐ jiàn le jīnglǐ le ma**
Have you seen the manager yet?

UNIT NINETEEN

Types of question (2)

A Tag questions, which are seeking agreement to, or approval of, a suggestion or proposal, are formed by attaching 好吗?/好不好? **hǎo ma/hǎo bù hǎo**, 行吗?/行不行? **xíng ma/xíng bù xíng** (*lit.* ‘is this OK?’), 可以吗?/可(以)不可以? **kěyǐ ma/kě(yǐ) bù kěyǐ** (*lit.* ‘is that all right?’), etc. to the statement. Answers to such questions repeat the tag words 好 **hǎo**, 行 **xíng** or 可以 **kěyǐ**, sometimes with 啊 **a** in the affirmative, and with 不 **bù** in the negative:

咱们去散步，好吗？	zánmen qù sàn bù hǎo ma	Shall we go for a walk?
好啊。	hǎo a	Fine/OK.
我想打个电话，行吗？	wǒ xiǎng dǎ gè diàn huà xíng ma	Is it all right if I make a phone call?
行。	xíng	Yes/All right.
我们今天早点儿回家，可以吗？	wǒmen jīntiān zǎo diǎnr huí jiā kěyǐ ma	Can we go home earlier today?
不可以。	bù kěyǐ	No, you can't.

B 吧 **ba** may be added to the end of a positive or negative statement to form a question implying surmise or supposition. Answers to these questions naturally invite the use of 是(的) **shì (de)** or 对 **duì** ‘yes’ or 不(是) **bù (shì)** or 不对 **bù duì** ‘no’ (see Unit 18), as a direct response to the surmise or supposition itself:

这个汉字不对吧？ **zhè gè hàn zì bù duì ba**
This Chinese character is wrong, isn't it?/Isn't this Chinese character wrong?
是，这个汉字不对。 **shì | zhè gè hàn zì bù duì**
Yes, it is wrong.

那幅画儿是他画的吧？ **nèi fú huà shì tā huà de ba**
That picture was painted by him, wasn't it?

不，那幅画儿不是他画的。 **bù | nèi fú huà er bù shì tā huà de**
No, it wasn't painted by him.

他会骑摩托车吧？ **tā huì qí mótuōchē ba**
He can ride a motorbike, can't he?
是的，他会。 **shì de | tā huì**
Yes, he can.

明天不会下雨吧？ **míngtiān bù huì xià yǔ ba**
It won't rain tomorrow, will it?
恐怕会下雨。 **kǒngpà huì xià yǔ**
I'm afraid it will.

Note: 吧 **ba** at the end of a statement can also express a suggestion or exhortation:

咱们走吧。 **zánmen zǒu ba** Let's go. (See Unit 20.)

C An alternative question where the speaker presents two possibilities, e.g. 'Are you English or French?', is formed by placing 还是 **háishi** 'or' between the two possibilities:

你是中国人还是日本人？ **nǐ shì zhōngguó rén háishi rìběn rén**
Are you Chinese or Japanese?
我是中国人。 **wǒ shì zhōngguó rén**
I am Chinese.

你喜欢看电影还是听音乐？ **nǐ xǐhuan kàn diànyǐng háishi tīng yīnyuè**
Do you like watching films or listening to music?
我喜欢看电影。 **wǒ xǐhuan kàn diànyǐng**
I like watching films.

你回家还是去银行？ **nǐ huí jiā háishi qù yínháng**
Are you going home or going to the bank?
我去银行。 **wǒ qù yínháng**
I am going to the bank.

Note 1: The two posed alternatives must be of similar structure, i.e. 中国人 **zhōngguó rén** ... or 日本人 **rìběn rén** ... (nouns); 看电影 **kàn diànyǐng** ... or 听音乐 **tīng yīnyuè** ... (verb + object), etc.

Note 2: The conjunction 'or' in English is rendered in Chinese by 还是 **háishi** in questions and 或者 **huòzhě** in statements.

你想喝茶还是喝咖啡？ **nǐ xiǎng hē chá háishi hē kāfēi**
Would you like tea or coffee?
茶或者咖啡都可以。 **chá huòzhě kāfēi dōu kěyǐ** Either will do.
(*lit.* tea or coffee will do)

D In Unit 11, it was explained that to emphasize the initiator, target, time, place, means, purpose, etc. of a past action the 是 **shì**... 的 **de** construction is used:

客人是昨天到的。 **kèren shì zuótiān dào de** (time)
The guests arrived *yesterday*.

他们是坐飞机去的。 **tāmen shì zuò fēijī qù de** (means)
They went *by plane*.

她是来找的经理。 **tā shì lái zhǎo de jīnglǐ** (target)
She came to see *the manager*.

For present and future action 是 **shì** is employed without 的 **de**:

客人是明天到。 **kèren shì míngtiān dào** The guests are
arriving *tomorrow*.

他们是坐飞机去。 **tāmen shì zuò fēijī qù** They are going *by*
plane.

我是去探望父母。 **wǒ shì qù tàn wàng fùmǔ** I am going to visit
my parents.

However, with the verb 来 **lái** ‘to come’, 的 **de** often occurs at the end of the sentence even if it still indicates future. As the following example shows, the reason is perhaps that though the woman has yet ‘to see the manager’, the speaker wants to highlight the fact that she has already arrived on the scene:

她是来找经理的。 **tā shì lái zhǎo jīnglǐ de** She is coming to see *the*
manager.

These sentences of emphasis with 是 **shì** or 是 **shì**... 的 **de** can be formulated into various forms of question: question-word questions, general questions, or affirmative-negative questions:

(i) past actions:

客人是什么时候到的？ **kèren shì shénme shíhòu dào de**
When did the guests arrive?

客人是昨天到的吗？ **kèren shì zuótiān dào de ma**
客人是不是昨天到的？ **kèren shì bù shì zuótiān dào de**
Did the guests arrive *yesterday*?

客人是昨天到的，还是前天到的？
kèren shì zuótiān dào de | háishi qiántiān dào de
Did the guests arrive yesterday or the day before yesterday?

他们是怎么去的？ **tāmen shì zěnmē qù de**
How did they travel?

他们是坐飞机去的吗？ **tāmen shì zuò fēijī qù de ma**
他们是不是坐飞机去的？ **tāmen shì bù shì zuò fēijī qù de**
Did they go *by plane*?

他们是坐飞机去的，还是坐船去的？
tāmen shì zuò fēijī qù de | háishi zuò chuán qù de
Did they go by plane or by boat?

她是来找的谁？ **tā shì lái zhǎo de shéi/shuí**
Who(m) did she come to see?

她是来找的经理吗？ **tā shì lái zhǎo de jīnglǐ ma**
她是不是来找的经理？ **tā shì bù shì lái zhǎo de jīnglǐ**
Did she come to see *the manager*?

她是来找的经理，还是来找的会计？
tā shì lái zhǎo de jīnglǐ | háishi lái zhǎo de kuàijì
Did she come to see the manager or the accountant?

(ii) present or future actions:

客人是什么时候到？ **kèren shì shénme shíhou dào**
When are the guests arriving?

客人是明天到吗？ **kèren shì míngtiān dào ma**
客人是不是明天到？ **kèren shì bù shì míngtiān dào**
Are the guests arriving *tomorrow*?

客人是明天到，还是后天到？
kèren shì míngtiān dào | háishi hòutiān dào
Are the guests arriving tomorrow or the day after tomorrow?

他们是怎么去？ **tāmen shì zěnmē qù**
How are they travelling?

他们是坐飞机去吗？ **tāmen shì zuò fēijī qù ma**
他们是不是坐飞机去？ **tāmen shì bù shì zuò fēijī qù**
Are they going *by plane*?

他们是坐飞机去，还是坐船去？

tāmen shì zuò fēijī qù | háishi zuò chuán qù

Are they going by plane or by boat?

她是来找谁？ **tā shì lái zhǎo shéi/shuí**

Who(m) is she coming to see?

她是来找经理的吗？ **tā shì lái zhǎo jīnglǐ de ma**

她是不是来找经理的？ **tā shì bù shì lái zhǎo jīnglǐ de**

Is she coming to see *the manager*? (The speaker must have known that the visitor has arrived, as was explained above regarding sentences like this with 来 lái.)

她是来找经理，还是来找会计？

tā shì lái zhǎo jīnglǐ | háishi lái zhǎo kuàijì

Is she coming to see the manager or the accountant?

The answer to all general, affirmative-negative questions is either 是 (的) **shì (de)** ‘yes’ or 不是 **bù shì** ‘no’:

是你去找的她吗？ **shì nǐ qù zhǎo de tā ma**

是不是去找的她？ **shì bù shì nǐ qù zhǎo de tā**

Was it you who went to see her?/Did you go to see her?

是的，是我。 **shì de | shì wǒ** Yes, it was me.

你是去看电影吗？ **nǐ shì qù kàn diànyǐng ma**

你是不是去看电影？ **nǐ shì bù shì qù kàn diànyǐng**

Are you going to see a film?

不，我不是去看电影，我是去跳舞。

bù | wǒ bù shì qù kàn diànyǐng | wǒ shì qù tiàowǔ

No, I’m not going to see a film, I’m going dancing.

Exercise 19.1

Translate the following questions into Chinese using the tags 好吗 **hǎo ma**, 行吗 **xíng ma** or 可以吗 **kěyǐ ma**:

Could you shut the door, please?

请你关上门，好吗？ **qǐng nǐ guān shàng mén | hǎo ma**

1 Could you close the window, please?

2 Could you please speak Chinese?

3 May I use the phone?

4 Shall we go to the cinema?

5 May I borrow a pen? (借 **jiè** ‘to borrow’)

6 Can I sleep in tomorrow? (睡懒觉 **shuì lǎn jiào** ‘to sleep in’)

- 7 May I sit here?
- 8 May I make a suggestion? (提 **tí** 'to put forward')
- 9 Could you tell us a story, please?
- 10 Could we go dancing tonight?

Exercise 19.2

Formulate questions, using 是不是 **shì bù shì** and where necessary the **de** on the basis of the statements below to elicit the required information:

周先生坐飞机去英国。 **zhōu xiānsheng zuò fēijī qù yīngguó**
Mr Zhou went to England by plane.

- (i) Did *Mr Zhou* go to England/Was it Mr Zhou who went to England?

是不是周先生去的英国？

shì bù shì zhōu xiānsheng qù de yīngguó

- (ii) Did Mr Zhou *travel by plane*?

周先生是不是坐飞机去的？

zhōu xiānsheng shì bù shì zuò fēijī qù de

- (iii) Did Mr Zhou *go to England*/Was it England Mr Zhou went to?

周先生是不是去的英国？

zhōu xiānsheng shì bù shì qù de yīngguó

- 1 小李骑自行车去运动场。 **xiǎo lǐ qí zìxíngchē qù yùndòngchǎng**
Xiao Li went to the sports field on his bike.

- (i) Is *Xiao Li* going to the sports field/Is it Xiao Li who is going to the sports field?

- (ii) Is Xiao Li going *to the sports field*/Is it the sports field that Xiao Li is going to?

- (iii) Is Xiao Li *going on his bike* to the sports field?

- 2 王小姐刚才去邮局。 **wáng xiǎojie gāngcái qù yóujú**
Miss Wang went to the post office just now.

- (i) Did *Miss Wang* go to the post office/Was it Miss Wang who went to the post office?

- (ii) Did Miss Wang go *just now*/Was it just now that Miss Wang went?

- (iii) Did Miss Wang go to the *post office*/Was it the post office Miss Wang went to?

Exercise 19.3

Make questions using 还是 **háishi** which might be answered by the statements below. (Note that in some cases the pronoun may have to be changed.):

- 1 我是老师，不是学生。 **wǒ shì lǎoshī | bù shì xuésheng**
I'm a teacher, not a student.
- 2 他喜欢看小说，不喜欢看电视。
tā xǐhuan kàn xiǎoshuō | bù xǐhuan kàn diànshì
He likes reading fiction, but he doesn't like watching television.
- 3 他不是昨天去的中国，是前天去的。
tā bù shì zuótiān qù de zhōngguó | shì qiántiān qù de
He didn't go to China yesterday, he went the day before.
- 4 我是坐火车去上班，不是坐汽车。
wǒ shì zuò huǒchē qù shàngbān | bù shì zuò qìchē
I go to work by train, not by bus.
- 5 我是去电影院，不是去饭馆。**wǒ shì qù diànyǐngyuàn | bù shì qù fànguǎn**
I'm going to the cinema, not to the restaurant.
- 6 这是医院，不是大学。**zhè shì yīyuàn | bù shì dàxué**
This is a hospital, not a university.
- 7 她那天是穿的裙子，不是裤子。
tā nà tiān shì chuān de qúnzi | bù shì kùzi
What she wore that day was a skirt, not a pair of trousers.
- 8 我前天是碰见的老王，不是小张。
wǒ qiántiān shì pèngjiàn de lǎo wáng | bù shì xiǎo zhāng
I bumped into Lao Wang, not Xiao Zhang, the day before yesterday.

Exercise 19.4

Change the following Chinese sentences into questions using 吧 **ba**, and then (1) provide English translations of the questions and (2) give positive and negative answers to the questions in Chinese and English. (Note again that in some cases the pronoun may need to be changed.)

夏天太阳五点半就出来了。 **xiàtiān tàiyáng wǔ diǎn bàn jiù chū lái le**
The sun rises at five thirty in the summer.

夏天太阳五点半就出来了吧？

xiàtiān tàiyáng wǔ diǎn bàn jiù chū lái le ba

The sun rises at half past five in the summer, doesn't it?

对。/是(的)。 **duì | shì (de)**

Yes.

不对。/不是(的)。 **bù duì | bù shì (de)**

No.

- 1 这本书是我写的。 **zhèi běn shū shì wǒ xiě de**
This book was written by me.
- 2 伦敦离北京很远。 **lúndūn lí běijīng hěn yuǎn**
London is a long way from Beijing.
- 3 火车已经开走了。 **huǒchē yǐjīng kāi zǒu le**
The train has already gone.
- 4 那条裙子太长了。 **nà/nèi tiáo qúnzi tài cháng le**
That skirt is too long.
- 5 我每天都剃/刮胡子。 **wǒ měi tiān dōu tì/guā húzi**
I shave every day.
- 6 我爸爸、妈妈下个月去度假。 **wǒ bàba | māma xià gè yuè qù dùjià**
My parents will go away on holiday next month.
- 7 我不喜欢喝中国茶。 **wǒ bù xǐhuan hē zhōngguó chá**
I don't like Chinese tea.
- 8 我妻子不吃牛肉。 **wǒ qīzi bù chī niúròu**
My wife does not eat beef.

Exercise 19.5

Translate the following sentences into Chinese, giving emphasis to the expressions in italics and paying particular attention to whether or not the **de** must be included to indicate past or future events:

- 1 Are you going to China *next month*?
- 2 Did you go to China *last year*?
- 3 Are you going *by plane* or *by boat*?
- 4 Did you go *by car* or *on a bike*?
- 5 *Where* did you learn your Chinese?
- 6 *Where* are you going to learn your Chinese?
- 7 *Who* washed the bowls last night?
- 8 *Who* is going to wash the bowls tonight?

Pattern and vocabulary drill 19.1

Following the pattern below answer the 12 questions positively or negatively.

你喜欢吃鱼吗？ **nǐ xǐhuan chī yú ma**

Do you like eating fish?

我很喜欢吃鱼。 **wǒ hěn xǐhuan chī yú**

Very much.

我一点儿也都不喜欢吃鱼。 **wǒ yīdiǎnr yě/dōu bù xǐhuan chī yú**

Not at all.

1 你喜欢打乒乓球吗？ **nǐ xǐhuan dǎ pingpāngqiú ma**

Do you like playing ping-pong/table-tennis?

2 你喜欢看电影吗？ **nǐ xǐhuan kàn diànyǐng ma**

Do you like watching films?

3 蛋糕好吃吗？ **dàngāo hǎochī ma**

Is the cake delicious?

4 那本小说有意思吗？ **nèi běn xiǎoshuō yǒu yìsi ma**

Is that novel interesting?

5 那条裤子长不长？ **nèi tiáo kùzi cháng bù cháng**

Is that pair of trousers long?

6 你叔叔的孩子可爱吗？ **nǐ shūshu de háizi kě'ài ma** (可爱 kě'ài
'lovely')

Are your uncle's children lovely?

7 你家的小猫可爱不可爱？ **nǐ jiā de xiǎo māo kě'ài bù kě'ài**

Is your kitten lovely?

8 坐火车去比坐汽车去快吗？

zuò huǒchē qù bǐ zuò qìchē qù kuài ma

Is it faster going there by train than by car?

9 你想去中国玩儿吗？ **nǐ xiǎng qù zhōngguó wánr ma**

Do you want to go travelling in China?

10 那儿的夏天热不热？ **nàr de xiàtiān rè bù rè**

Is the summer there hot?

Pattern and vocabulary drill 19.2

Translate the following questions into Chinese using 是不是 **shì bù shì** to give emphasis to the enquiry.

Are you going out for a walk?

你是不是出去散步？ **nǐ shì bù shì chū qù sànbù**

1 Do you really want to learn Chinese?

2 Are there a lot of athletes on the sports field?

3 Is the street full of people?

4 Are your parents coming to see you in a few days?

5 Do you often go swimming?

- 6 Is your friend waiting for you outside?
- 7 Have they been to Beijing many times?
- 8 Is she writing letters the whole evening?
- 9 Have you had a lot of beer tonight?
- 10 Does this dish not taste as nice as that one?

19

Types of
question
(2)

UNIT TWENTY

Imperatives and exclamations

A Imperatives, as commands or requests directed at the listener in given contexts, do not usually need a subject (unless the speaker wants to single out a particular person from a group):

进来！	jìn lái	Come in!
出去！	chū qù	Get out!
站起来！	zhàn qǐ lái	Stand up!
坐下！	zuò xià	Sit down!
安静点儿！	ānjìng diǎnr	Quieten down! (<i>lit.</i> a bit quieter)
严肃点儿！	yánsù diǎnr	Be serious! (<i>lit.</i> a bit serious)

你去浇水，你去割草，你去剪树篱！

nǐ qù jiāo shuǐ | nǐ qù gē cǎo | nǐ qù jiǎn shù lí

You, water the plants! You, mow the grass! And you, clip the hedge!

B To soften the tone of an imperative to the level of a request, 请 **qǐng** ‘please’ is placed at the beginning of the imperative:

请进来！	qǐng jìn lái	Come in, please!
请坐下！	qǐng zuò xià	Please take a seat!
请大家安静点儿！	qǐng dàjiā ānjìng diǎnr	Would everybody be quiet, please!

To soften the tone still further, the sentence particle 吧 **ba** can be used:

请进来吧！	qǐng jìn lái ba	Won't you please come in!
请坐吧！	qǐng zuò ba	Won't you please sit down!

吧 **ba** occurs without 请 **qǐng** and carries a casual tone:

坐吧！	zuò ba	Sit down then!/Okay, take a seat!/Why don't you take a seat!
进来吧！	jìn lái ba	Come in then!/Okay, you can come in now.

C Commands and requests usually call for actions on the part of the listener. If they involve a third party, verbs like 让 **ràng** ‘to let; to allow; to permit’, 叫 **jiào** ‘to order’, etc. are usually placed before the third-person pronoun:

让他走吧！	ràng tā zǒu ba	Let him go!
叫他来见我！	jiào tā lái jiàn wǒ	Tell him to come and see me!
让他去！	ràng tā qù	Leave him alone! (<i>lit.</i> let him go)

Note: Observe the idiomatic use of the verb 去 **qù** ‘to go’ in the third example.

让 **ràng** is, of course, also used by the speaker in relation to him- or herself:

让我帮你的忙！	ràng wǒ bāng nǐ de máng	Let me give you a hand!
让我看一看！	ràng wǒ kàn yī kàn	Let me have a look!
让我想一下！	ràng wǒ xiǎng yīxià	Let me think about it!

D In the case of an imperative involving the action of the speaker and the listener, the pronoun 咱们 **zánmen** ‘we/us’ is used together with the particle 吧 **ba**:

咱们走吧！	zánmen zǒu ba	Let’s go!
咱们喝一杯吧！	zánmen hē yī bēi ba	Let’s have a drink!

E Commands or requests may also be concerned with the manner in which actions are carried out. Under such circumstances, the relevant adverbials are placed before the imperative verb:

快走！	kuài zǒu	Hurry up!
慢慢来！	mànmàn lái	Take it easy!/Take your time!
多吃点儿！	duō chī diǎnr	Have some more (food)!

F Negative imperatives (or prohibitions) are expressed by 不要 **bù yào** ‘don’t’ or its short form 别 **bié**:

等一等！别走！	děng yī děng bié zǒu	Wait a minute!/Hang on! Don’t go (yet)!
别说话！	bié shuō huà	Keep quiet! (<i>lit.</i> don’t speak)

别客气！	bié kèqi	Make yourself at home! (<i>lit.</i> don't be polite)
不要抽烟！	bù yào chōuyān	Don't smoke!
不要开玩笑！	bù yào kāi wánxiào	Don't (treat it as a) joke.

G Sentence particle 了 **le** (sometimes in combination with 啊 **a** and pronounced 啦 **la**) is added to introduce a note of urgency:

别说话了！	bié shuōhuà le	Silence, please!/Stop talking!
起床啦！	qǐchuáng la	It's time to get up./Up you get!

H More formal prohibitions which appear on public notices are expressed by 不准 **bù zhǔn** 'not allowed', 不许 **bù xǔ** 'not permitted' and 不得 **bù dé** 'must not'

不准抽烟！	bù zhǔn chōuyān	No smoking!
不得入内！	bù dé rù nèi	No entry!
不许在此乱丢垃圾！	bù xǔ zài cǐ luàn diū lājī	No litter on the premises!

I Exclamations are formed by placing a degree adverb like 多(么) **duō(me)** 'how', 真 **zhēn** 'really/truly' before the adjective, which is often followed by 啊 **a**:

伦敦的街道多么繁忙啊！ **lúndūn de jiēdào duōme fánmáng a**
How busy the streets in London are!

瞧，他跑得真快啊！ **qiáo tā pǎo de zhēn kuài a**
Look, he can run really fast!

你真逗！ **nǐ zhēn dòu**
You are really funny/witty!

J There is a tendency for the particle 啊 **a** to be affected by the vowel or consonant ending of the word that precedes it. This leads to possible variants including the following:

<i>Endings</i>	<i>Variant</i>
-i	呀 ya
-u, -ao	哇 wa
-n	哪 na
了 le and 啊 a (see G above)	啦 la

Examples

天哪！ **tiān na** Heavens!

这道题目真难哪！ **zhèi dào tí mù zhēn nán na**

This question is really difficult!

这种药多么苦哇！ **zhèi zhǒng yào duō me kǔ wa**

This medicine is so bitter/really awful/nasty!

不是这回事呀！ **bù shì zhèi huí shì ya**

It is certainly not the case!

汽车修好啦！ **qì chē xiū hǎo la**

The car has been repaired at last!

一只多么美丽的小鸟哇！ **yī zhī duō me měi lì de xiǎo niǎo wa**

What a beautiful little bird!

这头熊猫多可爱呀！ **zhèi tóu xióng māo duō kě'ài ya**

Isn't this panda sweet!

这场球赛多么精彩呀！ **zhèi chǎng qiú sài duō me jīng cǎi ya**

This football match is so exciting!

Note: The above are not rigid rules and it is possible for individual speakers simply to use 啊 **a** or 呀 **ya** in many cases.

Exercise 20.1

Translate the following imperatives into Chinese:

- | | |
|-------------|--------------------------------|
| 1 Come in! | 6 Be quick! |
| 2 Stand up! | 7 Come back early! |
| 3 Get out! | 8 Close the door! |
| 4 Sit down! | 9 Be serious! |
| 5 Get up! | 10 Don't switch off the light! |

Exercise 20.2

Translate the following imperatives into Chinese, using 请 **qǐng** and/or 吧 **ba**, 让 **ràng**, 叫 **jiào** where appropriate:

- Do have some more (food)!
- Let's get off (the bus) here.
- Leave him alone.
- Hurry up!
- Please queue up here! (排队 **páiduì** 'to queue')

- 6 Switch on the light, please!
 7 Come in, please!
 8 Let's have a little rest!
 9 Listen! Who is it?
 10 Please open the door.

Exercise 20.3

Rephrase the imperative sentences below as negatives:

- | | | |
|-----------|------------------------------|--|
| 1 关窗！ | guān chuāng | Close the window! |
| 2 关灯！ | guān dēng | Turn off the light! |
| 3 晾衣服！ | liàng yīfu | Hang the clothes out to dry! |
| 4 上车！ | shàng chē | Get on the bus!/Get into the car! |
| 5 过来！ | guò lái | Come here! |
| 6 穿这双鞋！ | chuān zhèi shuāng xié | Wear this pair of shoes! |
| 7 开车！ | kāichē | (in a car) Let's go! |
| 8 让他走！ | ràng tā zǒu | Let him go. |
| 9 叫她回来！ | jiào tā huí lái | Tell her to come back. |
| 10 请大家带伞！ | qǐng dàjiā dài sǎn | Would everyone please bring umbrellas. |

Exercise 20.4

Translate into Chinese the two imperative sentences (i) and (ii) in each of the following cases, building on the basic imperative provided:

- 1 进去 **jìn qù** Go in!

- (i) Let's go in!
 (ii) Okay, you may go in now!

- 2 去割草！ **qù gē cǎo** Go and cut the grass!

- (i) Would you please go and mow the grass!
 (ii) Go and mow the grass now please! (It's time for you to go and mow the grass now.)

- 3 下车！**xià chē** Get off the bus!
- (i) Let's get off the bus!
(ii) Come on, we're getting off here!
- 4 喝一杯！**hē yī bēi** Have a drink!
- (i) Let's have a drink!
(ii) It's okay, you may have a drink!

Exercise 20.5

Complete the following sentences with a likely exclamatory particle in each case, such as 啊 **a**, 呀 **ya**, 哇 **wa**, 哪 **na** or 啦 **la**, remembering that with 啦 **la** an element must be replaced:

- 1 这块石头多重 _____ ! **zhè kuài shítou duō zhòng** _____
This stone is so heavy!
- 2 那幢大楼真高 _____ ! **nèi zhuàng dàlóu zhēn gāo** _____
That building is really tall!
- 3 外面多冷 _____ ! **wàimian duō lěng** _____
How cold it is outside!
- 4 我饿死了 _____ ! **wǒ è sǐ le** _____
I am so hungry!
- 5 他来得真早 _____ ! **tā lái de zhēn zǎo** _____
He's here really early!
- 6 你看地板都湿了 _____ ! **nǐ kàn dìbǎn dōu shī le** _____
Look, the floor is all wet!
- 7 今天的天气多么好 _____ ! **jīntiān de tiānqì duōme hǎo** _____
What a nice day it is today!
- 8 这道题真难 _____ ! **zhè dào tí zhēn nán** _____
This question is really difficult!
- 9 这是一条多么漂亮的裙子 _____ !
zhè shì yī tiáo duōme piàoliang de qúnzi _____
What a pretty skirt this is!
- 10 图书馆里真安静 _____ ! **túshūguǎn li zhēn ānjìng** _____
How quiet it is in the library!
- 11 这个孩子多可爱 _____ ! **zhèi gè háizi duō kě'ài** _____
How lovely this child is!
- 12 多么可爱的一只小猫 _____ ! **duōme kě'ài de yī zhī xiǎo māo** _____
What a lovely kitten!

Pattern and vocabulary drill 20.1

Translate the 15 negative commands below using 别 **bié** 'Don't' with the verb indicated in each case:

Don't bother about me. (管 **guǎn**)

别管我！ **bié guǎn wǒ**

- 1 Never mind him! (管 **guǎn**)
- 2 Don't come in! (进来 **jìn lái**)
- 3 Don't go out! (出去 **chū qù**)
- 4 Don't go yet! (走 **zǒu**)
- 5 Don't touch it! (碰 **pèng**)
- 6 Don't go on! (说 **shuō**)
- 7 Don't swear at people! (骂 **mà**)
- 8 Don't sleep on the sofa! (睡 **shuì**)
- 9 Don't look for excuses! (找 **zhǎo**)
- 10 Don't borrow money from others. (借 **jiè**)
- 11 Don't wait for me. (等 **děng**)
- 12 Don't smoke here. (抽烟 **chōuyān**)
- 13 Don't tease him. (逗 **dòu**)
- 14 Don't stand up. (站 **zhàn**)
- 15 Don't laugh at me. (笑 **xiào**)

Reformulate the same 15 imperatives making use of the words in brackets, and then translate them into English:

Don't bother about me. (不用 **bù yòng**)

(你)不用管我！ (**nǐ**) **bù yòng guǎn wǒ** 'No need (for you) to bother about me!'

- 1 Never mind him! (不必 **bù bì**)
- 2 Don't come in! (不要 **bù yào**)
- 3 Don't go out! (不许 **bù xǔ** 'not allowed')
- 4 Don't go yet! (还不能 **hái bù néng**)
- 5 Don't touch it! (不准 **bù zhǔn**)
- 6 Don't go on! (不要 **bù yào**)
- 7 Don't swear at people! (不许 **bù xǔ**)
- 8 Don't sleep on the sofa! (不可以 **bù kěyǐ**)
- 9 Don't look for excuses! (不要 **bù yào**)
- 10 Don't borrow money from others. (不要 **bù yào**)
- 11 Don't wait for me. (不必 **bù bì**)
- 12 Don't smoke here. (不准 **bù zhǔn**)
- 13 Don't tease him. (不要 **bù yào**)

- 14 Don't stand up. (不用 **bù yòng**)
 15 Don't laugh at me. (不能 **bù néng**)

Pattern and vocabulary drill 20.2

If sentence particle 了 **le** is added to the 12 sentences below, it indicates that the speaker is getting increasingly impatient. He not only wants to bring the situation to a close, but does not want it to continue or occur again. With 了 **le**, he sounds as if he were saying: 'Enough is enough!' Translate each of the following sentences first without 了 **le** and then with 了 **le** to bring out their subtle differences in meaning:

别哭！ **bié kū** Don't cry!
 别哭了！ **bié kū le** Don't cry any more! or Stop crying!

- 1 请不要笑我！ **qǐng bù yào xiào wǒ**
- 2 请别开玩笑！ **qǐng bié kāi wánxiào**
- 3 不要打架！ **bù yào dǎjià**
- 4 别吵架！ **bié chǎojià**
- 5 别吵！ **bié chǎo**
- 6 别吵我！ **bié chǎo wǒ**
- 7 别骂他！ **bié mà tā**
- 8 不要等他！ **bù yào děng tā**
- 9 别抽烟！ **bié chōuyān**
- 10 别喝酒！ **bié hē jiǔ**
- 11 别客气！ **bié kèqì**
- 12 再见！ **zài jiàn**

UNIT TWENTY-ONE

Complements of direction and location (or destination)

Complements are those elements in a sentence which follow the verb (or adjective), apart from the object. They usually signify such meaning categories as direction, location, duration, result, manner, possibility, degree, etc. In this unit we are concerned with complements of direction and location.

A The verbs 来 **lái** ‘to come’ and 去 **qù** ‘to go’ form the two basic complements of direction which are used after verbs of movement or action to indicate a direction ‘towards’ or ‘away from’ the speaker:

(a) after verbs of movement

跑来	pǎo lái	run over (here)
跑去	pǎo qù	run over (there)
飞来	fēi lái	fly over (towards the speaker)
飞去	fēi qù	fly away (from the speaker)

(b) after verbs of action

拿来	ná lái	bring
拿去	ná qù	take
带来	dài lái	bring with one
带去	dài qù	take with one

广场上飞来了不少鸽子。 **guǎngchǎng shang fēi lái le bù shǎo gēzi**
Quite a number of pigeons flew over/came flying to the square.

钱已经汇去了。 **qián yǐjīng huì qù le**
The money was already remitted [to someone].

叔叔寄来了很多圣诞礼物。 **shūshu jì lái le hěn duō shèngdàn lǐwù**
Uncle sent [us] (by post) a lot of Christmas presents.

昨天传来了舅舅出国的消息。 **zuótiān chuán lái le jiùjiu chū guó de xiāoxi**

The news of uncle's going abroad came yesterday.

B 来 **lái** or 去 **qù** may be linked, in particular, to the following group of verbs to form a set of common disyllabic verbs of movement. These disyllabic verbs also function themselves as directional complements with either verbs of movement or verbs of action:

	来 lái	‘come’	去 qù	‘go’	
	(towards the speaker)		(away from the speaker)		
进 jìn	‘enter’	进来 jìn lái	come in	进去 jìn qù	go in
出 chū	‘exit’	出来 chū lái	come out	出去 chū qù	go out
上 shàng	‘ascend’	上来 shàng lái	come up	上去 shàng qù	go up
下 xià	‘descend’	下来 xià lái	come down	下去 xià qù	go down
回 huí	‘return’	回来 huí lái	come back	回去 huí qù	go back
过 guò	‘cross’	过来 guò lái	come over/ across	过去 guò qù	go over/ across
起 qǐ	‘rise’	起来 qǐ lái	rise (from a lower position to a higher position)	上去 qǐ qù	is no longer used

Examples:

(a) as independent verbs of movement

他进来了。	tā jìn lái le	He came in (to the room).
请上来！	qǐng shàng lái	Please come up!
他出去了。	tā chū qù le	He’s out.
他们回去了。	tāmen huí qù le	They have gone back.
太阳出来了。	tàiyáng chū lái le	The sun came out.
我不敢下去。	wǒ bù gǎn xià qù	I dare not go down.
他起来了。	tā qǐ lái le	He’s got up.

(b) as complements of direction following verbs of movement

他们赶回去了。	tāmen gǎn huí qù le	They hurried back (to where they had come from).
她不敢跳下去。	tā bù gǎn tiào xià qù	She did not dare to jump down.

21

Complements of direction and location (or destination)

画儿掉下来了。	huàr diào xiàlái le	The picture fell down.
车开过去了。	chē kāi guòqù le	The car went past.
太阳升起来了。	tàiyáng shēng qǐlái le	The sun rose.

(c) as complements of direction following verbs of action

书放回去了。	shū fàng huíqù le	The books have been put back (where they were).
菜端进来了。	cài duān jìnlái le	The dishes were brought in.
圣诞卡寄出去了。	shèngdànkǎ jì chūqù le	The Christmas cards have been sent (by post).
画儿挂起来了。	huàr guà qǐlái le	The pictures were hung up.
作业交上去了。	zuòyè jiāo shàngqù le	The coursework has been handed in.
借出去的钱还回来了。	jiè chūqù de qián huán huílái le	The money which had been lent was returned.

Note: 起来 **qǐlái**, 下去 **xiàqù** and 下来 **xiàlái**, as we have seen, may also be used as aspect markers (see Unit 15):

他唱起来了。	tā chàng qǐlái le	He started singing.
你可以在这儿住下去。	nǐ kěyǐ zài zhèr zhù xiàqù	You can stay on here.
车停下来了。	chē tíng xiàlái le	The car came to a stop.

C When the verb has an object that indicates a location, it is placed between the verb and its directional complement 来 **lái** or 去 **qù** or between the two elements of a disyllabic complement of direction:

(a) between the verb and 来 **lái** or 去 **qù**

她进办公室来了。	tā jìn bàngōngshì lái le	She came into the office.
哥哥出门去了。	gēge chūmén qù le	My elder brother is away. (<i>lit.</i> Elder brother went out of the door.)

小李上台去了。	xiǎo lǐ shàng tái qù le	Xiao Li went on to the stage.
妈妈下楼来了。	māma xià lóu lái le	Mum came downstairs.

Note: 出门 **chūmén** 'be away' is a verb with an inbuilt object.

(b) between the two elements of a disyllabic directional complement

(i) following a verb of movement

妈妈跑下楼来。	māma pǎo xià lóu lái	Mum came running downstairs.
公共汽车开过桥去。	gōnggòng qìchē kāi guò qiáo qù	The bus went across the bridge.
叔叔跑回家去了。	shūshu pǎo huí jiā qù le	(My) uncle has gone home.
姑姑走进屋子来了。	gūgu zǒu jìn wūzi lái le	(My) aunt walked into the room.
松鼠爬上树去了。	sōngshǔ pá shàng shù qù le	The squirrel climbed up the tree.
救生员跳进水里去了。	jiùshēngyuán tiào jìn shuǐ li qù le	The life-guard jumped into the water.

(ii) following a verb of action

钥匙放回抽屉里去了。	yàoshi fàng huí chōuti li qù le	The keys have been put back into the drawer.
钱存进银行去了。	qián cún jìn yínháng qù le	The money has been deposited in the bank.

One cannot, for instance, say:

*她进来办公室了。	tā jìn lái bàngōngshì le	(lit. She came into the office.)
*松鼠爬上去树了。	sōngshǔ pá shàngqù shù le	(lit. The squirrel climbed up the tree.)

21

Complements of direction and location (or destination)

If the object is not a location, it may precede or follow the monosyllabic directional complement 来 **lái** or 去 **qù**:

舅舅带了一瓶酒来。 **jiùjiu dài le yī píng jiǔ lái**

舅舅带来了一瓶酒。 **jiùjiu dài lái le yī píng jiǔ**

(My) uncle brought a bottle of wine.

嫂嫂借了两把椅子去。 **sǎosao jiè le liǎng bǎ yǐzi qù**

嫂嫂借去了两把椅子。 **sǎosao jiè qù le liǎng bǎ yǐzi**

(My) Elder brother's wife has borrowed two chairs from us.

If the directional complement is a disyllabic one, a non-location object may precede it or follow it as in the case of a monosyllabic directional complement. In addition a non-location object may go between the two syllables of the disyllabic directional complement as is shown in the third example:

爸爸租了一辆小面包车回来。 **bàba zū le yī liàng xiǎo**

miànbāochē huí lái

爸爸租回来了一辆小面包车。 **bàba zū huí lái le yī liàng xiǎo**

miànbāochē

爸爸租回一辆小面包车来。 **bàba zū huí yī liàng xiǎo**

miànbāochē lái

Father has hired a mini-van.

Note: In the last instance, the aspect marker 了 **le** has to be dropped as it does not usually go between 回 **huí** and 来 **lái**.

D Location (or destination) complements are usually formed by the verb 在 **zài** 'to be in/at' or 到 **dào** 'to arrive in/at' followed by a location phrase:

(a) location

爷爷住在城里。 **yéye zhù zài chéng li** Grandpa lives in town.

有很多人坐在草地上。 **yǒu hěn duō rén zuò zài cǎodì shang** There are a lot of people sitting on the grass.

衣服挂在衣架上。 **yīfu guà zài yījià shang** The clothes were hung on the coat-hangers.

(b) destination

公共汽车开到桥边。 **gōnggòng qìchē kāi dào qiáo biān** The bus went as far as the bridge.

我们赶到火车站。	wǒmen gǎn dào huǒchēzhàn	We hurried to the station.
我家搬到公园附近。	wǒ jiā bān dào gōngyuán fùjìn	We moved (home) to a place by the park.
青蛙跳到水里去了。	qīngwā tiào dào shuǐ lǐ qù le	The frog jumped into the water.
海豹游到岸上来了。	hǎibào yóu dào àn shàng lái le	The seal swam on to the shore.

Note: In the last two examples above, we can see that 去 **qù** and 来 **lái** may also be integrated into a destination complement begun with 到 **dào**, when a location object is present.

Exercise 21.1

Translate the following phrases into Chinese using directional complements:

- | | |
|------------------|--|
| 1 go back | 13 come back home |
| 2 come over here | 14 drive over the bridge (to the other side) |
| 3 go up | 15 climb up the tree |
| 4 come down | 16 come down the hill |
| 5 bring here | 17 bring to the classroom |
| 6 go out | 18 go out of the house |
| 7 come back | 19 run back to the office |
| 8 take to | 20 take back to the hospital |
| 9 get up | 21 jump into the swimming-pool |
| 10 go in | 22 go into the post office |
| 11 go across | 23 go across the street |
| 12 come out | 24 come out of the room |

Exercise 21.2

Complete the Chinese translations with disyllabic directional complements:

- The children have gone out.
孩子们跑 _____ 了。 **háizimen pǎo _____ le**
- The clothes have fallen off the clothes-line.
晾衣绳上的衣服掉 _____ 了。
liàngyīshéng shàng de yīfú diào _____ le

21

Complements of direction and location (or destination)

- 3 He lay down on the grass.
他在草地上躺 _____ 。 **tā zài cǎodì shang tǎng** _____
- 4 The doctor has come in.
医生走 _____ 了。 **yīshēng zǒu** _____ **le**
- 5 She just went past.
她刚刚走 _____ 。 **tā gānggāng zǒu** _____
- 6 Don't throw it out of the window.
不要扔 _____ 窗外 _____ ! **bù yào rēng** _____ **chuāng wài** _____
- 7 The cups have been put back in the cupboard.
杯子放 _____ 碗柜里 _____ 了。 **bēizi fàng** _____ **wǎngù li** _____ **le**
- 8 The teacher has gone back to the school.
老师跑 _____ 学校 _____ 了。 **lǎoshī pǎo** _____ **xuéxiào** _____ **le**
- 9 The kitten has jumped on to the bed.
小猫跳 _____ 床 _____ 了。 **xiǎo māo tiào** _____ **chuáng** _____ **le**
- 10 The dog jumped over the wall.
狗跳 _____ 墙 _____ 了。 **gǒu tiào** _____ **qiáng** _____ **le**
- 11 The letter has been dropped into the pillar-box.
信已经扔 _____ 邮筒 _____ 了。
xìn yǐjīng rēng _____ **yóutǒng** _____ **le**
- 12 The ball did not go into the goal.
球没有踢 _____ 球门 _____ 。 **qiú méiyǒu tī** _____ **qiúmén** _____

Exercise 21.3

Rephrase the following Chinese sentences, adding the location words shown in the brackets (note: in some cases a postposition may be needed), and then translate the rephrased sentences into English:

小李回来了。 **xiǎo lǐ huí lái le** (家 **jiā**)

小李回家来了。 **xiǎo lǐ huí jiā lái le**

Xiao Li came home.

- | | | |
|------------|------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1 老师走进去了。 | lǎoshī zǒu jìnqù le | (图书馆 túshūguǎn
the library) |
| 2 飞机飞过去了。 | fēijī fēi guòqù le | (山 shān the hill) |
| 3 我爬上去。 | wǒ pá shàngqù le | (山坡 shānpō the
hillside) |
| 4 孩子们跑过去了。 | háizimen pǎo guòqù le | (马路 mǎlù the road) |

- | | | |
|------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 5 他们走出去了。 | tāmen zǒu chūqù le | (教堂 jiàotáng the church) |
| 6 医生回去了。 | yīshēng huí qù le | (医院 yīyuàn the hospital) |
| 7 青蛙跳下去了。 | qīngwā tiào xiàqù le | (水 shuǐ the water) |
| 8 车开过来了。 | chē kāi guòlái le | (桥 qiáo the bridge) |
| 9 小鸡钻出来了。 | xiǎo jī zuān chūlái le | (蛋壳 dànké the shell) |
| 10 小猫爬上去了。 | xiǎo māo pá shàngqù le | (树 shù the tree) |
| 11 鸟儿飞出去了。 | niǎor fēi chūqù le | (笼子 lóngzi the cage) |
| 12 学生走进来了。 | xuésheng zǒu jìnlái le | (教室 jiàoshì the classroom) |
| 13 老鼠钻回去了。 | lǎoshǔ zuān huíqù le | (洞 dòng hole) |
| 14 渡船开过去了。 | dùchuán kāi guòqù le | (河 hé river) |

Exercise 21.4

Fill in the blanks with an appropriate location or destination phrase in accordance with the English version provided, making use of the words given in the following list:

银行	yínháng	bank
垃圾桶	lājītǒng	garbage bin
晾衣绳	liàngyīshéng	clothes-line
箱子	xiāngzi	box/trunk
冰箱	bīngxiāng	refrigerator
保险柜	bǎoxiǎnguì	strongbox/safe
行李架	xínglijà	luggage rack
海边	hǎi biān	the seaside
天上	tiān shang	the sky
城外	chéng wài	out-of-town areas
湖上	hú shang	surface of the lake
屋顶上	wūdǐng shang	top of the roof

- 衣服都装 _____ 去了。
yīfú dōu zhuāng ... qù le
All the clothes have been packed into the box.
- 钱都存 _____ 了。**qián dōu cún ... le**
All the money has been deposited in the bank.
- 垃圾都倒 _____ 去了。
lājī dōu dào ... qù le
All the rubbish has been tipped into the garbage bin.

- 4 你的行李都放 _____ 了。
nǐ de xíngli dōu fàng ... le
 All your luggage was put on the luggage rack.
- 5 洗好的衣服都晾 _____ (_____) 了。
xǐ hǎo de yīfú dōu liàng ... le
 All the washing has been hung on the clothes-line [to dry].
- 6 煮好的菜都搁 _____ 了。
zhǔ hǎo de cài dōu gē ... le
 All the cooked dishes were left in the fridge.
- 7 首饰都放 _____ 。 **shǒushi dōu fàng ...**
 All the jewels are in the safe.
- 8 他们搬 _____ 来了。 **tāmen bān ... lái le**
 They have moved into the town.
- 9 汽车一直开 _____ 。 **qìchē yīzhí kāi ...**
 The car went straight to the seaside.
- 10 气球一直升 _____ 去了。 **qìqiú yīzhí shēng ... qù le**
 The balloon rose straight into the sky.
- 11 乌鸦飞 _____ 去了。 **wūyā fēi ... qù le**
 The crow flew to the top of the roof.
- 12 我的帽子让风给吹 _____ 去了。
wǒ de màozi ràng fēng gěi chuī ... qù le
 My hat was blown into the lake by the wind.

Pattern and vocabulary drill 21.1

Translate into Chinese the English sentences below, making sure you use either monosyllabic or disyllabic directional complements with or without a location object. An example is given:

The children went in. 孩子们进去了。 **háizimen jìn qù le**
 The children went into the classroom.
 孩子们(走)进教室去了。 **háizimen (zǒu) jìn jiàoshì qù le**

- 1 The engineers went in.
- 2 The adults went out.
- 3 The boys went out.
- 4 The girls came back.
- 5 The Chinese friends came in.
- 6 The guests went back.
- 7 The Chinese guests came back.
- 8 The neighbours came out.

- 9 The patient came into the ward.
- 10 Grandma took younger sister and brother to the zoo.
- 11 The athletes climbed up the mountain. (mountain 山 **shān**)
- 12 Father came home after work.
- 13 The kitten hid itself behind the sofa. (hide 躲 **duǒ**)
- 14 A dog came running over the bridge.
- 15 A crowd of people came walking into the shop.
- 16 Elder brother came running upstairs.
- 17 The little girl swam across the river. (swim 游 **yóu**; 河 river **hé**)
- 18 The pigeon flew up into the tree.
- 19 The moon came out. (moon 月亮 **yuèliang**)
- 20 The boy jumped into the water.
- 21 The squirrel climbed down the tree.
- 22 Mother hurried to the railway station.
- 23 A group of boys came running on to the street.
- 24 There rose many a balloon.
- 25 The pen fell into the river.
- 26 They moved into the village.
- 27 The manager came walking out of his office.
- 28 The students stood up.
- 29 Everybody sat down.
- 30 The life-guard came swimming back to the shore. (shore 岸边 **àn biān**)

Pattern and vocabulary drill 21.2

Following the model, form two sentences in Chinese using each of the ten sets of words given below. For the first, introduce the location expression; for the second, add the action verb so that the original action verb becomes a direction complement.

他进来了。 **tā jìn lái le** He came in.

office: 他进办公室来了。 **tā jìn bàngōngshì lái le**

He came into the office.

walk hurriedly: 他跑进办公室来了。 **tā pǎo jìn bàngōngshì lái le**

He walked hurriedly into the office.

- 1 他进去了。 **tā jìn qù le** He went in.
room walk hurriedly
- 2 他出去了。 **tā chū qù le** He went out.
classroom walk
- 3 他回去了。 **tā huí qù le** He went back.
home hurry
- 4 他下来了。 **tā xià lái le** He came down.
stairs run

21

Comple-
ments of
direction
and loca-
tion (or
destina-
tion)

- 5 他过去了。◦**tā guò qù le** He went over (to the other side).
bridge drive (a car)
- 6 他上去了。◦**tā shàng qù le** He went up.
tree climb
- 7 他过来了。◦**tā guò lái le** He came over (to this side).
river swim
- 8 他出来了。◦**tā chū lái le** He came out.
house rush/dash (冲 **chōng**)
- 9 他过去了。◦**tā guò qù le** He went over (to the other side).
fence (栅栏 **zhàlán**) jump
- 10 他上来了。◦**tā shàng lái le** He went up.
stage/platform walk hurriedly

UNIT TWENTY-TWO

Complements of result and manner

This unit deals with complements of result and what are generally called complements of manner. These complements, like those of direction and location or destination, are invariably positioned after verbs.

A Complements of *result* can be either adjectives or verbs and they imply that a result of the action of the verb has been achieved:

(a) Adjectives

大家都坐好了。	dàjiā dōu zuò hǎo le	Everybody has sat/settled down.
你猜错了。	nǐ cāi cuò le	You have guessed wrongly.
你们听清楚了吗？	nǐmen tīng qīngchū le ma	Did you hear that clearly?

(b) Verbs

他们都站住了。	tāmen dōu zhàn zhù le	They all stood still.
你看见她了吗？	nǐ kàn jiàn tā le ma	Did you see her?
我学会开车了。	wǒ xué huì kāichē le	I have learnt to drive.
你听懂了吗？	nǐ tīng dǒng le ma	Did you understand (what was said)?

B The objects of verbs with complements are regularly shifted to a preverbal position where they become the topic of the sentence and naturally have definite reference:

文章我写完了。	wénzhāng wǒ xiě wán le	I have finished writing the essay.
桌子擦干净了。	zhuōzi cā gānjìng le	The table has been wiped (clean).
工作做完了。	gōngzuò zuò wán le	The work was done.

那个问题你想清楚了没有？

nèi gè wèntí nǐ xiǎng qīngchū le méiyǒu

Have you thought out that question thoroughly?

他的话我都听明白了。 **tā de huà wǒ dōu tīng míngbai le**

I understood every word he said.

Note: The seemingly more logical verb-object order is certainly not ungrammatical but is in fact far less usual in everyday speech or writing:

我写完了文章了。 **wǒ xiě wán le wénzhāng le**

I have finished writing the essay.

C Complements of result by definition imply completed action and/or change of circumstances and therefore naturally occur with **了 le**. (For discussion of **了 le** as completed action, see Unit 15; for a detailed analysis of **了 le** as a ‘change-of-state’ sentence particle, see *Intermediate Chinese*, Unit 8.) For example,

他喝醉了。

tā hē zuì le

He’s drunk.

衣服晒干了。

yīfu shài gān le

The clothes are dry.

信寄走了。

xìn jì zǒu le

The letter has been sent.

It follows that the negation of these statements will involve the use of 没(有) **méi(yǒu)** without **了 le** since the action has never been completed or the state achieved:

他没喝醉。

tā méi hē zuì

He isn’t drunk.

衣服没晒干。

yīfu méi shài gān

The clothes are not dry.

信还没寄走。

xìn hái méi jì zǒu

The letter has not been sent yet.

D The complement of *manner* in its simple form consists of **得 de** followed by an adjective, usually with a degree adverb or negator:

他学得很好。

tā xué de hěn hǎo

He studies very well.

她跑得非常快。

tā pǎo de fēicháng

She runs/ran

kuài

extremely fast.

你说得很对。

nǐ shuō de hěn duì

You are/were quite right (in what you said).

他睡得太晚。

tā shuì de tài wǎn

He goes/went to bed too late.

谁来得最早？	shéi/shuí lái de zuì zǎo	Who arrived earliest?
他写得不好。	tā xiě de bù hǎo	He writes/wrote badly.
她讲得不太清楚。	tā jiǎng de bù tài qīngchu	She does/did not put it too clearly.

Note: In these cases a degree adverb is almost indispensable and that, as a state or situation is being described with no reference to a previous situation, sentence 了 **le** is not generally used.

Phrases with reduplicated words, which have phonetic resonance (phonaesthemes) make natural complements of manner:

她讲得结结巴巴的。	tā jiǎng de jiējiēbābā de	She hemmed and hawed (as she spoke).
他喝得醉醺醺的。	tā hē de zuìxūnxūn de	He (drank till he) was tipsy.

E More complex forms of the complement of *result* or *manner* entail the placing of a verb phrase or a clause after the 得 **de**. These complements in fact normally convey a sense of resultant state, with the difference between *result* and *manner* being conveyed by the presence of the sentence particle 了 **le** for result and by its absence for manner. The verb phrase usually follows an adjectival predicate, but the clause can come after an adjectival or verb predicate:

(a) Verb phrases

他高兴得跳起来。 **tā gāoxìng de tiào qǐlái** (manner)

He jumped for joy.

(*lit.* he was [so] pleased that he jumped up)

她疼得倒下去了。 **tā téng de dǎo xiàqù le** (result)

She collapsed with the pain./She was in such great pain she collapsed.

妈妈急得哭起来了。 **māma jí de kū qǐlái le** (result)

Mother was so anxious she started to cry.

(b) Clauses

太阳照得我眼也花了。 **tàiyáng zhào de wǒ yǎn yě huā le** (verb)

The sun was so bright it dazzled my eyes.

(*lit.* the sun shone [so that] my eyes were dazzled)

他高得手能碰到天花板了。

tā gāo de shǒu néng pèng dào tiānhuābǎn le (adjective)

He is so tall he can touch the ceiling with his hands.

她站得腿都酸了。

tā zhàn de tuǐ dōu suān le (verb)

She stood there for so long her legs began to ache.

他们唱得嗓子都哑了。

tāmen chàng de sǎngzi dōu yǎ le (verb)

They sang until they were hoarse.

他赶路赶得汗直往下流。

tā gǎn lù gǎn de hàn zhí wǎng xià liú (verb)

He hurried ahead till sweat was pouring down/till he was sweating all over.

Note: As can be seen from the above, sentences that have clause complements more often imply result rather than manner, and 了 **le** is therefore regularly present.

F If the verb in a sentence with a complement of manner is of a ‘verb + object’ form (e.g. 游泳 **yóuyǒng** ‘swim’; 唱歌 **chànggē** ‘sing’; 聊天儿 **liáotiānr** ‘chat’), the verb is repeated before the complement is added:

她唱歌唱得嗓子都哑了。

She sang until she was hoarse.

他游泳游得很慢。

He swims very slowly./He is a slow swimmer.

One cannot say:

*她唱歌得嗓子都哑了。

Note: You may have noticed that most of the sentences containing ‘verb + complement’ expressions end with 了 **le**. This is because the primary function of the sentence particle 了 **le** is to indicate ‘change’ and the notion of a newly emerged *result* is naturally consistent with the notion of a changed situation. Examples without 了 **le**, are statements of a present fact and therefore focus on *manner* rather than *result*. Notice the change in meaning if 了 **le** is used in the following:

Compare:

他游泳游得很慢。 **tā yóuyǒng yóu de hěn màn**
He swims very slowly./He is a slow swimmer.

And

他游泳游得很慢了。 **tā yóuyǒng yóu de hěn màn le**
He no longer swims as fast as before./
He is a much slower swimmer now than he used to be.

Exercise 22.1

Complete each of the following Chinese sentences with an appropriate complement of result or manner to match the English sentence:

- The dog ran very fast.
小狗跑 _____ 了。 **xiǎo gǒu pǎo** _____
- The clothes have been washed (clean).
衣服洗 _____ 了。 **yīfu xǐ** _____ **le**
- I have understood this article.
这篇文章我看 _____ 了。 **zhèi piān wénzhāng wǒ kàn** _____ **le**
- Who writes Chinese the best?
谁汉字写 _____ ?
shéi/shuí hàn zì xiě _____
- The rice is cooked.
饭煮 _____ 了。 **fàn zhǔ** _____ **le**
- Xiao Wang can speak English very fluently.
小王英语说 _____ 了。
xiǎo wáng yīngyǔ shuō _____
- All the children have sat down.
孩子们都坐 _____ 了。 **háizimen dōu zuò** _____ **le**
- My daughter has learned how to play the piano.
我女儿学 _____ 弹钢琴了。 **wǒ nǚ'ér xué** _____ **tán gāngqín le**
- I managed to buy a good book.
我买 _____ 了一本好书。 **wǒ mǎi** _____ **le yī běn hǎo shū**
- The grass dried (in the sun).
草晒 _____ 了。 **cǎo shài** _____ **le**
- Mother went to bed very late.
妈妈睡 _____ 了。 **māma shuì** _____
- Did you see him?
你看 _____ 他了吗？ **nǐ kàn** _____ **tā le ma**

22

Complements of result and manner

- 13 The kitten jumped really high.
小猫跳 _____ 。 **xiǎo māo tiào** _____
- 14 The teacher has explained this problem extremely clearly.
这个问题老师说 _____ 。
zhè gè wèntí lǎoshī shuō _____
- 15 You are perfectly correct.
你说 _____ 。 **nǐ shuō** _____
- 16 The car stopped.
车子停 _____ 了。 **chēzi tíng** _____ le

Exercise 22.2

Form sentences by matching an appropriate clause complement of manner (or resultant state) from the list on the right with a main clause from the list on the left. Naturally 得 **de** will be needed at the beginning of the complement. Remember that with 'verb + object' constructions, the verb needs to be repeated before it can be followed by a complement. When you have constructed the sentences, translate them into English:

- | | | | |
|---------|------------------------|----------|------------------------------------|
| 1 我嗓子疼 | wǒ sāngzi téng | 腿都酸了 | tuǐ dōu suān le |
| 2 他游泳 | tā yóuyǒng | 嗓子都哑了 | sāngzi dōu yǎ le |
| 3 她跑路 | tā pǎo lù | 饭也吃不下了 | fàn yě chī bu xià le |
| 4 老师说话 | lǎoshī shuōhuà | 谁也不认识了 | shéi/shuí yě bù rènshi le |
| 5 我眼睛花 | wǒ yǎnjīng huā | 大家都笑起来了 | dàjiā dōu xiào qǐlái le |
| 6 我高兴 | wǒ gāoxìng | 话也说不出来了 | huà yě shuō bu chūlái le |
| 7 哥哥醉 | gēge zuì | 气也喘不过来了 | qì yě chuǎn bu guòlái le |
| 8 学生写字 | xuésheng xiě zì | 什么也看不清楚了 | shénme yě kàn bu qīngchu le |
| 9 妹妹哭 | mèimei kū | 手也酸了 | shǒu yě suān le |
| 10 她开玩笑 | tā kāi wánxiào | 眼睛都红了 | yǎnjīng dōu hóng le |

Exercise 22.3

Complete the following Chinese sentences by choosing the appropriate verb or adjective from the list given (note: in some cases some form of modification is needed) to complete the translations of the English sentences:

漂亮	piàoliang	饱	bǎo	好	hǎo
醉	zuì	倒	dǎo	干净	gānjìng
到	dào	破	pò	早	zǎo
对	duì	明白	míngbai	晚	wǎn

- 你没猜 _____ 。 **nǐ méi cāi** _____
You didn't guess it right.
- 那本书我没买 _____ 。 **nèi běn shū wǒ méi mǎi** _____
I did not manage to obtain that book.
- 那天大家都喝 _____ 了。 **nèi tiān dàjiā dōu hē** _____ **le**
Everybody got drunk that day.
- 那天大家都穿 _____ 。
nèi tiān dàjiā dōu chuān _____
That day everyone was dressed up beautifully.
- 他还没吃 _____ 。 **tā hái méi chī** _____
He has not eaten his fill yet.
- 电视机也修 _____ 了。 **diànshìjī yě xiū** _____ **le**
The television set has also been repaired.
- 她碰 _____ 了窗台上的花瓶。
tā pèng _____ **le chuāngtái shàng de huāpíng**
She knocked over the vase on the window sill.
- 隔壁的孩子弄 _____ 了我孩子的玩具。
gèbì de háizi nòng _____ **le wǒ háizi de wánjù**
Next door's child broke my child's toy.
- 窗户我都擦 _____ 了。 **chuānghu wǒ dōu cā** _____ **le**
I have wiped all the windows (clean).
- 这个问题你弄 _____ 了没有？
zhèi gè wèntí nǐ nòng _____ **le méiyǒu**
Have you thrashed out this problem?
- 妈妈今早起来 _____ 。
māma jīn zǎo qǐ lái _____
Mother got up very early this morning.
- 爸爸昨晚睡 _____ 。
bàba zuó wǎn shuì _____
Father went to bed very late last night.

Exercise 22.4

Translate the following into Chinese:

- They danced beautifully.
- The life-guard swam extremely fast.
- The student read slowly.
- The child ate a lot.

- 5 Everybody slept soundly.
 6 The actor sang very badly.
 7 We ran till we were too tired./We ran so much we were really tired.
 8 The athlete jumped really high.
 9 (My) Elder brother didn't drink much.
 10 My fellow student didn't speak fluently.

Pattern and vocabulary drill 22.1

You will have perhaps noticed that when a complement of result is in the form of a clause, 都 **dōu** or 也 **yě** is always present to refer back to the subject or topic of the clause for emphasis. It is not ungrammatical to leave them out, but the sentence as a result sounds less idiomatic. Formulate idiomatic sentences from the 12 sets of words below on the basis of the following:

subject: 姐姐 **jiějie** 'elder sister'
 action verb: 打字 **dǎzì** 'to type'
 result: 手 **shǒu** 'hand', 酸 **suān** 'sour; to ache'
 姐姐打字打得手都酸了。 **jiějie dǎzì dǎ de shǒu dōu suān le**
 Elder sister typed till her hands ached.

- subject: 妹妹 **mèimei** 'younger sister'; action verb: 跳绳 **tiàoshéng** 'to skip with a rope, play with a skipping rope'; result: 脚 **jiǎo** 'foot; feet', 疼 **téng** 'to ache, to hurt'
- subject: 弟弟 **dìdi** 'younger brother'; action verb: 跑步 **pǎobù** 'to jog'; result: 腿 **tuǐ** 'leg', 软 **ruǎn** 'soft; (muscles) to lack strength'
- subject: 老师 **lǎoshī** 'teacher'; action verb: 讲课 **jiǎngkè** 'to teach lessons'; result: 喉咙 **hóulóng** 'throat', 疼 **téng** 'to ache, to hurt'
- subject: 朋友们 **péngyoumen** 'the friends'; action verb: 聊天 **liáotiān** 'to chat'; result: 嗓子 **sǎngzi** 'throat, voice', 哑 **yǎ** 'to be hoarse, to lose one's voice'
- subject: 那个孩子 **nèi gè hái zi** 'that child'; action verb: 哭 **kū** 'to cry, to weep'; result: 眼睛 **yǎnjing** 'eyes', 红 **hóng** 'red, (eyes) bloodshot'
- subject: 我们 **wǒmen** 'we'; action verb: 背行李 **bēi xíngli** 'to carry luggage on one's back'; result: 背 **bèi** 'the back', 疼 **téng** 'to ache, to hurt'
- subject: 妈妈 **māma** 'mother'; action verb: 写信 **xiě xìn** 'to write letters'; result: 手 **shǒu** 'hand', 软 **ruǎn** 'weak; lose strength'
- subject: 姐姐 **jiějie** 'elder sister'; action verb: 拉小提琴 **lā xiǎotíqín** 'to play the violin'; result: 手指 **shǒuzhǐ** 'fingers', 出血 **chūxuè** 'to bleed'
- subject: 哥哥 **gēge** 'elder brother'; action verb: 弹钢琴 **tán gāngqín** 'to play the piano'; result: 手指 **shǒuzhǐ** 'fingers', 酸疼 **suānténg** 'to ache'

- 10 subject: 爸爸 **bàba** ‘father’; action verb: 说话 **shuōhuà** ‘to talk’; result: 口 **kǒu** ‘mouth’, 干 **gān** ‘dry’
- 11 subject: 爷爷 **yěye** ‘grandfather’; action verb: 看报纸 **kàn bàozhǐ** ‘to read the newspaper’; result: 眼睛 **yǎnjing** ‘eyes’, 花 **huā** ‘(eyes) to blur’
- 12 subject: 奶奶 **nǎinai** ‘grandmother’; action verb: 吃苹果 **chī píngguǒ** ‘to eat apples’; result: 牙齿 **yáchi** ‘teeth’, 疼 **téng** ‘to ache, to hurt’

Pattern and vocabulary drill 22.2

Using the model, construct versions ‘b’, ‘c’ and ‘d’ in Chinese for each of the twelve ‘a’ sentences given below.

- a 衣服晒乾了。 **yīfu shài gān le** The clothes are now dry.
- b 衣服没晒乾。 **yīfu méi shài gān** The clothes are not yet dry.
- c 衣服晒得不够干。 **yīfu shài de bùgòu gān** The clothes are not dry enough.
- d 衣服晒得不太干。 **yīfu shài de bù tài gān** The clothes are not too dry.
- 1 a 衣服洗干净了。 **yīfu xǐ gānjìng le** The clothes have been washed clean.
- 2 a 文章写好了。 **wénzhāng xiě hǎo le** The essay is completed (and presumably well written).
- 3 a 问题说清楚了。 **wèntí shuō qīngchu le** The question has been thoroughly explained.
- 4 a 饭煮熟了。 **fàn zhǔ shú/shóu le** The rice is well cooked.
- 5 a 车修好了。 **chē xiū hǎo le** The car has been repaired (and presumably is now drivable).
- 6 a 问题研究清楚了。 **wèntí yánjiū qīngchu le** The problem has been thoroughly studied.
- 7 a 头发剪短了。 **tóufa jiǎn duǎn le** The hair has been cut short.
- 8 a 歌词背熟了。 **gēcí bèi shú/shóu le** The lines (of a song) have been well committed to memory.
- 9 a 桌子抹干净了。 **zhuōzi mā gānjìng le** The table has been wiped clean.
- 10 a 情况了解清楚了。 **qíngkuàng liǎojiě qīngchu le** The situation has been thoroughly investigated.
- 11 a 东西放整齐了。 **dōngxi fàng zhěngqí le** The things are arranged in good order.
- 12 a 房间收拾干净了。 **fángjiān shōushi gānjìng le** The room has been tidied up.

UNIT TWENTY-THREE

Potential complements

A Simple complements of direction and result may in fact be extended with the help of 得 **de** and 不 **bù** to indicate whether the said direction or result is likely or unlikely to take place or be attained. These complements may be called potential complements:

(a) potential complements of result

黑板上的字你看得清楚吗？

hēibǎn shàng de zì nǐ kàn de qīngchū ma

Can you see the words on the blackboard clearly?

他说的话你听得懂吗？ **tā shuō de huà nǐ tīng de dǒng ma**

Can you understand what he said?

我昨天晚上睡不着。 **wǒ zuótiān wǎnshàng shuì bu zháo**

I could not sleep last night.

Note: In the last example the pronunciation of 着 is **zháo** which is here used as a verb meaning 'to achieve a desirable result'.

Virtually all complements of result, whether verbal or adjectival, can be used in the potential form:

看得见	kàn de jiàn	can see
看不见	kàn bu jiàn	cannot see
做得完	zuò de wán	can finish (the job)
做不完	zuò bu wán	cannot finish (the job)
办得到	bàn de dào	can be managed
办不到	bàn bu dào	cannot be managed
修得好	xiū de hǎo	can be repaired
修不好	xiū bu hǎo	cannot be repaired
说得明白	shuō de míngbai	can be explained clearly
说不明白	shuō bu míngbai	cannot be explained clearly
洗得干净	xǐ de gānjìng	can be washed (clean)
洗不干净	xǐ bu gānjìng	cannot be washed (clean)

(b) potential complements of direction (in terms of space or time)

你还吃得下吗？ **nǐ hái chī de xià ma**

Can you eat any more?

我真的吃不下了。 **wǒ zhēn de chī bu xià le**

Honestly, I can't eat any more.

我站不起来。 **wǒ zhàn bu qǐ lái**

I could not stand up.

里面人太多，我们进不去。

lǐmiàn rén tài duō | wǒmen jìn bu qù

There were so many people inside. We [simply] could not get in.

这儿有条沟，你跳得过来吗？

zhèr yǒu tiáo gōu | nǐ tiào de guò lái ma

There's a ditch here. Can you jump over (here)?

箱子关不上了。 **xiāngzi guān bu shàng le**

The box cannot be closed. (e.g. too full; the lock is broken; etc.)

他待(呆)不下来。 **tā dāi bu xià lái**

He cannot stay on. (e.g. He has been called away on business; always wants to be on the move; etc.)

When directional complements are used in a potential form with 得 **de** and 不 **bù**, they often acquire a metaphorical meaning beyond their original sense of physical direction:

她说不下去了。 **tā shuō bu xià qù le**

She could not carry on (speaking).

(e.g. She was choked by emotion; forgot what to say; etc.)

太贵了，我买不起。 **tài guì le | wǒ mǎi bu qǐ**

[It's] too expensive. I [just] can't afford [it].

B Some complements of result or direction exist *only* in the potential form (as can be seen from the last example cited immediately above). Other examples are:

positive

走得动

zǒu de dòng

can walk on

来得及

lái de jí

be in time for

去得成

qù de chéng

can (ultimately) go

行得通

xíng de tōng

will do/work

谈得上

tán de shàng

can be regarded as

看得起	kàn de qǐ	think highly of
合得来	hé de lái	can get along with
说得过去	shuō de guòqù	be justifiable
坐得下	zuò de xià	can seat/have room for
解决得了	jiějué de liǎo	can be resolved

negative

走不动	zǒu bu dòng	cannot walk (any more)
来不及	lái bu jí	be too late for
去不成	qù bu chéng	cannot (ultimately) go
行不通	xíng bu tōng	won't do/work
谈不上	tán bu shàng	can't be regarded as
看不起	kàn bu qǐ	look down upon
合不来	hé bu lái	cannot get along with
说不过去	shuō bu guòqù	cannot be justified
坐不下	zuò bu xià	does not have room for
解决不了	jiějué bu liǎo	cannot be resolved

Note: In the last two examples 下 **xià** does not mean the same as in the non-potential form 坐下 **zuò xià** 'sit down' and that 了, pronounced as **liǎo**, which is widely used as a complement, only exists as a potential complement meaning 'to do something successfully'.

Sentence examples:

他这个坏习惯改得了吗？ **tā zhèi gè huài xíguàn gǎi de liǎo ma**
Can this bad habit of his be changed/corrected?

他们两个人合不来。 **tāmen liǎng gè rén hé bu lái**
They too do not get on with each other.

你别看不起他。 **nǐ bié kàn bu qǐ tā**
Don't you look down upon him.

我赶不上她。 **wǒ gǎn bu shàng tā**
I can't catch up with her.

In some cases, there are only negative potentials:

巴不得	bā bu de	be more than willing/be only too anxious to
怪不得	guài bu de	no wonder
禁不住	jīn bu zhù	cannot help but
免不了	miǎn bu liǎo	can do nothing but/cannot avoid
大不了	dà bu liǎo	if the worst comes to the worst (<i>lit.</i> it can't be worse than)

These negative potentials are usually followed by verbal or clausal objects:

大家禁不住笑起来了。 **dàjiā jīn bu zhù xiào qǐlái le**
Everybody could not help laughing.

他巴不得大家都选他。 **tā bā bu de dàjiā dōu xuǎn tā**
He longed for everybody to vote for him.

大不了她不同意。 **dà bu liǎo tā bù tóngyì**
At the worst, she will disagree. [That's all.]

C Potential complements, as can be seen from above, may take objects:

你听得懂俄语吗？ **nǐ tīng de dǒng éyǔ ma**
Do you understand Russian (when you listen to it being spoken)?

我想不起那事儿来。 **wǒ xiǎng bu qǐ nèi jiàn shìr lái**
I could not/cannot recall that (matter).

我们赶得上那班火车吗？ **wǒmen gǎn de shàng nèi bān huǒchē ma**
Can we catch that train?

这儿住得下五个人吗？ **zhèr zhù de xià wǔ gè rén ma**
Can five people be housed here?

D The distinction between the potential complements and the modal verbs 能 **néng** and 可以 **kěyǐ** is that the modal verbs imply some degree of subjective influence while the potential complements indicate that external circumstances are the deciding factor.

Compare:

我不能去。 **wǒ bù néng qù**
I can't go [because I don't want to/I don't think it would be appropriate].

我去不了。 **wǒ qù bu liǎo**
I can't go [because I am ill/the last train has gone etc.].

我现在还不可以吃东西。 **wǒ xiànzài hái bù kěyǐ chī dōngxi**
I don't think I should eat anything now. (e.g. after the workout)

我现在还吃不了东西。 **wǒ xiànzài hái chī bu liǎo dōngxi**
I don't think I am able to eat anything now. (e.g. after the operation)

E Potential complements may assume two different forms in an affirmative-negative question. Either:

你明天来得了来不了？ **nǐ míngtiān lái de liǎo lái bu liǎo**

or:

你明天来不来得了？ **nǐ míngtiān lái bu lái de liǎo**

Can you come tomorrow or not?

To add emphasis, the adverb 究竟 **jiūjìng** 'after all' can be used:

你明天究竟来不来得了？ **nǐ míngtiān jiūjìng lái bu lái de liǎo**

Can you come tomorrow after all?

Exercise 23.1

Complete the following sentences with the appropriate potential complements:

- 1 你还走得 _____ 吗？ **nǐ hái zǒu de _____ ma**
Can you walk on?
- 2 这条沟这么宽，我跳不 _____ 。
zhèi tiáo gōu zhème kuān | wǒ tiào bu _____
This ditch is too wide for me to jump over.
- 3 这件事儿你还想得 _____ 吗？
zhèi jiàn shì nǐ hái xiǎng de _____ ma
Do you still remember that?
- 4 昨晚我睡不 _____ 。 **zuó wǎn wǒ shuì bu _____**
I couldn't sleep last night.
- 5 你还吃得 _____ 吗？ **nǐ hái chī de _____ ma**
Can you eat any more?
- 6 这个坏习惯你改得 _____ 吗？
zhèi gè huài xíguàn nǐ gǎi de _____ ma
Can you do something about (change) this bad habit of yours?
- 7 这么贵，我买不 _____ 。 **zhème guì | wǒ mǎi bu _____**
It's so expensive, I can't afford it.
- 8 我找不 _____ 我的钥匙了。 **wǒ zhǎo bu _____ wǒ de yàoshi le**
I can't find my keys.
- 9 现在还来得及 _____ 赶那班火车吗？
xiànzài hái lái de _____ gǎn nài bān huǒchē ma
Have we got enough time to catch the train?
- 10 这个工作我们今天做得 _____ 吗？
zhèi gè gōngzuò wǒmen jīntiān zuò de _____ ma
Will we be able to finish this job today?

Exercise 23.2

Translate the phrases below into Chinese using potential complements:

- 1 can eat one's fill
- 2 can't stand up
- 3 can't drink any more
- 4 can't be washed (clean)
- 5 can sit comfortably
- 6 be too high to reach
- 7 can't see clearly
- 8 can memorize (it)
- 9 can get on with (someone)
- 10 can get by (survive)

Exercise 23.3

Provide appropriate potential complements in each of the following sentences:

- 1 门 _____ 了。mén _____ le
The door can't be closed.
- 2 今天天阴。衣服 _____ 吗？
jīntiān tiān yīn | yīfu _____ ma
It's cloudy today. Will the washing get dry?
- 3 我们人这么多。屋子里 _____ 吗？
wǒmen rén zhème duō | wūzi li _____ ma
There are so many of us. Can the room seat us all?
- 4 我很累，真的 _____ 了。
wǒ hěn lèi | zhēn de _____ le
I'm very tired. Honestly I can't go on.
- 5 我们还 _____ 那班汽车吗？
wǒmen hái _____ nài bān qìchē ma
Are we still in time to catch that coach?
- 6 我认为这种做法 _____ 。
wǒ rènwei zhè/zhèi zhǒng zuòfǎ _____
I don't think this method will work.
- 7 他们两个人 _____ ？
tāmen liǎng gè rén _____
Can the two of them get along with each other?
- 8 你 _____ 那件事儿吗？
nǐ _____ nài jiàn shìr ma
Can you recall that incident?

- 9 我 _____ 看了他一眼。
wǒ _____ **kàn le tā yī yǎn**
 I could not help casting him a glance.
- 10 我的话你 _____ 吗？
wǒ de huà nǐ _____ **ma**
 Can you understand what I'm saying?

Exercise 23.4

Translate the following sentences into Chinese, using a potential complement or a modal verb as appropriate. Do not translate the phrases in brackets.

- 1 I can't go to bed yet (as I've got some more work to do).
- 2 I couldn't sleep (because I was worried).
- 3 I can't buy it today (because I can't carry it).
- 4 I can't afford it.
- 5 I can't tell you (because it's confidential).
- 6 I can't tell you (because I've forgotten).
- 7 I can't do it (because I haven't the ability to).
- 8 I can't do it (because I don't think it's right).
- 9 I couldn't go on (talking – because I was choked by emotion).
- 10 I couldn't go on (talking – because I was disturbing other people).

Pattern and vocabulary drill 23.1

Translate the following short dialogues into Chinese, using either modal verbs or potential complements:

- 1 Can you see those words? (字 **zì** 'words')
 I am sorry I can't see a few of the words on the left.
- 2 Can you help me?
 Of course, I can. (当然 **dāngrán** 'of course')
- 3 Can he afford those two pairs of jeans?
 Of course, he can. His father is rich.
- 4 Can you finish your essay tonight? (论文 **lùnwén** 'essay')
 I am sorry I can't. I have a meeting to attend.
- 5 Can the patient stand up?
 I am afraid he can't. (恐怕 **kǒngpà** '(I'm) afraid')
- 6 Can you finish this piece of cake?
 Honestly, I can't eat any more.

- 7 Can your car be repaired?
I am afraid it is beyond repair.
- 8 Can we get in?
I am afraid we can't. There are so many people inside.
- 9 Can you understand what I say? (听得懂 **tīng de dǒng** 'to listen with understanding')
I am sorry I can't. I can only understand English.
- 10 Can you catch that bus?
Of course, I can. I can run very fast indeed.

Pattern and vocabulary drill 23.2

Reword the following questions using the two affirmative-negative forms with potential complements:

你明天去得了吗？ **nǐ míngtiān qù de liǎo ma**

Can you go tomorrow?

你明天去得了去不了？ **nǐ míngtiān qù de liǎo qù bu liǎo**

你明天去不去得了？ **nǐ míngtiān qù bù qù de liǎo**

- 1 你明天走得了吗？ **nǐ míngtiān zǒu de liǎo ma**
Can you go/leave tomorrow?
- 2 黑板上的字你看得清楚吗？ **hēibǎn shàng de zì nǐ kàn de qīngchū ma**
Can you see the words on the blackboard clearly?
- 3 她说的话你听得懂吗？ **tā shuō de huà nǐ tīng de dǒng ma**
Can you understand what she says?
- 4 这么贵的衣服你买得起吗？ **zhème guì de yīfu nǐ mǎi de qǐ ma**
Can you afford clothes as expensive as these?
- 5 这么多人坐得下吗？ **zhème duō rén zuò de xià ma**
Can so many people be seated here?
- 6 你还吃得下吗？ **nǐ hái chī de xià ma**
Can you eat any more?
- 7 这个电脑还修得好吗？ **zhè gè diànnǎo hái xiū de hǎo ma**
Can this computer still be repaired?
- 8 你说那张信用卡还找得到吗？ **nǐ shuō nèi zhāng xìnyòngkǎ hái zhǎo de dào ma**
Do you think that credit card can still be found?
- 9 你说你明天赶得回来吗？ **nǐ shuō nǐ míngtiān gǎn de huílái ma**
Do you think you can get back in time tomorrow?
- 10 你说中文我学得会吗？ **nǐ shuō zhōngwén wǒ xué de huì ma**
Do you think I will master Chinese in the end?

UNIT TWENTY-FOUR

Coverbal phrases

A A coverb (or preposition) with its attendant noun precedes the main verb or adjective of the sentence, setting the scene for the action or situation. That is to say it indicates to whom, for whom, the means by which, the purpose for which, the direction in which, etc. something is to be done or happens. The term coverb is perhaps preferable to preposition as the words in this category have a verb basis and can be used separately as verbs. The 在 **zài** location phrases discussed in Unit 13 are, in fact, coverbal phrases; as are the comparison phrases with 比 **bǐ** in Unit 12.

他在图书馆看书。

tā zài túshūguǎn kàn shū (在图书馆 **zài túshūguǎn** coverbal phrase)
He is reading in the library.

她比她朋友大三岁。

tā bǐ tā péngyou dà sān suì (比她朋友 **bǐ tā péngyou** coverbal phrase)
She is three years older than her friend.

Adverbs of time, negators, etc. are generally placed before the coverb:

他一贯对我很好。

tā yīguàn duì wǒ hěn hǎo (对我 **duì wǒ** coverbal phrase)
He has all along been very good (kind/respectful) to me./He always treats me very well.

她没给我来信。

tā méi gěi wǒ lái xìn (给我 **gěi wǒ** coverbal phrase)
She didn't write to me.

The main coverbs are:

B 和 **hé**/跟 **gēn**/与 **yǔ**/同 **tóng** 'with':

我跟你谈谈这个问题。

wǒ gēn nǐ tántán zhèi gè wèntí
I'll discuss this matter with you.

她同你很好。 **tā tóng nǐ hěn hǎo**
She gets on very well with you.

These four coverbs are often used with 一起 **yìqǐ** to emphasize the notion of ‘together with’:

你跟我一起去看电影吗？ **nǐ gēn wǒ yìqǐ qù kàn diànyǐng ma**
Are you going to the cinema with me?

老张和小李一起做实验。 **lǎo zhāng hé xiǎo lǐ yìqǐ zuò shíyàn**
Old Zhang and Little Li did the experiment together.

As we have seen (Unit 12), these coverbs may also be used with 一样 **yīyàng** to express similarity:

这个手表同那个手表一样准。 **zhè gè shǒubiǎo tóng nèi gè shǒubiǎo yīyàng zhǔn**
This watch is as accurate as that one.

哥哥与弟弟一样聪明。 **gēge yǔ dìdì yīyàng cōngmíng**
The elder brother is as clever as the younger brother.

C 给 **gěi**/为 **wèi**/替 **tì** ‘for/to’ all in the sense of ‘rendering a service to’:

(i) 给 **gěi** ‘for/to’

我今晚给你打电话。 **wǒ jīn wǎn gěi nǐ dǎ diànhuà**
I’ll ring you this evening.

她没有给我写信。 **tā méiyǒu gěi wǒ xiě xìn**
She didn’t write to me.

我给女儿买了一台电脑。 **wǒ gěi nǚ’ér mǎi le yī tái diànnǎo**
I bought a computer for my daughter.

(ii) 为 **wèi** ‘for’ implying ‘for someone’s benefit; in someone’s interest’

他为我开了一个茶会/酒会。 **tā wèi wǒ kāi le yī gè cháhuì/jiǔhuì**
He held a party for me.

妈妈为儿子操心。 **māma wèi érzi cāoxīn**
The mother is worried about her son.

(iii) 替 **tì** ‘for/on behalf of’

他替她回了很多信。 **tā tì tā huí le hěn duō xìn**
He replied to a lot of letters on her behalf.

我替邻居割草。 **wǒ tì línjū gē cǎo**
I mowed the lawn for my neighbour.

- D** (i) 对 **duì** ‘to/at’, implying the idea ‘face to face’, is often used in conjunction with verbs such as 说 **shuō** ‘say’, 笑 **xiào** ‘smile’:

她对我说：‘...’。 **tā duì wǒ shuō ...**
‘...’ she said (to me).

他对我笑了(一)笑。 **tā duì wǒ xiào le (yī) xiào**
He gave me a smile./He smiled at me.

- (ii) 对 **duì** meaning ‘to(wards)’ is also often linked with adjectives expressing ‘attitude or frame of mind towards something or someone’ such as 友好 **yǒuhǎo** ‘friendly’, 热情 **rèqíng** ‘warmhearted; kind’, 负责 **fùzé** ‘responsible’:

他对工作很负责。 **tā duì gōngzuò hěn fùzé**
He is very responsible about his work.

王先生对学生很热情。
wáng xiānsheng duì xuésheng hěn rèqíng
Mr Wang is very kind to his students.

姐姐对人很友好。 **jiějie duì rén hěn yǒuhǎo**
My elder sister is very friendly towards people.

- E** (i) 往 **wàng** or **wǎng**/向 **xiàng**/朝 **cháo** ‘towards/in the direction of’:

车子向机场开去。 **chēzi xiàng jīchǎng kāi qù**
The car headed for the airport.

小李往教室跑去。 **xiǎo lǐ wàng/wǎng jiàoshì pǎo qù**
Xiao Li hurried towards the classroom.

他们朝教堂走来。 **tāmen cháo jiàotáng zǒu lái**
They came towards the church.

- (ii) 朝 **cháo**/向 **xiàng** can also mean ‘at/to’ in the sense of ‘facing somebody or something’. 朝 **cháo** is used with either static or dynamic action whereas 向 **xiàng** is usually employed only when the action is dynamic:

小孩朝天空望着。 **xiǎohái cháo tiānkōng wàng zhe**
The child gazed at the sky.

他朝我点点头。 **tā cháo wǒ diǎndiǎn tóu**
He nodded to me.

她向我招手。 **tā xiàng wǒ zhāo shǒu**
She beckoned to me.

One does not say:

*他向南站着。 **tā xiàng nán zhàn zhe**
(*lit.* He is standing facing south.)

往 **wàng/wǎng**, on the other hand, must involve movement:

她往医院走来。 **tā wàng/wǎng yīyuàn zǒu lái**
She came towards the hospital.

One cannot say:

*她往医院望着。 **tā wàng/wǎng yīyuàn wàng zhe**
(*lit.* She is looking in the direction of the hospital.)

F 到 **dào** 'to' is used with objects indicating destination (see Unit 21):

老张到医院去看病。 **lǎo zhāng dào yīyuàn qù kànbing**
Lao Zhang went to the hospital to see the doctor.

我们到中国去访问。 **wǒmen dào zhōngguó qù fǎngwèn**
We went on a visit to China.

他们到博物馆来参观。 **tāmen dào bówùguǎn lái cānguān**
They came to the museum for a visit.

Note: As can be seen in the above examples, the coverb 到 **dào** 'to' often occurs with the directional verbs 来 **lái** or 去 **qù** followed by another verb indicating purpose.

到 **dào** may also be used with time expressions to mean 'up to; until':

他到现在还没来。 **tā dào xiànzài hái méi lái**
Up till now he has not turned up./He has not turned up yet.

经理到昨天才回来。 **jīnglǐ dào zuótiān cái huí lái**
The manager did not come back till yesterday.

我们到下个月就可以完成这个任务了。
wǒmen dào xià gè yuè jiù kěyǐ wánchéng zhè gè rènwu le
We shall be able to accomplish this task by next month.

G 从 **cóng** ‘from (place); since (time)’

- (i) 从 **cóng** ‘from (place)’ is used either with verbs of movement (e.g. 去 **qù** ‘go’; 来 **lái** ‘come’; 出发 **chūfā** ‘set off/set out’; 起程 **qǐchéng** ‘depart’) or with verbs which incorporate a directional complement:

他从中国来。 **tā cóng zhōngguó lái**
He came from China.

我从伦敦出发。 **wǒ cóng lúndūn chūfā**
I set out from London.

我从衣柜里拿出一件大衣来。
wǒ cóng yīguì lǐ ná chū yī jiàn dàyī lái
I took a coat out of the wardrobe.

她从口袋里掏出一镑钱。 **tā cóng kǒudài lǐ tāo chū yī bàng qián**
She took a pound from her pocket.

- (ii) 从 **cóng** ‘since (time)’ often occurs together with 起 **qǐ** or 开始 **kāishǐ** ‘start’, and also in conjunction with 到 **dào** ‘till/to’:

我从去年起就在这个学校教书了。
wǒ cóng qùnián qǐ jiù zài zhè gè xuéxiào jiāoshū le
I have been teaching at this school since last year.

她从上个星期开始吃素了。
tā cóng shàng gè xīngqī kāishǐ chīsù le
She became a vegetarian last week.
(lit. Beginning from last week she started eating vegetarian food.)

我从上午到现在没吃过东西。
wǒ cóng shàngwǔ dào xiànzài méi chī guo dōngxi
I haven’t eaten anything since this morning.
(lit. from morning till/to now)

H 离 **lí** expresses the idea of ‘distance from (a place)’. (Note that 从 **cóng** cannot mean ‘distance from’.)

我家离大学不远。 **wǒ jiā lí dàxué bù yuǎn**
My house is not far from the university.

曼城离利兹很近。 **mànchéng lí lǐzī hěn jìn**
Manchester is close to Leeds.

伦敦离这儿有二百多英里(路)。 **lúndūn lí zhèr yǒu èr bǎi duō yīnglǐ (lù)**
London is over two hundred miles from here.

I 由 **yóu** ‘up to/by’ conveys the idea of ‘responsibility’:

这件事由我负责。 **zhèi jiàn shì yóu wǒ fùzé**
I'll be responsible for this.

那项工作由他去办。 **nèi xiàng gōngzuò yóu tā qù bàn**
That piece of work is up to him to handle/deal with.

由 **yóu**, like 从 **cóng**, may also be used to mean ‘from (a place/time)’:

我们由伦敦出发。 **wǒmen yóu lúndūn chūfā**
We set off from London.

英国夏令时间由上个星期结束。

yīngguó xiàlìng shíjiān yóu shàng gè xīngqī jiéshù
British Summer Time ended last week.

Note: 由 **yóu**, however, cannot be used with postpositional phrases.
For example,

One cannot say:

*松鼠由大树下钻出来。 **sōngshǔ yóu dà shù xià zuān chūlái**
(*lit.* The squirrel came burrowing out from under a big tree.)

由 **yóu**, like 从 **cóng** ‘from’, can be used in conjunction with 到 **dào** to specify a period of time:

商店由上午九点到下午五点营业。

shāngdiàn yóu shàngwǔ jiǔ diǎn dào xiàwǔ wǔ diǎn yíngyè
The shop is open from 9 a.m. to 5 p.m.

由 **yóu** can also mean ‘by; out of’ to identify members of a group or components of a unit:

足球队由十一个队员组成。 **zúqiúduì yóu shí yī gè duìyuán zǔchéng**
The football team consists of 11 players.

水由氢和氧合成。 **shuǐ yóu qīng hé yǎng héchéng**
Water is composed of hydrogen and oxygen.

J 于 **yú** ‘in; on; at’ is generally used with years or dates:

他于一九九五年毕业。 **tā yú yī jiǔ jiǔ wǔ nián bìyè**
He graduated in 1995.

通知已于今天上午发出。 **tōngzhī yǐ yú jīntiān shàngwǔ fāchū**
The circular was issued this morning.

火车于十三点零五分到达。 **huǒchē yú shí sān diǎn líng wǔ fēn dàodá**
The train arrives at 1:05 (five past one).

K 沿 **yán** ‘along(side)’, is used with monosyllabic nouns to describe a location:

沿岸都是树木。 **yán àn dōu shì shù mù**
There are trees all along the river.

沿街都是商店。 **yán jiē dōu shì shāngdiàn**
There are shops all along the street.

沿着 **yán zhe** ‘along’, is employed when movement is involved:

她沿着河边散步。 **tā yán zhe hé biān sàn bù** She went for a walk
along the river.

汽车沿着大路行驶。 **qì chē yán zhe dà lù xíng shǐ** The car was going along
the main road.

L Some of the coverbs above (as well as 自 **zì** ‘from’) may sometimes be used immediately after the main verb (see Unit 21 **D**):

这班车开往北京。 **zhè bān chē kāi wǎng běijīng**
This train/coach goes to Beijing.

这班飞机飞往上海。 **zhè bān fēijī fēi wǎng shànghǎi**
This is the flight for Shanghai. (*lit.* this plane flies to Shanghai)

那艘船停泊在港口。 **nèi sōu chuán tíng bó zài gǎngkǒu**
That ship is (lying) at anchor in the harbour.

她一直睡到中午。 **tā yīzhí shuì dào zhōngwǔ**
She slept right through till noon.

他一口气赶到火车站。 **tā yīkǒuqì gǎn dào huǒchēzhàn**
He got to the railway station in one breath.

这位先生来自加拿大。 **zhè wèi xiānsheng lái zì jiānádà**
This gentleman is from Canada.

Exercise 24.1

Complete the following Chinese sentences with 和 **hé**/跟 **gēn**, 向 **xiàng**/朝 **cháo**/往 **wàng** or 对 **duì** to match the English:

- 1 大家 _____ 他的建议表示赞同。 **dàjiā _____ tā de jiànyì biǎoshì zàntóng**
Everybody agreed to his suggestion.
- 2 她 _____ 以前一样聪明。 **tā _____ yǐqián yīyàng cōngmíng**
She is as clever as she always was.
- 3 你每天 _____ 谁一起学习？ **nǐ měi tiān _____ shéi yìqǐ xuéxí**
Who do you study with every day?
- 4 汽车 _____ 电影院开去。 **qìchē _____ diànyǐngyuàn kāi qù**
The car headed in the direction of the cinema.
- 5 小李 _____ 北京很熟悉。 **xiǎo lǐ _____ běijīng hěn shúxī/shóuxī**
Xiao Li knows Beijing very well.
- 6 学生 _____ 图书馆走去。 **xuésheng _____ túshūguǎn zǒu qù**
The students walked towards the library.
- 7 他 _____ 窗外看了一下。 **tā _____ chuāng wài kàn le yíxià**
He glanced out of the window.
- 8 她 _____ 爸爸一起住。 **tā _____ bàba yìqǐ zhù**
She lived with her father.

Exercise 24.2

Complete the Chinese sentences below with 为 **wèi**, 替 **tì** or 给 **gěi** as appropriate:

- 1 我们都 _____ 你的喜事高兴。 **wǒmen dōu _____ nǐ de xǐshì gāoxìng**
We congratulate you on this happy occasion.
- 2 你 _____ 我 _____ 小李打个电话，好吗？
nǐ _____ wǒ _____ xiǎo lǐ dǎ gè diànhuà | hǎo ma
Could you phone Xiao Li for me please?
- 3 他每两个星期 _____ 儿子写一封信。
tā měi liǎng gè xīngqī _____ érzi xiě yī fēng xìn
He writes a letter to his son every two weeks.
- 4 保姆 _____ 她看孩子。 **bǎomǔ _____ tā kàn háizi**
The nanny looked after her children.
- 5 他 _____ 女朋友买了一台音响。
tā _____ nǚ péngyou mǎi le yī tái yīnxiǎng
He bought a hi-fi for his girlfriend.
- 6 她 _____ 这个问题睡不着觉。
tā _____ zhè gè wèntí shuì bu zháo jiào
She could not sleep because of this problem.
- 7 她 _____ 朋友洗衣服。 **tā _____ péngyou xǐ yīfu**
She did the washing for her friend.
- 8 小李 _____ 她父亲担心。 **xiǎo lǐ _____ tā fùqīn dānxīn**
Xiao Li was worried about her father.

Exercise 24.3

Identify in the examples below which of the sentences in Chinese is the correct translation of the English:

- 1 In which direction shall we go?
我们对哪个方向走? **wǒmen duì nǎi gè fāngxiàng zǒu**
我们朝哪个方向走? **wǒmen cháo nǎi gè fāngxiàng zǒu**
- 2 She is very responsible about her work.
她替工作很负责。 **tā tì gōngzuò hěn fùzé**
她对工作很负责。 **tā duì gōngzuò hěn fùzé**
- 3 This book is very useful for my studies.
这本书对我学习很有用。
zhèi běn shū duì wǒ xuéxí hěn yǒuyòng
这本书跟我学习很有用。
zhèi běn shū gēn wǒ xuéxí hěn yǒuyòng
- 4 Xiao Li is talking to Miss Shi (the teacher).
小李正在对石老师谈话。 **xiǎo lǐ zhèngzài duì shí lǎoshī tánhuà**
小李正在跟石老师谈话。 **xiǎo lǐ zhèngzài gēn shí lǎoshī tánhuà**
- 5 He nodded to me.
他往我点点头。 **tā wàng wǒ diǎndiǎn tóu**
他朝我点点头。 **tā cháo wǒ diǎndiǎn tóu**
- 6 We should learn from him.
我们应该向他学习。 **wǒmen yīnggāi xiàng tā xuéxí**
我们应该从他学习。 **wǒmen yīnggāi cóng tā xuéxí**
- 7 I'll write the letter for you.
我替你写信。 **wǒ tì nǐ xiě xìn**
我给你写信。 **wǒ gěi nǐ xiě xìn**
- 8 I'll ring you tonight.
我今晚替你打电话。 **wǒ jīn wǎn tì nǐ dǎ diànhuà**
我今晚给你打电话。 **wǒ jīn wǎn gěi nǐ dǎ diànhuà**
- 9 I'll write to you.
我为你写信。 **wǒ wèi nǐ xiě xìn**
我给你写信。 **wǒ gěi nǐ xiě xìn**
- 10 This town is as old as that town.
这个小镇与那个小镇一样古老。
zhèi gè xiǎo zhèn yǔ nài gè xiǎo zhèn yīyàng gǔlǎo

这个小镇向那个小镇一样古老。

zhèi gè xiǎo zhèn xiàng nèi gè xiǎo zhèn yīyàng gǔlǎo

Exercise 24.4

Complete the Chinese sentences below with 从 **cóng**, 离 **lí** or 到 **dào** as appropriate:

- 你家 _____ 市中心有多远？ **nǐ jiā _____ shìzhōngxīn yǒu duō yuǎn**
How far is it from your house to the city centre?
- 我 _____ 衣柜里拿出一条围巾。 **wǒ _____ yīguì li ná chū yī tiáo wéijīn**
I took a scarf out of the wardrobe.
- 他 _____ 宿舍出发。 **tā _____ sùshè chūfā**
He set out from the dormitory.
- _____ 这儿 _____ 伦敦有二百英里路。
_____ zhèr _____ lúndūn yǒu èr bǎi yīnglǐ lù
It's two hundred miles from here to London.
- 图书馆 _____ 这儿有三英里。 **túshūguǎn _____ zhèr yǒu sān yīnglǐ**
The library is three miles from here.
- _____ 电影院 _____ 餐馆的路很近。
_____ diànyǐngyuàn _____ cānguǎn de lù hěn jìn
It's not far from the cinema to the restaurant.
- 邮局 _____ 银行不远。 **yóujú _____ yínháng bù yuǎn**
The post office is not far from the bank.
- 陈小姐 _____ 中国来。 **chén xiǎojiě _____ zhōngguó lái**
Miss Chen comes from China.

Exercise 24.5

Complete the following Chinese sentences with 由 **yóu** or 从 **cóng**. Point out cases where both are possible:

- 这件事儿 _____ 他负责。 **zhèi jiàn shìr _____ tā fùzé**
He's responsible for this.
- 我 _____ 去年起开始学汉语。 **wǒ _____ qùnián qǐ kāishǐ xué hànǔ**
I started learning Chinese last year.
- 教室 _____ 学生打扫。 **jiàoshì _____ xuésheng dǎsǎo**
The classroom was cleaned by students.
- 火车 _____ 上海出发。 **huǒchē _____ shànghǎi chūfā**
The train set off from Shanghai.

- 5 她 _____ 昨天下午起开始发烧。 **tā** _____ **zuótiān xiàwǔ qǐ kāishǐ fāshāo**
She started to have a fever from yesterday afternoon.
- 6 我 _____ 钱包里拿出一镑钱。 **wǒ** _____ **qiánbāo li ná chū yī bàng qián**
I took a pound out of my purse.
- 7 海鸥 _____ 海面上飞过来。 **hǎi'ōu** _____ **hǎimiàn shang fēi guòlái**
The gulls came flying across the surface of the sea.
- 8 圣诗班 _____ 十个男孩和十个女孩组成。
shèngshībān _____ **shí gè nánhái hé shí gè nǚhái zǔchéng**
The choir was made up of ten boys and ten girls.

Exercise 24.6

Complete the Chinese sentences below choosing the appropriate coverb from those in the brackets:

- 1 汽车 _____ 河边开去。
qìchē _____ **hé biān kāi qù** (向/沿 **xiàng/yán**)
The car went towards the river bank.
- 2 _____ 路都是车。 _____ **lù dōu shì chē** (沿/沿着 **yán/yán zhe**)
There are cars (parked) all along the road.
- 3 通知 _____ 昨天发出。 **tōngzhī** _____ **zuótiān fāchū** (从/于 **cóng/yú**)
The circular was issued yesterday.
- 4 爷爷 _____ 1949 年逝世。 **yéye** _____ **1949 nián shìshì** (于/由 **yú/yóu**)
Grandfather died in 1949.
- 5 那个姑娘 _____ 东走去。
nèi gè gūniang _____ **dōng zǒu qù** (从/往 **cóng/wàng**)
The young woman walked towards the east.
- 6 图书馆 _____ 市中心不远。
túshūguǎn _____ **shìzhōngxīn bù yuǎn** (从/离 **cóng/lí**)
The library is not far from the city centre.
- 7 邮递员 _____ 早到晚在送信。
yóudìyuán _____ **zǎo dào wǎn zài sòng xìn** (从/由 **cóng/yóu**)
The postmen are delivering letters from morning till night.
- 8 请大家 _____ 九时正在此集合。
qǐng dàjiā _____ **jiǔ shí zhèng zài cǐ jíhé** (由/于 **yóu/yú**)
Would everyone please assemble here at 9 o'clock sharp!
- 9 汽车 _____ 车库里开出来。
qìchē _____ **chēkù li kāi chūlái** (由/从 **yóu/cóng**)
The car emerged from the garage.

- 10 请 _____ 第一页开始读。 qǐng _____ dì yī yè kāishǐ dú (于/从 yú/cóng)
Please start reading from the first page.

Exercise 24.7

Translate the following sentences into Chinese:

- 1 Please come with me.
- 2 I'll ring you tomorrow.
- 3 They were very friendly to us.
- 4 It is not too far from here to the station.
- 5 I work from 9.00 to 5.00 every day.
- 6 There are cars all along the street.
- 7 Is this business all up to me?
- 8 Why don't you write to them?

Pattern and vocabulary drill 24.1

Using the 从...到 **cóng... dào** 'from... to' structure, which can refer to time, distance, range, etc., translate the following phrases into Chinese.

from morning till night

从早(上)到晚(上) **cóng zǎo(shang) dào wǎn(shang)**

- 1 from January to December
- 2 from children to adults
- 3 from here to the university
- 4 from top to bottom
- 5 from 9.00 a.m. till 6.00 p.m.
- 6 from food (i.e. what can be eaten) to clothing (i.e. what can be worn)
- 7 from primary school to secondary school
- 8 from one to one hundred
- 9 from A to Z (i.e. from beginning to end)
- 10 from 1995 to 2005

Pattern and vocabulary drill 24.2

Translate the following Chinese sentences into English, using the vocabulary list if you need to:

- 1 我想跟你谈一下这件事。wǒ xiǎng gēn nǐ tán yíxià zhèi jiàn shì
 2 请你别为我操心。qǐng nǐ bié wèi wǒ cāoxīn
 3 那个司机对乘客很友好。nèi gè sījī duì chéngkè hěn yǒuhǎo
 4 我到现在还没有吃过荔枝。wǒ dào xiànzài hái méiyǒu chī guo lìchī
 5 朝前走一百公尺就到了。cháo qián zǒu yī bǎi gōngchǐ jiù dào le
 6 看！有车向我们这儿开来。是几号车？你看得见吗？kàn ! yǒu chē xiàng wǒmen zhèr kāi lái ! shì jǐ hào chē ! nǐ kàn de jiàn ma
 7 这本书你是从谁那儿借来的。zhèi běn shū nǐ shì cóng shéi nàr jiè lái de
 8 我家离飞机场很远，要坐一个小时的车。wǒ jiā lí fēijīchǎng hěn yuǎn ! yào zuò yī gè xiǎoshí de chē
 9 你沿着这条大路向前走大约两百米，到第二个路口向左拐，再走五十米左右，你就能看见一个大商场(shopping mall)，商场的对面是一个洗衣店 (laundry)，洗衣店的背后就是你要找的那间药房 (pharmacy)。
 nǐ yán zhe zhèi tiáo dàlù xiàng qián zǒu tàiyuē liǎng bǎi mǐ ! dào dì èr gè lùkǒu xiàng zuǒ guǎi ! zài zǒu wǔ shí mǐ zuǒyòu ! nǐ jiù néng kànjiàn yī gè dà shāngchǎng ! shāngchǎng de duìmiàn shì yī gè xǐyīdiàn ! xǐyīdiàn de bèihòu jiù shì nǐ yào zhǎo de nèi jiān yàofáng
 10 前面那个路口，你能看见一个教堂。沿教堂右边的街道往南走，大约五分钟你就见到了一个广场 (square)，广场的左边有一条小路，你要找的那家书店就在那条小路上。
 qiánmian nèi gè lùkǒu ! nǐ néng kànjiàn yī gè jiàotáng ! yán jiàotáng yòubian de jiēdào wǎng nán zǒu ! dàyuē wǔ fēn zhōng nǐ jiù jiàn dào le yī gè guǎngchǎng ! guǎngchǎng de zuǒbian yǒu yī tiáo xiǎo lù ! nǐ yào zhǎo de nèi jiā shūdiàn jiù zài nèi tiáo xiǎo lù shang

UNIT TWENTY-FIVE

Disyllabic prepositions

A Chinese disyllabic prepositions are distinct from their monosyllabic coverb cousins in two ways. First, these disyllabic prepositions may be used not only before nouns but also before verbs or clauses. Second, they are often placed at the beginning of the sentence rather than directly after the subject. These two distinctive features will be clearly illustrated by the examples below of the most common disyllabic prepositions.

B 为了 **wèile** ‘in order to; so that’ expresses purpose and is usually followed by a verb phrase:

为了不迟到，她很早就起来/起床了。

wèile bù chídào | tā hěn zǎo jiù qǐ lái/qǐchuáng le

In order not to get there late, she got up very early.

为了买到便宜的戏票，他排了一(个)小时的队。

wèile mǎi dào piányi de xìpiào | tā pái le yī (gè) xiǎoshí de duì

In order to buy cheap theatre tickets, he queued for an hour.

为了 **wèile** also occurs in official statements to express formal objectives:

为了减少失业人数，政府努力办好教育。

wèile jiǎnshǎo shīyè rénrshù | zhèngfǔ nǔlì bàn hǎo jiàoyù

In order to reduce the number of unemployed, the government strives to improve education.

It is not normally used in casual, everyday situations and one does not usually say:

*为了买东西我进城去。 **wèile mǎi dōngxi wǒ jìn chéng qù**
(*lit.* In order to buy things/go shopping, I went into town.)

*为了找我他来宿舍。 **wèile zhǎo wǒ tā lái sùshè**
(*lit.* In order to look for me, he came into the dormitory.)

Everyday purpose or intention is usually expressed by a second verb (phrase) following the first:

我进城去买东西。 **wǒ jìn chéng qù mǎi dōngxi**
I went shopping in town. (*lit.* I went into town to shop.)

他来宿舍找我。 **tā lái sùshè zhǎo wǒ**
He came to the dormitory to look for me.

C 对于 **duìyú** ‘as to; about’, 关于 **guānyú** ‘regarding; as regards’ and 至于 **zhìyú** ‘as for; as far as . . . is concerned’, 由于 **yóuyú** ‘because of’, all refer to a matter or person brought up for discussion.

对于这件事，我一点儿也不知道。
duìyú zhèi jiàn shì | wǒ yīdiǎnr yě bù zhīdao
As to this matter I know nothing./I know nothing about this matter.

关于这个问题，我们再研究一下。
guānyú zhèi gè wèntí | wǒmen zài yánjiū yīxià
Regarding this matter, we will have more discussions./We will consider this matter further.

至于结果如何，我们明天就知道了。
zhìyú jiéguǒ rúhé | wǒmen míngtiān jiù zhīdao le
As to how the results will come out, we will know tomorrow./We will know the results by tomorrow.

由于天气不好，我们决定呆/待在家里。
yóuyú tiānqì bù hǎo | wǒmen juéding dāi zài jiā li
We decided to stay at home because of the bad weather.

Note 1: 对 **duì** (see Unit 24) can in fact be used interchangeably with 对于 **duìyú**, but in sentences where the verb specifically indicates ‘attitude’, 对 **duì** is preferred:

我们对她的盛情款待表示感谢。
wǒmen duì tā de shèngqíng kuǎndài biǎoshì gǎnxiè
We expressed thanks for her generosity/hospitality.

Note 2: 至于 **zhìyú**, unlike 关于 **guānyú** and 对于 **duìyú** which are generally followed by a noun, may also be used with a clause:

关于天文的知识	guānyú tiānwén de zhīshi	knowledge about astronomy
关于社会的问题	guānyú shèhuì de wèntí	problems about society
对于移民的条例	duìyú yímín de tiáolì	regulations on immigration/emigration

But:

至于这件事儿	zhìyú zhèi jiàn shìr	as far as this is concerned
至于他们愿意 不愿意来	zhìyú tāmen yuànyì bù yuànyì lái	as to whether they wish to come or not (clause)

D 除了... (之外/以外) **chúle ... (zhī wài/yǐ wài)** ‘apart from ... /as well as ...’:

他除了教书(以外)还做些研究工作。

tā chúle jiāoshū (yǐ wài) hái zuò xiē yánjiū gōngzuò

As well as teaching he also does a bit of research.

除了你，大家都同意。

chúle nǐ | dàjiā dōu tóngyì

Everyone agrees except you.

除了英文之外，我还会说法文和德文。

chúle yīngwén zhī wài | wǒ hái huì shuō fǎwén hé déwén

As well as English, I can also speak French and German.

E 按照 **ànzhào** ‘according to/in accordance with’ and 根据 **gēnjù** ‘according to/on the basis of’:

按照学校规定，学生不得无故缺席。

ànzhào xuéxiào guīdìng | xuésheng bù dé wúgù quēxí

According to school regulations, students must not be absent from school without good reason.

根据气象预报，明天下雪。

gēnjù qìxiàng yùbào | míngtiān xià xuě

According to the weather forecast, there will be snow tomorrow.

Note: The coverb 凭(着) **píng (zhe)** also means ‘on the basis of’. It is often used in the following collocations:

凭票入场。 **píngpiào rùchǎng**

Admittance by ticket only.

你凭什么得出这个结论？

nǐ píng shénme déchū zhèi gè jiélùn

On what basis did you arrive at/come to this conclusion?

他凭着毅力克服了种种困难。

tā píng zhe yìlì kèfú le zhǒngzhǒng kùnnán

Through his perseverance, he overcame all kinds of difficulties.

Exercise 25.1

Rephrase the Chinese sentences below using 为了 **wèile** to express the meaning of the English:

- 1 他不想误了火车，决定走近路。

tā bù xiǎng wù le huǒchē | juédìng zǒu jìn lù

He didn't want to miss the train, so he took a short cut.

- 2 小李开了两小时的车到伦敦去看那场足球赛。

xiǎo lǐ kāi le liǎng xiǎoshí de chē dào lúndūn qù kàn nèi chǎng zúqiúsài

Xiao Li drove for two hours to London to see the football match.

- 3 她举行了一个舞会，庆祝女儿大学毕业。

tā jǔxíng le yī gè wǔhuì | qìngzhù nǚ'ér dàxué bìyè

She held a party to celebrate her daughter's graduation.

- 4 他特意从法国来看这个电影。

tā tèyì cóng fǎguó lái kàn zhèi gè diànyǐng

He came from France specially to see this film.

- 5 护士一夜没睡，照顾那个病人。

hùshì yī yè méi shuì | zhàogù nèi gè bìngrén

The nurse was up all night looking after the patient.

- 6 经理到北京去参加一个重要会议。

jīnglǐ dào běijīng qù cānjiā yī gè zhòngyào huìyì

The manager went to Beijing to attend an important meeting.

Exercise 25.2

Complete the following sentences using 对(于) **duì(yú)**, 关于 **guānyú** or 至于 **zhìyú**:

- 1 咱们 _____ (_____) 别人的意见应该表示欢迎。
zánmen _____ (_____) biéren de yìjian yīnggāi biǎoshì huānyíng
 We ought to welcome other people's opinions.
- 2 王先生谈到 _____ 中国现代文学的问题。
wáng xiānsheng tándào _____ zhōngguó xiàndài wénxué de wèntí
 Mr Wang talked about questions on Modern Chinese Literature.
- 3 我请小李来我家参加晚会，_____ 他能不能来我还不知道。
wǒ qǐng xiǎo lǐ lái wǒ jiā cānjiā wǎnhuì | _____ tā néng bù néng lái wǒ hái bù zhīdao
 I have invited Xiao Li to come to my party, but I don't know if he can come.
- 4 _____ 孩子的要求不要太严格。
_____ hái zǐ de yāoqiú bù yào tài yángé
 Don't be too hard on the children.
- 5 今年夏天我们去意大利度假，_____ 哪天出发，现在还不能决定。
jīnnián xiàtiān wǒmen qù yìdàlì dùjià | _____ nǐ tiān chūfā | xiànzài hái bù néng juédìng
 This summer we are going to Italy on holiday, but we haven't decided which day we are leaving.
- 6 小李懂得很多 _____ 电脑的知识。
xiǎo lǐ dǒng de hěn duō _____ diànnǎo de zhīshi
 Xiao Li knows a great deal about computers.
- 7 他了解不少 _____ 中国社会的情况。
tā liǎojiě bù shǎo _____ zhōngguó shèhuì de qíngkuàng
 He understands a lot about conditions in Chinese society.
- 8 _____ (_____) 那场比赛，教练没有提出什么个人的意见。
_____ (_____) nèi chǎng bǐsài, jiàoliàn méiyǒu tíchū shénme gèrén de yìjian
 As far as that match is concerned, the coach did not express his personal views.

Exercise 25.3

Rewrite the following Chinese sentences using ‘除了 **chúle...** (之外以外) (**zhī wài/yǐ wài**)’ to reflect the meaning of the English:

- 1 动物园里有老虎、狮子，还有熊猫。
dòngwùyuán li yǒu lǎohǔ | shīzi | hái yǒu xióngmāo
 There are tigers and lions as well as pandas at the zoo.
- 2 班里有中国人，还有英国人和法国人。
bān li yǒu zhōngguó rén | hái yǒu yīngguó rén hé fǎguó rén
 In addition to Chinese students, there are also English and French students in the class.

- 3 我什么都吃，只是不吃羊肉。
wǒ shénme dōu chī | zhǐshì bù chī yáng ròu
I eat everything apart from lamb.
- 4 陈小姐会弹吉它，还会弹钢琴。
chén xiǎojiě huì tán jítā | hái huì tán gāngqín
Miss Chen can play the guitar as well as the piano.

Exercise 25.4

Fill in the blanks in the sentences below, choosing the appropriate preposition from the two in the brackets in each case:

- 1 这是 _____ 真实故事拍的电影。
zhè shì _____ zhēnshí gùshi pāi de diànyǐng
This is a film based on a true story. (按照/根据 ànzhào/gēnjù)
- 2 _____ 票入场。 _____ **piào rùchǎng**
Admittance is by ticket only. (按照/凭 ànzhào/píng)
- 3 _____ 这些研究，可以得出正确结论。
_____ **zhèxiē yánjiū | kěyǐ déchū zhèngquè jiélùn**
Based on this research we can reach an accurate conclusion. (根据/凭 gēnjù/píng)
- 4 你 _____ 什么跟我这样说话？
nǐ _____ shénme gēn wǒ zhèyàng shuōhuà
On what grounds are you speaking to me like this? (根据/凭 gēnjù/píng)
- 5 他们 _____ 老办法去做。 **tāmen _____ lǎo bànfǎ qù zuò**
They do it according to the old method. (根据/按照 gēnjù/ànzhào)
- 6 她 _____ 毅力战胜了病痛的折磨。
tā _____ yìlì zhànshèng le bìngtòng de zhémo
She overcame the pain of her illness through strength of will. (按照/凭着 ànzhào/píng zhe)

Exercise 25.5

Indicate whether the Chinese translations below are correct or not, and, if not, make appropriate corrections:

- 1 The teacher is concerned about my work.
老师关于我的学习很关心。 **lǎoshī guānyú wǒ de xuéxí hěn guānxīn**
- 2 I went to town to do some shopping.
为了买东西我进城去。 **wèile mǎi dōngxi wǒ jìn chéng qù**

- 3 He got up very early so that he wouldn't be late.
为了不迟到，他很早就起床了。 **wèile bù chídào | tā hěn zǎo jiù qǐchuáng le**
- 4 According to the weather forecast there will be heavy rain tomorrow.
凭天气预报，明天下大雨。 **píng qìxiàng yùbào | míngtiān xià dà yǔ**
- 5 As well as swimming I like playing football.
除了游泳，我还喜欢踢足球。 **chúle yóuyǒng | wǒ hái xǐhuan tī zúqiú**
- 6 Regarding the problem of children's bad behaviour, school teachers as well as parents should also be concerned.
对孩子调皮的问题，除了家长之外，学校老师也应该管。
duì háizi tiáopí de wèntí | chúle jiāzhǎng zhī wài | xuéxiào lǎoshī yě yīnggāi guǎn

Exercise 25.6

Translate the following into Chinese:

- 1 As regards this question, I have no opinion.
- 2 I am very worried about this problem.
- 3 I can come every day apart from Wednesday.
- 4 As to whether we can come, please ask my wife.
- 5 Apart from her, they all like Chinese food.
- 6 I am going into town to see a friend.
- 7 In order to come to a conclusion, they discussed this matter for five hours.
- 8 On what grounds does the government pursue this policy?

Pattern and vocabulary drill 25.1

Reformulate the 8 sentences or pairs of sentences below using the disyllabic prepositions given in brackets:

下大雨。球赛改期。(由于 **yóuyú** 'because of')

xià dà yǔ | qiú sài gǎi qī

There was a heavy rain. The match was postponed.

由于(下)大雨，球赛改期。

yóuyú (xià) dà yǔ | qiú sài gǎi qī

The match was postponed because of the heavy rain.

- 1 天气不好。我们都呆在家里。(由于 **yóuyú** ‘because of’)
tiānqì bù hǎo | wǒmen dōu dāi zài jiā li
The weather was bad. We all stayed at home.
- 2 她学法语。她还学中文。(除了 **chúle** ‘apart from’)
tā xué fǎyǔ | tā hái xué zhōngwén
She is learning French. She is also learning Chinese.
- 3 她让孩子得到很好的教育。她努力(地)工作。(为了 **wèile** ‘in order to’)
tā xiǎng ràng háizi dédào hěn hǎo de jiàoyù | tā nǔlì (de) gōngzuò
She would like her children to have a good education. She worked hard.
- 4 他听了父母的建议。他不再吃肉了。(按照 **ànzhào** ‘according to’)
tā tīng le fùmǔ de jiànyì | tā bù zài chī ròu le
He listened to his parents’ suggestion and never touched meat again.
- 5 你凭什么说我错了。(根据 **gēnjù** ‘on the basis of’)
nǐ píng shénme shuō wǒ cuò le
On what basis did you say I was wrong?
- 6 他说他不愿意管这件事情。(至于 **zhìyú** ‘as far as . . . is concerned’)
tā shuō tā bù yuànyì guǎn zhèi jiàn shìqing
As far as this is concerned, he says he doesn’t want to have anything to do with it.
- 7 他对那儿的情况十分了解。(关于 **guānyú** ‘as regards’)
tā duì nàr de qíngkuàng shífēn liǎojiě
He knows a lot about the situation there.
- 8 他工作很努力。我对他的工作没有什么意见。(对于 **duìyú** ‘as to’)
tā gōngzuò hěn nǔlì | wǒ duì tā de gōngzuò méi yǒu shénme yìjian
He works very hard. I have no qualms about his work.

Pattern and vocabulary drill 25.2

Translate into Chinese the following conversation between Wang and his young friend Li:

- A: Hello, Li (use the familiar form of address here and below between people of different ages).
B: Hello, Wang.
A: Where are you off to?
B: I am going to the post office (to post a letter).
A: Who is the letter to?
B: It’s to my parents. They are very good to me.
A: Where do they live?
B: They live in Beijing, very far from here.

A: Do you go home to visit your parents very often?

B: No, I don't have the time.

A: You can ask for leave.

B: I have got so much to do. Honestly I can't get away.

A: Please send them my regards. Wish them good health.

B: Thank you. I am flying to London tomorrow. I'll ring them from there.

A: Bye.

B: Bye.

KEY TO EXERCISES

Unit 1

Exercise 1.1

1 一个孩子 **yī gè hái zi** 2 一个孩子 **yī gè hái zi** 3 两个孩子 **liǎng gè hái zi** 4 三个橙子 **sān gè chéng zi** 5 一打鸡蛋 **yī dá jī dàn** 6 四个面包 **sì gè miàn bāo** 7 五片面包 **wǔ piàn miàn bāo** 8 一个城市 **yī gè chéng shì** 9 两个建议 **liǎng gè jiàn yì** 10 六个国家 **liù gè guó jiā** 11 八个/家商店 **bā gè/jiā shāng diàn** (家 **jiā** another measure word for 'shop') 12 九个学生 **jiǔ gè xué sheng** 13 七个工程师 **qī gè gōng chéng shī** 14 一个朋友 **yī gè péng you** 15 一个人 **yī gè rén** 16 一个杯子 **yī gè bē zi** 17 两支笔 **liǎng zhī bǐ** 18 十个杯子 **shí gè bē zi** 19 两杯茶 **liǎng bēi chá** 20 三本书 **sān běn shū** 21 四个大人 **sì gè dà rén** 22 六张纸 **liù zhāng zhǐ** 23 一个蛋糕 **yī gè dàn gāo** 24 一块蛋糕 **yī kuài dàn gāo** 25 一个借口 **yī gè jiè kǒu** 26 五个男孩子 **wǔ gè nán hái zi** 27 六个女孩子 **liù gè nǚ hái zi** 28 两块布 **liǎng kuài bù** 29 几棵树 **jǐ kē shù** 30 两个中国人 **liǎng gè zhōng guó rén**

Exercise 1.2

一 **yī** may be omitted in sentences: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 7; 一 **yī** cannot be omitted in sentences: 6, 8

Exercise 1.3

1 我碰见两个朋友。 **wǒ pèng jiàn liǎng gè péng you** 2 他想找一个借口。 **tā xiǎng zhǎo yī gè jiè kǒu** 3 孩子们要吃苹果。 **hái zǐ men yào chī píng guǒ** 4 他们想去三个国家。 **tā men xiǎng qù sān gè guó jiā** 5 correct 6 她有中国朋友。 **tā yǒu zhōng guó péng you** 7 你要吃几片面包? **nǐ yào chī jǐ piàn miàn bāo** 8 correct

Exercise 1.4

1 I would like to buy a few bread rolls. 2 She would like to eat two pieces of cake. 3 I bumped into three Chinese people. 4 I would

like to have a cup of coffee. 5 I would like to go to/visit five countries. 6 She is an engineer. 7 I have two children. 8 I only want to go to one city. 9 Who would like to buy books? 10 I have a suggestion (to make).

Exercise 1.5

1 苹果和橙子 **píngguǒ hé chéngzi** 2 大人和孩子/小孩 **dàren hé hái/zǐ/xiǎohái** (小孩 **xiǎohái** little child) 3 三片面包、一杯咖啡和一块蛋糕 **sān piàn miànbāo | yī bēi kāfēi hé yī kuài dànɡāo** 4 四本书和六支笔 **sì běn shū hé liù zhī bǐ** 5 我想去三个国家。 **wǒ xiǎng qù sān gè guójiā** 6 我想喝(一)杯茶。 **wǒ xiǎng hē (yī) bēi chá** 7 她只想去两个家商店。 **tā zhǐ xiǎng qù liǎng gè/jiā shāngdiàn** 8 她想买一个面包、两个蛋糕、五个苹果和一打鸡蛋。 **tā xiǎng mǎi yī gè miànbāo | liǎng gè dànɡāo | wǔ gè píngguǒ hé yī dá jīdàn** 9 孩子只有一个理想。 **háizi zhǐ yǒu yī gè lǐxiǎng** 10 我碰见四个中国朋友。 **wǒ pèngjiàn sì gè zhōngguó péngyou** 11 我要几张纸。 **wǒ yào jǐ zhāng zhǐ** 12 我了解中国的经济和文化。 **wǒ xiǎng liǎojiě zhōngguó de jīngjì hé wénhuà**

Drill 1.1

1 a 几个鸡蛋 **jǐ gè jīdàn** b 几个面包 **jǐ gè miànbāo** c 一本书和一支笔 **yī běn shū hé yī zhī bǐ** d 几个橙子 **jǐ gè chéngzi** 2 a 一杯茶 **yī bēi chá** b 一杯咖啡 **yī bēi kāfēi** c 一杯啤酒 **yī bēi píjiǔ** d 一杯可乐 **yī bēi kělè** 3 a 一个苹果 **yī gè píngguǒ** b 一个橙子 **jǐ gè chéngzi** c 一块糕 **yī kuài gāo** d 一个三明治 **yī gè sānmíngzhì** 4 a 中国 **zhōngguó** b 英国 **yīngguó** c 北京 **běijīng** d 伦敦 **lúndūn** 5 a 几个中国朋友 **jǐ gè zhōngguó péngyou** b 几个英国朋友 **jǐ gè yīngguó péngyou**

Drill 1.2

1 a 谁要买几个鸡蛋? **shéi yào mǎi jǐ gè jīdàn** b 谁要买几个面包? **shéi yào mǎi jǐ gè miànbāo** c 谁要买一本书和一支笔? **shéi yào mǎi yī běn shū hé yī zhī bǐ** d 谁要买几个橙子? **shéi yào mǎi jǐ gè chéngzi** 2 a 谁想喝一杯茶? **shéi xiǎng hē yī bēi chá** b 谁想喝一杯咖啡? **shéi xiǎng hē yī bēi kāfēi** c 谁想喝一杯啤酒? **shéi xiǎng hē yī bēi píjiǔ** d 谁想喝一杯可乐? **shéi xiǎng hē yī bēi kělè** 3 a 谁想吃一个苹果? **shéi xiǎng chī yī gè píngguǒ** b 谁想吃一个橙子? **shéi xiǎng chī jǐ gè chéngzi** c 谁想吃一块糕? **shéi xiǎng chī yī kuài gāo** d 谁想吃一个三明治? **shéi xiǎng chī yī gè sānmíngzhì** 4 a 谁要去中国? **shéi yào qù zhōngguó** b 谁要去英国? **shéi yào qù yīngguó** c 谁要去北京? **shéi yào qù běijīng** d 谁要去伦敦? **shéi yào qù lúndūn** 5 a 谁想交几个中国朋友? **shéi xiǎng jiāo jǐ gè zhōngguó péngyou** b 谁想交几个英国朋友? **shéi xiǎng jiāo jǐ gè yīngguó péngyou**

Unit 2

Exercise 2.1

1 这支 **zhèi zhī** 2 这些 **zhèi xiē** 3 那个 **nèi gè** 4 那些 **nèi xiē** 5 那几个 **nà jǐ gè** 6 这几张 **zhè jǐ zhāng** 7 那个 **nèi gè** 8 这本 **zhèi běn** 9 那些 **nèi xiē** 10 那几个 **nà jǐ gè** 11 这个 **zhèi gè** 12 这几个 **zhè jǐ gè** 13 那个 **nèi gè** 14 这些 **zhèi xiē** 15 那些 **nèi xiē** 16 那块 **nèi kuài** 17 那个 **nèi gè** 18 这把 **zhèi bǎ** 19 那片 **nèi piàn** 20 这些 **zhèi xiē** 21 那些 **nèi xiē** 22 那个/家 **nèi gè/jiā** 23 那几把 **nà jǐ bǎ** 24 这几幅/张 **zhè jǐ fú/zhāng** (张 **zhāng** another measure word for 'picture') 25 这两个医生 **zhè liǎng gè yīshēng** 26 那几个病人 **nà jǐ gè bìngrén**

Exercise 2.2

1 She likes dogs. 2 I'll buy this hat. 3 Either is correct depending on the context. 4 Where are the keys? 5 Either is correct depending on the context. 6 Has she got any children? 7 There is a bowl on the table. 8 There is a jumper in the wardrobe. 9 The chopsticks are on the table. 10 I know how to use chopsticks.

Exercise 2.3

1 Where is/are there a/some book(s)? 2 Where is/are the book(s)? 3 There is a cake in the kitchen. 4 The cat is in the room. 5 Are you looking for the key(s)? 6 Are you going to buy an umbrella? 7 Would you like a/some banana(s)? 8 We would like to buy some flowers. 9 The children are at school. 10 I like (eating) apples. 11 All the four jumpers and three hats are in the wardrobe. 12 All the ten students want to go to China. 13 Do you have any chopsticks? 14 All the apples, oranges, cake and bread are in the kitchen.

Exercise 2.4

1 哪儿有商店? **nǎr yǒu shāngdiàn** 2 橙子很好吃。 **chéngzi hěn hǎochī** 3 桌子上有几个杯子。 **zhuōzi shàng yǒu jǐ gè bēizi** 4 书架上有(一)些书。 **shūjià shàng yǒu (yī)xiē shū** 5 你(身上)有笔吗?/你带了笔没有? **nǐ (shēn shàng) yǒu bǐ ma/nǐ dài le bǐ méiyǒu** 6 碗在柜子/碗柜里。 **wǎn zài guizi/wǎnguì li** (碗柜 **wǎnguì** a more specific term for 'cupboard', lit. bowl cabinet) 7 钥匙在哪儿? **yàoshi zài nǎr** 8 花瓶里有(一)些花儿。/有(一)些花儿在花瓶里。 **huāpíng li yǒu**

(yī)xiē huār/yǒu (yī)xiē huār zài huāpíng li 9 男孩子们在哪儿？
nán hái zimen zài nǎr 10 你有毛衣吗？
nǐ yǒu māoyī ma 11 这些照片你喜欢吗？/你喜欢这些照片吗？
zhè xiē zhàopiàn nǐ xǐhuan ma/nǐ xǐhuan zhè xiē zhàopiàn ma 12 你找书吗？
nǐ zhǎo shū ma 13 这两本书很有意思。
zhè liǎng běn shū hěn yǒu yìsi 14 我喜欢那三幅画儿。
wǒ xǐhuan nà sān fú huàr 15 那五个学生在哪儿？
nà wǔ gè xuésheng zài nǎr

Drill 2.1

1 a 哪儿有笔？
nǎr yǒu bǐ b 哪儿有椅子？
nǎr yǒu yǐzi 2 a 厕所在哪儿？
cèsuǒ zài nǎr b 车站在哪儿？
chēzhàn zài nǎr 3 a 有一个男医生和一个女医生在病房里。
yǒu yī gè nán yīshēng hé yī gè nǚ yīshēng zài bìngfáng li b 有九个病人在病房里。
yǒu jiǔ gè bìng rén zài bìngfáng li 4 a 碗和筷子都在厨房里。
wǎn hé kuàizi dōu zài chúfáng li b 刀和叉都在厨房里。
dāo hé chā dōu zài chúfáng li 5 a 柜子里有茶和咖啡。
guìzi li yǒu chá hé kāfēi b 柜子里有几只杯子。
guìzi li yǒu jǐ zhī bēizi

Drill 2.2

1 你喜欢吃蛋糕吗？
nǐ xǐhuan chī dàngāo ma 2 你喜欢喝啤酒吗？
nǐ xǐhuan hē píjiǔ ma 3 你喜欢吃蔬菜吗？
nǐ xǐhuan chī shūcài ma 4 你喜欢交朋友吗？
nǐ xǐhuan jiāo péngyou ma 5 你想喝杯咖啡吗？
nǐ xiǎng hē bēi kāfēi ma 6 你想买支笔吗？
nǐ xiǎng mǎi zhī bǐ ma 7 你要买几本书吗？
nǐ yào mǎi jǐ běn shū ma 8 你想买些花儿吗？
nǐ xiǎng mǎi xiē huār ma 9 你的猫会抓老鼠吗？
nǐ de māo huì zhuā lǎoshǔ ma 10 你会画画儿吗？
nǐ huì huà huàr ma

Unit 3

Exercise 3.1

1 我喜欢他，他也喜欢我。
wǒ xǐhuan tā | tā yě xǐhuan wǒ 2 我们去见他们，但是他们不想见我们。
wǒmen xiǎng qù jiàn tāmen | dànshì tāmen bù xiǎng jiàn wǒmen 3 你不认识她，但是她认识你。
nǐ bù rènshi tā | dànshì tā rènshi nǐ 4 爸爸、妈妈，你们要喝咖啡吗？
bàba | māma | nǐmen yào hē kāfēi ma 5 她在哪儿？我想跟她谈谈。
tā zài nǎr | wǒ xiǎng gēn tā tántán 6 我们有两条狗，(它们)都住在她的房间里。
wǒmen yǒu liǎng tiáo gǒu | (tāmen) dōu zhù zài tā de fángjiān li 7 我不喜欢那些花儿。你喜欢吗？
wǒ bù xǐhuan nèi xiē huār | nǐ xǐhuan ma 8 你想看那个电影吗？咱们去看吧。
nǐ xiǎng kàn nèi gè diànyǐng ma | zánmen qù kàn ba

Exercise 3.2

- 1 我的 **wǒ de** 2 你(的) **nǐ (de)** 3 我 **wǒ** 4 我哥哥的 **wǒ gēge de**
5 她的 **tā de** 6 我们邻居的 **wǒmen línjū de** 7 他们(的) **tāmen (de)**
8 她(的) **tā (de)**, 我(的) **wǒ (de)** 9 爸爸/父亲的 **bàba/fùqin de** 10 我
们的 **wǒmen de** 11 自己 **zìjǐ** 12 自己的 **zìjǐ de**

Exercise 3.3

- 1 我哥哥的 **wǒ gēge de**, 我(自己)的 **wǒ (zìjǐ) de** 2 他的 **tā de**, 我的
wǒ de 3 他家的 **tā jiā de** 4 我的 **wǒ de**, 你的 **nǐ de** 5 我 **wǒ** 6 他
tā 7 你的 **nǐ de**, 我的 **wǒ de** 8 你的 **nǐ de**, 她的 **tā de** 9 爸爸/父亲
的 **bàba/fùqin de**, (她)自己的 **(tā) zìjǐ de** 10 你家的 **nǐ jiā de** 11 我
们邻居的那些 **wǒmen línjū de nèi xiē** 12 (他)自己的那件 **(tā) zìjǐ de**
nèi jiàn

Exercise 3.4

- 1 您 **nín** 2 您几位 **nín jǐ wèi** 3 您几位 **nín jǐ wèi** 4 您 **nín** 5 您
几位 **nín jǐ wèi** 6 您 **nín**

Exercise 3.5

- 1 我们 **wǒmen** 2 咱们 **zánmen** 3 我们 **wǒmen** 4 咱们 **zánmen**
5 咱们 **zánmen** 6 我们 **wǒmen**

Drill 3.1

- 1 Happy Birthday! 2 Happy New Year! 3 A Merry Christmas!
4 Wish you good health! 5 A safe journey home! 6 Wish you
success!

Drill 3.2

- 1 你的那些书很有趣。 **nǐ de nèi xiē shū hěn yǒuqù** 2 他的父母很有名。
tā de fùmǔ hěn yǒumíng 3 那三个中国人很有钱。 **nà sān gè**
zhōngguó rén hěn yǒuqián 4 你爸爸的书很有用。 **nǐ bàba de shū**
hěn yǒuyòng 5 这个方法很有效。 **zhèi gè fāngfǎ hěn yǒuxiào** 6 你
的那个蛋糕很好吃。这杯咖啡很好喝。 **nǐ de nèi gè dànɡāo hěn hǎochī**
l zhèi bēi kāfēi hěn hǎohē 7 我妹妹的那件毛衣很好看。 **wǒ mèimei**
de nèi jiàn máoyī hěn hǎokàn 8 那首歌很好听。 **nèi shǒu gē**
hěn hǎotīng 9 他的那个建议很好笑。 **tā de nèi gè jiànyì hěn hǎoxiào**
10 我们邻居的那只小猫很好玩儿。 **wǒmen línjū de nèi zhī xiǎo māo hěn**
hǎowánr

Drill 3.3

1 钥匙你带了没有? yàoshi nǐ dài le méiyǒu 2 雨伞你带了没有? yǔsǎn nǐ dài le méiyǒu 3 毛衣你带了没有? máoyī nǐ dài le méiyǒu 4 照片你带了没有? zhàopiàn nǐ dài le méiyǒu 5 书你看了没有? shū nǐ kàn le méiyǒu 6 碗和筷子你买了没有? wǎn hé kuàizi nǐ mǎi le méiyǒu 7 茶你喝了没有? chá nǐ hē le méiyǒu 8 蛋糕你吃了没有? dànɡāo nǐ chī le méiyǒu 9 猫你找到了没有? māo nǐ zhǎo dào le méiyǒu 10 电影你看了没有? diànyǐng nǐ kàn le méiyǒu

1 Have you brought the key(s)? 2 Have you brought the umbrella? 3 Have you brought your sweater? 4 Have you brought the picture(s)/photograph(s)? 5 Have you read the book(s)? 6 Have you bought the bowl(s) and the chopsticks? 7 Have you drunk the tea? 8 Have you eaten the cake(s)? 9 Have you found the cat? 10 Have you seen the film?

Unit 4

Exercise 4.1

1 a 谁去市场买鸡蛋? shéi qù shìchǎng mǎi jīdàn b 妈妈去哪儿买鸡蛋? māma qù nǎr mǎi jīdàn c 妈妈去市场买什么? māma qù shìchǎng mǎi shénme d 妈妈去市场做什么? māma qù shìchǎng zuò shénme 2 a 爸爸在哪儿写推荐信? bàba zài nǎr xiě tuījiànxin b 爸爸在办公室做什么? bàba zài bàngōngshì zuò shénme c 爸爸在办公室写什么? bàba zài bàngōngshì xiě shénme d 谁在办公室写推荐信? shéi zài bàngōngshì xiě tuījiànxin 3 a 姐姐在哪儿喂猫? jiějie zài nǎr wèi māo b 姐姐在厨房里做什么? jiějie zài chúfáng li zuò shénme c 谁在厨房里喂猫? shéi zài chúfáng li wèi māo 4 a 哥哥在外面做什么? gēge zài wàimian zuò shénme b 哥哥在外面修什么? gēge zài wàimian xiū shénme c 哥哥在哪儿修车? gēge zài nǎr xiū chē d 谁在外面修车? shéi zài wàimian xiū chē 5 a 弟弟去游泳池做什么? dìdì qù yóuyǒngchí zuò shénme b 谁去游泳池学游泳? shéi qù yóuyǒngchí xué yóuyǒng c 弟弟去哪儿学游泳? dìdì qù nǎr xué yóuyǒng 6 a 弟弟想请谁帮他的忙? dìdì xiǎng qǐng shéi bāng tā de máng b 弟弟想请姐姐做什么? dìdì xiǎng qǐng jiějie zuò shénme c 谁想请姐姐帮忙? shéi xiǎng qǐng jiějie bāngmáng 7 a 谁的孩子在街上骑自行车? shéi de hái zi zài jiē shang qí zìxíngchē b 谁在街上骑自行车? shéi zài jiē shang qí zìxíngchē c 邻居的孩子在街上做什么? línjū de hái zi zài jiē shang zuò shénme d 邻居的孩子在街上骑什么? línjū de hái zi zài jiē shang qí shénme e 邻居的孩子在哪儿骑自行车? línjū de hái zi zài nǎr qí zìxíngchē 8 a 谁明年想跟爷爷去中国旅行? shéi míngnián xiǎng gēn yéye qù zhōngguó

lǚxíng b 妹妹明年想做什么？ **mèimei míngnián xiǎng zuò shénme** c 妹妹明年想跟谁去中国旅行？ **mèimei míngnián xiǎng gēn shéi qù zhōngguó lǚxíng** d 妹妹明年想跟爷爷去哪儿旅行？ **mèimei míngnián xiǎng gēn yéye qù nǎ lǚxíng** e 妹妹明年想跟爷爷去中国做什么？ **mèimei míngnián xiǎng gēn yéye qù zhōngguó zuò shénme**

Exercise 4.2

1 哪儿有自行车租？ **nǎr yǒu zìxíngchē zū** 2 哪儿有咖啡喝？ **nǎr yǒu kāfēi hē** 3 哪儿有花儿买/卖？ **nǎr yǒu huār mǎi/mài** 4 哪儿有啤酒喝？ **nǎr yǒu píjiǔ hē** 5 哪儿有东西吃？ **nǎr yǒu dōngxi chī** 6 哪儿有电影看？ **nǎr yǒu diànyǐng kàn** 7 哪儿有报纸买/卖？ **nǎr yǒu bàozhǐ mǎi/mài** 8 哪儿有书借？ **nǎr yǒu shū jiè** 9 哪儿有新鲜蔬菜买/卖？ **nǎr yǒu xīnxiān shūcài mǎi/mài** 10 哪儿有好(汽)车租？ **nǎr yǒu hǎo (qì)chē zū**

Exercise 4.3

1 谁想喝茶？ **shéi xiǎng hē chá** 2 谁想吃蛋糕？ **shéi xiǎng chī dàngāo** 3 这个杯子是谁的？/这是谁的杯子？ **zhèi gè bēizi shì shéi de/zhè shì shéi de bēizi** 4 你想吃什么？ **nǐ xiǎng chī shénme** 5 你喜欢哪幅画儿？ **nǐ xǐhuan nǎ fú huàr** 6 谁会说中文？ **shéi huì shuō zhōngwén** 7 哪个孩子是你的？ **nǎi gè háizi shì nǐ de** 8 张先生是谁的老师？ **zhāng xiānsheng shì shéi de lǎoshī** 9 你要买哪些橙子？ **nǐ yào mǎi nǎi xiē chéngzi** 10 你喜欢什么蔬菜？ **nǐ xǐhuan shénme shūcài** 11 谁会修车？ **shéi huì xiū chē** 12 谁能帮我的忙？/谁能帮助我？ **shéi néng bāng wǒ de máng/shéi néng bāngzhù wǒ** 13 你想见谁？ **nǐ xiǎng jiàn shéi** 14 你带了哪两本书？ **nǐ dài le nǎ liǎng běn shū** 15 你去了什么地方？/你去了哪儿？ **nǐ qù le shénme dìfang/nǐ qù le nǎr** 16 你去哪些国家？ **nǐ qù nǎi xiē guójiā** 17 我的钱包在哪儿？ **wǒ de qiánbāo zài nǎr** 18 你去哪儿喝咖啡？ **nǐ qù nǎr hē kāfēi** 19 你和/跟谁去中国？/你是和/跟谁去中国？ **nǐ hé/gēn shéi qù zhōngguó/nǐ shì hé/gēn shéi qù zhōngguó** 20 你在哪儿认识她？/你是在哪儿认识她的？ **nǐ zài nǎr rènshi tā/nǐ shì zài nǎr rènshi tā de**

Drill 4.1

1 a 我想吃点儿蛋糕。 **wǒ xiǎng chī diǎnr dàngāo** b 我想吃点儿冰激凌。 **wǒ xiǎng chī diǎnr bīngjīlíng** 2 a 我想买点儿白菜。 **wǒ xiǎng mǎi diǎnr báicài** b 我想买点儿鱼。 **wǒ xiǎng mǎi diǎnr yú** 3 a 我这个礼拜天想去看电影。 **wǒ zhèi gè lǐbài tiān xiǎng qù kàn diànyǐng** b 我这个礼拜天想去游泳。 **wǒ zhèi gè lǐbài tiān xiǎng qù yóuyǒng**

4 a 我找钥匙。wǒ zhǎo yàoshi b 我找雨伞。wǒ zhǎo yǔsǎn 5 a 我找李先生。wǒ zhǎo lǐ xiānsheng b 我找我父亲/爸爸。wǒ zhǎo wǒ fùqin/bàba 6 a 我到/上银行去。wǒ dào/shàng yínháng qù b 我到/上大学去。wǒ dào/shàng dàxué qù

Drill 4.2

1 Do you like keeping a cat? 你喜欢养猫吧? **nǐ xǐhuan yǎng māo ba** You like keeping a cat, don't you? 2 Do you like keeping a dog? 你喜欢养狗吧? **nǐ xǐhuan yǎng gǒu ba** You like keeping a dog, don't you? 3 Do you like keeping goldfish? 你喜欢养金鱼吧? **nǐ xǐhuan yǎng jīnyú ba** You like keeping goldfish, don't you? 4 Do you like cycling/riding a bike? 你喜欢骑自行车吧? **nǐ xǐhuan qí zìxíngchē ba** You like riding a bike, don't you? 5 Do you like horse riding? 你喜欢骑马吧? **nǐ xǐhuan qí mǎ ba** You like horse riding, don't you? 6 Do you like living in London? 你喜欢住在伦敦吧? **nǐ xǐhuan zhù zài lúndūn ba** You like living in London, don't you? 7 Do you like living in Paris? 你喜欢住在巴黎吧? **nǐ xǐhuan zhù zài bālí ba** You like living in Paris, don't you? 8 Do you like buying things cheap? 你喜欢买便宜的东西吧? **nǐ xǐhuan mǎi piányi de dōngxi ba** You like buying things cheap, don't you? 9 Do you like fresh flowers? 你喜欢鲜花吧? **nǐ xǐhuan xiānhuā ba** You like fresh flowers, don't you? 10 Do you like your neighbour(s)? 你喜欢你的邻居吧? **nǐ xǐhuan nǐ de línjū ba** You like your neighbour(s), don't you? 11 Do you like your work? 你喜欢你的工作吧? **nǐ xǐhuan nǐ de gōngzuò ba** You like your work, don't you? 12 Do you like/fancy this sweater? 你喜欢这件毛衣吧? **nǐ xǐhuan zhèi jiàn máoyī ba** You like this sweater, don't you?

Unit 5

Exercise 5.1

1 89 2 16 3 10,000 4 600,000,000 5 7,000,000 6 13,526 7 180,000 8 6,934 9 3,652 10 780,000,469 11 64,504 12 4,004.005

Exercise 5.2

1 八万零二百零五 **bā wàn líng èr bǎi líng wǔ** 2 六百三十二万九千八百一十四 **liù bǎi sān shí èr wàn jiǔ qiān bā bǎi yī shí sì** (一十四 **yī shí sì** for fourteen is only used in counting when following a figure in the hundreds) 3 六亿 **liù yì** 4 一千零八十 **yī qiān líng bā shí** 5 三十六分之七 **sān shí liù fēn zhī qī** 6 四分之一 **sì fēn zhī yī** 7 百分之三 **bǎi fēn zhī sān** 8 百分之九十七 **bǎi fēn zhī jiǔ shí qī** 9 四点一三一

六 sù diǎn yī sǎn yī liù 10 五百八十六点二三 wǔ bǎi bā shí liù diǎn èr sǎn 11 七千零五 qī qiān líng wǔ 12 六百零一点零零七 liù bǎi líng yī diǎn líng líng qī

Exercise 5.3

1 半天 bàn tiān 2 两(个)星期/两个礼拜/两周 liǎng (gè) xīngqī/liǎng gè libài/liǎng zhōu (周 zhōu is also used to mean 'week') 3 三年半 sān nián bàn 4 六个月 liù gè yuè 5 二楼 èr lóu 6 半个橙子 bàn gè chéngzi 7 半瓶酒 bàn píng jiǔ 8 五个半梨 wǔ gè bàn lí 9 第五周 dì wǔ zhōu 10 第四个孩子 dì sì gè hái zi 11 第十二场比赛 dì shí èr chǎng bǐsài 12 三年级 sān niánjí 13 第二天 dì èr tiān 14 七个小时钟头 qī gè bàn xiǎoshí/zhōngtóu

Exercise 5.4

1 两 liǎng 2 两 liǎng 3 二 èr 4 二 èr 5 二 èr 6 两 liǎng 7 二 èr 8 两 liǎng 9 二 èr 10 两 liǎng

Exercise 5.5

1 一、两周/一、两个星期/一、两个礼拜 yī | liǎng zhōu/yī | liǎng gè xīngqī/yī | liǎng gè libài 2 两百年 liǎng bǎi nián 3 六十来岁/大约六十岁/六十岁左右/上下 liù shí lái suì/dàyuē liù shí suì/liù shí suì zuǒyòu/shàngxià 4 三、四十辆自行车 sān | sì shí liàng zìxíngchē 5 十多天 shí duō tiān 6 两百来个商店 liǎng bǎi lái gè shāngdiàn 7 百分之十 bǎi fēn zhī shí 8 二十左右/上下/大约二十 èr shí zuǒyòu/shàngxià/dàyuē èr shí 9 十五米左右/上下/大约十五米 shí wǔ mǐ zuǒyòu/shàngxià/dàyuē shí wǔ mǐ 10 一个月左右/上下/大约一个月 yī gè yuè zuǒyòu/shàngxià/dàyuē yī gè yuè 11 一万多个学生 yī wàn duō gè xuésheng 12 两、三个孩子 liǎng | sān gè hái zi 13 大约五十个朋友和邻居 dàyuē wǔ shí gè péngyou hé línjū 14 大约七十英里/七十英里左右/上下 dàyuē qī shí yīnglǐ/qī shí yīnglǐ zuǒyòu/shàngxià 15 八公斤多 bā gōngjīn duō 16 十多个城市 shí duō gè chéngshì

Exercise 5.6

1 碗柜/柜子里有三个橙子、两个梨、一个面包和一瓶酒。 wǎnguì/guizi li yǒu sān gè chéngzi | liǎng gè lí | yī gè miànbāo hé yī píng jiǔ 2 桌子上有一个碗、一个杯子和一双筷子。 zhuōzi shàng yǒu yī gè wǎn | yī gè bēizi hé yī shuāng kuàizi 3 冰箱里有半打鸡蛋、一公斤白菜和一些冰激凌。 bīngxiāng li yǒu bàn dá jīdàn | yī gōngjīn báicài hé yīxiē bīngjīlíng 4 衣柜/柜子里有两件毛衣和十二条裙子。 yīguì/guizi li

yǒu liǎng jiàn máoyī hé shí èr tiáo qúnzi (衣柜 yīguì is a more specific term for 'wardrobe' lit. clothes cabinet) 5 李明请了三、四十个朋友和同学。lǐ míng qǐng le sān sì shí gè péngyou hé tóngxué 6 我男朋友带来了一束花儿和几瓶啤酒。wǒ nán péngyou dài lái le yī shù huār hé jǐ píng pǐjiǔ 7 我写了大约五封推荐信。wǒ xiě le dàyuē wǔ fēng tuījiànxin 8 我女朋友去过十多个国家。wǒ nǚ péngyou qù guo shí duō gè guójiā 9 我碰见了二十多个同学。wǒ péngjiàn le èr shí duō gè tóngxué 10 我儿子今年看了十来个电影。wǒ érzi jīnnián kàn le shí lái gè diànyǐng 11 那件毛衣多少钱？nèi jiàn máoyī duōshao qián 12 他有几个妹妹？tā yǒu jǐ gè mèimei 13 北京有多少人？běijīng yǒu duōshao rén 14 你爸爸/父亲认识多少中国人？nǐ bàba/fùqin rènshi duōshao zhōngguó rén 15 你要/想买几公斤白菜？nǐ yào/xiǎng mǎi jǐ gōngjīn báicài

Drill 5.1

1 Would the next person please come in. 2 When does the next train/coach leave? 3 The first half was brilliant. 4 We are going next Thursday. 5 He worked very hard in the last/previous academic year. 6 Are you getting off at the next stop? 7 The last/previous issue is sold out. 8 See you next time.

Drill 5.2

1 你见过这几个工程师没有？nǐ jiàn guo zhè jǐ gè gōngchéngshī méiyǒu 2 你去过英国没有？nǐ qù guo yīngguó méiyǒu 3 你养过狗没有？nǐ yǎng guo gǒu méiyǒu 4 你骑过骆驼没有？nǐ qí guo luòtuō méiyǒu 5 你用过筷子没有？nǐ yòng guo kuàizi méiyǒu 6 你交过中国朋友没有？nǐ jiāo guo zhōngguó péngyou méiyǒu 7 你喝过英国啤酒没有？nǐ hē guo yīngguó pǐjiǔ méiyǒu 8 你喝过中国茶没有？nǐ hē guo zhōngguó chá méiyǒu 9 你看过中国电影没有？nǐ kàn guo zhōngguó diànyǐng méiyǒu 10 你开过车没有？nǐ kāi guo chē méiyǒu 11 你租过车没有？nǐ zū guo chē méiyǒu 12 你去过你朋友家没有？nǐ qù guo nǐ péngyou jiā méiyǒu 13 你见过她父母没有？nǐ jiàn guo tā fùmǔ méiyǒu 14 你帮过你朋友(的忙)没有？nǐ bāng guo nǐ péngyou (de máng) méiyǒu 15 你学过游泳没有？nǐ xué guo yóuyǒng méiyǒu

Unit 6

Exercise 6.1

1 一匹马 yī pǐ mǎ a/one horse 2 两架飞机 liǎng jià fēijī two planes 3 三个国家 sān gè guójiā three countries 4 四、五把椅子 sì | wǔ bǎ

yǐzi four or five chairs 5 几张桌子 jǐ zhāng zhuōzi a few/how many tables 6 六家商店 liù jiā shāngdiàn six shops 7 七所学校 qī suǒ xuéxiào seven schools 8 八座山 bā zuò shān eight mountains 9 九本书 jiǔ běn shū nine books 10 十块蛋糕 shí kuài dàngāo ten pieces of cake

Exercise 6.2

1 张 zhāng 2 床 chuáng 3 所 suǒ 4 副 fù 5 部 bù 6 个 gè 7 座 zuò 8 对 duì

Exercise 6.3

1 一天 yī tiān 2 一碗饭 yī wǎn fàn 3 一年 yī nián 4 这副眼镜 zhè fù yǎnjìng 5 一双鞋(子) yī shuāng xié(zi) 6 一(个)星期/一个礼拜/一周 yī (gè) xīngqī/yī gè lǐbài/yī zhōu 7 一个耳环 yī gè ěrhuan 8 一只袜子 yī zhī wàzi 9 一块/片面包 yī kuài/piàn miànbāo 10 那把剪刀 nǎ bǎ jiǎndāo 11 一块/条肥皂 yī kuài/tiáo féizào 12 一条裤子 yī tiáo kùzi 13 一个月 yī gè yuè 14 两镑苹果 liǎng bàng píngguǒ 15 三英里(路) sān yīnglǐ (lù) 16 七升汽油 qī shēng qìyóu 17 哪支毛笔 nǎ zhī máobǐ 18 一条/只/艘船 yī tiáo/zhī/sōu chuán (艘 sōu is another measure word for 'ship') 19 两首歌 liǎng shǒu gē 20 一张/幅地图 yī zhāng/fú dìtú

Exercise 6.4

1 一群羊 yī qún yáng 2 一杯啤酒 yī bēi píjiǔ 3 一群人 yī qún rén 4 一把(雨)伞 yī bǎ (yǔ)sǎn 5 一把刀 yī bǎ dāo 6 那只鸟 nèi zhī niǎo 7 那两束花(儿) nà liǎng shù huā(r) 8 一支乐曲 yī zhī yuèqǔ 9 这张报纸 zhè zhāng bàozhǐ 10 哪三支铅笔 nǎ san zhī qiānbǐ 11 一个机会 yī gè jīhuì 12 一滴水 yī dī shuǐ 13 一杯茶 yī bēi chá 14 哪朵花(儿) nǎ duǒ huā(r) 15 一条绳子 yī tiáo shéngzi 16 一张床 yī zhāng chuáng 17 一条裤子 yī tiáo kùzi 18 一把剪刀 yī bǎ jiǎndāo 19 这条狗 zhè tiáo gǒu 20 这三支(香)烟 zhè sān zhī (xiāng)yān

Exercise 6.5

1 这间/个 zhèi jiān/gè 四张 sì zhāng, 五把 wǔ bǎ 2 两条 liǎng tiáo, 三只 sān zhī 3 四辆 sì liàng 4 一顶 yī dǐng 5 四杯 sì bēi 6 那个 nèi gè 几个/条 jǐ gè/tiáo 7 一些 yīxiē 8 一家 yī jiā 一碗 yī wǎn 9 一张 yī zhāng 10 那两只 nà liǎng zhī

Exercise 6.6

1 我有两个孩子。你有几个孩子？**wǒ yǒu liǎng gè hái zi | nǐ yǒu jǐ gè hái zi** 2 你喝了三杯啤酒。我只喝了一杯。**nǐ hē le sān bēi píjiǔ | wǒ zhǐ hē le yī bēi** 3 我喜欢这只狗。我不喜欢那只狗。**wǒ xǐhuan zhèi zhī gǒu | wǒ bù xǐhuan nèi zhī gǒu** 4 我妈妈有十二双鞋(子)。我姐姐有二十多双。**wǒ māma yǒu shí èr shuāng xié(zǐ) | wǒ jiějie yǒu èr shí duō shuāng** 5 我们(只)有一辆车。你们有两辆吧？**wǒmen (zhǐ) yǒu yī liàng chē | nǐmen yǒu liǎng liàng ba** 6 她吃了一碗饭。他吃了三、四碗。**tā chī le yī wǎn fàn | tā chī le sān | sì wǎn** 7 这个是谁的？**zhèi gè shì shuí de** 8 哪个是她的？**nǐ gè shì tā de**

Drill 6.1

1 书架上有十几/十多本书。**shūjià shang yǒu shí jǐ/shí duō běn shū** 2 花瓶里有一束鲜花。**huāpíng li yǒu yī shù xiānhuā** 3 桌子上有两只碗和两双筷子。**zhuōzi shang yǒu liǎng zhī wǎn hé liǎng shuāng kuàizi** 4 衣柜里有两件衬衫、两条裙子和两条裤子。**yīguì li yǒu liǎng jiàn chènshān | liǎng tiáo qúnzi hé liǎng tiáo kùzi** 5 我父母家有两只猫和一只/条狗。**wǒ fùmǔ jiā yǒu liǎng zhī māo hé yī zhī/tiáo gǒu** 6 冰箱里有一块肉和一些蔬菜。**bīngxiāng li yǒu yī kuài ròu hé yīxiē shūcài** 7 电影院有三百多个座位(zuòwèi 'seat')。**diànyǐngyuàn yǒu sān bǎ duō gè zuòwèi** 8 商店里有一大群人。**shāngdiàn li yǒu yī dà qún rén** 9 他银行里有一小笔钱。**tā yínháng li yǒu yī xiǎo bǐ qián** 10 市场上有苹果、橙子、梨和香蕉卖。**shìchǎng shang yǒu píngguǒ | chéngzi | lí hé xiāngjiāo mài** 11 厨房里有一张大桌子和六把椅子。**chúfáng li yǒu yī zhāng dà zhuōzi hé liù bǎ yǐzi** 12 街上有来来往往的车辆和行人(xíng rén 'pedestrians')。**jiē shang yǒu lái lái wǎng wǎng de chēliàng hé xíng rén** 13 办公室里四个书架。**bàngōngshì li yǒu sì gè shūjià** 14 她身上没有钱。**tā shēn shang méi yǒu qián** 15 池里有十一条鱼。**chí li yǒu shí yī tiáo yú** 16 碗里有一些饭。**wǎn li yǒu yīxiē fàn** 17 床上有两张被子。**chuáng shang yǒu liǎng zhāng bèizi** 18 碗柜里有十多只碗。**wǎnguì li yǒu shí duō zhī wǎn** 19 树上有几只鸟儿。**shù shang yǒu jǐ zhī niǎo** 20 山上有一群狼。**shān shang yǒu yī qún láng** 21 车上有二十多个乘客(chéngkè 'passenger')。**chē shang yǒu èr shí duō gè chéngkè** 22 船上有三百五十六个乘客。**chuán shang yǒu sān bǎi wǔ shí liù gè chéngkè**

Drill 6.2

1 一张张(的)桌子 **yī zhāng zhāng (de) zhuōzi** 2 一串串(的)香蕉 **yī chuàn chuàn (de) xiāngjiāo** 3 一座座(的)大山 **yī zuò zuò (de) dà shān** 4 一群群(的)羊 **yī qún qún (de) yáng** 5 一双双(的)鞋子 **yī shuāng shuāng (de) xiézi** 6 一双双(的)袜子 **yī shuāng shuāng (de) wǎzi** 7 一朵朵(的)云 **yī duǒ duǒ (de) yún** 8 一架架(的)飞机 **yī jià jià**

jià (de) fēiji 9 一封封(的)信 **yī fēng fēng (de) xìn** 10 一只只(的)小鸟 **yī zhī zhī (de) xiǎo niǎo**

Unit 7

Exercise 7.1

1 correct 2 不少孩子 **bù shǎo hái zi** 3 不少朋友 **bù shǎo péng you** 4 correct 5 很多面包 **hěn duō miàn bāo** 6 correct 7 correct 8 correct 9 很多人 **hěn duō rén** 10 一些工程师 **yī xiē gōng chéng shī** 11 correct 12 correct 13 correct 14 correct 15 家里连一粒米也没有。 **jiā li lián yī lì mǐ yě méi yǒu** 16 correct

Exercise 7.2

1 很多 **hěn duō**/不少 **bù shǎo** 2 一点(儿) **yī diǎnr** 3 很多 **hěn duō**/不少 **bù shǎo** 4 一个 **yī gè** 5 很多 **hěn duō**/不少 **bù shǎo** 6 很多 **hěn duō**/不少 **bù shǎo** 7 一点(儿) **yī diǎnr**/一些 **yī xiē** 8 一点(儿) **yī diǎnr** 9 很多 **hěn duō**/不少 **bù shǎo** 10 不少 **bù shǎo**

Exercise 7.3

1 我身上(连)一分钱也没有。 **wǒ shēn shang (lián) yī fēn qián yě méi yǒu** 2 我家里(连)一本词典也没有。 **wǒ jiā li (lián) yī běn cí diǎn yě méi yǒu** 3 冰箱里一点儿水果也没有。 **bīng xiāng li yī diǎnr shuǐ guǒ yě méi yǒu** 4 她什么也没(有)说。 **tā shén me yě méi (yǒu) shuō** 5 他什么(东西)也没(有)吃。 **tā shén me (dōng xi) yě méi (yǒu) chī** 6 妈妈什么肉也没(有)买。 **mā ma shén me ròu yě méi (yǒu) mǎi** 7 我们哪儿也没(有)去。 **wǒ men nǎr yě méi (yǒu) qù** 8 我昨天谁也没(有)碰见。 **wǒ zuó tiān shéi / shuí yě méi (yǒu) pèng jiàn**

Exercise 7.4

1 一点(儿) **yī diǎn(r)** 2 一点(儿) **yī diǎn(r)** 3 一点(儿) **yī diǎn(r)** 4 一些/一点(儿) **yī xiē / yī diǎn(r)** 5 一点(儿) **yī diǎn(r)** 6 一点(儿) **yī diǎn(r)** 7 一点(儿) **yī diǎn(r)** 8 一点(儿) **yī diǎn(r)**

Drill 7.1

1 (very) many books 你有很多书吗? **nǐ yǒu hěn duō shū ma** 2 many/quite a few children 你有不少孩子吗? **nǐ yǒu bù shǎo hái zi ma** 3 a little petrol 你有一点儿汽油吗? **nǐ yǒu yī diǎnr qì yóu ma** 4 some rice 你有一些米吗? **nǐ yǒu yī xiē mǐ ma** 5 many dishes 你有许多菜

吗？**nǐ yǒu xǔduō cài ma** 6 a few chairs 你有几把椅子吗？**nǐ yǒu jǐ bǎ yǐzi ma** 7 a few yuán 你有几块钱吗？**nǐ yǒu jǐ kuài qián ma** 8 some paper 你有一些纸吗？**nǐ yǒu yīxiē zhǐ ma** 9 a little salt 你有一点儿盐吗？**nǐ yǒu yīdiǎnr yán ma** 10 a little time 你有一点儿时间吗？**nǐ yǒu yīdiǎnr shíjiān ma**

Drill 7.2

1 车上一个乘客也没有。**chē shang yī gè chéngkè yě méi yǒu** 2 我(的)钱包里一分钱也没有。**wǒ (de) qiánbāo li yī fēn qián yě méi yǒu** 3 瓶子里一点酒也没有。**píngzi li yīdiǎn jiǔ yě méi yǒu** 4 书架上一本书也没有。**shūjià shang yī běn shū yě méi yǒu** 5 河上一条船也没有。**hé shang yī tiáo chuán yě méi yǒu** 6 他的话一点道理也没有。**tā de huà yīdiǎn dàoli yě méi yǒu** 7 衣柜里一条裙子也没有。**yīguì li yī tiáo qúnzi yě méi yǒu** 8 碗柜里一只碗也没有。**wǎngù li yī zhī wǎn yě méi yǒu** 9 那个人一个朋友也没有。**nèi gè rén yī gè péngyou yě méi yǒu** 10 这件事一点儿希望也没有。**zhè jiàn shì yīdiǎnr xīwàng yě méi yǒu**

Unit 8

Exercise 8.1

1 three o'clock 2 twelve o'clock 3 twenty past two 4 five to eight/seven fifty-five 5 ten to eight 6 a quarter past eleven 7 half past nine 8 one minute past ten 9 five past twelve 10 a quarter to seven/six forty-five

Exercise 8.2

1 我上午八点半去学校。**wǒ shàngwǔ bā diǎn bàn qù xuéxiào** 2 我上午八点五十五分/九点差五分去游泳。**wǒ shàngwǔ bā diǎn wǔ shí wǔ fēn/jiǔ diǎn chà wǔ fēn qù yóuyǒng** 3 我朋友下午五点三刻/五点四十五分下班。**wǒ péngyou xiàwǔ wǔ diǎn sān kè/wǔ diǎn sì shí wǔ fēn xiàbān** 4 我们大约九点(钟)吃晚饭。**wǒmen dàyuē jiǔ diǎn (zhōng) chī wǎnfàn** 5 我六号碰见你叔叔。**wǒ liù hào pèngjiàn nǐ shūshu** 6 我爸爸十一号去中国。**wǒ bàba shí yī hào qù zhōngguó** 7 我妹妹晚上十二点左右睡觉。**wǒ mèimei wǎnshang shí èr diǎn zuǒyòu shuìjiào** 8 我下个月二十一号给他写信。**wǒ xià gè yuè èr shí yī hào gěi tā xiě xìn** 9 我下星期日来这儿开座谈会。**wǒ xià xīngqī sī lái zhèr kāi zuótánhuì** 10 我一九九九年毕业。**wǒ yī jiǔ jiǔ nián bìyè** 11 我明年/今年九月到欧洲去。**wǒ míngnián/jīnnián jiǔ yuè dào ōuzhōu qù** 12 我同学明年十二月回国。**wǒ tóngxué míngnián shí èryuè huí guó**

Note: 大约 **dàyuē**, 左右 **zuǒyòu** and 上下 **shàngxià** may be used interchangeably in this exercise.

Exercise 8.3

1 她几点(钟)吃晚饭? **tā jǐ diǎn (zhōng) chī wǎnfàn** 2 你礼拜五晚上几点(钟)来我家? **nǐ libài wǔ wǎnshang jǐ diǎn (zhōng) lái wǒ jiā** 3 你们八月几号去度假? **nǐmen bāyuè jǐ hào qù dùjià** 4 你哪年第一次见到她? **nǐ nǎ nián dì yī cì jiàn dào tā** 5 你妈妈几点(钟)回家? **nǐ māma jǐ diǎn (zhōng) huí jiā** 6 新经理下星期几来这儿上班? **xīn jīnglǐ xià xīngqī jǐ lái zhèr shàngbān** 7 你们什么时候来找我? **nǐmen shénme shíhou lái zhǎo wǒ** 8 他们什么时候/哪年毕业? **tāmen shénme shíhou/nǎ nián bìyè** 9 你姐姐上星期几下午在学开车? **nǐ jiějie shàng xīngqī jǐ xiàwǔ zài xué kāichē** 10 你去年几月/什么时候买这幅画? **nǐ qùnián jǐ yuè/shénme shíhou mǎi zhèi fú huà** 11 座谈会上午几点(钟)开始? **zuótánhuì shàngwǔ jǐ diǎn (zhōng) kāishǐ** 12 你明天什么时候在家里休息? **nǐ míngtiān shénme shíhou zài jiā li xiūxi**

Exercise 8.4

1 你明天什么时候去学校(上课)? **nǐ míngtiān shénme shíhou qù xuéxiào (shàngkè)** 2 我下个月来这儿开座谈会。 **wǒ xià gè yuè lái zhèr kāi zuótánhuì** 3 你什么时候去欧洲旅行? **nǐ shénme shíhou qù ōuzhōu lǚxíng** 4 你明天几点(钟)上班? **nǐ míngtiān jǐ diǎn (zhōng) shàngbān** 5 你下午几点(钟)去游泳池游泳? **nǐ xiàwǔ jǐ diǎn (zhōng) qù yóuyǒngchí yóuyǒng** 6 你哪天到那儿去踢足球? **nǐ nǎ tiān dào nàr qù tī zúqiú** 7 你几月/哪个月去海边度假? **nǐ jǐ yuè/nǎ gè yuè qù hǎi biān dùjià** 8 你什么时候去火车站买票? **nǐ shénme shíhou qù huǒchēzhàn mǎi piào** 9 你上午几点(钟)去市场(买东西)? **nǐ shàngwǔ jǐ diǎn (zhōng) qù shìchǎng (mǎi dōngxi)** 10 你几时/什么时候去图书馆借书? **nǐ jǐ shí/shénme shíhou qù túshūguǎn jiè shū**

Drill 8.1

1 你这个星期天去看球赛吗? **nǐ zhèi gè xīngqī tiān qù kàn qiúsaì ma**
2 你下(个)礼拜去见你的导师吗? **nǐ xià (gè) libài qù jiàn nǐ (de) dǎoshī ma**
3 你明天上午去看医生吗? **nǐ míngtiān shàngwǔ qù kàn yīshēng ma**
4 你下星期二学太极拳吗? **nǐ xià xīngqī'èr xué tàijíquán ma**
5 你今天下午喂猫吗? **nǐ jīntiān xiàwǔ wèi māo ma**
6 你今天晚上上网吗? **nǐ jīntiān wǎnshang shàng wǎng ma**
7 你明天放学后去钓鱼吗? **nǐ míngtiān fàngxué hòu qù diàoyú ma**
8 你明天下班后去学车吗? **nǐ míngtiān xiàbān hòu qù xué kāi chē ma**
9 你今晚看电视吗?

nǐ jīnwnǎn kàndiànshì ma 10 你明年毕业后去旅行吗？**nǐ míngnián bìyè hòu qù lǚxíng ma** 11 你下个月去探望你父母吗？**nǐ xià gè yuè qù tàn wàng nǐ fùmǔ ma** 12 你今年六月(份)去度假吗？**nǐ jīnnián liùyuè (fèn) qù dùjià ma**

Drill 8.2

1 你晚上几点钟(上床)睡觉？**nǐ wǎnshang jǐ diǎn zhōng (shàng chuáng) shuìjiào** 2 你早上几点钟上班？**nǐ zǎoshang jǐ diǎn zhōng shàngbān** 3 你几号动身到中国去？**nǐ jǐ hào dòngshēn dào zhōngguó qù** 4 你大约几点钟下班？**nǐ dàyuē jǐ diǎn zhōng xiàbān** 5 你哪一天走/你星期几走？**nǐ nǎ yī tiān zǒu/nǐ xīngqī jǐ zǒu** 6 你什么时候来找我？**nǐ shénme shíhou lái zhǎo wǒ** 7 你哪一天请我来你家？**nǐ nǎ yī tiān qǐng wǒ lái nǐ jiā** 8 你哪一天/什么时候在家？**nǐ nǎ yī tiān/shénme shíhou zài jiā** 9 你哪一年住在北京？**nǐ nǎ yī nián zhù zài běijīng** 10 你哪一年认识他？**nǐ nǎ yī nián rènshi tā**

Unit 9

Exercise 9.1

1 你在路上花了多长时间？**nǐ zài lù shang huā le duō cháng shíjiān**
2 你在教室里看了多久/多长时间的书？**nǐ zài jiàoshì lǐ kàn le duō jiǔ/duō cháng shíjiān de shū** 3 足球比赛开始多久/多长时间了？**zúqiú bǐsài kāishǐ duō jiǔ/duō cháng shíjiān le** 4 你和姐姐在花园里坐了多久/多长时间？**nǐ hé jiějie zài huāyuán lǐ zuò le duō jiǔ/duō cháng shíjiān** 5 妈妈在厨房里忙了多久/多长时间？**māma zài chúfáng lǐ máng le duō jiǔ/duō cháng shíjiān** 6 妹妹帮了你几天/多少天/多长时间的忙？**mèimei bāng le nǐ jǐ tiān/duōshao tiān/duō cháng shíjiān de máng** 7 你开了几年/多少年车，骑了几年/多少年自行车？**nǐ kāi le jǐ nián/duōshao nián chē | qí le jǐ nián/duōshao nián zìxíngchē** 8 足球场有多长/多少米长？**zúqiúchǎng yǒu duō cháng/duōshao mǐ cháng** 9 你哥哥有多高？**nǐ gēge yǒu duō gāo** 10 巴黎离伦敦有多远？**bāilí lí lúndūn yǒu duō yuǎn**

Exercise 9.2

1 Shall we go to his place to visit him next Monday? 2 How do you get to the bus station? 3 What is the traffic like in London? 4 How can I get to the cinema (from here)? 5 How about going to the pub for a beer tomorrow evening? 6 What is the weather like in Beijing? 7 What are the goods like in that shop? 8 Let's go on holiday next month./Why don't we go on holiday next month?

Exercise 9.3

- 1 你吃了多少？**nǐ chī le duōshao** 2 你怎(么)样/怎么去伦敦？**nǐ zěn(me) yàng/zěnmē qù lúndūn** 3 他为什么离开？**tā wèi shénme líkāi**
4 你准备待(呆)多久/多长时间？**nǐ zhǔnbèi dāi duō jiǔ/duō cháng shíjiān** 5 你怎么做这个蛋糕？**nǐ zěnmē zuò zhèi gè dàngāo**
6 你的新房子(是)怎么样的？**nǐ de xīn fángzi (shì) zěnmē yàng (de)**
7 你有多少钱？**nǐ yǒu duōshao qián** 8 (那个)电影怎么样？**(nèi gè) diànyǐng zěnmē yàng** 9 咱们(去)喝(一)杯酒，怎么样？**zánmen (qù) hē (yī) bēi jiǔ | zěnmē yàng** 10 你为什么学中文？**nǐ wèi shénme xué zhōngwén** 11 我怎么认识小李？**wǒ zěnmē rènshi xiǎo lǐ** 12 你认为那位中文老师怎么样？**nǐ rènwéi nèi wèi zhōngwén lǎoshī zěnmē yàng** 13 你怎么样去上班？**nǐ zěnmē yàng qù shàngbān** 14 你等了她多久/多长时间了？**nǐ děng le tā duō jiǔ/duō cháng shíjiān le** 15 她睡了几(个)小时/几个钟头？**tā shuì le jǐ (gè) xiǎoshí/jǐ gè zhōngtóu** 16 你们开了几天/多少天(的)车？**nǐmen kāi le jǐ tiān/duōshao tiān (de) chē** 你们开车开了几天/多少天？**nǐmen kāichē kāi le jǐ tiān/duōshao tiān** 17 你等了多久/多长时间(的)车？**nǐ děng le duō jiǔ/duō cháng shíjiān (de) chē** 你等车等了多久/多长时间？**nǐ děng chē děng le duō jiǔ/duō cháng shíjiān** 18 你走了多远(的)(路)/多少路？**nǐ zǒu le duō yuǎn (de) (lù)/duōshao lù**

Exercise 9.4

- 1 多远 **duō yuǎn** 2 多高 **duō gāo** 3 多少 **duōshao** 4 多远 **duō yuǎn** 5 多重 **duō zhòng** 6 多大 **duō dà** 7 多少 **duōshao** 8 多大 **duō dà** 9 多少 **duōshao** 10 多久/多长时间 **duō jiǔ/duō cháng shíjiān** 11 多久/多长时间 **duō jiǔ/duō cháng shíjiān** 12 多少/多长时间 **duōshao/duō cháng shíjiān** 13 多久/多长时间 **duō jiǔ/duō cháng shíjiān** 14 多少 **duōshao**

Drill 9.1

- 1 我们今(天)晚(上)去喝(一)杯啤酒，怎么样？**wǒmen jīn(tiān) wǎn(shang) qù hē (yī) bēi píjiǔ | zěnmē yàng** 2 我们明天去跳舞，怎么样？**wǒmen míngtiān qù tiàowǔ | zěnmē yàng** 3 我们明年去度假，怎么样？**wǒmen míngnián qù dùjià | zěnmē yàng** 4 我们现在讲中文，怎么样？**wǒmen xiànzài jiǎng zhōngwén | zěnmē yàng** 5 我们下午去买(一)些香蕉，怎么样？**wǒmen xiàwǔ qù mǎi (yī)xiē xiāngjiāo | zěnmē yàng** 6 我们茶里加(一)点儿糖，怎么样？**wǒmen chá li jiā (yī)diǎnr táng | zěnmē yàng** 7 我们今天去游泳，怎么样？**wǒmen jīntiān qù yóuyǒng | zěnmē yàng** 8 我们星期六/礼拜六去看(一)场足球(比)赛，怎么样？**wǒmen xīngqī liù/lǐbài liù qù kàn (yī) chǎng zúqiú (bǐ)sài | zěnmē yàng** 9 我们下个月去学太极拳，怎么样？**wǒmen xià gè yuè qù xué tàijíquán | zěnmē yàng** 10 我们三点钟完成

这件工作，怎么样？ wǒmen sān diǎn zhōng wánchéng zhèi jiàn gōngzuò | zěnmē yàng 11 我们星期二/礼拜二去找经理，怎么样？ wǒmen xīngqī èr/lǐbài èr qù zhǎo jīnglǐ | zěnmē yàng 12 我们以后去探望他，怎么样？ wǒmen yǐhòu qù tànwàng tā | zěnmē yàng 13 我们今天下午在家里休息，怎么样？ wǒmen jīntiān xiàwǔ zài jiā li xiūxi | zěnmē yàng 14 我们下星期五/礼拜五去打球，怎么样？ wǒmen xià xīngqī wǔ/lǐbài wǔ qù dǎ qiú | zěnmē yang 15 我们明天下午去踢球，怎么样？ wǒmen míngtiān xiàwǔ qù tī qiú | zěnmē yang

Drill 9.2

1 你在那儿呆/待了多长时间？ nǐ zài nàr dāi/dāi le duō cháng shíjiān
 2 你在那儿住了多长时间？ nǐ zài nàr zhù le duō cháng shíjiān
 3 你在那儿等了多长时间？ nǐ zài nàr děng le duō cháng shíjiān
 4 你在那儿工作了多长时间？ nǐ zài nàr gōngzuò le duō cháng shíjiān
 5 你在那儿学习了多长时间？ nǐ zài nàr xuéxí le duō cháng shíjiān
 6 你在酒吧间呆/待了多长时间？ nǐ zài jiǔbājiān dāi/dāi le duō cháng shíjiān
 7 你在家休息了多长时间？ nǐ zài jiā li xiūxi le duō cháng shíjiān
 8 你开了多长时间(的)车？ nǐ kāi le duō cháng shíjiān (de) chē
 9 你在欧洲旅游/旅行了多长时间？ nǐ zài ōuzhōu lǚyóu/lǚxíng le duō cháng shíjiān
 10 你认识她多长时间？ nǐ rènshi tā duō cháng shíjiān

1 开车去伦敦/到伦敦去要多长时间？ kāi chē qù lúndūn/dào lúndūn qù yào duō cháng shíjiān
 2 坐飞机去北京/到北京去要多长时间？ zuò fēijī qù běijīng/dào běijīng qù yào duō cháng shíjiān
 3 坐的士去火车站/到火车站去要多长时间？ zuò dīshì qù huǒchēzhàn/dào huǒchē zhàn yào duō cháng shíjiān
 4 走路去大学/到大学去要多长时间？ zǒulù qù dàxué/dào dàxué qù yào duō cháng shíjiān
 5 坐巴士进城去/到城里去要多长时间？ zuò bāshì jìn chéng qù/dào chéng li qù yào duō cháng shíjiān
 6 骑自行车去你家/到你家去要多长时间？ qí zìxíngchē qù nǐ jiā/dào nǐ jiā qù yào duō cháng shíjiān
 7 走路去银行/到银行去要多长时间？ zǒulù qù yínháng/dào yínháng qù yào duō cháng shíjiān
 8 坐的士去(长途)汽车站/到(长途)汽车站去要多长时间？ zuò dīshì qù (chángtú) qìchēzhàn/dào (chángtú) qìchēzhàn yào duō cháng shíjiān
 9 骑自行车去足球场/到足球场去要多长时间？ qí zìxíngchē qù zúqiú chǎng/dào zúqiúchǎng qù yào duō cháng shíjiān
 10 走路去邮局/到邮局去要多长时间？ zǒulù qù yóujú/dào yóujú qù yào duō cháng shíjiān

Unit 10

Exercise 10.1

1 一个很大的游泳池 yī gè hěn dà de yóuyǒngchí 2 新楼房 xīn lóufáng 3 白猫 bái mǎo 4 一只/个大碗 yī zhī/gè dà wǎn 5 一个美

丽的花园 **yī gè měilì de huāyuán** 6 一个小孩(子) **yī gè xiǎo hái(zi)** 7
一个有趣的电影 **yī gè yǒuqù de diànyǐng** 8 一场精彩的比赛 **yī chǎng
jīngcǎi de bǐsài** 9 新鲜(的)蔬菜 **xīnxiān (de) shūcài** 10 很多钱 **hěn
duō qián** 11 一辆旧车 **yī liàng jiù chē** 12 十分重的行李 **shífēn
zhòng de xíngli** 13 干净的衣服 **gānjìng de yīfu** 14 一间整齐的房子
/房间 **yī jiān zhěngqí de wūzi/fángjiān** 15 很狭窄的街道 **hěn xiázhǎi
de jiēdào** 16 古老的城市 **gǔlǎo de chéngshì** 17 一个非常好的音乐
会 **yī gè fēicháng hǎo de yīnyuèhuì** 18 脏鞋子 **zāng xiézi**

Exercise 10.2

1 今天天气很好。 **jīntiān tiānqì hěn hǎo** 2 她很有钱。 **tā hěn yǒu qián**
3 这个沙发不很舒服。 **zhè gè shāfā bù hěn shūfu** 4 那个教室非常干
净。 **nèi gè jiàoshì fēicháng gānjìng** 5 我弟弟不太高。 **wǒ dìdì bù tài
gāo** 6 这场比赛不十分精彩。 **zhè chǎng bǐsài bù shífēn jīngcǎi** 7 地
上都是红红绿绿的玩具。 **dì shàng dōu shì hónghónglǜlǜ de wánjù**
8 王先生是个非常有趣的人。 **wáng xiānsheng shì gè fēicháng yǒuqù
de rén**

Exercise 10.3

1 北京是(一)个十分/非常古老的城市。 **běijīng shì (yī) gè
shífēn/fēicháng gǔlǎo de chéngshì** 2 那本旧书不太贵。 **nèi běn jiù shū
bù tài guì** 3 (这个)图书馆非常大。 **(zhè gè) túshūguǎn fēicháng dà**
4 我没有新衣服。/我(连)一件新衣服也没有。 **wǒ méi yǒu xīn yīfu/wǒ
(lián) yī jiàn xīn yīfu yě méi yǒu** 5 那些鲜花很美丽/漂亮。 **nèi xiē xiān
huā hěn měilì/piàoliang** (鲜花 **xiānhuā** has become a set expression for
'fresh flowers', *not*: 新鲜的花儿 **xīnxiān de huār**) 6 那双鞋(子)太
大。 **nèi shuāng xié(zi) tài dà** 7 这儿的天气真好。 **zhè de tiānqì zhēn
hǎo** 8 那条街(道)不够干净。 **nèi tiáo jiē(dào) bù gòu gānjìng** 9 我
不喜欢不新鲜的牛奶。 **wǒ bù xǐhuan bù xīnxiān de niúniǎi** 10 那杯
咖啡太甜。 **nèi bēi kāfēi tài tián**

Exercise 10.4

1 路旁坐着一个高高大大的小伙子。 **lù páng zuò zhe yī gè gāo-
gaodàdà de xiǎohuǒzi** 2 小王长著弯弯的眉毛, 高高的鼻子, 小小的
嘴巴和一双大大的眼睛, 留著一头整整齐齐的短发。 **xiǎo wáng zhǎng
zhe wānwān de méimao | gāogāo de bízi | xiǎoxiǎo de zuǐba hé yī shuāng
dàdà de yǎnjīng | liú zhe yī tóu zhěngzhengqíqí de duǎn fà** 3 这是一
间干干净净的房间。白白的床单, 蓝蓝的窗帘, 红红的炉火, 给你一种
舒舒适适的感觉。 **zhè shì yī jiān gāngānjìngjìng de fángjiān | báibái
de chuángdān | lánlán de chuānglián | hónghóng de lúhuǒ | gěi nǐ yī
zhǒng shūshùshìshì de gǎnjué** 4 她那朴朴素素的衣着, 大大方方的

举止，甜甜美美的声音给人留下了很深刻的印象。tā nèi pǔpusùsù de yǐzhǔ | dàdāfāngfāng de jǔzhǐ | tiántiānměiměi de shēngyīn géi rén liú xià le hěn shēnkè de yìnyàng

Exercise 10.5

1 那些是谁的？nèi xiē shì shéi de 2 这些是我的。zhèi xiē shì wǒ de
3 白裙子是你的。红的是我的。bái qúnzi shì nǐ de | hóng de shì wǒ de
4 我们没有(任何)新的。wǒmen méi yǒu (rènhé) xīn de 5 大的那些很贵，小的那些也不便宜。dà de nèi xiē hěn guì | xiǎo de nèi xiē yě bù piányi 6 这些故事太长，那两个(故事)不长。zhèi xiē gùshi tài cháng | nà liǎng gè (gùshi) bù cháng 7 这个杯子很脏。我要一个干净的。zhèi gè bēizi hěn zāng | wǒ yào yī gè gānjìng de 8 这三个学生去日本。哪两个去中国？zhèi sān gè xuésheng qù rìběn | nǎ liǎng gè qù zhōngguó 9 我喜欢这两本书。你喜欢哪两本？wǒ xǐhuan zhè liǎng běn shū | nǐ xǐhuan nǎ liǎng běn 10 哪些是你的？nǐ xiē shì nǐ de

Drill 10.1

1 a 这瓶酒贵是贵，可是/不过很好喝。zhèi píng jiǔ guì shì guì | kěshì/bùguò hěn hǎohē b 这瓶酒贵是不贵，可是/不过不好喝。zhèi píng jiǔ guì shì bù guì | kěshì/bùguò bù hǎohē 2 a 那个苹果小是小，可是/不过很好吃。nèi gè píngguǒ xiǎo shì xiǎo | kěshì/bùguò hěn hǎochī b 那个苹果小是不小，可是/不过不好吃。nèi gè píngguǒ xiǎo shì bù xiǎo | kěshì/bùguò bù hǎochī 3 a 那把椅子矮是矮，可是/不过很好坐。nèi bǎ yǐzi ǎi shì ǎi | kěshì/bùguò hěn hǎozuò b 那把椅子矮是不矮，可是/不过不好坐。nèi bǎ yǐzi ǎi shì bù ǎi | kěshì/bùguò bù hǎozuò 4 a 这首歌难唱是难唱，可是/不过很好听。zhèi shǒu gē nán chàng shì nán chàng | kěshì/bùguò hěn hǎotīng b 这首歌难(唱)是不难唱，可是/不过不好听。zhèi shǒu gē nán (chàng) shì bù nán chàng | kěshì/bùguò bù hǎotīng 5 a 那个花瓶便宜是便宜，可是/不过不好看。nèi gè huāpíng piányi shì piányi | kěshì/bùguò bù hǎokàn b 那个花瓶便宜是不便宜，可是/不过很好看。nèi gè huāpíng piányi shì bù piányi | kěshì/bùguò hěn hǎokàn 6 a 那支笔旧是旧，可是/不过很好写。nèi zhī bǐ jiù shì jiù | kěshì/bùguò hěn hǎoxiě b 那支笔旧是不旧，可是/不过不好写。nèi zhī bǐ jiù shì bù jiù | kěshì/bùguò bù hǎoxiě 7 a 这杯牛奶冷是冷，可是/不过很新鲜。zhèi bēi niúnnǎi lěng shì lěng | kěshì/bùguò hěn xīnxiān b 这杯牛奶冷是不冷，可是/不过不新鲜。zhèi bēi niúnnǎi lěng shì bù lěng | kěshì/bùguò bù xīnxiān 8 a 这条街道干净是干净，可是/不过不整齐。zhèi tiáo jiēdào gānjìng shì gānjìng | kěshì/bùguò bù zhěngqí b 这条街道干净是不干净，可是/不过很整齐。zhèi tiáo jiēdào gānjìng shì bù gānjìng | kěshì/bùguò hěn zhěngqí 9 a 那个人聪明是聪明，可是/不过不老实。nèi gè rén cōngmíng shì

cōngmíng | kěshì/bùguò bù lǎoshi b 那个人聪明是不聪明，可是/不过很老实。**nèi gè rén cōngmíng shì bù cōngmíng | kěshì/bùguò hěn lǎoshi** 10 a 那座楼房古老是古老，可是/不过不漂亮。**nèi zuò lóufáng gǔlǎo shì gǔlǎo | kěshì/bùguò bù piàoliang** b 那座楼房古老是不古老，可是/不过很漂亮。**nèi zuò lóufáng gǔlǎo shì bù gǔlǎo | kěshì/bùguò hěn piàoliang**

Drill 10.2

1 这瓶酒一点儿也/都不贵。这瓶酒一点儿也/都不好喝。**zhèi píng jiǔ yīdiǎnr yě/dōu bù guì | zhèi píng jiǔ yīdiǎnr yě/dōu bù hǎohē** 2 那个苹果一点儿也/都不小。那个苹果一点儿也/都不好吃。**nèi gè píngguǒ yīdiǎnr yě/dōu bù xiǎo | nèi gè píngguǒ yīdiǎnr yě/dōu bù hǎochī** 3 那把椅子一点儿也/都不矮。那把椅子一点儿也/都不好坐。**nèi bǎ yǐzi yīdiǎnr yě/dōu bù ǎi | nèi bǎ yǐzi yīdiǎnr yě/dōu bù hǎozuò** 4 这首歌一点儿也/都不难唱。这首歌一点儿也/都不好听。**zhèi shǒu gē yīdiǎnr yě/dōu bù nán chàng | zhèi shǒu gē yīdiǎnr yě/dōu bù hǎotīng** 5 那个花瓶一点儿也/都不便宜。那个花瓶一点儿也/都不好看。**nèi gè huāpíng yīdiǎnr yě/dōu bù piányi | nèi gè huāpíng yīdiǎnr yě/dōu bù hǎokàn** 6 那支笔一点儿也/都不旧。那支笔一点儿也/都不好写。**nèi zhī bǐ yīdiǎnr yě/dōu bù jiù | nèi zhī bǐ yīdiǎnr yě/dōu bù hǎoxiě** 7 这杯牛奶一点儿也/都不冷。这杯牛奶一点儿也/都不新鲜。**zhèi bēi niúnnǎi yīdiǎnr yě/dōu bù lěng | zhèi bēi niúnnǎi yīdiǎnr yě/dōu bù xīnxiān** 8 这条街道一点儿也/都不乾淨。这条街道一点儿也/都不整齐。**zhèi tiáo jiēdào yīdiǎnr yě/dōu bù gānjìng | zhèi tiáo jiēdào yīdiǎnr yě/dōu bù zhěngqí** 9 那个人一点儿也/都不聪明。那个人一点儿也/都不老实。**nèi gè rén yīdiǎnr yě/dōu bù cōngmíng | nèi gè rén yīdiǎnr yě/dōu bù lǎoshi** 10 那座楼房一点儿也/都不古老。那座楼房一点儿也/都不漂亮。**nèi zuò lóufáng yīdiǎnr yě/dōu bù gǔlǎo | nèi zuò lóufáng yīdiǎnr yě/dōu bù piàoliang**

Unit 11

Exercise 11.1

1 她是我的邻居。**tā shì wǒ de línjū** 2 我的妹妹很漂亮。**wǒ de mèimei hěn piàoliang** 3 昨天(是)星期二。**zuótiān (shì) xīngqī èr** 4 我的车是红的。**wǒ de chē shì hóng de** 5 这条鱼是活的。**zhèi tiáo yú shì huó de** 6 我们的房间很干净。**wǒmen de fángjiān hěn gānjìng** 7 那个故事很有趣。**nèi gè gùshi hěn yǒuqù** 8 这些蔬菜很新鲜。**zhèi xiē shūcài hěn xīnxiān** 9 这条裙子不太脏。**zhèi tiáo qúnzi bù tài zāng** 10 音乐会非常精彩。**yīnyuèhuì fēicháng jīngcǎi** 11 这些衣服都是旧的。**zhèi xiē yifu dōu shì jiù de** 12 那副眼镜是谁的？**nèi fù yǎnjìng shì shéi/shuí de**

Exercise 11.2

1 小王没有狗。 **xiǎo wáng méi yǒu gǒu** 2 花园里没有很多花儿。
huāyuán li méi yǒu hěn duō huār 3 他们都不是英国人。**tāmen dōu**
bù shì yīngguó rén 4 这幢房子不是他的。**zhè zhuàng fángzi bù**
shì tā de 5 那杯咖啡不是我朋友的。**nèi bēi kāfēi bù shì wǒ péngyou**
de 6 楼下没有人。**lóuxià méi yǒu rén** 7 她不是经理。**tā bù shì jīnglǐ**
8 她没有两件行李。**tā méi yǒu liǎng jiàn xíngli** 9 我的同学不都是
中国人。**wǒ de tóngxué bù dōu shì zhōngguó rén** 10 图书馆后面不
是电影院。**túshūguǎn hòumian bù shì diànyǐngyuàn**

Exercise 11.3

1 抽屉里有信纸。**chōuti li yǒu xìnzhǐ** 2 那幅画儿很美。**nèi fú huàr**
hěn měi 3 这条蛇是活的。**zhè tiáo shé shì huó de** 4 我没有手套。
wǒ méi yǒu shǒutào 5 他不是经理。**tā bù shì jīnglǐ** 6 树下没有
兔子。**shù xià méi yǒu tùzi** 7 那条裤子不是我的。**nèi tiáo kùzi**
bù shì wǒ de 8 书架上都是书。**shūjià shang dōu shì shū**

Exercise 11.4

1 柜子/衣柜里有两件红毛衣。**guizi/yīguì li yǒu liǎng jiàn hóng máoyī**
2 厨房里有一个大炉子。**chúfáng li yǒu yī gè dà lúzi** 3 书架上有很
多书。**shūjià shang yǒu hěn duō shū** 4 教室里有很多学生。**jiàoshì li**
yǒu hěn duō xuésheng 5 游泳池里都是人。**yóuyǒngchí li dōu shì rén**
6 房间/屋子里一把椅子也没有。**fángjiān/wùzi li yī bǎ yǐzi yě méi yǒu**
7 抽屉里什么也没有。**chōuti li shénme yě méi yǒu** 8 花园里没有花
儿。**huāyuán li méi yǒu huār** 9 办公室里没有电话。**bàngōngshì li**
méi yǒu diànhuà 10 山脚下有一群羊。**shānjiǎo xià yǒu yī qún yáng**
11 饭店对面是电影院。**fàndiàn duìmiàn shì diànyǐngyuàn** 12 锅里有
很多饭。**guō li yǒu hěn duō fàn** 13 瓶子里只有一点儿牛奶。**píngzi**
li zhǐ yǒu yīdiǎnr niúǎi 14 地板上都是玩具。**dìbǎn shang dōu shì**
wánjù 15 (那栋)房子里没有人。**(nèi dòng) fángzi li méi yǒu rén**

Exercise 11.5

1 这是(一张)车票,不是(一张)电影票。**zhè shì (yī zhāng) chēpiào | bù**
shì (yī zhāng) diànyǐngpiào 2 那是一对鸳鸯,不是一对普通的鸭
子。**nà shì yī duì yuānyāng | bù shì yī duì pǔtōng de yāzi** 3 那些是
土豆/马铃薯,不是番薯。**nèi xiē shì túdòu/mǎlíngshǔ | bù shì fānshǔ**
4 这些是蜜蜂,不是苍蝇。**zhè xiē shì mìfēng | bù shì cāngying** 5 这
是汽油,不是菜油。**zhè shì qìyóu | bù shì càiyou** 6 那是张经理,不
是李工程师。**nà shì zhāng jīnglǐ | bù shì lǐ gōngchéngshī** 7 外面只有
一辆自行车,没有汽车。**wàimian zhǐ yǒu yī liàng zìxíngchē | méi**

yǒu qìchē 8 盒子里有珠子，但是没有耳环。 **hézi li yǒu zhūzi | dànshì méi yǒu ěrhuán** 9 墙上只有一幅地图，没有画儿。 **qiáng shang zhǐ yǒu yī fú dìtú | méi yǒu huà** 10 我有一包(香)烟，但是没有火柴。 **wǒ yǒu yī bāo (xiāng)yān | dànshì méi yǒu huǒchái** 11 厨房里有一个炉子，没有冰箱。 **chúfáng li yǒu yī gè lúzi | méi yǒu bīngxiāng** 12 我只有一把刀，没有剪刀。 **wǒ zhǐ yǒu yī bǎ dāo | méi yǒu jiǎndāo** 13 这些都不是她的。 **zhèxiē dōu bù shì tā de** 14 那些不都好。 **nèixiē dōu bù hǎo** 15 那些都不好。 **nèixiē dōu bù hǎo**

Drill 11.1

1 我是明年秋天去中国/到中国去。 **wǒ shì míngnián qiūtiān qù zhōngguó/dào zhōngguó qù** 2 我是后年回(来)英国。 **wǒ shì hòunián huí (lái) yīngguó** 3 我不是坐船去。 **wǒ bù shì zuò chuán qù** 4 我是坐飞机去。 **wǒ shì zuò fēijī qù** 5 你是什么时候去中国/到中国去？ **nǐ shì shénme shíhou qù zhōngguó/dào zhōngguó qù** 6 你明年是去哪儿/什么地方？ **nǐ míngnián shì qù nǎ/shénme dìfang** 7 是你明天去中国/到中国去吗？ **shì nǐ míngtiān qù zhōngguó/dào zhōngguó qù ma** 8 是我朋友(明天去中国/到中国去)，不是我(明天去中国/到中国去)。 **shì wǒ péngyou (míngtiān qù zhōngguó/dào zhōngguó qù) | bù shì wǒ (míngtiān qù zhōngguó/dào zhōngguó qù)** 9 你朋友是昨天走的吗？ **nǐ péngyou shì zuótiān zǒu de ma** 10 不(是)，他是前天走的。 **bù (shì) | tā shì qiántiān zǒu de** 11 他是坐飞机走的。 **tā shì zuò fēijī zǒu de** 12 他是星期六/礼拜六回(来)英国。 **tā shì xīngqī liù / lǐbài liù huí (lái) yīngguó** 13 (这)是谁做的？ **(zhè) shì shéi zuò de** 14 (这)是她做的吗？ **(zhè) shì tā zuò de ma** 15 (这)不是她做的，是他做的。 **(zhè) bù shì tā zuò de | shì tā zuò de**

Drill 11.2

1 你买的那瓶牛奶很新鲜。我买的那瓶不新鲜。 **nǐ mǎi de nèi píng niúniǎi hěn xīnxiān | wǒ mǎi de nèi píng bù xīnxiān** 2 这张桌子是方的。那张是圆的。 **zhè zhāng zhuōzi shì fāng de | nèi zhāng shì yuán de** 3 她的书很有意思。我的一点意思都没有。 **tā de shū hěn yǒu yìsi | wǒ de yīdiǎn yìsi dōu méi yǒu** 4 爸爸的车是蓝的。妈妈的是红的。 **bàba de chē shì lán de | māma de shì hóng de** 5 这件衬衫是我的。那件是谁的(呢)？ **zhè jiàn chènshān shì wǒ de | nèi jiàn shì shéi de (ne)** 6 那条裤子够长。这条不够长。 **nèi tiáokùzi gòucháng | zhè tiáobù gòucháng** 7 他的朋友都很有钱。我的朋友都没钱/很穷。 **tā de péngyou dōu hěnyǒu qián | wǒ de péngyou dōu méi qián/hěnyóu** 8 你的房间很干净。他的不够干净。 **nǐ de fángjiān hěngānjìng | tā de bù gòugānjìng** 9 张先生的马是黑的。李太太的是白的。 **zhāng xiānsheng de mǎ shì hēi de | lǐ tàitai de shì bái de** 10 这些苹果很贵。那些很便宜。 **zhèxiē píngguǒ hěnguì | nèixiē hěnpíanyi**

Unit 12

Exercise 12.1

1 飞机比火车快。 **fēijī bǐ huǒchē kuài** Planes are faster than trains. 2 法国跟美国不一样大。 **fǎguó gēn měiguó bù yīyàng dà** France and America are not the same size. 3 春天比冬天暖和。 **chūntiān bǐ dōngtiān nuǎnhuo** Spring is warmer than winter. 4 猫比老虎小得多。 **māo bǐ lǎohǔ xiǎo de duō** Cats are much smaller than tigers. 5 阿尔卑斯山没有喜马拉雅山那么高。 **ā'ěrbēisī shān méiyǒu xīmǎlāyǎ shān nàme gāo** The Alps aren't as high as the Himalayas. 6 中国的人口比俄国的人口多。 **zhōngguó de rénkǒu bǐ éguó de rénkǒu duō** China's population is bigger than Russia's. 7 金字塔和长城一样有名。 **jīnzǐtǎ hé chángchéng yīyàng yǒumíng** The Pyramids and the Great Wall are equally famous. 8 小李没有老张那么勤奋。 **xiǎo lǐ méiyǒu lǎo zhāng nàme qínfèn** Xiao Li is not as diligent as Lao Zhang. 9 炒饭比炒面好吃得多。 **chǎofàn bǐ chǎomiàn hǎochī de duō** Fried rice is much nicer than fried noodles. 10 你的行李比我的行李重两公斤。 **nǐ de xíngli bǐ wǒ de xíngli zhòng liǎng gōngjīn** Your luggage is 2 kilos heavier than mine.

Exercise 12.2

1 鲸鱼比鲨鱼大。 **jīngyú bǐ shāyú dà** Whales are bigger than sharks. 2 摄像机比照相机贵。 **shèxiàngjī bǐ zhàoxiàngjī guì** Video cameras are more expensive than cameras. 3 苹果比桃子硬。 **píngguǒ bǐ táozi yìng** Apples are harder than peaches. 4 那个城市比这个城市美丽。 **nèi gè chéngshì bǐ zhèi gè chéngshì měilì** That city is more beautiful than this one. 5 英国的夏天比春天热。 **yīngguó de xiàtiān bǐ chūntiān rè** Summer in Britain is hotter than spring. 6 德语比法语难。 **déyǔ bǐ fǎyǔ nán** German is more difficult than French. 7 我比你重。 **wǒ bǐ nǐ zhòng** I am heavier than you. 8 长江比黄河长。 **chángjiāng bǐ huánghé cháng** The Yangtze River is longer than the Yellow River. 9 你的肩膀比他的宽。 **nǐ de jiānbǎng bǐ tā de kuān** Your shoulders are broader than his. 10 那首歌比这首歌好听。 **nèi shǒu gē bǐ zhèi shǒu gē hǎotīng** That song is nicer than this one.

Exercise 12.3

1 胖得多 **pàng de duō** 2 长得多 **cháng de duō** 3 便宜一点儿/一些 **piányi yīdiǎnr/yīxiē** 4 瘦一点儿/一些 **shòu yīdiǎnr/yīxiē** 5 小两岁 **xiǎo liǎng suì** 6 贵两镑 **guì liǎng bàng** 7 有趣得多 **yǒuqù de duō** 8 漂亮一点儿/一些 **piàoliang yīdiǎnr/yīxiē** 9 新鲜得多 **xīnxiān de duō** 10 干净一点儿/一些 **gānjìng yīdiǎnr/yīxiē**

Exercise 12.4

- 1 最 zuì 2 更 gèng 3 还要 hái (yào) 4 最 zuì 5 最 zuì 6 最 zuì
7 更 gèng 8 更 gèng 9 还要 hái (yào) 10 还要 hái (yào)

Exercise 12.5

- 1 他比其他人来得早。 tā bǐ qítā rén lái de zǎo 他来得比其他人早。 tā lái de bǐ qítā rén zǎo 2 她走得比他慢。 tā zǒu de bǐ tā màn 她比他走得慢。 tā bǐ tā zǒu de màn 3 昨天他睡得比我晚。 zuótiān tā shuì de bǐ wǒ wǎn 昨天他比我睡得晚。 zuótiān tā bǐ wǒ shuì de wǎn 4 我妻子开车开得比我好。 wǒ qīzi kāichē kāi de bǐ wǒ hǎo 我妻子开车比我开得好。 wǒ qīzi kāichē bǐ wǒ kāi de hǎo 5 我的一个同学唱歌唱得比我好。 wǒ de yī gè tóngxué chànggē chàng de bǐ wǒ hǎo 我的一个同学唱歌比我唱得好。 wǒ de yī gè tóngxué chànggē bǐ wǒ chàng de hǎo 6 我丈夫打网球打得比我好。 wǒ zhàngfu dǎ wǎngqiú dǎ de bǐ wǒ hǎo 我丈夫打网球比我打得好。 wǒ zhàngfu dǎ wǎngqiú bǐ wǒ dǎ de hǎo 7 我哥哥比我高一英寸。 wǒ gēge bǐ wǒ gāo yī yīngcùn 8 妹妹比姐姐轻半公斤。 mèimei bǐ jiějie qīng bàn gōngjīn 9 松鼠有老鼠那么大吗？ sōngshǔ yǒu lǎoshǔ nàme dà ma 10 这幢房子没有那幢那么漂亮。 zhèi zhuàng fángzi méiyǒu nài zhuàng nàme piàoliang

Exercise 12.6

- 1 我越来越饿。 wǒ yuè lái yuè è 2 厨师越来越胖。 chúshī yuè lái yuè pàng 3 那匹马在比赛中越跑越慢/跑得越来越慢。 nài pǐ mǎ zài bǐsài zhōng yuè pǎo yuè màn/pǎo de yuè lái yuè màn 4 足球比赛越来越精彩。 zúqiú bǐsài yuè lái yuè jīngcǎi 5 路越来越宽。 lù yuè lái yuè kuān 6 祖父的病越来越严重。 zǔfù de bìng yuè lái yuè yánzhòng 7 他越喝越醉。 tā yuè hē yuè zuì 8 越快越好。 yuè kuài yuè hǎo 9 他越唱我越不高兴。 tā yuè chàng wǒ yuè bù gāoxìng 10 (菜)越辣我越喜欢。(cài) yuè là wǒ yuè xǐhuan

Drill 12.1

- 1 a 这张桌子不比那张(桌子)干净。 zhèi zhāng zhuōzi bù bǐ nài zhāng (zhuōzi) gānjìng b 那张桌子没有这张(桌子)干净。 nài zhāng zhuōzi méiyǒu zhèi zhāng (zhuōzi) gānjìng 2 a 这个房间不比那个(房间)整齐。 zhèi gè fángjiān bù bǐ nài gè (fángjiān) zhěngqí b 那个房间没有这个(房间)整齐。 nài gè fángjiān méiyǒu zhèi gè (fángjiān) zhěngqí 3 a 这个人不比那个人老实。 zhèi gè rén bù bǐ nài gè rén lǎoshi b 那个人没有这个人老实。 nài gè rén méiyǒu zhèi gè rén lǎoshi 4 a 这个故事不比那个(故事)有趣。 zhèi gè gùshi bù bǐ nài gè (gùshi) yǒuqù

b 那个故事没有这个(故事)有趣。nèi gè gùshi méiyǒu zhèi gè (gùshi) yǒuqù 5 a 这场比赛不比那场(比赛)精彩。zhèi chǎng bǐsài bù bǐ nài chǎng (bǐsài) jīngcǎi b 那场比赛没有这场(比赛)精彩。nài chǎng bǐsài méiyǒu zhèi chǎng (bǐsài) jīngcǎi 6 a 这条裙子不比那条(裙子)长。zhèi tiáo qúnzi bù bǐ nài tiáo (qúnzi) cháng b 那条裙子没有这条(裙子)长。nài tiáo qúnzi méiyǒu zhèi tiáo (qúnzi) cháng 7 a 这双鞋子不比那双(鞋子)小。zhèi shuāng xiézi bù bǐ nài shuāng (xiézi) xiǎo b 那双鞋子没有这双(鞋子)小。nài shuāng xiézi méiyǒu zhèi shuāng (xiézi) xiǎo 8 a 这件衣服不比那件(衣服)脏。zhèi jiàn yīfu bù bǐ nài jiàn (yīfu) zāng b 那件衣服没有这件(衣服)脏。nài jiàn yīfu méiyǒu zhèi jiàn (yīfu) zāng 9 a 这辆车不比那辆(车)漂亮。zhèi liàng chē bù bǐ nài liàng (chē) piàoliang b 那辆车没有这辆(车)漂亮。nài liàng chē méiyǒu zhèi liàng (chē) piàoliang 10 a 这座楼房不比那座(楼房)古老。zhèi zuò lóufáng bù bǐ nài zuò (lóufáng) gǔlǎo b 那座楼房没有这座(楼房)古老。zhèi zuò lóufáng méiyǒu zhèi zuò (lóufáng) gǔlǎo 11 a 这些蔬菜不比那些(蔬菜)新鲜。zhèi xiē shūcài bù bǐ nài xiē (shūcài) xīnxiān b 那些蔬菜没有这些(蔬菜)新鲜。nài xiē shūcài méiyǒu zhèi xiē (shūcài) xīnxiān 12 a 这家商店不比那家(商店)大。zhèi jiā shāngdiàn bù bǐ nài jiā (shāngdiàn) dà b 那家商店没有这家(商店)大。nài jiā shāngdiàn méiyǒu zhèi jiā (shāngdiàn) dà 13 a 这杯咖啡不比那杯(咖啡)甜。zhèi bēi kāfēi bù bǐ nài bēi (kāfēi) tián b 那杯咖啡没有这杯(咖啡)甜。nài bēi kāfēi méiyǒu zhèi bēi (kāfēi) tián 14 a 这个孩子不比那个孩子聪明。zhèi gè hái zi bù bǐ nài gè (hái zi) cōngmíng b 那个孩子没有这个孩子聪明。nài gè hái zi méiyǒu zhèi gè (hái zi) cōngmíng 15 a 这件行李不比那件(行李)重。zhèi jiàn xíngli bù bǐ nài jiàn (xíngli) zhòng b 那件行李没有这件(行李)重。nài jiàn xíngli méiyǒu zhèi jiàn (xíngli) zhòng 16 a 这儿的天气不比那儿的(天气)好。zhèr de tiānqì bù bǐ nàr de (tiānqì) hǎo b 那儿的天气没有这儿的(天气)好。nàr de tiānqì méiyǒu zhèr de (tiānqì) hǎo 17 a 这块姜不比那块(姜)辣。zhèi kuài jiāng bù bǐ nài kuài (jiāng) là b 那块姜没有这块(姜)辣。nài kuài jiāng méiyǒu zhèi kuài (jiāng) là 18 a 这个运动员不比那个运动员高。zhèi gè yùndòngyuán bù bǐ nài gè yùndòngyuán gāo b 那个运动员没有这个运动员高。nài gè yùndòngyuán méiyǒu zhèi gè yùndòngyuán gāo 19 a 这种花儿不比那种(花儿)香。zhèi zhǒng huār bù bǐ nài zhǒng (huār) xiāng b 那种花儿没有这种(花儿)香。nài zhǒng huār méiyǒu zhèi zhǒng (huār) xiāng 20 a 去年冬天不比今年冬天冷。qùnián dōngtiān bù bǐ jīnnián dōngtiān lěng b 今年冬天没有去年冬天冷。jīnnián dōngtiān méiyǒu qùnián dōngtiān lěng

Drill 12.2

1 我比弟弟重五公斤。wǒ bǐ dìdì zhòng wǔ gōngjīn 2 我的朋友比我矮三寸。wǒ de péngyou bǐ wǒ ǎi sān cùn 3 你的行李比我的重四公斤。nǐ de xíngli bǐ wǒ de zhòng sì gōngjīn 4 今天比昨天暖两度。jīntiān

bǐ zuótiān nuǎn liǎng dù 5 去年冬天比今年冷两、三度。**qùnián dōngtiān bǐ jīnnián lěng liǎng | sān dù** 6 这条路比那条宽两公尺。**zhèi tiáo lù bǐ nài tiáo kuān liǎng gōngchǐ** 7 他的裤子比你的长一、两寸。**tā de kùzi bǐ nǐ de cháng yī | liǎng cùn** 8 你的照相机比我的贵一百块钱。**nǐ de zhàoxiàngjī bǐ wǒ de guì yī bǎi kuài qián** 9 你的表比我的快十分钟。**nǐ de biǎo bǐ wǒ de kuài shí fēn zhōng** 10 这个路程比那个远二十公里左右。**zhèi gè lùchéng bǐ nài gè yuǎn èr shí gōnglǐ zuǒyòu** 11 我比他早一个钟头起床。**wǒ bǐ tā zǎo yī gè zhōngtóu qǐchuáng** 12 他比我晚一年毕业。**tā bǐ wǒ wǎn yī nián bìyè** 13 他们比我们早两天动身。**tāmen bǐ wǒmen zǎo liǎng tiān dòngshēn** 14 她比我晚来半(个)小时。**tā bǐ wǒ wǎn lái bàn (gè) xiǎoshí** 15 火车比汽车早到五分钟。**huǒchē bǐ qìchē zǎo dào wǔ fēn zhōng**

Unit 13

Exercise 13.1

1 上 **shang** 2 里 **lǐ** 3 旁(边) **páng(biān)** 4 外 **wài** 5 (底)下 **(dǐ)xia** 6 附近 **fùjìn** 7 那儿 **nàr** 8 四周 **sìzhōu** 9 东面 **dōngmiàn/东边 dōngbian** 10 左边/面 **zuǒbian/miàn**, 右边/面 **yòubian/miàn** 11 旁边 **pángbiān** 12 中间 **zhōngjiān** 13 里面/(边)/(头) **lǐ(mian)/(bian)/(tou)** 14 左面/边 **zuǒmiàn/bian** 15 中间 **zhōngjiān** 16 右面/边 **yòumiàn/bian** 17 后面/边/头 **hòumiàn/bian/tou** 18 周围 **zhōuwéi**

Exercise 13.2

1 在大学(里) **zài dàxué (lǐ)** 2 在车站 **zài chēzhàn** 3 在柜子里(面)/(边)/(头) **zài guǐzi lǐ(mian)/(bian)/(tou)** 4 在城市北面/北边/北部 **zài chéngshì běimiàn/běibian/běibù** 5 在盒子/箱子里 **zài hézi/xiāngzi lǐ** 6 在床上(面)/(边) **zài chuáng shàng(mian)/(bian)** 7 在屋子中间 **zài wūzi zhōngjiān** 8 在山脚下 **zài shānjiǎo xià** 9 在车上 **zài chē shang** 10 在树(底)下 **zài shù (dǐ)xia** 11 在妈妈旁边 **zài māma pángbiān** 12 在游泳池上边/面/头 **zài yóuyǒngchí shàngbian/mian/tou** 13 在图书馆前面边/头 **zài túshūguǎn qiánmian/bian/tou** 14 在房子后面/边/头 **zài fángzi hòumiàn/bian/tou** 15 在河边/旁/旁边 **zài hé biān/páng/pángbiān** 16 在桌(子)上(面)/(边) **zài zhuō(zi) shàng(mian)/(bian)** 17 在公园附近 **zài gōngyuán fùjìn** 18 在孩子周围 **zài háiizi zhōuwéi** 19 在祖父家里/那儿 **zài zǔfù jiā lǐ/nàr** 20 在西面/边 **zài xīmiàn/bian**

Exercise 13.3

1 报纸在桌子上(面)/(边)。**bàozhǐ zài zhuōzi shàng(mian)/(bian)** 2 他们在屋子里开会。**tāmen zài wūzi lǐ kāihuì** 3 泰晤士河是英国有名的

河。 **tàiwùshì hé shì yīngguó yǒumíng de hé** 4 医生在病人的床边/旁边站了一会儿，没有说话。 **yīshēng zài bìngrén de chuáng bian/pángbiān zhàn le yīhuìr | méiyǒu shuō huà** 5 correct 6 correct 7 你的钥匙在门上。 **nǐ de yàoshi zài mén shang** 8 叔叔在伦敦工作。 **shūshu zài lúndūn gōngzuò** 9 她在门前站着。 **tā zài mén qián zhàn zhe** 10 correct 11 金鱼在水池里游着。 **jīnyú zài shuǐchí li yóu zhe** 12 电影院在鞋店左面/左边。 **diànyǐngyuàn zài xiédiàn zuǒmiàn/zuǒbian** 13 报纸上有不少广告。 **bàozhǐ shang yǒu bù shǎo guǎnggào** 14 天上没有云。 **tiān shang méi yǒu yún**

Exercise 13.4

1 楼上 **lóushàng**; 中间 **zhōngjiān** 2 东面 **dōngmiàn**; 左边 **zuǒbian** 3 楼下 **lóuxià**; 下面 **xiàmian**

Exercise 13.5

1 牛肉在锅里煮着。 **niúròu zài guō li zhǔ zhe** 2 我的一个朋友在一家医院工作。 **wǒ de yī gè péngyou zài yī jiā yīyuàn gōngzuò** 我的一个朋友在一家医院里工作。 **wǒ de yī gè péngyou zài yī jiā yīyuàn li gōngzuò** 3 我们住在巴黎。 **wǒmen zhù zài bālí** 我们在巴黎住。 **wǒmen zài bālí zhù** (*not*: *我们在巴黎住着。 **wǒmen zài bālí zhù zhe**) 4 她在博物馆等你。 **tā zài bówùguǎn děng nǐ** 她在博物馆里等你。 **tā zài bówùguǎn li děng nǐ** 5 有一群羊在山脚下吃草。 **yǒu yī qún yáng zài shānjiǎo xià chī cǎo** 6 我叔叔在海边晒太阳。 **wǒ shūshu zài hǎi biān shài tàiyang**

Drill 13.1

1 a 弟弟在沙发上睡觉。 **dìdi zài shāfā shang shuìjiào** Younger brother is sleeping on the sofa. b 弟弟到沙发上去睡觉。 **dìdi dào shāfā shang qù shuìjiào** Younger brother went to have a sleep on the sofa. 2 a 爷爷在公园里打太极拳。 **yéye zài gōngyuán li dǎ tàijíqián** Grandpa is practising T'ai Chi in the park. b 爷爷到公园里去打太极拳。 **yéye dào gōngyuán li qù dǎ tàijíqián** Grandpa went to practise T'ai Chi in the park. 3 a 爸爸在河边钓鱼。 **bàba zài hé biān diàoyú** Father is fishing by the river. b 爸爸到河边去钓鱼。 **bàba dào hé biān qù diàoyú** Father has gone fishing by the river. 4 a 妈妈在城里买菜。 **māma zài chéng li mǎi cài** Mother is buying food in town. b 妈妈到城里去买菜。 **māma dào chéng li qù mǎi cài** Mother has gone to buy food in town. 5 a 奶奶在朋友家打麻将。 **nǎinai zài péngyou jiā dǎ májiàng** Grandma is playing mah-jong at a friend's place. b 奶奶到朋友家去打麻将。 **nǎinai dào péngyou jiā qù dǎ májiàng** Grandma has gone to play mah-jong at a friend's place. 6 a 妹妹在学校里学唱歌。

mèimei zài xuéxiào li xué chànggē Younger sister is taking singing lessons at school. b 妹妹到学校里去学唱歌。**mèimei dào xuéxiào li qù xué chànggē** Younger sister has gone to take singing lessons at school. 7 a 哥哥在图书馆看书。**gēge zài túshūguǎn kàn shū** Elder brother is doing some reading in the library. b 哥哥到图书馆去看书。**gēge dào túshūguǎn qù kàn shū** Elder brother has gone to the library to do some reading. 8 a 伯伯在博物馆工作。**bóbo zài bówùguǎn gōngzuò** Uncle (father's elder brother) works in the museum. b 伯伯到博物馆去工作。**bóbo dào bówùguǎn qù gōngzuò** Uncle (father's elder brother) has gone to work at the museum. 9 a 叔叔在菜园里种菜。**shūshu zài càiyuán li zhòng cài** Uncle (father's younger brother) is planting vegetables in the vegetable garden. b 叔叔到菜园里去种菜。**shūshu dào càiyuán li qù zhòng cài** Uncle (father's younger brother) has gone to the vegetable garden to plant vegetables. 10 a 姑母在花园里种花。**gūmǔ zài huāyuán li zhòng huā** Aunt (father's elder sister) is planting flowers in the garden. b 姑母到花园里去种花。**gūmǔ dào huāyuán li qù zhòng huā** Aunt (father's elder sister) has gone to plant flowers in the garden. 11 a 姨母在医院(里)看病。**yímǔ zài yīyuàn (li) kànbìng** Aunt (mother's sister) is seeing a doctor in the hospital. b 姨母到医院(里)去看病。**yímǔ dào yīyuàn (li) qù kànbìng** Aunt (mother's sister) has gone to see a doctor in the hospital. 12 a 舅舅在操场上跑步。**jiùjiu zài cāochǎng shàng pǎobù** Uncle (mother's brother) is jogging on the sports ground. b 舅舅到操场上去跑步。**jiùjiu dào cāochǎng shàng qù pǎobù** Uncle (mother's brother) has gone jogging on the sports ground. 13 a 伯伯和伯母在巴黎度假。**bóbo hé bómǔ zài bālí dùjià** Uncle and Aunt (father's elder brother and his wife) are spending their holidays in Paris. b 伯伯和伯母到巴黎去度假。**bóbo hé bómǔ dào bālí qù dùjià** Uncle and Aunt (father's elder brother and his wife) have gone to spend their holidays in Paris. 14 a 姑母和姑丈在北京旅行。**gūmǔ hé gūzhàng zài běijīng lǚxíng** Uncle and Aunt (father's elder sister and her husband) are on a tour in Beijing. b 姑母和姑丈到北京去旅行。**gūmǔ hé gūzhàng dào běijīng qù lǚxíng** Uncle and Aunt (father's elder sister and her husband) have gone to Beijing on a tour. 15 a 姨母和姨丈在伦敦看球赛。**yímǔ hé yízhàng zài lúndūn kàn qiúsài** Aunt and Uncle (mother's sister and her husband) are watching a match in London. b 姨母和姨丈到伦敦去看球赛。**yímǔ hé yízhàng dào lúndūn qù kàn qiúsài** Aunt and Uncle (mother's sister and her husband) have gone to London to watch a match. 16 a 哥哥和我在电影院看电影。**gēge hé wǒ zài diànyǐngyuàn kàn diànyǐng** My elder brother and I are seeing a film at the cinema. b 哥哥和我到电影院去看电影。**gēge hé wǒ dào diànyǐngyuàn qù kàn diànyǐng** My elder brother and I are going to the cinema to see a film. 17 a 我和弟弟在家(里)看电视。**wǒ hé dìdì zài jiā (li) kàn diànshì** My younger brother and I are watching

television at home. b 我和弟弟回家去看电视。wǒ hé dìdì huí jiā qù kàn diànshì My younger brother and I are going home to watch television.

18 a 哥哥和他的女朋友在咖啡馆喝咖啡。gēge hé tā de nǚ péngyou zài kāfēiguǎn hē kāfēi Elder brother and his girlfriend are drinking coffee in a coffee bar. b 哥哥和他的女朋友到咖啡馆去喝咖啡。gēge hé tā de nǚ péngyou dào kāfēiguǎn qù hē kāfēi Elder brother and his girlfriend are going to a coffee bar to have a coffee.

19 a 姐姐和她的男朋友在一家商店里买衣服。jiějie hé tā de nán péngyou zài yī jiā shāngdiàn lǐ mǎi yīfu Elder sister and her boyfriend are buying clothes in a shop. b 姐姐和她的男朋友到一家商店(里)去买衣服。jiějie hé tā de nán péngyou dào yī jiā shāngdiàn lǐ qù mǎi yīfu Elder sister and her boyfriend have gone to a shop to buy clothes.

20 a 舅母带(着)我在外卖店买外卖。jiùmǔ dài (zhe) wǒ zài wàimàidiàn mǎi wàimài Aunt (maternal brother's wife) is taking me with her to buy take-away food at a Chinese take-away. b 舅母带(着)我到外卖店去买外卖。jiùmǔ dài (zhe) wǒ dào wàimàidiàn qù mǎi wàimài Aunt (maternal brother's wife) is taking me with her to a Chinese take-away to buy take-away food.

21 a 舅舅带(著)我弟弟在沙滩上骑马。jiùjiu dài (zhe) wǒ dìdì zài shātān shàng qí mǎ Uncle (mother's brother) is taking my younger brother with him to go horse riding on the beach. b 舅舅带(着)我弟弟到沙滩上去骑马。jiùjiu dài (zhe) wǒ dìdì dào shātān shàng qù qí mǎ Uncle (mother's brother) is taking my younger brother with him to the beach to go horse riding.

22 a 叔叔带(着)哥哥在街上骑自行车。shūshu dài (zhe) gēge zài jiē shàng qí zìxíngchē Uncle (father's younger brother) is taking my elder brother cycling with him on the street. b 叔叔带(着)哥哥到街上去骑自行车。shūshu dài (zhe) gēge dào jiē shàng qù qí zìxíngchē Uncle (father's younger brother) is taking my elder brother with him to go cycling on the street.

Drill 13.2

1 里面比外面好。lǐmian bǐ wàimian hǎo 2 我在电影院里面等你。wǒ zài diànyǐngyuàn lǐmian děng nǐ 3 楼上没有人。lóushàng méi yǒu rén 4 你后面有一个人。nǐ hòumian yǒu yī gè rén 5 这儿里面有公厕吗？zhèr lǐmian yǒu gōngcè ma 6 (在)照片里，我爸爸坐在左边，妈妈坐在右边，我站在他们中间。(zài) zàopiàn lǐ | wǒ bàba zuò zài zuǒbian | wǒ māma zuò zài yòubian | wǒ zhàn zài tāmen zhōngjian 7 你住在中国什么地方/哪儿？nǐ zhù zài zhōngguó shénme dìfang/nǎr 8 你的车请停在图书馆前面的马路上。ní de chē qǐng tíng zài túshūguǎn qiánmian de mǎlù shàng 9 别坐在那把/张椅子上。bié zuò zài nèi bǎ/zhāng yǐzi shàng 10 他的钱放在床底下的一个箱子/盒子里。tā de qián fàng zài chuáng dìxià de yī gè xiāngzi/hézi lǐ

Unit 14

Exercise 14.1

1 我明天去北京。 **wǒ míngtiān qù běijīng** 明天我去北京。 **míngtiān wǒ qù běijīng** 2 我去北京两天。 **wǒ qù běijīng liǎng tiān** 3 我去年去了北京。 **wǒ qùnián qù le běijīng** 去年我去了北京。 **qùnián wǒ qù le běijīng** 4 我两天后去北京。 **wǒ liǎng tiān hòu qù běijīng** 两天后我去北京。 **liǎng tiān hòu wǒ qù běijīng** 5 我结婚前去北京。 **wǒ jiéhūn qián qù běijīng** 结婚前我去北京。 **jiéhūn qián wǒ qù běijīng** 6 明年我要去北京两次。 **míngnián wǒ yào qù běijīng liǎng cì** 明年我要去北京两次。 **wǒ míngnián yào qù běijīng liǎng cì** 明年我要去两次北京。 **míngnián wǒ yào qù liǎng cì běijīng** 我明年要去两次北京。 **wǒ míngnián yào qù liǎng cì běijīng** 7 我半年没去北京了。 **wǒ bàn nián méi qù běijīng le** 我没去北京半年了。 **wǒ méi qù běijīng bàn nián le** 8 我每年夏天去北京半个月。 **wǒ měi nián xiàtiān qù běijīng bàn gè yuè** 每年夏天我去北京半个月。 **měi nián xiàtiān wǒ qù běijīng bàn gè yuè**

Exercise 14.2

1 他前年去了上海。 **tā qiánnián qù le shànghǎi** 前年他去了上海。 **qiánnián tā qù le shànghǎi** 2 妈妈上个月离开(了)英国。 **māma shàng gè yuè líkāi (le) yīngguó** 上个月妈妈离开(了)英国。 **shàng gè yuè māma líkāi (le) yīngguó** 3 哥哥星期二去游泳了。 **gēge xīngqī èr qù yóuyǒng le** 星期二哥哥去游泳了。 **xīngqī èr gēge qù yóuyǒng le** 4 爷爷每天(都)看两、三个小时(的)小说。 **yéye měi tiān (dōu) kàn liǎng | sān gè xiǎoshí (de) xiǎoshuō** 每天爷爷(都)看两、三个小时(的)小说。 **měi tiān yéye (dōu) kàn liǎng | sān gè xiǎoshí (de) xiǎoshuō** 5 我现在在学习汉语。 **wǒ xiànzài zài xuéxí hànyǔ** 现在我在学习汉语。 **xiànzài wǒ zài xuéxí hànyǔ** 6 我们全家下个周末去海滨。 **wǒmen quán jiā xià gè zhōumò qù hǎibīn** 下个周末我们全家去海滨。 **xià gè zhōumò wǒmen quán jiā qù hǎibīn** 7 我们每个星期四晚上(都)去跳舞。 **wǒmen měi gè xīngqī sì wǎnshang (dōu) qù tiàowǔ** 每个星期四晚上我们(都)去跳舞。 **měi gè xīngqī sì wǎnshang wǒmen (dōu) qù tiàowǔ** 8 小张下(个)星期一去银行。 **xiǎo zhāng xià (gè) xīngqī yī qù yínháng** 下(个)星期一小张去银行。 **xià (gè) xīngqī yī xiǎo zhāng qù yínháng** 9 请在这儿等我五分钟。 **qǐng zài zhèr děng wǒ wǔ fēn zhōng** 10 我去年去探望我父母两次。 **wǒ qùnián qù tànwàng wǒ fùmǔ liǎng cì** 去年我去探望我父母两次。 **qùnián wǒ qù tànwàng wǒ fùmǔ liǎng cì** 我去年去探望(了)两次我(的)父母。 **wǒ qùnián qù tànwàng (le) liǎng cì wǒ (de) fùmǔ** 去年我去探望(了)两次我(的)父母。 **qùnián wǒ qù tànwàng (le) liǎng cì wǒ (de) fùmǔ**

Exercise 14.3

1 correct 2 他在海里游了一会儿泳。 **tā zài hǎi li yóu le yīhuìr yǒng**
 3 我马上上班。 **wǒ mǎshàng shàngbān** 4 correct 5 我们永远记得他。
wǒmen yǒngyuǎn jìde tā 6 correct 7 我已经写了信了。 **wǒ yǐjīng xiě le xìn le**
 8 队长刚刚看见小李。 **duìzhǎng gānggāng kànjiàn xiǎo lǐ** 9 correct 10 correct
 11 她来了这儿两次。 **tā lái le zhèr liǎng cì** 12 爷爷和奶奶今天散了半个钟头步。
yéye hé nǎinai jīntiān sàn le bàn gè zhōngtóu bù/ 爷爷和奶奶今天散步散了半个钟头。
yéye hé nǎinai jīntiān sàn bù sàn le bàn gè zhōngtóu

Exercise 14.4

1 I swam for two hours this morning. 2 My English friend stayed in China for two months.
 3 They have been learning Chinese for two years now. 4 The meeting has been going on for 40 minutes./The meeting started 40 minutes ago.
 5 My coursemates and I are going to play football tomorrow afternoon. 6 (My) younger sister was writing letters the whole evening.
 7 Mr Wang and his wife are going to China on holiday next year. 8 He graduated last June. 9 My younger brother bought a pair of beautiful sports shoes.
 10 My father often goes to work by bicycle. 11 I stayed at his place for half an hour on three occasions. 12 She danced for three hours that evening.

Exercise 14.5

1 你在中国的时候尝/吃过馒头没有? **nǐ zài zhōngguó de shíhou cháng/chī guo mántou méiyǒu** 2 你能在外面等一会儿吗? **nǐ néng zài wàimian děng yīhuìr ma**
 3 咱们在公园里坐一会儿吧。 **zánmen zài gōngyuán li zuò yīhuìr ba** 4 你能帮/替我看(管)一会儿孩子吗? **nǐ néng bāng/tì wǒ kàn(guǎn) yīhuìr háizi ma**
 5 我们去采了一(个)小时草莓。 **women qù cǎi le yī (gè) xiǎoshí cǎoméi** 6 他看了一下那张照片。
tā kàn le yíxià nèi zhāng zhàopiàn/他看了看那张照片。 tā kàn le kàn nèi zhāng zhàopiàn 7 请(你)先看一下今天的报纸。
qǐng (nǐ) xiān kàn yíxià jīntiān de bàozhǐ/请(你)先看一看今天的报纸。 qǐng (nǐ) xiān kàn yī kàn jīntiān de bàozhǐ
 8 他整整一年没喝过酒了。 **tā zhěngzhěng yī nián méi hē guo jiǔ le** 9 我认识他三年了。
wǒ rènshi tā sān nián le 10 我已经洗过/了澡了。 **wǒ yǐjīng xǐ guo/le zǎo le**

Drill 14.1

1 我的邻居下个月在家请客。 **wǒ de línjū xià gè yuè zài jiā qǐngkè**
 2 我的一个中学同学下星期在一间教堂举行婚礼。 **wǒ de yī gè zhōng xué tóngxué xià xīngqī zài yī jiān jiàotáng jǔxíng hūnlǐ** 3 我下星期到

教堂去参加婚礼。 **wǒ xià xīngqī dào jiàotáng qù cānjiā hūnlǐ** 4 舅舅去年在中国参加奥林匹克运动会。 **jiùjiu qùnián zài zhōngguó cānjiā àolínpǐkè yùndònghuì** 5 姐姐和她的男朋友上个月到欧洲去度假。 **jiějie hé tā de nán péngyou shàng gè yuè dào ōuzhōu qù dùjià** 6 爷爷和奶奶明年到北京去探望他们的中国朋友。 **yéye hé nǎinai míngnián dào běijīng qù tànwàng tāmen de zhōngguó péngyou** 7 我的中文老师六个月前到英国来看我。 **wǒ de zhōngwén lǎoshī liù gè yuè qián dào yīngguó lái kàn wǒ** 8 姑丈明天上午到医院去打针。 **gūzhàng míngtiān shàngwǔ dào yīyuàn qù dǎzhēn** 9 我的两个同学下星期六在伦敦看足球赛。 **wǒ de liǎng gè tóngxué xià xīngqī liù zài lúndūn kàn zúqiúsài** 10 我和弟弟上星期天/日在大学附近的一个公园里学(打)太极拳。 **wǒ hé dìdì shàng xīngqī tiān/rì zài dàxué fùjìn de yī gè gōngyuán li xué (dǎ) tàijíquán**

Drill 14.2

1 有一个英国运动员去年夏天在训练中三次打破了自己的记录。 **yǒu yī gè yīngguó yùndòngyuán qùnián xiàtiān zài xùnliàn zhōng sān cì dǎpò le zìjǐ de jìlù** 2 有(一)个银行经理去年三月(份)在中国呆/待了两个星期/礼拜。 **yǒu (yī) gè yínháng jīnglǐ qùnián sānyuè (fèn) zài zhōngguó dāi/dài le liǎng gè xīngqī/libài** 3 我的一个朋友三年前在英国学了两个月的电脑。 **wǒ de yī gè péngyou sān nián qián zài yīngguó xué le liǎng gè yuè de diànnǎo** 4 弟弟明年秋天到中国去学两个半月(的)中文。 **dìdì míngnián qiūtiān dào zhōngguó qù xué liǎng gè bàn yuè (de) zhōngwén** 5 我前天在街上骑了半(个)小时/半个钟头(的)自行车。 **wǒ qiántiān zài jiē shàng qí le bàn (gè) xiǎoshí/bàn gè zhōngtóu (de) zìxíngchē** 6 有(一)个中国厨师一年半前在电视上表演了/演示了很多次。 **yǒu (yī) gè zhōngguó chúshī yī nián bàn qián zài diànshì shàng biǎoyǎn le/yǎnshì le hěn duō cì** 7 我父母昨(天)晚(上)在火车站等了我二十分钟。 **wǒ fùmǔ zuó(tiān) wǎn(shàng) zài huǒchēzhàn děng le wǒ èr shí fēn zhōng** 8 (我)叔叔今天上午在海滩上晒了一个半小时(的)太阳。 **(wǒ) shūshu jīntiān shàngwǔ zài hǎitān shàng shài le yī gè bàn xiǎoshí (de) tàiyang** 9 咱们明天放学后/下课后到公园去散一个小时(的)步。 **zánmen míngtiān fàngxué hòu/xiàkè hòu dào gōngyuán qù sàn yī gè xiǎoshí (de) bù** 10 (我)哥哥每个星期/礼拜都在邮局工作两天。 **(wǒ) gēge měi gè xīngqī/libài dōu zài yóujú gōngzuò liǎng tiān**

Drill 14.3

1 病人三天来都没(有)吃什么东西。 **bìngrén sān tiān lái dōu méi(yǒu) chī shénme dōngxi** 2 两年来我没(有)看过一次医生/病。 **liǎng nián lái wǒ méi(yǒu) kàn guo yī cì yīshēng/bìng** 3 整个夏天我都呆/待在父母家。 **zhěnggè xiàtiān wǒ dōu dāi/dài zài fùmǔ jiā** 4 整个月她都在家里照顾孩子。 **zhěnggè yuè tā dōu zài jiā li zhàogu háizi** 5 他一年

来没(有)抽过烟了。tā yī nián lái méi(yǒu) chōu guo yān le 6 我整个
 礼拜/星期没喝过啤酒了。wǒ zhěnggè lǐbài/xīngqī méi hē guo píjiǔ le
 7 他每次(来)都带一瓶酒来。tā měi cì (lái) dōu dài yī píng jiǔ lái 8
 (近)几年来我(都)没碰见过他了。(jìn) jǐ nián lái wǒ (dōu) méi
 pèngjiàn guo tā le 9 他一年/每年去北京一次/一次北京。tā yī nián/
 měi nián qù běijīng yī cì/yī cì běijīng 10 他们每(个)星期/一星期见两
 次面。tāmen měi (gè) xīngqī/yī xīngqī jiàn liǎng cì miàn

Unit 15

Exercise 15.1

1 在 zài 2 着 zhe 3 过 guo 4 着 zhe 5 着 zhe 6 了 le 7 过 guo
 8 在 zài 9 了 le 10 过 guo 11 在 zài 12 在 zài 13 在 zài 14
 了/过 le/guo 15 了 le

Exercise 15.2

1 他(正)在擦窗(户)。tā (zhèng)zài cā chuāng(hu) 2 他们到/来过这
 儿。tāmen dào/lái guo zhèr 3 我(正)在浇花。wǒ (zhèng)zài jiāo huā
 4 我的朋友(正)在喝啤酒。wǒ de péngyou (zhèng)zài hē píjiǔ 5 (那
 位)教师站着讲课。(nèi wèi) jiàoshī zhàn zhe jiǎngkè 6 他跳起舞来。
 tā tiào qǐ wǔ lái 7 他(正)在开车。tā (zhèng)zài kāichē 8 她买了一
 双鞋。tā mǎi le yī shuāng xié 9 爷爷(正)在看电视。yéye
 (zhèng)zài kàn diànshì 10 妈妈戴着一顶漂亮的帽子。māma dài zhe
 yī dǐng piàoliang de màozi

Exercise 15.3

1 起来 qǐlái 2 下来 xiàlái 3 下去 xiàqù 4 起来 qǐlái 5 下来
 xiàlái 6 下去 xiàqù 7 起来 qǐlái 8 起来 qǐlái 9 起来 qǐlái 10
 下来 xiàlái

Exercise 15.4

1 讲下去 jiǎng xiàqù 2 学习起来 xuéxí qǐlái 3 写起信来 xiě qǐ xìn lái
 4 学下去 xué xiàqù 5 correct 6 吵起架来 chǎo qǐ jià lái 7 游起泳
 来 yóu qǐ yǒng lái 8 correct 9 聪明起来 cóngmíng qǐlái 10 correct

Drill 15.1

1 妹妹哭起来了。mèimei kū qǐlái le Younger sister began to cry. 2
 弟弟笑起来了。dìdì xiào qǐlái le Younger brother began to laugh. 3
 同学们唱起歌来了。tóngxuémen chàng qǐ gē lái le The classmates

began to sing. 4 爸爸和妈妈跳起舞来了。 **bàba hé māma tiào qǐ wǔ lái le** Mum and Dad began to dance. 5 天冷起来了。 **tiān lěng qǐ lái le** It began to get cold. 6 天下起雨来了。 **tiān xià yǔ lái le** It began to rain. 7 哥哥学起中文来了。 **gēge xué qǐ zhōngwén lái le** Elder brother began to study Chinese. 8 姐姐穿起红裙子来了。 **jiějie chuān qǐ hóng qúnzi lái le** Elder sister began wearing a red skirt. 9 天气热起来了。 **tiānqì rè qǐ lái le** The weather began to get hotter. 10 白天长起来了。 **báitiān cháng qǐ lái le** The days began to lengthen. 11 老李和小李吵起来了。 **lǎo lǐ hé xiǎo lǐ chǎo qǐ lái le** Old Li and Little Li began to quarrel. 12 那个孩子抽起烟来了。 **nèi gè hái zǐ chōu qǐ yān lái le** That child began to smoke.

Drill 15.2

1 Uncle (mother's brother) is wearing (a pair of) sunglasses. [description] [resultant state] 2 Younger sister walked in crying. [description] [manner of execution] 3 Father and uncle (his younger brother) are just having a chat. [narrative] 4 Younger brother is/was lying on the sofa. [description] [resultant state] 5 Mother is cooking in the kitchen. [narrative] 6 Aunt (mother's brother's wife) is wearing (a pair of) black shoes. [description] [resultant state] 7 It is raining outside. [narrative] 8 Grandpa is/was sitting in the garden. [description] [resultant state] 9 Elder sister is in the room writing a letter. [narrative] 10 Father as he spoke began to laugh/smile. [description] [manner of execution]

Drill 15.3

1 The children all stood up. [space] 2 The ladies all sat down. [space] 3 As they sat they began to chat. [time] 4 At this moment it began to snow outside. [time] 5 I can't recall this matter. [time] 6 Younger sister as she spoke began to cry and she could not go on/say any more. [time] 7 We settled down there. [time] 8 At this moment the teacher walked in and the students/classmates went quiet. [time] 9 When the bus/train arrived at the stop/station it came to a halt [time] and the passengers all got off [space]. 10 Elder brother picked up a book [space], and, as he read it, he began to laugh/smile [time], and he could not go on reading any more [time].

Unit 16

Exercise 16.1

1 我想休息一会儿。 **wǒ xiǎng xiūxi yīhuìr** 2 你要早点儿起床。 **nǐ yào zǎo diǎnr qǐchuáng** 3 他想去中国旅游。 **tā xiǎng qù zhōngguó lǚyóu** 4 你想喝点儿什么？ **nǐ xiǎng hē diǎnr shénme** 5 你要好好儿学习。

nǚ yào hǎohāor xuéxí 6 妈妈想买一件外套。 māma xiǎng mǎi yī jiàn wàitào

Key to
exercises

Exercise 16.2

1 能 néng 2 会 huì 3 该 gāi 4 能 néng 5 可以 kěyǐ 6 会 huì;
肯 kěn 7 必须 bìxū 8 必 bì

Exercise 16.3

1 不愿意 bù yuànyì 2 不敢 bù gǎn 3 可以 kěyǐ 4 不肯 bù kěn
5 不想 bù xiǎng 6 要 yào/想 xiǎng 7 敢 gǎn 8 得 děi 9 不必 bù
bì 10 该 gāi 11 必须 bìxū 12 不该 bù gāi 13 可以 kěyǐ 14 会
huì 15 能 néng 16 可以 kěyǐ 17 不能 bù néng 18 会 huì
19 会 huì 20 会 huì; 不能 bù néng 21 会 huì; 能 néng 22 不能 bù
néng 23 能 néng 24 能 néng 25 会 huì 26 会 huì 27 能 néng
28 不应该 bù yīnggāi

Exercise 16.4

1 你会开车吗? nǐ huì kāichē ma 2 周末会下雨吗? zhōumò huì xià
yǔ ma 3 你想去探望/看望你父母吗? nǐ xiǎng qù tànwàng/kànwàng
nǐ fùmǔ ma 4 你必须/该去复习功课了。 nǐ bìxū/gāi qù fùxí gōngkè
le 5 这个星期我们能去海滩吗? zhèi gè xīngqī wǒmen néng qù
hǎitān ma 6 我必须/得记住音乐会的时间。 wǒ bìxū/děi jìzhu
yīnyuèhuì de shíjiān 7 你们不应该打架。 nǐmen bù yīnggāi dǎjià 8
我三月份/明年三月能/可以休假吗? wǒ sānyuè(fèn)/míngnián sānyuè
néng/kěyǐ xiūjià ma 9 你愿意帮助他吗? nǐ yuànyì bāngzhù tā ma 10
她不敢乘/坐飞机。 tā bù gǎn chéng/zuò fēijī

Drill 16.1

1 Is he willing? 2 Do you want to go to town tomorrow? 3 You
must persuade him. 4 Can you do shadow-boxing/T'ai Chi? 5
Don't cheat! 6 Who can give me a hand? 7 Is there anyone here
who can speak English? 8 Can you help me translate this sentence?
9 I must be off. 10 You ought to rest. (It's time for you to have
a rest.) 11 Who is willing to stay behind? 12 We must go back
tomorrow. 13 Don't you dare tell lies again! 14 Is it likely to be
foggy tomorrow? 15 You must go and see a doctor.

Drill 16.2

1 a 你明天回家吗? nǐ míngtiān huí jiā ma b 你明天必须回家吗? nǐ
míngtiān bìxū huí jiā ma c 你明天想/要回家吗? nǐ míngtiān xiǎng/yào

299

huí jiā ma d 你明天能回家吗? **nǐ míngtiān néng huí jiā ma** e 你明天可以回家吗? **nǐ míngtiān kěyǐ huí jiā ma** 2 a 我不敢告诉他。 **wǒ bù gǎn gàosu tā** b 我不能告诉他。 **wǒ bù néng gàosu tā** c 我不会告诉他的。 **wǒ bù huì gàosu tā de** d 我不愿意告诉他。 **wǒ bù yuànyì gàosu tā** e 我不用/不必告诉他。 **wǒ bù yòng/bùbì gàosu tā** f 我不该告诉他。 **wǒ bù gāi gàosu tā** 3 a 你要下一站下车吗? **nǐ yào xià yī zhàn xià chē ma** b 你得下一站下车吗? **nǐ děi xià yī zhàn xià chē ma** c 你下一站下车吗? **nǐ xià yī zhàn xià chē ma** d 你能/可以下一站下车吗? **nǐ néng/kěyǐ xià yī zhàn xià chē ma** e 你愿意下一站下车吗? **nǐ yuànyì xià yī zhàn xià chē ma** 4 a 你能/可以帮我一个忙吗? **nǐ néng/kěyǐ bāng wǒ yī gè máng ma** b 你会帮我的忙吧? **nǐ huì bāng wǒ de máng ma** c 你愿意帮我一个忙吗? **nǐ yuànyì bāng wǒ yī gè máng ma** d 你得帮我一个忙。 **nǐ děi bāng wǒ yī gè máng ma** e 要我帮你的忙吗? **yào wǒ bāng nǐ de máng ma** f 我很想帮你的忙，可是我不能。 **wǒ hěn xiǎng bāng nǐ de máng ma** | **kěshì wǒ bù néng** 5 a 你会说中文吗? **nǐ huì shuō zhōngwén ma** b 你能说中文吗? **nǐ néng shuō zhōngwén ma** c 我可以说中文吗? **wǒ kěyǐ shuō zhōngwén ma** d 要我说中文吗? **yào wǒ shuō zhōngwén ma** e 我必须/得说中文吗? **wǒ bìxū/děi shuō zhōngwén ma** f 我该说中文，对/是吗? **wǒ gāi shuō zhōngwén ma** | **duì/shì ma** g 我会说英文，你不必/不用说中文。 **wǒ huì shuō yīngwén ma** | **nǐ bù bì/bù yòng shuō zhōngwén ma** h 我很想说英文，可是... **wǒ hěn xiǎng shuō yīngwén ma** | **kěshì...**

Unit 17

Exercise 17.1

1 不 **bù** 2 没(有) **méi(yǒu)** 3 没(有) **méi(yǒu)** 4 没(有) **méi(yǒu)**
5 没(有) **méi(yǒu)** 6 不 **bù** 7 不 **bù** 8 不 **bù** 9 没(有) **méi(yǒu)**
10 没(有) **méi(yǒu)** 11 没(有) **méi(yǒu)** 12 不 **bù** 13 不 **bù** 14 没
(有) **méi(yǒu)** 15 不 **bù**

Exercise 17.2

1 孩子们都不喜欢吃蔬菜。 **háizimen dōu bù xǐhuan chī shūcài** None of the children like eating vegetables. 2 他们也没有去看京剧。 **tāmen yě méiyǒu qù kàn jīngjù** They didn't go to watch the Beijing Opera either. 3 他吃饭前常常不洗手。 **tā chīfàn qián chángcháng bù xǐ shǒu** He doesn't often wash his hands before meals. 4 我从来不抽烟。 **wǒ cónglái bù chōuyān** I have never smoked. 5 她刚才没喝茶。 **tā gāngcái méi hē chá** She didn't drink any tea just now. 6 他今天没看电视。 **tā jīntiān méi kàn diànshì** He didn't watch TV today. 7 她那天没吃蛋糕。 **tā nàitiān méi chī dàngāo** She didn't touch the cake that day. 8 妹妹从来没坐过飞机。 **mèimei cónglái méi zuò guo fēijī** (My) younger sister has never flown in a plane before.

Exercise 17.3

1 我认为那个答案不对。 **wǒ rènwéi nèi gè dá'àn bù duì** 2 我认为这不值得多想。 **wǒ rènwéi zhè bù zhíde duō xiǎng** 3 我从来没有喜欢过她。 **wǒ cónglái méiyǒu xǐhuan guo tā** 4 他没穿大衣。 **tā méi chuān dàyī**

Exercise 17.4

1 他不可以在那幢房子的墙上写标语。 **tā bù kěyǐ zài nèi zhuàng fángzi de qiáng shang xiě biāoyǔ** 2 你不会包饺子吗？ **nǐ bù huì bāo jiǎozi ma** 3 经理不愿意加陈先生的工资。 **jīnglǐ bù yuànyì jiā chén xiānsheng de gōngzī** 4 我这个星期/礼拜能不来吗？ **wǒ zhèi gè xīngqī/lìbài néng bù lái ma** 5 她来英国前(从来)没见过松鼠。 **tā lái yīngguó qián (cónglái) méi jiàn guo sōngshǔ** 6 妹妹不敢去邻居那儿借椅子。 **mèimei bù gǎn qù línjū nàr jiè yǐzi** 7 裤子太短，弟弟不肯/愿意穿。 **kùzi tài duǎn | dìdì bù kěn/yuànyì chuān** 8 水果一点儿也不新鲜，谁也/大家都不想吃。 **shuǐguǒ yīdiǎnr yě bù xīnxiān | shuí/shéi yě/dàjiā dōu bù xiǎng chī** 9 昨天天下大雨，我们没(有)去操场踢足球。 **zuótiān xià dà yǔ | wǒmen méi(yǒu) qù cāochǎng tī zúqiú** 10 你不该告诉他们这件事。 **nǐ bù gāi gàosu tāmen zhèi jiàn shì** 11 这些花儿不香，蜜蜂不来采蜜。 **zhèi xiē huār bù xiāng | mìfēng bù lái cǎi mì** 12 草莓没有桃子好吃。 **cǎoméi méiyǒu táozi hǎochī**

Drill 17.1

1 Don't you want to go to see a film? You don't want to go and see a film? 2 Who doesn't want to have meat? Who would like not to have meat (i.e. to have something other than meat)? 3 Are the children unwilling to have soft drinks? Are the children willing to go without soft drinks? 4 Are the girls unwilling to wear skirts? Are the girls willing not to wear skirts (i.e. to wear something else)? 5 Don't you want to have coffee? Would you like not to have coffee (i.e. have something else)? 6 Some people don't want to get up very early. Some people want not to get up very early (i.e. stay in bed). 7 Doesn't she dare to go home? Does she dare not to go home (i.e. go somewhere else)? 8 Who is unwilling to learn Chinese? Who is willing to forgo learning Chinese? 9 There isn't anyone who is unwilling to learn Chinese. There isn't anyone willing not to learn Chinese (i.e. to learn something/anything else). 10 Who cannot drink wine? Who can give up drinking wine?

Drill 17.2

1 a 我爸爸不再在厕所里抽烟了。 **wǒ bàba bù zài zài cèsuǒ li chōuyān**
le My father is not smoking in the lavatory anymore. b 我爸爸再也不

在厕所里抽烟了。wǒ bàba zài yě bù zài cèsuǒ li chōuyān le My father will never smoke in the lavatory again. 2 我邻居不再养狗了。wǒ línjū bù zài yǎng gǒu le My neighbour doesn't keep a dog anymore. 我邻居再也不养狗了。wǒ línjū zài yě bù yǎng gǒu le My neighbour will never keep a dog again. 3 他的女朋友不再喝酒了。tā de nǚ péngyou bù zài hē jiǔ le His girlfriend is not drinking (wine) anymore. 他的女朋友再也不喝酒了。tā de nǚ péngyou zài yě bù hē jiǔ le His girlfriend will never drink (wine) again. 4 她舅舅不再赌博了。tā jiùjiu bù zài dǔbó le Her uncle (mother's brother) is not gambling anymore. 她舅舅再也不赌博了。tā jiùjiu zài yě bù dǔbó le Her uncle (mother's brother) will never gamble again. 5 她喝咖啡不再加糖了。tā hē kāfēi bù zài jiā táng le She isn't having sugar in her coffee anymore. 她喝咖啡再也不加糖了。tā hē kāfēi zài yě bù jiā táng le She will never have sugar in her coffee again. 6 孩子们不再在街上踢足球了。háizimen bù zài zài jiē shang tí zúqiú le The children are not playing football on the street anymore. 孩子们再也不在街上踢足球了。háizimen zài yě bù zài jiē shang tí zúqiú le The children will never play football on the street again. 7 我妹妹不再撒谎了。wǒ mèimei bù zài sāhuǎng le My younger sister is not telling lies anymore. 我妹妹再也不撒谎了。wǒ mèimei zài yě bù sāhuǎng le My younger sister will never tell lies again. 8 我的一个同学不再打人和骂人了。wǒ de yī gè tóngxué bù zài dǎ rén hé mà rén le A classmate of mine is not fighting and cursing people anymore. 我的一个同学再也不打人和骂人了。wǒ de yī gè tóngxué zài yě bù dǎ rén hé mà rén le A classmate of mine will never fight and curse people again. 9 我哥哥不再开车了。wǒ gēge bù zài kāichē le My elder brother is not driving anymore. 我哥哥再也不开车了。wǒ gēge zài yě bù kāichē le My elder brother will never drive again. 10 我妈妈不再吃肉了。wǒ māma bù zài chī ròu le My mother is not eating meat anymore. 我妈妈再也不吃肉了。wǒ māma zài yě bù chī ròu le My mother will never eat meat again.

Unit 18

Exercise 18.1

1 他们是农民吗？tāmen shì nóngmín ma 他们是不是农民？tāmen shì bù shì nóngmín 是。shì 不是。bù shì 2 他想打乒乓球吗？tā xiǎng dǎ pīngpāngqiú ma 他不想打乒乓球？tā xiǎng bù xiǎng dǎ pīngpāngqiú 想。xiǎng 不想。bù xiǎng 3 他去过动物园吗？tā qù guo dòngwùyuán ma 他去过动物园没有？tā qù guo dòngwùyuán méiyǒu 去过。qù guo 没有。/没(有)去过。méiyǒu/méi(yǒu) qù guo 4 那条街干净吗？nèi tiáo jiē gānjìng ma/那条街干(净)不干净？nèi tiáo jiē gān(jìng) bù gānjìng 干净。gānjìng 不干净。bù gānjìng 5 她明

天会来吗？**tā míngtiān huì lái ma/她明天会不会来？ tā míngtiān huì bù huì lái** 会。 **huì** 不会。 **bù huì** 6 他有图书证吗？ **tā yǒu túshūzhèng ma/他有没有图书证？ tā yǒu méi yǒu túshūzhèng** 有。 **yǒu** 没有。 **méiyǒu** 7 她带了钥匙吗？ **tā dài le yàoshi ma/她带了钥匙没有？ tā dài le yàoshi méiyǒu/她带没带钥匙？ tā dài méi dài yàoshi/她有没有带钥匙？ tā yǒu méiyǒu dài yàoshi** 带了。 **dài le** 没有。 /没(有)带。 **méiyǒu/méi(yǒu) dài** 8 火旺吗？ **huǒ wàng ma/火旺不旺？ huǒ wàng bù wàng** 很旺。 **hěn wàng** 不旺。 **bù wàng** 9 你的朋友会哼那个曲子吗？ **nǐ de péngyou huì hēng nèi gè qǔzi ma/你的朋友会不会哼那个曲子？ nǐ de péngyou huì bù huì hēng nèi gè qǔzi** 会。 **huì** 不会。 **bù huì** 10 他的弟弟喜欢穿牛仔裤吗？ **tā de dìdi xǐhuan chuān niúzáikù ma/他的弟弟喜(欢)不喜欢穿牛仔裤？ tā de dìdi xǐ(huan) bù xǐhuan chuān niúzáikù** 喜欢。 **xǐhuan** 不喜欢。 **bù xǐhuan**

Exercise 18.2

1 你洗了衬衫没有？ **nǐ xǐ le chènshān méiyǒu** Did you wash the shirt?
2 你昨天读了报没有？ **nǐ zuótiān dú le bào méiyǒu** Did you read the newspaper yesterday?
3 上个月你看了电影没有？ **shàng gè yuè nǐ kàn le diànyǐng méiyǒu** Did you watch a film last month?
4 昨晚你写了信没有？ **zuó wǎn nǐ xiě le xìn méiyǒu** Did you write letters last night?
5 你买了票没有？ **nǐ mǎi le piào méiyǒu** Have you bought the ticket?
6 她碰见了张先生没有？ **tā pèngjiàn le zhāng xiānsheng méiyǒu** Did she bump into Mr Zhang?
7 你们前天上了酒吧间没有？ **nǐmen qiántiān shàng le jiǔbājiān méiyǒu** Did you go to the pub the day before yesterday?
8 你们那儿上星期下了雪没有？ **nǐmen nàr shàng xīngqī xià le xuě méiyǒu** Did you have any snow in your area last week?
9 他家去年夏天去了海边度假没有？ **tā jiā qùnián xiàtiān qù le hǎi biān dùjià méiyǒu** Did his family go to the seaside on holiday last summer?
10 这件事小黄告诉了你没有？ **zhèi jiàn shì xiǎo huáng gàosu le nǐ méiyǒu** Did Xiao Huang tell you about this?/Has Xiao Huang told you about this?

Exercise 18.3

1 你爬过山吗/没有？ **nǐ pá guo shān ma/méiyǒu** 2 你碰见过你的邻居吗/没有？ **nǐ pèngjiàn guo nǐ de línjū ma/méiyǒu** 3 你责备过你自己吗/没有？ **nǐ zébei guo nǐ zìjǐ ma/méiyǒu** 4 你看过足球比赛吗/没有？ **nǐ kàn guo zúqiú bǐsài ma/méiyǒu** 5 你骑过马吗/没有？ **nǐ qí guo mǎ ma/méiyǒu** 6 你去过海边吗/没有？ **nǐ qù guo hǎi biān ma/méiyǒu** 7 你尝/吃过饺子吗/没有？ **nǐ cháng/chī guo jiǎozi ma/méiyǒu** 8 你见过鲸鱼吗/没有？ **nǐ jiàn guo jīngyú ma/méiyǒu** 9 你养过狗吗/没有？ **nǐ yǎng guo gǒu ma/méiyǒu** 10 你去/进过酒吧间吗/没有？ **nǐ qù/jìn guo jiǔbājiān ma/méiyǒu**

All the sentences may also be translated as: 1 你有没有爬过山? **nǐ yǒu méiyǒu pá guo shān** 2 你有没有碰见过你的邻居? **nǐ yǒu méiyǒu pèngjiàn guo nǐ de línjū** etc.

Exercise 18.4

1 图书馆安静吗/安(静)不安静? **túshūguǎn ānjìng ma/ān(jìng) bù ānjìng** 2 北京热吗/热不热? **běijīng rè ma/rè bù rè** 3 你的朋友高兴吗/高(兴)不高兴? **nǐ de péngyou gāoxìng ma/gāo(xìng) bù gāoxìng** 4 菜好吃吗/好(吃)不好吃? **cài hǎochī ma/hǎo(chī) bù hǎochī** 5 那个电视节目有趣吗/有没有趣? **nà gè diànshì jiémù yǒuqù ma/yǒu méiyǒu qù** 6 足球比赛精彩吗/精(彩)不精彩? **zúqiú bǐsài jīngcǎi ma/jīng(cǎi) bù jīngcǎi** 7 这把椅子舒服吗/舒(服)不舒服? **zhè bǎ yǐzi shūfu ma/shū(fu) bù shūfu** 8 花儿香吗/香不香? **huār xiāng ma/xiāng bù xiāng** 9 蛋糕甜吗/甜不甜? **dàngāo tián ma/tián bù tián** 10 桌子干净吗/干(净)不干净? **zhuōzi gānjìng ma/gān(jìng) bù gānjìng** 11 房间整齐吗/整(齐)不整齐? **fángjiān zhěngqí ma/zhěng(qí) bù zhěngqí** 12 经理慷慨吗/慷慨不慷慨? **jīnglǐ kāngkǎi ma/kāngkǎi bù kāngkǎi**

Exercise 18.5

1 他喝醉了哪? **tā hē zuì le ne** 2 裤子洗了。衬衫呢? **kùzi xǐ le | chènshān ne** 3 明天晚上下雨呢? **míngtiān wǎnshàng xià yǔ ne** 4 我没(有)时间呢? **wǒ méi(yǒu) shíjiān ne** 5 咖啡很好喝/不错。蛋糕呢? **kāfēi hěn hǎohē/bù cuò | dàngāo ne** 6 我很忙。你呢? **wǒ hěn máng | nǐ ne** 7 她去了哪儿呢? **tā qù le nǎr ne** 8 这是谁的电脑呢? **zhè shì shuí/shéi de diànnǎo ne** 9 我的钥匙呢? **wǒ de yàoshi ne** 10 小猫(在哪儿)呢? **xiǎo māo (zài nǎr) ne**

Drill 18.1

1 车我修好了。 **chē wǒ xiū hǎo le** 车修好了。 **chē xiū hǎo le** 2 雨伞我带了。 **yǔsǎn wǒ dài le** 雨伞带了。 **yǔsǎn dài le** 3 钥匙你带了吗? **yàoshi nǐ dài le ma** 钥匙带了吗? **yàoshi dài le ma** 4 北京烤鸭你吃过吗? **běijīng kǎoyā nǐ chī guo ma** 北京烤鸭吃过吗? **běijīng kǎoyā chī guo ma** 5 作业你交了没有? **zuòyè nǐ jiāo le méiyǒu** 作业交了没有? **zuòyè jiāo le méiyǒu** 6 信她寄了没有? **xìn tā jì le méiyǒu** 信寄了没有? **xìn jì le méiyǒu** 7 绿茶你喝过没有? **lǜchá nǐ hē guo méiyǒu** 绿茶喝过没有? **lǜchá hē guo méiyǒu** 8 衣服我洗了。 **yīfu wǒ xǐ le** 衣服洗了。 **yīfu xǐ le** 9 北京你去过没有? **běijīng nǐ qù guo méiyǒu** 北京去过没有? **běijīng qù guo méiyǒu** 10 长城你到过没有? **chángchéng nǐ dào guo méiyǒu** 长城到过没有? **chángchéng dào guo méiyǒu** 11 钱你带了没有? **qín nǐ dài le méiyǒu** 钱带了没有?

qīn dài le méiyǒu 12 今天的报纸你看了吗？ jīntiān de bàozhǐ nǐ kàn le ma 今天的报纸看了吗？ jīntiān de bàozhǐ kàn le ma

Key to
exercises

Drill 18.2

1 这几天你去不去学太极拳？ zhè jǐ tiān nǐ qù bù qù xué tàijíquán
2 这几天会不会下雨？ zhè jǐ tiān huì bù huì xià yǔ 3 你能不能在这儿等一下？ nǐ néng bù néng zài zhèr děng yíxià 4 你买了车没有？ nǐ mǎi le chē méiyǒu 5 你喜(欢)不喜欢穿牛仔裤？ nǐ xǐ(huan) bù xǐhuan chuān niúzáikù 6 你带了图书证没有？ nǐ dài le túshūzhèng méiyǒu 7 你同(意)不同意我的建议？ nǐ tóng(yì) bù tóngyì wǒ de jiànyì 8 你的朋友会不会打乒乓球？ nǐ de péngyou huì bù huì dǎ pīngpāngqiú 9 你明天早上有没有空？ nǐ míngtiān zǎoshang yǒu méi yǒu kòng 10 你想不想吃北京烤鸭？ nǐ xiǎng bù xiǎng chī běijīng kǎoyā 11 你愿(意)不愿意帮他的忙？ nǐ yuàn(yì) bù yuànyì bāng tā de máng 12 你家里有没有电脑？ nǐ jiā li yǒu méi yǒu diànnǎo 13 你完成了那件工作没有？ nǐ wánchéng le nài jiàn gōngzuò méiyǒu 14 你当过老师没有？ nǐ dāng guo lǎoshī méiyǒu 15 你见了经理没有？ nǐ jiàn le jīnglǐ méiyǒu

Unit 19

Exercise 19.1

1 请你关上窗(户)，好吗？ qǐng nǐ guān shàng chuāng(hù) | hǎo ma
2 请你们说中文，行/可以吗？ qǐng nǐmen shuō zhōngwén | xíng/kěyǐ ma
3 我用一下电话，行/可以吗？ wǒ yòng yíxià diànhuà | xíng/kěyǐ ma
4 咱们去看电影，好吗？ zánmen qù kàn diànyǐng | hǎo ma 5 我借一支笔，可以/行吗？ wǒ jiè yī zhī bǐ | kěyǐ/xíng ma 6 我明天睡懒觉，可以/行吗？ wǒ míngtiān shuì lǎn jiào | kěyǐ/xíng ma 7 我坐在这儿，行/可以吗？ wǒ zuò zài zhèr | xíng/kěyǐ ma 8 我提个建议，好/行/可以吗？ wǒ tí gè jiànyì | hǎo/xíng/kěyǐ ma 9 你给我们讲个故事，好吗？ nǐ gěi wǒmen jiǎng gè gùshi | hǎo ma 10 我们今晚去跳舞，好/行吗？ wǒmen jīn wǎn qù tiàowǔ | hǎo/xíng ma

Exercise 19.2

1(i) 是不是小李骑自行车去运动场？ shì bù shì xiǎo lǐ qí zìxíngchē qù yùndòngchǎng (ii) 小李是不是去运动场？ xiǎo lǐ shì bù shì qù yùndòngchǎng (iii) 小李是不是骑自行车去运动场？ xiǎo lǐ shì bù shì qí zìxíngchē qù yùndòngchǎng 2(i) 是不是王小姐去的邮局？ shì bù shì wáng xiǎojie qù de yóujú (ii) 王小姐是不是刚才去的邮局？ wáng xiǎojie shì bù shì gāngcái qù de yóujú (iii) 王小姐是不是去的邮局？ wáng xiǎojie shì bù shì qù de yóujú

Exercise 19.3

1 你是老师还是学生？**nǐ shì lǎoshī háishi xuésheng** 2 他喜欢看小说还是(喜欢)看电视？**tā xǐhuan kàn xiǎoshuō háishi (xǐhuan) kàn diànshì** 3 他是昨天还是前天去的中国？**tā shì zuótiān háishi qiántiān qù de zhōngguó** 4 你是坐火车还是坐汽车去上班？**nǐ shì zuò huǒchē háishi zuò qìchē qù shàngbān** 5 你是去电影院还是去饭馆？**nǐ shì qù diànyǐngyuàn háishi qù fànguǎn** 6 这是医院还是大学？**zhè shì yīyuàn háishi dàxué** 7 她那天是穿的裙子还是(穿的)裤子？**tā nà tiān shì chuān de qúnzi háishi (chuān de) kùzi** 8 你前天是碰见的老王还是小张？**nǐ qiántiān shì pèngjiàn de lǎo wáng háishi xiǎo zhāng**

Exercise 19.4

1 这本书是你写的吧？**zhèi běn shū shì nǐ xiě de ba** This book was written by you, wasn't it?/You wrote this book, didn't you? 是的。**shì de** 不是的。**bù shì de** 2 伦敦离北京很远吧？**lúndūn lí běijīng hěn yuǎn ba** London is a long way from Beijing, isn't it? 是的。**shì de** 3 火车已经开走了吧？**huǒchē yǐjīng kāi zǒu le ba** The train has already gone, hasn't it? 是的。**shì de** 还没有。**hái méiyǒu** Not yet. 4 那条裙子太长了吧？**nèi tiáo qúnzi tài cháng le ba** That skirt is too long, isn't it? 对/是的。**duì/shì de** 不对/不是的。**bù duì/bù shì de** 5 你每天都剃/刮胡子吧？**nǐ měi tiān dōu tì/guā húzi ba** You shave every day, don't you? 是的。**shì de** 不是的。**bù shì de** 6 你爸爸、妈妈下个月去度假吧？**nǐ bàba | māma xià gè yuè qù dùjià ba** Your parents are going away on holiday next month, aren't they? 对/是的。**duì/shì de** 不对/不是的。**bù duì/bù shì de** 7 你不喜欢喝中国茶吧？**nǐ bù xǐhuan hē zhōngguó chá ba** You don't like Chinese tea, do you? 对/是的。**duì/shì de** 不对/不是的。**bù duì/bù shì de** 8 你妻子不吃牛肉吧？**nǐ qīzi bù chī niúròu ba** Your wife doesn't eat beef, does she? 对/是的。**duì/shì de** 不对/不是的。**bù duì/bù shì de**

Note: 是的 **shì de** is interchangeable with 是 **shì** or 对 **duì** and 不是的 **bù shì de** with 不是 **bù shì** or 不对 **bù duì** in all answers.

Exercise 19.5

1 你是不是下个月去中国 **nǐ shì bù shì xià gè yuè qù zhōngguó** 2 你是不是去年去的中国？**nǐ shì bù shì qùnián qù de zhōngguó** 3 你是坐飞机去还是坐船去？**nǐ shì zuò fēijī qù háishi zuò chuán qù** 4 你是开车去的还是骑自行车去的？**nǐ shì kāichē qù de háishi qí zìxíngchē qù de** 5 你是在哪儿学的中文？**nǐ shì zài nǎr xué de zhōngwén** 6 你是在哪儿学中文？**nǐ shì zài nǎr xué zhōngwén** 7 昨晚是谁洗的碗？

zuó wǎn shì shéi/shuí xǐ de wǎn 8 今晚是谁洗碗? jīn wǎn shì shéi/shuí xǐ wǎn

Key to exercises

Drill 19.1

1 我很喜欢打乒乓球。wǒ hěn xǐhuan dǎ pīngpāngqiú 我一点儿也/都不喜欢打乒乓球。wǒ yīdiǎnr yě/dōu bù xǐhuan dǎ pīngpāngqiú 2 我很喜欢看电影。wǒ hěn xǐhuan kàn diànyǐng 我一点儿也/都不喜欢看电影。wǒ yīdiǎnr yě/dōu bù xǐhuan kàn diànyǐng 3 蛋糕很好吃。dàngāo hěn hǎochī 蛋糕一点儿也/都不好吃。dàngāo yīdiǎnr yě/dōu bù hǎochī 4 那本小说很有意思。nèi běn xiǎoshuō hěn yǒu yìsi 那本小说一点儿意思也/都没有。nèi běn xiǎoshuō yīdiǎnr yìsi yě/dōu méi yǒu 5 那条裤子很长。nèi tiáo kùzi hěn cháng 那条裤子一点儿也/都不长。nèi tiáo kùzi yīdiǎnr yě/dōu bù cháng 6 我叔叔的孩子很可爱。wǒ shūshu de háizi hěn kě'ài 我叔叔的孩子一点儿也/都不可爱。wǒ shūshu de háizi yīdiǎnr yě/dōu bù kě'ài 7 我家的小猫很可爱。wǒ jiā de xiǎo māo hěn kě'ài 我家的小猫一点儿也/都不可爱。wǒ jiā de xiǎo māo yīdiǎnr yě/dōu bù kě'ài 8 坐火车去比坐汽车去快得多。zuò huǒchē qù bǐ zuò qìchē qù kuài de duō 坐火车去一点儿也/都不比坐汽车去快。zuò huǒchē qù yīdiǎnr yě/dōu bù bǐ zuò qìchē qù kuài 9 我很想去中国玩儿。wǒ hěn xiǎng qù zhōngguó wánr 我一点儿也/都不想去中国玩儿。wǒ yīdiǎnr yě/dōu bù xiǎng qù zhōngguó wánr 10 那儿的夏天很热。nàr de xiàtiān hěn rè 那儿的夏天一点儿也/都不热。nàr de xiàtiān yīdiǎnr yě/dōu bù rè

Drill 19.2

1 你是不是想学中文? nǐ shì bù shì xiǎng xué zhōngwén 2 运动场上是不是有很多运动员? yùndòngchǎng shàng shì bù shì yǒu hěn duō yùndòngyuán 3 街上是不是都是人? jiē shàng shì bù shì dōu shì rén 4 你父母是不是过几天来看/探望你? nǐ fùmǔ shì bù shì guò jǐ tiān lái kàn/tànwàng nǐ 5 你是不是常常去游泳? nǐ shì bù shì chángcháng qù yóuyǒng 6 你的朋友是不是在外面等你? nǐ de péngyou shì bù shì zài wàimian děng nǐ 7 你是不是去过北京很多次/趟? nǐ shì bù shì qù guò běijīng hěn duō cì/tàng 8 她是不是整晚在写信? tā shì bù shì zhěng wǎn zài xiě xìn 9 你今晚是不是喝了很多啤酒? nǐ jīnwǎn shì bù shì hē le hěn duō píjiǔ 10 这个菜是不是没有那个菜好吃? zhè ge cài shì bù shì méiyǒu nèi ge cài hǎochī

Unit 20

Exercise 20.1

1 进来! jìn lái 2 站起来! zhàn qǐ lái 3 出去! chū qù 4 坐下! zuò xià 5 起来! qǐ lái 6 快! kuài 7 早点回来! zǎo diǎn huí lái

307

8 关门! **guān mén** 9 严肃(一)点儿! **yánsù (yī)diǎnr** 10 不要/别关灯! **bù yào/bié guān dēng**

Exercise 20.2

1 多吃(一)点儿吧! **duō chī (yī)diǎnr ba** 2 咱们这儿下车吧。
zánmen zhèr xià chē ba 3 让他去吧。**ràng tā qù ba** 4 快(一)点儿
吧!**kuài (yī)diǎnr ba** 5 请在这儿排队!**qǐng zài zhèr páiduì** 6 请
开灯!**qǐng kāi dēng** 7 请进(来)! **qǐng jìn (lái)** 8 咱们休息一会儿
吧!**zánmen xiūxi yīhuìr ba** 9 请听! 是谁? **qǐng tīng | shì shéi/shuí**
10 请开门。**qǐng kāi mén**

Exercise 20.3

1 不要/别关窗! **bù yào/bié guān chuāng** 2 不要/别关灯! **bù yào/bié guān dēng** 3 不要/别晾衣服! **bù yào/bié liàng yīfu** 4 不要/别上车! **bù yào/bié shàng chē** 5 不要/别过来! **bù yào/bié guò lái** 6 不要/别穿这双鞋! **bù yào/bié chuān zhè shuāng xié** 7 不要/别开车! **bù yào/bié kāichē** 8 不要/别让他走! **bù yào/bié ràng tā zǒu** 9 不要/别叫她回来! **bù yào/bié jiào tā huí lái** 10 请大家不要/别伞! **qǐng dàjiā bù yào/bié dài sǎn**

Exercise 20.4

1(i) 咱们进去吧! **zánmen jìn qù ba** (ii) 好吧。你进去吧!
hǎo ba | nǐ jìn qù ba 2(i) 你去割草,好吗? **nǐ qù gē cǎo | hǎo ma**
(ii) 请现在就去割草! **qǐng xiànzài jù qù gē cǎo** 3(i) 咱们下车吧!
zánmen xià chē ba (ii) 快,咱们在这儿下车! **kuài | zánmen zài zhèr xià chē** 4(i) 咱们(去)喝一杯吧! **zánmen (qù) hē yī bēi ba** (ii) 好吧,你(去)喝一杯吧! **hǎo ba | nǐ (qù) hē yī bēi ba**

Exercise 20.5

1 啊 **a** 2 哇 **wa** 3 啊 **a** 4 啦 **la** 5 哇 **wa** 6 呀/啊 **ya/a** 7 哇 **wa**
8 哪 **na** 9 呀 **ya** 10 啊 **a** 11 呀 **ya** 12 哇/啊 **wa/a**

Drill 20.1

1 别管他! **bié guǎn tā** 2 别进来! **bié jìn lái** 3 别出去! **bié chū qù**
4 (先)别走/离开! **(xiān) bié zǒu/líkāi** 5 别碰(它)! **bié pèng (tā)**
6 别说下去了! **bié shuō xiàqù le** 7 别骂人! **bié mà rén** 8 别在沙发上睡! **bié zài shāfā shang shuì** 9 别找借口! **bié zhǎo jièkǒu** 10 别跟人借钱/别借别人的钱! **bié gēn rén jiè qián/bié jiè biéren de qián** 11 别等我! **bié děng wǒ** 12 别在这儿抽烟! **bié zài zhèr chōuyān**

13 别逗他 ! **bié dòu tā** 14 别站起来 ! **bié zhàn qǐlái** 15 别笑我 ! **bié xiào wǒ**

1 不必管他。 **bù bì guǎn tā** 2 不要进来 ! **bù yào jìn lái** 3 不许出去 ! **bù xǔ chū qù** 4 还不能走。 **hái bù néng zǒu** 5 不准碰(它) ! **bù zhǔn pèng (tā)** 6 不要说下去(了) 。 **bù yào shuō xiàqù (le)** 7 不许骂人 ! **bù xǔ mà rén** 8 可以在沙发上睡(觉) 。 **bù kěyǐ zài shāfā shàng shuì(jiào)** 9 不要找借口 ! **bù yào zhǎo jièkǒu** 10 不要跟人借钱 ! **bù yào gēn rén jiè qián** 11 不必等我 ! **bù bì děng wǒ** 12 不准在这儿抽烟 ! **bù zhǔn zài zhèr chōuyān** 13 不要逗他 ! **bù yào dòu tā** 14 不用站起来 ! **bù yòng zhàn qǐlái** 15 不能笑我 ! **bù néng xiào wǒ**

Drill 20.2

1 请不要笑我 ! **qǐng bù yào xiào wǒ** Please don't laugh at me. 请不要笑我了 ! **qǐng bù yào xiào wǒ le** Please stop laughing at me. 2 请别开玩笑 ! **qǐng bié kāi wánxiào** Please don't joke. 请别开玩笑 ! **qǐng bié kāi wánxiào le** Please stop making jokes. 3 不要打架 ! **bù yào dǎjià** Don't fight! 不要打架了 ! **bù yào dǎjià le** Stop fighting! 4 别吵架 ! **bié chǎojià** Don't quarrel! 别吵架了 ! **bié chǎojià le** Stop quarrelling! 5 别吵 ! **bié chǎo** Don't make such a terrible noise! 别吵了 ! **bié chǎo le** Stop making such a racket/din! 6 别吵我 ! **bié chǎo wǒ** Don't disturb me! 别吵我了 ! **bié chǎo wǒ le** Stop disturbing me! 7 别骂他 ! **bié mà tā** Don't scold him! 别骂他了 ! **bié mà tā le** Stop scolding him! 8 不要等他 ! **bù yào děng tā** Don't wait for him. 不要等他了 ! **bù yào děng tā le** Don't wait for him any longer. 9 别抽烟 ! **bié chōuyān** Don't smoke! 别抽烟了 ! **bié chōuyān le** Stop smoking! 10 别喝酒 ! **bié hē jiǔ** Don't drink! 别喝酒了 ! **bié hē jiǔ le** Stop drinking! 11 别客气 ! **bié kèqì** Don't stand on ceremony. 别客气了 ! **bié kèqì le** Don't stand on ceremony anymore. 12 再见 ! **zài jiàn!** Goodbye. 再见了 ! **zài jiàn le** It's time to say goodbye.

Unit 21

Exercise 21.1

1 回去 **huí qù** 2 过来 **guò lái** 3 上去 **shàng qù** 4 下来 **xià lái** 5 拿来 **ná lái** 6 出去 **chū qù** 7 回来 **huí lái** 8 拿去 **ná qù** 9 起来 **qǐ lái** 10 进去 **jìn qù** 11 过去 **guò qù** 12 出来 **chū lái** 13 回家来 **huí jiā lái** 14 开过桥去 **kāi guò qiáo qù** 15 爬上树去 **pá shàng shù qù** 16 下山来 **xià shān lái** 17 带到教室来 **dài dào jiàoshì lái** 18 走出房子去 **zǒu chū fángzi qù** 19 跑回办公室去 **pǎo huí bàngōngshì qù** 20 带回医院去 **dài huí yīyuàn qù** 21 跳进游泳池去 **tiào jìn yóuyǒngchí**

qù 22 走进邮局去 zǒu jìn yóujú qù 23 穿过马路去 chuān guò mǎlù
qù 24 走出房间/屋子来 zǒu chū fángjiān/wūzi lái

Exercise 21.2

1 出去 chūqù 2 下来 xiàlái 3 下来 xiàlái 4 进来 jìnlái 5 过去 guòqù 6 出...去 chū...qù 7 回...去 huí...qù 8 回...去 huí...qù 9 上...来 shàng...lái 10 过...去 guò...qù 11 进...去 jìn...qù 12 进...去 jìn...qù

Exercise 21.3

1 老师走进图书馆去了。lǎoshī zǒu jìn túshūguǎn qù le The teacher has gone into the library. 2 飞机飞过山去了。fēijī fēi guò shān qù le The plane has flown over the hill. 3 我爬上山坡去。wǒ pá shàng shānpō qù I climbed up the hillside. 4 孩子们跑过马路去了。háizimen pǎo guò mǎlù qù le The children went across the road. 5 他们走出教堂去了。tāmen zǒu chū jiàotáng qù le They went out of the church. 6 医生回医院去了。yīshēng huí yīyuàn qù le The doctor has gone back to the hospital. 7 青蛙跳下水去了。qīngwā tiào xià shuǐ qù le The frog jumped into the water. 8 车开过桥来了。chē kāi guò qiáo lái le The car came over the bridge. 9 小鸡钻出蛋壳来了。xiǎo jī zuān chū dànké lái le The chicken broke out of the shell. 10 小猫爬上树去了。xiǎo māo pá shàng shù qù le The kitten climbed up the tree. 11 鸟儿飞出笼子去了。niǎo er fēi chū lóngzi qù le The bird flew out of the cage. 12 学生走进教室来了。xuéshēng zǒu jìn jiàoshì lái le The students came into the classroom. 13 老鼠钻回洞去了。lǎoshǔ zuān huí dòng qù le The rat scurried back to its hole. 14 渡船开过河去了。dùchuán kāi guò hé qù le The ferry went across the river (to the other side).

Exercise 21.4

1 衣服都装进箱子里去了。yīfú dōu zhuāng jìn xiāngzi li qù le 2 钱都存在银行里了。qián dōu cún zài yínháng li le 3 垃圾都倒进垃圾桶里去了。lājī dōu dào jìn lājītǒng li qù le 4 你的行李都放在行李架上了。nǐ de xíngli dōu fàng zài xínglijia shang le 5 洗好的衣服都晾在晾衣绳上(边)了。xǐ hǎo de yīfú dōu liàng zài liàngyīshéng shang(bian) le 6 煮好的菜都搁在冰箱里了。zhǔ hǎo de cài dōu gē zài bīngxiāng li le 7 首饰都放在保险箱里。shǒushi dōu fàng zài bǎoxiǎnxiāng li 8 他们搬进城(里)来了。tāmen bān jìn chéng (li) lái le 9 汽车一直开到海边。qìchē yīzhí kāi dào hǎi biān 10 气球一升到天上去了。qìqiú yīzhí shēng dào tiān shang qù le 11 乌鸦飞到屋顶上去了。wūyā fēi dào wūdǐng shang qù le 12 我的帽子让风给吹到湖里去了。wǒ de màozi ràng fēng gěi chuī dào hú li qù le

Drill 21.1

1 工程师们(都)进去了。gōngchéngshìmen (dōu) jìn qù le 2 大人们(都)出去了。dàrénmen (dōu) chū qù le 3 男孩子们(都)出去了。nán hái zǐ men (dōu) chū qù le 4 女孩子们(都)回来了。nǚ hái zǐ men (dōu) huí lái le 5 中国朋友们(都)进来了。zhōngguó péngyoumen (dōu) jìn lái le 6 客人们(都)回去了。kèrénmen (dōu) huí qù le 7 中国客人们(都)回来了。zhōngguó kèrénmen (dōu) huí lái le 8 邻居们(都)出来了。línjūmen (dōu) chū lái le 9 病人走进病房里来(了)。bìng rén zǒu jìn bìngfáng lǐ lái (le) 10 奶奶带弟弟妹妹到动物园去(了)。nǎinai dài dìdì mèimei dào dòngwùyuán qù (le) 11 运动员们爬上山去。yùndòngyuánmen pá shàng shān qù 12 爸爸下班后回家来了。bàba xiàbān hòu huí jiā lái le 13 小猫躲在沙发下面。xiǎo māo duǒ zài shāfā xiàmiàn 14 有(一)只狗跑过桥来(了)。yǒu (yī) zhī gǒu pǎo guò qiáo lái (le) 15 有(一)群人走进商店来(了)。yǒu (yī) qún rén zǒu jìn shāngdiàn lái (le) 16 哥哥跑到楼上来(了)。gēge pǎo dào lóu shàng lái (le) 17 小女孩游过河去(了)。xiǎo nǚhái yóu guò hé qù (le) 18 鸽子飞上树去。/鸽子飞到树上去了。gēzi fēi shàng shù qù/gēzi fēi dào shù shàng qù le 19 月亮出来了。yuèliang chū lái le 20 那个男孩子跳进水里去(了)。nèi gè nán hái zi tiào jìn shuǐ lǐ qù (le) 21 松鼠爬下树来(了)。sōngshǔ pá xià shù lái (le) 22 妈妈赶到火车站去了。māma gǎn dào huǒchēzhàn qù le 23 有一群男孩子跑到街上来了。yǒu yī qún nán hái zi pǎo dào jiē shàng lái le 24 一个个(的)气球升起来了。yī gè gè (de) qìqiú shēng qǐ lái le 25 笔掉进河里去了。bǐ diào jìn hé lǐ qù le 26 他们搬到村子里去了。tāmen bān dào cūnzi lǐ qù le 27 经理走出办公室来了。jīnglǐ zǒu chū bàngōngshì lái le 28 学生们站了起来。/学生们站起来了。xuéshēngmen zhàn le qǐ lái/xuéshēngmen zhàn qǐ lái le 29 大家都坐了下来。/大家都坐下来了。dàjiā dōu zuò le xià lái/dàjiā dōu zuò xià lái le 30 救生员游回岸边来了。jiùshēngyuán yóu huí àn biān lái le

Note: The inclusion or exclusion of 了 le depends first on whether the emphasis is on the result achieved or on the action itself, and second, on the regularity of a disyllabic rhythm.

Drill 21.2

1 他进屋子里去了。tā jìn wūzi lǐ qù le 他跑进屋子里去了。tā pǎo jìn wūzi lǐ qù le 2 他出教室去了。tā chū jiàoshì qù le 他走出教室去了。tā zǒu chū jiàoshì qù le 3 他回家去了。tā huí jiā qù le 他赶回家去了。tā gǎn huí jiā qù le 4 他下楼来了。tā xià lóu lái le 他跑下楼来了。tā pǎo xià lóu lái le 5 他过桥去了。tā guò qiáo qù le 他开过桥去了。tā kāi guò qiáo qù le 6 他上树去了。tā shàng shù qù le 他爬

上树去了。tā pá shàng shù qù le 7 他过河来了。tā guò hé lái le 他
游过河来了。tā yóu guò hé lái le 8 他出房子来了。tā chū fángzi lái
le 他冲出房子来了。tā chōng chū fángzi lái le 9 *他过栅栏去了。*tā
guò zhàlan qù le 他跳过栅栏去了。tā tiào guò zhàlan qù le 10 他上
台来了。tā shàng tái lái le 他跑上台来了。tā pǎo shàng tái lái le

Unit 22

Exercise 22.1

1 得很快 de hěn kuài 2 干净 gānjìng 3 懂 dǒng 4 得最好 de zuì
hǎo 5 熟 shú/shóu 6 得很流利 de hěn liúli 7 好 hào 8 会 huì 9
到 dào 10 干 gān 11 得很晚 de hěn wǎn 12 到/见 dào/jiàn 13
得真高 de zhēn gāo 14 得很清楚 de hěn qīngchǔ 15 得很对 de hěn
duì 16 住 zhù

Exercise 22.2

1 我嗓子疼得饭也吃不下了。wǒ sǎngzi téng de fàn yě chī bu xià le
My throat was so sore I could not eat. 2 他游泳游得气也喘不过来了。
tā yóuyǒng yóu de qì yě chuǎn bu guò lái le He swam so much he could
not get his breath. 3 她跑路跑得腿都酸了。tā pǎo lù pǎo de tuǐ dōu
suān le She ran so much/fast that her legs ached. 4 老师说话说得嗓子
都哑了。lǎoshī shuōhuà shuō de sǎngzi dōu yǎ le The teacher
spoke so much his/her throat became sore/hoarse. 5 我眼睛花得什么
也看不清楚了。wǒ yǎnjīng huā de shénme yě kàn bu qīngchǔ le My
eyes were so blurred I could not see anything. 6 我高兴得话也说不
出来了。wǒ gāoxìng de huà yě shuō bu chū lái le I was so happy I was
speechless. 7 哥哥醉得谁也不认识了。gēge zuì de shuí yě bù rènshi
le (My) elder brother was so drunk he couldn't recognize anyone. 8
学生写字写得手也酸了。xuésheng xiě zì xiě de shǒu yě suān le The
students wrote so much their hands ached. 9 妹妹哭得眼睛都红了。
mèimei kū de yǎnjīng dōu hóng le (My) younger sister cried so much
her eyes were red. 10 她开玩笑开得大家都笑起来了。tā kāi
wánxiào kāi de dàjiā dōu xiào qǐ lái le Her jokes made everyone begin
to laugh. (*lit.* She joked so that everyone began to laugh.)

Exercise 22.3

1 对 duì 2 到 dào 3 醉了 zuì le 4 得很漂亮 de hěn piàoliang 5
饱 bǎo 6 好 hǎo 7 倒 dǎo 8 破 pò 9 干净 gānjìng 10 明白
míngbai 11 得很早 de hěn zǎo 12 得很晚 de hěn wǎn

Exercise 22.4

1 他们跳得很美/很好。 **tāmen tiào de hěn měi/hěn hǎo** 2 救生员游得非常快。 **jiùshēngyuán yóu de fēicháng kuài** 3 学生念/读得很慢。 **xuésheng niàn/dú de hěn màn** 4 孩子吃了。 **háizi chī le hěn duō** 5 大家都睡得很熟。 **dàjiā dōu shuì de hěn shú/shóu** 6 演员唱得很糟糕。 **yǎnyuán chàng de hěn zāogāo** 7 我们跑得太累了。 **wǒmen pǎo de tài lèi le** 8 运动员跳得真高。 **yùndòngyuán tiào de zhēn gāo** 9 哥哥喝得不多。 **gēge hē de bù duō** 10 我的同学说得不流利。 **wǒ de tóngxué shuō de bù liúli**

Drill 22.1

1 妹妹跳绳跳得脚都疼了。 **mèimei tiào shéng tiào de jiǎo dōu téng le** 2 弟弟跑步跑得腿都软了。 **dìdì pǎobù pǎo de tuǐ dōu ruǎn le** 3 老师讲课讲得喉咙都疼了。 **lǎoshī jiǎngkè jiǎng de hóulóng dōu téng le** 4 朋友们聊天聊得嗓子都哑了。 **péngyoumen liáotiān liáo de sǎngzi dōu yǎ le** 5 那个孩子哭得眼睛都红了。 **nèi gè háizi kū de yǎnjīng dōu hóng le** 6 我们背行李背得背都疼了。 **wǒmen bēi xíngli bēi de bèi dōu téng le** 7 妈妈写信写得手都软了。 **māma xiě xìn xiě de shǒu dōu ruǎn le** 8 姐姐拉小提琴拉得手指都出血了。 **jiějie lā xiǎotíqín lā de shǒuzhǐ dōu chūxuè le** 9 哥哥弹钢琴弹得手指都酸疼了。 **gēge tán gāngqín tán de shǒuzhǐ dōu suānténg le** 10 爸爸说话说得口都干了。 **bàba shuōhuà shuō de kǒu dōu gān le** 11 爷爷看报纸看得眼睛都花了。 **yéye kàn bàozhǐ kàn de yǎnjīng dōu huā le** 12 奶奶吃苹果吃得牙齿都疼了。 **nǎinai chī píngguǒ chī de yáchǐ dōu téng le**

Drill 22.2

1 b 衣服没洗干净。 **yīfu méi xǐ gānjìng** c 衣服洗得不够干净。 **yīfu xǐ de bù gòu gānjìng** d 衣服洗得不太干净。 **yīfu xǐ de bù tài gānjìng** 2 b 文章没写好。 **wénzhāng méi xiě hǎo** c 文章写得不够好。 **wénzhāng xiě de bù gòu hǎo** d 文章写得不太好。 **wénzhāng xiě de bù tài hǎo** 3 b 问题没说清楚。 **wèntí méi shuō qīngchu** c 问题说得不够清楚。 **wèntí shuō de bù gòu qīngchu** d 问题说得太不清楚。 **wèntí shuō de bù tài qīngchu** 4 b 饭没煮熟。 **fàn méi zhǔ shóu** c 饭煮得不够熟。 **fàn zhǔ de bù gòu shóu** d 饭煮得不太熟。 **fàn zhǔ de bù tài shóu** 5 b 车没修好。 **chē méi xiū hǎo** c 车修得不够好。 **chē xiū de bù gòu hǎo** d 车修得不太好。 **chē xiū de bù tài hǎo** 6 b 问题没研究清楚。 **wèntí méi yánjiū qīngchu** c 问题研究得不够清楚。 **wèntí yánjiū de bù gòu qīngchu** d 问题研究得不太清楚。 **wèntí yánjiū de bù tài qīngchu** 7 b 头发没剪短。 **tóufa méi jiǎn duǎn** c 头发剪得不够短。 **tóufa jiǎn de bù gòu duǎn** d 头发剪得不太短。 **tóufa jiǎn de bù tài duǎn** 8 b 歌词没背熟。 **gēcǐ méi bèi shóu** c 歌词背得不够熟。 **gēcǐ**

bèi de bù gòu shóu d 歌词背得不太熟。 **gēcí bèi de bù tài shóu** 9 b
桌子没抹干净。 **zhuōzi méi mǎ gānjìng** c 桌子抹得不够干净。 **zhuōzi**
mǎ de bù gòu gānjìng d 桌子抹得不太干净。 **zhuōzi mǎ de bù tài**
gānjìng 10 b 情况没了解清楚。 **qíngkuàng méi liǎojiě qīngchu** c 情
况了解得不够清楚。 **qíngkuàng liǎojiě de bù gòu qīngchu** d 情况了解
得不太清楚。 **qíngkuàng liǎojiě de bù tài qīngchu** 11 b 东西没放整齐。
dōngxi méi fàng zhěngqí c 东西放得不够整齐。 **dōngxi fàng de bù gòu**
zhěngqí d 东西放得不太整齐。 **dōngxi fàng de bù tài zhěngqí** 12 b
房间没收拾干净。 **fángjiān méi shōushi gānjìng** c 房间收拾得不够干
净。 **fángjiān shōushi de bù gòu gānjìng** d 房间收拾得不太干净。
fángjiān shōushi de bù tài gānjìng

Unit 23

Exercise 23.1

1 动 **dòng** 2 过去 **guòqù** 3 起来 **qǐlái** 4 着 **zháo** 5 下 **xià** 6 了
/掉 **liǎo/diào** 7 起 **qǐ** 8 到/着 **dào/zháo** 9 及 **jí** 10 完/了 **wán/liǎo**

Exercise 23.2

1 吃得饱 **chī de bǎo** 2 站不起来 **zhàn bu qǐlái** 3 喝不下/了 **hē bu**
xià/liǎo 4 洗不干净 **xǐ bu gānjìng** 5 坐得舒服 **zuò de shūfu** 6 够
不着 **gòu bu zháo** 7 看不清楚 **kàn bu qīngchu** 8 记得住 **jì de zhù**
9 合得来 **hé de lái** 10 活得下去 **huó de xiàqù**

Exercise 23.3

1 关不上 **guān bu shàng** 2 晒得干 **shài de gān** 3 坐得下 **zuò de xià**
4 走不动 **zǒu bu dòng** 5 赶得上 **gǎn de shàng** 6 行不通 **xíng bu tōng**
7 合得来合不来 **hé de lái hé bu lái** 8 记得起 **jì de qǐ** 9 禁不住 **jīn**
bu zhù 10 听得懂 **tīng de dǒng**

Exercise 23.4

1 我还睡不了。 **wǒ hái shuì bu liǎo** 2 我睡不着。 **wǒ shuì bu zháo**
3 我今天买不了了。 **wǒ jīntiān mǎi bu liǎo le** 4 我买不起。 **wǒ mǎi**
bu qǐ 5 我不能告诉你。 **wǒ bù néng gàosu nǐ** 6 我告诉不了你。 **wǒ**
gàosu bu liǎo nǐ 7 这件事儿我做不到。 **zhèi jiàn shìr wǒ zuò bu**
dào 8 这件事儿我不能做。 **zhèi jiàn shìr wǒ bù néng zuò** 9 我说不
下去了。 **wǒ shuō bu xiàqù le** 10 我不能说下去了。 **wǒ bù néng shuō**
xiàqù le

Drill 23.1

1 你看得见那些字吗？对不起。我看不见左边那几个字。nǐ kàn de jiàn nèi xiē zì ma | duìbuqǐ | wǒ kàn bu jiàn zuǒbian nà jǐ gè zì 2 你能/可以帮我一下/一个忙吗？当然能/可以。nǐ néng/kěyǐ bāng wǒ yíxià/yí gè máng ma | dāngrán néng/kěyǐ 3 他买得起那两条牛仔褲吗？当然买得起。他爸爸很有钱。tā mǎi de qǐ nà liǎng tiáo niúzáikù ma | dāngrán mǎi de qǐ | tā bàba hěn yǒu qián 4 你今(天)晚(上)能写完/写得完那篇论文吗？对不起。写不完。我得参加一个会议。/我有(一)个会要开。/我有一个会议要参加。nǐ jīn(tiān) wǎn(shàng) néng xiě wán/xiě de wán nèi piān lùnwén ma | duìbuqǐ | xiě bu wán | wǒ děi cānjiā yí gè huìyì/wǒ yǒu (yī) gè huì yào kāi/wǒ yǒu yí gè huìyì yào cānjiā 5 病人能站起来吗？/病人站得起来吗？恐怕站不起来。/他恐怕站不起来。bìngrén néng zhàn qǐlái ma/bìngrén zhàn de qǐlái ma | kǒngpà zhàn bu qǐlái/tā kǒngpà zhàn bu qǐlái 6 你吃得完/下这块蛋糕吗？我真的吃不下了。/我真的一点儿也吃不下了。nǐ chī de wán/xià zhèi kuài dànɡāo ma | wǒ zhēn de chī bu xià le/wǒ zhēn de yídiǎnr yě chī bu xià le 7 你的车修得好吗？恐怕修不好了。nǐ de chē xiū de hǎo ma | kǒngpà xiū bu hǎo le 8 我们进得去吗？/我们挤得进去吗？恐怕不行了。/恐怕进不去了。/恐怕挤不进去了。里面太多人了。/里面有那么多人。wǒmen jìn de qù ma/wǒmen jǐ de jìnqù ma | kǒngpà jìn bu qù le/kǒngpà jǐ bu jìnqù le | lǐmiàn tài duō rén le/lǐmiàn yǒu nàme duō rén 9 你听得懂我的话吗？对不起。听不懂。我只听得懂英文。nǐ tīng de dǒng wǒ de huà ma | duìbuqǐ | tīng bu dǒng | wǒ zhǐ tīng de dǒng yīngwén 10 你赶得上那辆公共汽车/巴士吗？当然赶得上。我(能)跑得很快。nǐ gǎn de shàng nèi liàng gōnggòng qìchē/bāshì ma | dāngrán gǎn de shàng | wǒ (néng) pǎo de hěn kuài

Drill 23.2

1 你明天走得了走不了？nǐ míngtiān zǒu de liǎo zǒu bu liǎo 你明天走不走得了？nǐ míngtiān zǒu bu zǒu de liǎo 2 黑板上的字你看得清楚看不清楚？hēibǎn shàng de zì nǐ kàn de qīngchu kàn bu qīngchu 黑板上的字你看不看得清楚？hēibǎn shàng de zì nǐ kàn bu kàn de qīngchu 3 她说的话你听得懂听不懂？tā shuō de huà nǐ tīng de dǒng tīng bu dǒng 她说的话你听不听得懂？tā shuō de huà nǐ tīng bu tīng de dǒng 4 这么贵的衣服你买得起买不起？zhème guì de yīfu nǐ mǎi de qǐ mǎi bu qǐ 这么贵的衣服你买不买得起？zhème guì de yīfu nǐ mǎi bu mǎi de qǐ 5 这么多人坐得下坐不下？zhème duō rén zuò de xià zuò bu xià 这么多人坐不坐得下？zhème duō rén zuò bu zuò de xià 6 你还吃得下吃不下？nǐ hái chī de xià chī bu xià 你还吃不吃得下？nǐ hái chī bu chī de xià 7 这个电脑还修得好修不好？zhè gè diànnǎo hái xiū de hǎo xiū bu hǎo 这个电脑还修不修得好？zhè gè diànnǎo hái xiū bu xiū de hǎo 8 你说那张信用卡还找得到找不到？nǐ shuō nèi zhāng

xìnyòngkǎ hái zhǎo de dào zhǎo bu dào 你说那张信用卡还找不找得到？
nǐ shuō nǐ míngtiān gǎn de huílái gǎn bu huílái 9 你说你明天赶得回来赶不回来？
nǐ shuō nǐ míngtiān gǎn de huílái gǎn bu huílái 10 你说你明天赶不赶得回来？
nǐ shuō nǐ míngtiān gǎn de huílái gǎn bu huílái 10 你说中文我学得会学不会？
nǐ shuō zhōngwén wǒ xué de huì xué bu huì 你说中文我学不学得会？
nǐ shuō zhōngwén wǒ xué bu xué de huì

Unit 24

Exercise 24.1

1 对 **duì** 2 和/跟 **hé/gēn** 3 和/跟 **hé/gēn** 4 向/朝/往 **xiàng/cháo/wàng**
5 对 **duì** 6 向/朝/往 **xiàng/cháo/wàng** 7 向/朝 **xiàng/cháo**
8 和/跟 **hé/gēn**

Exercise 24.2

1 为 **wèi** 2 替 **tì**; 给 **gěi** 3 给 **gěi** 4 替 **tì** 5 为 **wèi** 6 为 **wèi**
7 替 **tì** 8 为 **wèi**

Exercise 24.3

1 我们朝哪个方向走？ **wǒmen cháo nǐ gè fāngxiàng zǒu** 2 她对工作很负责。
tā duì gōngzuò hěn fùzé 3 这本书对我学习很有用。
zhè běn shū duì wǒ xuéxí hěn yǒu yòng 4 小李正在跟石老师谈话。
xiǎo lǐ zhèngzài gēn shí lǎoshī tánhuà 5 他朝我点点头。
tā cháo wǒ diǎn diǎn tóu 6 我们应该向他学习。
wǒmen yīnggāi xiàng tā xuéxí 7 我替你写信。
wǒ tì nǐ xiě xìn 8 我今晚给你打电话。
wǒ jīn wǎn gěi nǐ dǎ diànhuà 9 我给你写信。
wǒ gěi nǐ xiě xìn 10 这个小镇与那个小镇一样古老。
zhè gè xiǎo zhèn yǔ nèi gè xiǎo zhèn yīyàng gǔlǎo

Exercise 24.4

1 离 **lí** 2 从 **cóng** 3 从 **cóng** 4 从 **cóng**; 到 **dào** 5 离 **lí** 6 从 **cóng**;
到 **dào** 7 离 **lí** 8 从 **cóng**

Exercise 24.5

1 由 **yóu** 2 从 **cóng** 3 由 **yóu** 4 由 **yóu**/从 **cóng** 5 从 **cóng** 6 从 **cóng**
7 从 **cóng** 8 由 **yóu**

Exercise 24.6

1 向 xiàng 2 沿 yán 3 于 yú 4 于 yú 5 往 wàng 6 离 lí 7 从 cóng 8 于 yú 9 从 cóng 10 从 cóng

Exercise 24.7

1 请跟我来。 qǐng gēn wǒ lái 2 我明天给你打电话。 wǒ míngtiān gěi nǐ dǎ diànhuà 3 他们对我们很友好。 tāmen duì wǒmen hěn yǒuhǎo 4 这儿离车站不很远。 zhèr lí chēzhàn bù hěn yuǎn 5 我每天从九点工作到五点。 wǒ měi tiān cóng jiǔ diǎn gōngzuò dào wǔ diǎn 6 沿街都是汽车。 yán jiē dōu shì qìchē 7 这件事儿全由我负责吗？ zhèi jiàn shìr quán yóu wǒ fùzé ma 8 你为什么不给他们写信？ nǐ wèi shénme bù gěi tāmen xiě xìn

Drill 24.1

1 从一月到十二月 cóng yīyuè dào shí'èryuè 2 从小孩/孩子到大人 cóng xiǎohái/háizi dào dàren 3 从这儿到大学 cóng zhèr dào dàxué 4 从头到脚 cóng tóu dào jiǎo 5 从上午九点到下午六点 cóng shàngwǔ jiǔ diǎn dào xiàwǔ liù diǎn 6 从吃的到穿的 cóng chī de dào chuān de 7 从小学到中学 cóng xiǎoxué dào zhōngxué 8 从一到一百 cóng yī dào yī bǎi 9 从头到尾/从 A 到 Z cóng tóu dào wěi/cóng A dào Z 10 从一九九五年到二零零五年 cóng yī jiǔ jiǔ wǔ nián dào èr líng líng wǔ nián

Drill 24.2

1 I want to have a talk with you about this. 2 Please don't worry about me. 3 That driver is very friendly to the passengers. 4 Up to now I have never eaten lychees. 5 If you go ahead for a hundred metres you will get there. 6 Look! There's a bus coming (towards us). What number is it? Can you see? 7 Who did you borrow this book from? 8 My home is a long way from the airport and it takes an hour on the bus/train (to get there). 9 Go ahead along this road for about two hundred metres, and at the second crossing turn left. Go about another five hundred metres and you will be able to see a shopping mall. Opposite the shopping mall there is a laundry, and behind the laundry is the pharmacy you are looking for. 10 At the crossing ahead, you will be able to see a church. Go south down the road on the right of the church, and in about five minutes you will see a square. To the left of the square is a small road, and the bookshop you are looking for is on that small road.

Unit 25

Exercise 25.1

1 为了不误火车，他决定走近路。 wèile bù wù huǒchē | tā juéding zǒu jìn lù 2 为了看那场足球赛，小李开了两小时的车到伦敦去。 wèile kàn nèi chǎng zúqiú sài | xiǎo lǐ kāi le liǎng xiǎoshí de chē dào lúndūn qù 3 为了庆祝女儿大学毕业她举行了一个舞会。 wèile qìngzhù nǚ'ér dàxué bìyè tā jǔxíng le yī gè wǔhuì 4 为了看这个电影他特意从法国来。 wèile kàn zhèi gè diànyǐng tā tèyì cóng fǎguó lái 5 为了照顾那个病人，护士一夜没睡 wèile zhàogu nèi gè bìngren | hùshì yī yè méi shuì 6 为了参加一个重要会议经理到北京去。 wèile cānjiā yī gè zhòngyào huìyì jīnglǐ dào běijīng qù

Exercise 25.2

1 对 duì 2 关于 guānyú 3 至于 zhìyú 4 对 duì 5 至于 zhìyú 6 关于 guānyú 7 关于 guānyú 8 对(于) duì(yú)

Exercise 25.3

1 动物园里除了老虎、狮子之外/以外，还有熊猫。 dòngwùyuán li chule lǎohǔ | shīzi zhī wài/yì wài | hái yǒu xióngmāo 2 班里除了中国人之外/以外，还有英国人和法国人。 bān li chule zhōngguó rén zhī wài/yì wài | hái yǒu yīngguó rén hé fǎguó rén 3 我除了羊肉之外/以外，什么都吃。 wǒ chule yángròu zhī wài/yì wài | shénme dōu chī 4 陈小姐除了会弹吉它之外/以外，还会弹钢琴。 chén xiǎojiě chule huì tán jítā zhī wài/yì wài | hái huì tán gāngqín

Exercise 25.4

1 根据 gēnjù 2 凭 píng 3 根据 gēnjù 4 凭 píng 5 按照 ànzhào 6 凭着 píng zhe

Exercise 25.5

1 老师对(于)我的学习很关心。 lǎoshī duì(yú) wǒ de xuéxí hěn guānxīn 2 我进城去买东西。 wǒ jìn chéng qù mǎi dōngxi 3 correct 4 根据气象预报，明天下大雨。 gēnjù qìxiàng yùbào | míngtiān xià dà yǔ 5 correct 6 对(于)孩子调皮的问题，除了家长之外/以外，学校老师也应该管。 duì(yú) háizi tiáopí de wèntí | chule jiāzhǎng zhī wài/yì wài | xuéxiào lǎoshī yě yīnggāi guǎn

Exercise 25.6

1 至于这个问题，我没有意见。 **zhìyú zhèi gè wèntí | wǒ méi yǒu yìjian** 2 对于这个问题，我十分担心。 **duìyú zhèi gè wèntí | wǒ shífēn dānxīn** 3 除了星期三之外/以外，我每天都来。 **chúle xīngqī sān zhī wài/yǐ wài | wǒ měi tiān dōu néng lái** 4 至于我们能不能来，请你问我太太/夫人。 **zhìyú wǒmen néng bù néng lái | qǐng nǐ wèn wǒ tàitai/fūren** 5 除了她之外/以外，大家都喜欢吃中国菜。 **chúle tā zhī wài/yǐ wài | dàjiā dōu xǐhuan chī zhōngguó cài** 6 我进城去看一个朋友。 **wǒ jìn chéng kàn yī gè péngyou** 7 为了下结论，这个问题他们讨论了五个小时/钟头。 **wèile xià jiélùn | zhèi gè wèntí tāmen tāolùn le wǔ gè xiǎoshí/zhōngtóu** 8 政府根据什么执行这种政策？ **zhèngfǔ gēnjù shénme zhíxíng zhèi zhǒng zhèngcè**

Drill 25.1

1 由于天气不好，我们都呆在家里。 **yóuyú tiānqì bù hǎo | wǒmen dōu dāi zài jiā li** 2 她除了学法语(之外)，还学中文。 **tā chúle xué fǎyǔ (zhī wài) | hái xué zhōngwén** 3 为了让孩子得到很好的教育，她努力地工作。 **wèile ràng háizi dédào hěn hǎo de jiàoyù | tā nǔlì de gōngzuò** 4 他按照父母的建议，不再吃肉了。 **tā ànzhào fùmǔ de jiànyì | bù zài chī ròu le** 5 你根据什么说我错了。 **nǐ gēnjù shénme shuō wǒ cuò le** 6 至于这件事情，他说他不愿意管。 **zhìyú zhèi jiàn shìqing | tā shuō tā bù yuànyì guǎn** 7 关于那儿的情况，他十分了解。 **guānyú nàr de qíngkuàng | tā shífēn liǎojiě** 8 对于他的工作，我没有什么意见。 **duìyú tā de gōngzuò | wǒ méiyǒu shénme yìjian**

Drill 25.2

A. 小李，你好！ **xiǎo lǐ | nǐ hǎo** B. 老王，你好！ **lǎo wáng | nǐ hǎo**
 A. 你去哪儿？//你到/上哪儿去？ **nǐ qù nǎr/nǐ dào/shàng nǎr qù** B. 我到邮局去寄(一)封信。 **wǒ dào yóujú qù jì (yī) fēng xìn** A. 给谁的信啊/哪？ **gěi shéi de xìn a/na** B. 给我爸爸妈妈的。他们对我很好。 **gěi wǒ bàba māma de | tāmen duì wǒ hěn hǎo** A. 他们住在哪儿？ **tāmen zhù zài nǎr** B. 他们住在北京，离这儿很远。 **tāmen zhù zài běijīng | lí zhèr hěn yuǎn** A. 你常(常)回家去探望你父母吗？ **nǐ cháng(cháng) huí jiā qù tànwàng nǐ fùmǔ ma** B. 没有。我没有时间啊/哪。 **méiyǒu | wǒ méiyǒu shíjiān a/na** A. 你可以请假呀/啊！ **nǐ kěyǐ qǐngjià ya/a** B. 我有很多/这么多事儿要做/办，真的走不开。 **wǒ yǒu hěn duō/zhème duō shìr yào zuò/bàn | zhēn de zǒu bu kāi** A. 请你替/代我问候他们。祝他们身体健康！ **qǐng nǐ tì/dài wǒ wèn hòu tāmen | zhù tāmen shēntǐ jiànkāng** B. 谢谢你。我明天坐飞机到伦敦去/去伦敦。我在那儿给他们打电话。 **xièxie nǐ | wǒ míngtiān zuò fēijī dào lúndūn qù/qù lúndūn | wǒ zài nàr gěi tāmen dǎ diànhuà** A. 再见。 **zài jiàn** B. 再见。 **zài jiàn**

VOCABULARY LIST

Chinese to English

Note: mw = measure word; cv = coverb

A

- ā** 啊 ah (exclamation)
ā'ěrbēisī shān 阿尔卑斯山 The Alps
ǎi 矮 low; short (opposite of tall)
ānjìng 安静 quiet, to quieten down
ānxīn 安心 to feel at ease
àn 岸 shore
ànzhào 按照 according to/in accordance with
àolínpìkè yùndòng huì 奥林匹克运动会 the Olympic Games

B

- ba** 吧 (imperative or question particle)
bā 八 eight
bāyuè 八月 August
bābudé 巴不得 to long to
bālí 巴黎 Paris
bāshì 巴士 bus
bǎ 把 mw handful (rice, etc.); mw (knife, umbrella, etc.); cv
bàba 爸爸 father
bái 白 white
báicài 白菜 cabbage
báitiān 白天 day, daytime
bǎi 百 hundred
bǎi fēn zhī 百分之 percentage
bǎiwàn 百万 million
bān 班 class
bān 班 mw (for scheduled trains, buses, etc.)

- bān** 搬 move (home) to
bàn 办 to handle/deal with
bàndào 办到 to manage, accomplish
bànfǎ 办法 method
bàngōngshì 办公室 office
bàn 半 half
bànyè 半夜 midnight
bāng(zhù) 帮(助) to help
bàng 磅 mw pound (weight)
bàng 镑 mw pound (currency)
bāo 包 mw packet
bāo 包 to make (dumplings)
bāoguǒ 包裹 parcel
bǎo 饱 full (of food)
bǎomǔ 保姆 nanny
bǎoxiǎngù 保险柜 strongbox/safe
bào(zhǐ) 报(纸) newspaper
bēi 杯 mw cup, mug, glass
bēi(zi) 杯(子) n. cup, glass
bēi 背 to carry (on back)
bēibāo 背包 rucksack
běibiān 北边 north (side)
běijīng 北京 Beijing
běijīng dàxué 北京大学 Peking University
běijīng kǎoyā 北京烤鸭 Peking duck
běimiàn 北面 north (side)
bèi 背 to learn by heart
bèi shú/shóu 背熟 to learn by heart, commit to memory
bèihòu 背后 behind someone's back
bèizi 被子 quilt

běn 本 mw (for books, magazines, etc.)
běnběn(zì) 本(子) notebook, booklet
bízi 鼻子 nose
bǐ 比 cv (compared with)
bǐsài 比赛 match
bǐ 笔 pen; mw sum of (money)
bìxū 必须 must; have to
bìyè 毕业 to graduate
bian 边 side; by, beside
biànhuà 变化 change; to change
biàn 遍 mw (frequency)
biāoyǔ 标语 slogan
biǎo 表 (wrist)watch
biǎoshì 表示 to show, express
biǎoyǎn 表演 to perform; performance
bié 别 don't
biéren 别人 others, another person, other people
bīngjīlíng 冰激凌 ice cream
bīngxiāng 冰箱 fridge
bìng 病 illness, disease
bìngfáng 病房 (hospital) ward
bìngjià 病假 sick leave
bìngtòng 病痛 illness
bóbo 伯伯 uncle (father's elder brother)
bómǔ 伯母 aunt (wife of father's elder brother)
bówùguǎn 博物馆 museum
bù 不 not, no
bù bǐ 不比 not -er than, no(t) more ... than [necessarily better, taller, etc. than]
bù bì 不必 no need
bù dé 不得 must not
bù gāi 不该 ought not to
bù guāi 不乖 disobedient, naughty
bù shǎo 不少 many; quite a few
bù shì 不是 no
bù xǔ 不许 not permit(ted)
bù yào 不要 don't
bù yòng 不用 no need
bù zhǔn 不准 not allow(ed)
bù zài 不再 never again, no more/longer
bùguò 不过 but; only

bù 布 cloth
bùlāgé 布拉格 Prague
bù 部 mw (for film, computer, etc.)
bùduì 部队 army

C

cā 擦 to wipe
cāi 猜 to guess
cái 才 only then, not ... until ...
cǎi mì 采蜜 to collect honey
cài 菜 vegetable; dish (of food)
càiyóu 菜油 vegetable oil
càiyuán 菜园 vegetable garden
cānguān 参观 to visit, look round
cānjiā 参加 to attend; take part in
cānguǎn 餐馆 restaurant
cāngyīng 苍蝇 (insect) fly
cāochǎng 操场 sports ground
cāoxīn 操心 to be worried about
cǎo 草 grass
cǎodì 草地 grass lawn, meadow
cǎoméi 草莓 strawberry
cèsuǒ 厕所 toilet
chá 茶 tea
cháhuì 茶会 tea party
cháyè 茶叶 tea leaves
chà 差 to lack
chàbuduō 差不多 almost
cháng 长 long
chángchéng 长城 the Great Wall
chángjiāng 长江 the Yangtze River
cháng 场 mw a fall of (snow), a shower of (rain)
chángcháng 常常 frequently, often
chǎng 场 mw (for games)
chàng 唱 to sing
chànggē 唱歌 to sing (a song)
cháo 朝 cv towards; at, to
chǎo(jià) 吵(架) to quarrel; to make a noise
chǎofàn 炒饭 fried rice
chǎomiàn 炒面 fried noodles
chē(zi) 车(子) car
chēkù 车库 garage
chēliàng 车辆 vehicle
chēzhàn 车站 (train, bus) station
chén 陈 (surname) Chen
chènshān 衬衫 shirt

chénggōng 成功 to succeed
chéng 城 town, city
chéng wài 城外 out-of-town (areas),
outside the city
chéngshì 城市 city
chéngkè 乘客 passenger
chéngzi 橙子 orange
chī 吃 to eat
chī bu xià 吃不下 to be unable to
eat (anything/any more)
chīfàn 吃饭 to eat, have a meal
chīsù 吃素 to be a vegetarian
chí 池 pond, pool
chí 迟 late
chídào 迟到 to arrive late, be late
chōng 冲 to dash
chōuti 抽屉 drawer
chōuyān 抽烟 to smoke (cigarettes)
chū 出 out; mw (for films, etc.)
chū lái 出来 to come out; rise (of
the sun)
chū qù 出去 to go out; get out
chūfā 出发 to set off/out
chūguó 出国 to go abroad
chūlái 出来 (to come) out (of)
chūmén 出门 to be away (from
home)
chūqù 出去 (to go) out (of)
chūxuè 出血 to bleed
chú(le) . . . (zhī wài/yǐ wài) 除(了) . . .
(之外/以外) apart from; as well as
chúfáng 厨房 kitchen
chúshī 厨师 cook; chef
chuān 穿 to wear (clothes)
chuán lái 传来 to come from a
distance (of sound)
chuán 船 ship
chuánzhī 船只 shipping
chuǎnqì 喘气 to breathe
chuàn 串 mw a bunch of
chuāng(hu) 窗(户) window
chuānglián 窗帘 curtain (for
window)
chuāngtái 窗台 window sill
chuáng 床 bed
chuángdān 床单 (bed) sheet
chuī 吹 to blow
chūntiān 春天 spring

cídiǎn 词典 dictionary
cì 次 mw (of frequency, occurrence)
cōngmíng 聪明 intelligent
cóng 从 from; since
cóng bù 从不 never
cóng . . . qǐ 从 . . . 起 since, beginning
from
cónglái 从来 all along
cún 存 to deposit (money)
cùn 寸 inch
cuō 撮 a pinch of (salt)
cuò 错 wrong

D

dā 搭 to travel by
dǎ 打 mw dozen
dá'àn 答案 answer; solution
dǎ 打 to fight; to hit; to play; to
practice; to make (a phone call)
dǎjià 打架 to fight
dǎpái 打牌 to play mah-jong
dǎpò 打破 to break
dǎ rén 打人 to hit out at people
dǎsǎo 打扫 to clean, sweep
dǎzhēn 打针 to have an injection
dǎzì 打字 to type
dà 大 big, large; (age) old; (wind)
strong
dà shāngchǎng 大商场 shopping mall
dà xuě 大雪 heavy snow
dà yǔ 大雨 heavy rain
dàbuliǎo 大不了 at the worst
dàfāng 大方 generous
dà hòutiān 大后天 in three days'
time
dàjiā 大家 everybody
dàlóu 大楼 multi-storied building
dàlù 大路 main road
dà qiánnián 大前年 three years ago
dà qiántiān 大前天 three days ago
dàren 大人 adult
dàshǐguǎn 大使馆 embassy
dàxué 大学 university
dàyī 大衣 overcoat
dàyuē 大约 about, around,
approximately
dāi 呆/待 to stay
dài 带 to bring; take

dài 戴 to wear
dānxīn 担心 to worry (about)
dànshì 但是 but
dàngāo 蛋糕 cake
dànké 蛋壳 eggshell
dāng 当 when; to work as, serve as, be
dāngrán 当然 of course
dāo 刀 knife
dǎoshī 导师 supervisor, tutor
dǎo 倒 to collapse
dào 到 to arrive; go to; until
dào xiànzài 到现在 up till now
dàodá 到达 to get to, reach, arrive
dào 倒 to pour out (tea); to tip (rubbish)
dào 道 mw (for examination questions)
dàoli 道理 reason
dé duō 得多 much more (complement)
déchū 得出 to arrive at, come to (a conclusion)
dédào 得到 to get, obtain
de 得 de (complement marker)
de 的 de (attributive marker)
déwén/yǔ 德文/语 German (language)
děi 得 have to
dēng 灯 light, lamp
děng 等 to wait (for)
dī 滴 mw a drop of (water/rain)
dǐxia 底下 under, below
dì 地 ground
dìbǎn 地板 floor
dìtú 地图 map
dìxià 地下 underground; on the ground
dìdi 弟弟 younger brother
dìshì 的士 taxi
dì 第 (ordinal number marker)
diǎn 点 mw (for small amounts); (decimal) point
diǎn zhōng 点钟 o'clock
diǎnr 点儿 mw (for small amounts)
diǎntóu 点头 to nod (the head)
diànhuà 电话 telephone
diànnǎo 电脑 computer

diànshì 电视 television
diànshìjī 电视机 television set
diàntī 电梯 lift
diànyǐng 电影 film; movie
diànyǐngyuàn 电影院 cinema
diàn 店 shop
diàoyú 钓鱼 to go fishing/angling
diào 掉 to drop, fall; to throw away; finished (complement)
dǐng 顶 mw (for hats)
dìng 定 to decide (upon)
diū 丢 to lose, misplace
dōngbian 东边 east
dōngmiàn 东面 east
dōngxī 东西 thing
dōngtiān 冬天 winter
dǒng 懂 to understand
dòng 动 to touch; to move
dòngshēn 动身 to set out (for)
dòngwùyuán 动物园 zoo
dòng 洞 hole
dōu 都 all
dòu 逗 funny, witty; to tease
dú 读 to read
dù 赌 to gamble
dùbó 赌博 to gamble
dù 度 degree (of temperature)
dùjià 度假 to go on holiday
dùchuán 渡船 ferryboat
duān 端 to carry with both hands
duǎn 短 short
duǎn fà 短发 short hair
duì 队 team
duìyuán 队员 team member
duìzhǎng 队长 team captain
duì 对 mw a pair, couple; cv towards, to, at; yes, right, correct
duìbuqǐ 对不起 (I'm) sorry
duìmiàn 对面 opposite
duìyú 对于 cv as to; about
duō 多 many, much, more
duō cháng (shíjiān) 多长(时间) how long (of time)
duō dà 多大 how big, what size (shoes, etc.)
duō jiǔ 多久 how long (of time)
duō yuǎn 多远 how far
duō(me) 多(么) how

duōshao 多少 how many; how much
duǒ 朵 mw (for flowers)
duǒ 躲 to hide

E

éguó 俄国 Russia
éyǔ 俄语 Russian (language)
è 饿 to be hungry
è sǐ le 饿死了 to be starving/famished
érzi 儿子 son
ěrduo 耳朵 ear
ěrhuan 耳环 earrings
èr 二 two
èr lóu 二楼 the first floor
èryuè 二月 February

F

fāchū 发出 to issue (forth)
fāshāo 发烧 to have a fever
fǎguó 法国 France
fǎguó rén 法国人 French (person)
fǎwén/yǔ 法文/语 French (language)
fānshǔ 番薯 sweet potato
fānyì 翻译 to translate; translation
fánmáng 繁忙 busy
fàn 饭 (cooked) rice
fànguǎn 饭馆 restaurant
fāng 方 square
fāngfǎ 方法 method
fāngxiàng 方向 direction
fángjiān 房间 room
fángzi 房子 house/building
fǎngwèn 访问 to visit
fàng 放 to put, keep
fàng huí 放回 put back
fàngxué 放学 to finish school/class
fēi 飞 to fly
fēijī 飞机 plane
fēijīchǎng 飞机场 airport
fēicháng 非常 extremely, exceptionally
féizào 肥皂 soap
fēn 分 mw minute
fēn zhī 分之 (numerator)
fěnbǐ 粉笔 chalk
fèn 份 mw (for newspapers etc.)
fēng 风 wind
fēngjǐng 风景 scenery

fēng 封 mw (for letters)
fūfū 夫妇 husband and wife
fúzhuāng 服装 dress; clothes
fūren 夫人 wife
fú 幅 mw (for paintings etc.)
fùmǔ 父母 parents
fùqin 父亲 father
fùzé 负责 to be responsible for
fùjìn 附近 near(by); vicinity
fùxí 复习 to revise (lessons)
fù 副 deputy, vice-
fù 副 mw a pair of (spectacles, etc.)

G

gāi 该 ought to, should
gǎi 改 to change; to correct
gǎiqī 改期 to postpone, change the time for
gài 盖 to build, put up (a house)
gān 干 dry
gānjìng 干净 clean
gāngānjìngjìng 干干净净 spotlessly clean
gǎn 赶 to run after; rush for
gǎnlù 赶路 to hurry ahead/along
gǎnshàng 赶上 to catch up with
gǎn 敢 to dare
gǎnjué 感觉 to feel, be aware of
gǎnmào 感冒 to catch a cold
gǎnxiè 感谢 to thank
gāng 刚 (only) just
gāngcái 刚才 just now
gānggāng 刚刚 just, only; just now
gāngqín 钢琴 piano
gǎngkǒu 港口 harbour
gāo 高 high; tall
gāo 糕 cake
gāoxìng 高兴 to be happy, pleased
gàosu 告诉 to tell, inform
gēge 哥哥 elder brother
gēzi 鸽子 pigeon
gē cǎo 割草 to mow the grass
gē 搁 to place, put
gē(r) 歌(儿) song
gēcí 歌词 lyrics, words (of a song)
gébì 隔壁 next door
gè 个 mw (for animate and inanimate nouns in general)
gègè 个个 each and every one; all

gèrén 个人 individual, -self
gěi 给 cv for/to sb
gēn 根 cv a blade of (grass); a piece of (thread)
gēnjù 根据 cv on the basis of
gēn 跟 and; cv with sb; to sb
gèng 更 even more
gōngchéngshī 工程师 engineer
gōngchǐ 公尺 metre
gōngfēn 公分 centimetre
gōng(gòng qì)chē 公(共汽)车 bus
gōngjīn 公斤 kilogram
gōnglǐ 公里 kilometre
gōngyuán 公园 park
gōngzī 工资 wages
gōngzuò 工作 work; to work
gōu 沟 ditch
gǒu 狗 dog
gòu 够 enough
gūgu 姑姑 aunt (father's sister)
gūmǔ 姑母 aunt (father's married sister)
gūniang 姑娘 girl
gūzhàng 姑丈 uncle (husband of father's sister)
gǔlǎo 古老 ancient
gùshi 故事 story
guā fēng 刮风 to be windy
guā húzi 刮胡子 to shave
guà 挂 to hang up
guāi 乖 obedient
guǎi 拐 to turn
guàibude 怪不得 no wonder
guān(shang) 关(上) to close; to turn off
guānxīn 关心 to be concerned about
guānyú 关于 cv as regards, regarding
guǎn 管 to bother about; to look after
guàn 罐 mw a bottle of
guàntou 罐头 can, tin (of food)
guǎngchǎng 广场 a (public) square
guǎnggào 广告 advertisement
guīdìng 规定 to stipulate; regulations
guizi 柜子 cupboard; cabinet
guì 贵 expensive
guì xìng 贵姓 what is your name (polite form)

guō 锅 wok
guójiā 国家 country
guò 过 to cross; to pass (time); (marker of experiential aspect)
guò lái 过来 to come here/over
guò qù 过去 to go over; in the past

H

hái 还 still; yet
háishi 还是 or (in questions)
hái yǒu 还有 there is/are still (some left)
hái (yào) 还(要) still -er, even (more) ...
háizi 孩子 child/children
hǎi 海 sea
hǎi biān 海边 beach; seaside
hǎibào 海豹 seal
hǎibīn 海滨 seaside
hǎimiàn 海面 surface of the sea
hǎi'ōu 海鸥 seagull
hàn 汗 sweat
hànyǔ 汉语 Chinese (language)
hànzì 汉字 Chinese character
hǎo 好 good; to recover (from illness); (indicating successful completion)
hǎochī 好吃 delicious
hǎohào 好好儿 earnestly, on one's best behaviour
hǎohē 好喝 to be tasty; nice/good to drink
hǎokàn 好看 pretty, good-looking
hǎotīng 好听 nice/pleasant to the ear
hǎowánr 好玩儿 amusing, enjoyable
hǎoxiào 好笑 laughable, ridiculous
hào 号 mw number (in sequence); date of month
hē 喝 to drink
hébulái 合不来 cannot get along with
héchéng 合成 to be composed of
hédelái 合得来 can get along with
hé 河 river
hé biān 河边 riverside
hé 和 and; with
hézi 盒子 box
hēi 黑 black

hēibǎn 黑板 blackboard
hēi yǎnjìng 黑眼镜 sunglasses
hēiyè 黑夜 night (opposite of daytime)
hěn 很 very
hēng 哼 to hum (a tune)
hóng 红 red; (of eyes) bloodshot
hóngchá 红茶 black tea
hónghóng lǜlǜ 红红绿绿 brightly coloured; multi-coloured
hóulóng 喉咙 throat
hóu(zi) 猴(子) monkey
hòu 后 after; behind
hòubian 后边 behind; rear
hòumian 后面 behind; rear
hòunián 后年 the year after next
hòutiān 后天 the day after tomorrow
hòutou 后头 behind; rear
hú 湖 lake
hǔ 虎 tiger (sign of the zodiac)
hùshi 护士 nurse
huā 花 to spend; blurred (of vision)
huā duǒ 花朵 flowers
huā(r) 花(儿) flower
huāpíng 花瓶 (flower)vase
huāyuán 花园 garden
huá 滑 slippery
huà 话 words, talk
huà 画 v. to paint
huàjiā 画家 artist, painter
huà 画儿 picture, painting
huài 坏 bad
huānyíng 欢迎 to welcome
huán 还 to return, give back
huáng 黄 (surname) Huang; yellow
huángdòu 黄豆 soya bean
huánghé 黄河 the Yellow River
huí 回 to return; to reply; mw (for matter, affair)
huí guó 回国 to return to one's country
huí jiā 回家 to go home
huí lái 回来 to come back
huí qù 回去 to go back
huì 汇 to remit
huì 会 to be likely to, be sure to; can, to be able to; be good at, be skilful in

huì(yì) 会(议) meeting
hūnlǐ 婚礼 wedding ceremony
huó 活 alive, living
huǒ 火 fire
huǒchái 火柴 match
huǒchē 火车 train
huǒchēzhàn 火车站 railway station
huòzhě 或者 or

J

jīchǎng 机场 airport
jīhuì 机会 opportunity
jī 鸡 chicken
jīdàn 鸡蛋 egg
jítā 吉它 guitar
jí 急 to be anxious
jí 集 mw (of writing) volume, collection, etc.
jíhé 集合 to assemble, gather
jǐ 几 how many; a few; about, a few (in approximations)
jǐ diǎn zhōng 几点(钟) what time?
jǐshí 几时 when?
jìhuà 计划 plan
jì 记 to recall, remember
jìde 记得 to remember
jìlù 记录 record
jì 寄 to send
jiā 加 to add; to increase
jiānádà 加拿大 Canada
jiā 家 home; family; mw (for shops, restaurants etc.)
jià 架 mw (for planes)
jiān 间 mw (for rooms)
jiānbǎng 肩膀 shoulder
jiǎn 剪 to cut, clip
jiǎndāo 剪刀 scissors
jiǎnféi 减肥 to lose weight
jiǎnshǎo 减少 to reduce
jiàn 见 to see, to have an appointment with
jiànmiàn 见面 to meet
jiàn 件 mw piece of (luggage)
jiànyì 建议 to suggest; suggestion
jiànkāng 健康 healthy
jiānglái 将来 the future; in the future
jiāng 姜 ginger

jiǎng 讲 to speak, say
jiǎngjiě 讲解 to explain
jiǎngkè 讲课 to teach
jiǎng dào 讲道理 to stand to reason
jiǎng 奖 prize; prize money
jiāo 交 to hand in; to make (friends)
jiāotōng 交通 traffic, communications
jiāo 浇 to water
jiāo shuǐ 浇水 to water (plants)
jiāo 教 to teach
jiāoshū 教书 to teach
jiǎozi 饺子 Chinese dumplings
jiǎo 脚 foot
jiào 叫 to order, tell; to call (the doctor, a taxi); to make sb do sth
jiàoliàn 教练 coach; to coach
jiàoshì 教室 classroom
jiàotáng 教堂 church
jiàoyù 教育 education
jiēba 结巴 to stammer
jiējiēbābā 结结巴巴 stammering
jiē 接 to meet (sb) (at an airport, etc.)
jiē 街 street
jiēdào 街道 street
jiémù 节目 programme
jiéguǒ 结果 result, outcome
jiéhūn 结婚 to marry
jiélùn 结论 conclusion
jiéshù 结束 to end, conclude
jiějie 姐姐 elder sister
jiějué 解决 to solve, resolve
jiè 借 to borrow; to lend
jièkǒu 借口 excuse
jīntiān 今天 today
jīn wǎn 今晚 this evening
jīn zǎo 今早 this morning
jīnyú 金鱼 goldfish
jīnzītǎ 金字塔 The Pyramids
jīnbuzhù 禁不住 cannot help
jīnzhāng 紧张 tension; nervous
jìn 进 enter
jìn qiú 进球 to score (a goal)
jìn chéng 进城 to go into town
jìn lái 进来 to come in
jìn qù 进去 to go in
jìn 近 near, close to

jìn lù 近路 short cut
jīngjù 京剧 Beijing opera
jīngjì 经济 economy; economic
jīnglǐ 经理 manager
jīngcǎi 精彩 brilliant
jīngyú 鲸鱼 whale
jìng 静 quiet, calm
jiūjìng 究竟 after all
jiǔ 九 nine
jiǔyuè 九月 September
jiǔ 酒 wine
jiǔbājiān 酒吧间 bar, pub
jiùhuì 酒会 (drinks) party
jiù 旧 old, out-of-date
jiùshēngyuán 救生员 life-guard
jiù 就 then; at once; adv used for emphasis
jiùjiu 舅舅 uncle (mother's brother)
jiùmǔ 舅母 aunt (mother's sister; mother's brother's wife)
jú 局 mw a game of (chess, table-tennis, etc.)
jǔxíng 举行 to hold (a meeting etc.)
jǔzhǐ 举止 bearing, manner
jù 句 mw (for sentence)
jùchǎng 剧场 theatre
juéding 决定 to decide

K

kāfēi 咖啡 coffee
kāfēiguǎn 咖啡馆 coffee bar
kāi 开 to open; to drive; to hold, attend (a meeting)
kāichē 开车 to drive (a car)
kāi wánxiào 开玩笑 to joke
kāidāo 开刀 to have an operation
kāimén 开门 to open (a/the door)
kāishǐ 开始 to start
kāiwǎng 开往 to leave for
kān 看 to look after, to attend to
kānguǎn 看管 to look after
kàn 看 to see, watch, look at; to read; to visit
kànbuqǐ 看不起 to look down upon
kàndeǐ 看得起 to think highly of
kànfǎ 看法 a view, opinion; ideas
kànjian 看见 to see
kāngkǎi 慷慨 generous

kǎo 考 to test, take a test
kǎo 烤 to roast, bake
kǎoxiāng 烤箱 oven
kē 棵 mw (for plants)
kē 颗 mw (for pearls, beans etc.)
késou 咳嗽 to cough
kě(yǐ) 可(以) can; may
kě'ài 可爱 lovely, likeable
kělè 可乐 cola
kěshì 可是 but
kèfú 克服 to overcome
kè 刻 quarter of an hour
kèqi 客气 polite
kèren 客人 guest; visitor
kè 课 mw a lesson
kèwén 课文 text
kěn 肯 be willing (to)
kǒngpà 恐怕 (I'm) afraid
kǒu 口 mouth
kǒu 口 mw (for mouthful)
kǒudài 口袋 pocket
kū 哭 to cry
kǔ 苦 bitter, awful
kù(zǐ) 裤(子) trousers
kuàijì 会计 accountant
kuài 快 quick
kuàilè 快乐 happy
kuài 块 mw piece of; mw (for Chinese currency – a yuan)
kuàizi 筷子 chopsticks
kuān 宽 broad; wide
kuǎndài 款待 to entertain, be hospitable
kùnnan 困难 difficulty

L

lā 拉 to pull; to play (the violin)
lājī 垃圾 litter, garbage
lājītǒng 垃圾桶 litter/garbage bin
lǎba 喇叭 horn (of a car)
là 辣 hot, peppery
la 啦 (particle for exclamation)
lái 来 to come; about, around (in approximate numbers); to help oneself; to manage by oneself
lái zì 来自 to be/come from
láibují 来不及 be too late for
láidejí 来得及 be in time for

láilái wǎngwǎng 来来往往 coming to and fro
láirén 来人 bearer; messenger
láixìn 来信 a letter (received)
lán 蓝 blue
láng 狼 wolf
lǎo 老 old
lǎohu 老虎 tiger
lǎoshi 老实 honest
lǎolaoshíshí 老老实实 very honest/earnest
lǎoshǔ 老鼠 mouse/ rat
le 了 (marker of completed action); (sentence particle)
léi 雷 thunder
lèi 累 tired
lěng 冷 cold
lí 离 cv distant from (a place)
líkai 离开 to leave
lí 梨 pear
libài 礼拜 week
libài èr 礼拜二 Tuesday
libài liù 礼拜六 Saturday
libài rì/tiān 礼拜日/天 Sunday
libài sān 礼拜三 Wednesday
libài sì 礼拜四 Thursday
libài wǔ 礼拜五 Friday
libài yī 礼拜一 Monday
liwù 礼物 present
lǐ 李 (surname) Li
lǐ 里 in, inside
libian 里边 inside
limiàn 里面 inside
litou 里头 inside
lilùn 理论 theory
lǐxiǎng 理想 ideal
lìshǐ 历史 history
lìzhī 荔枝 litchi/lychee
lìzī 利兹 Leeds
lì 粒 mw a grain of
lìjī 痢疾 dysentery
lián 连 even
liǎng 两 two
liàng 辆 mw (for vehicles)
liàng 晾 to (hang out to) dry
liàngyīshéng 晾衣绳 clothes-line
liáotiān(r) 聊天(儿) to chat
liǎo 了 (used in potential

complements to indicate
'achievability')

liǎojiě 了解 to understand
línjū 邻居 neighbour
línshī 淋湿 to be/get soaked
líng 零 zero
língqián 零钱 (small) change
(in money)
liú 流 to flow; (of tears, sweat) to
fall
liú xià 留下 to leave/stay behind
liù 六 six
liùyuè 六月 June
lóng 龙 dragon
lóngzi 笼子 cage
lóu 楼 floor, storey (of a building)
lóufáng 楼房 building
lóushàng 楼上 upstairs
lóuxià 楼下 downstairs
lúhuǒ 炉火 stove fire
lúzi 炉子 cooker
lù 路 road, street
lù biān 路边 by the side of the road
lù páng 路旁 roadside
lùchéng 路程 journey
lùkǒu 路口 crossing, intersection
lǚxíng/yóu 旅行/游 to go travelling,
to tour
lǜchá 绿茶 green tea
luàn 乱 in disorder/chaos
lúndūn 伦敦 London
lùnwén 论文 essay, dissertation
luómǎ 罗马 Rome
luòtuó 骆驼 camel

M

māma 妈妈 mother, mum
mā 抹 to wipe
májiàng 麻将 mah-jong
mǎ 马 horse
mǎlíngshǔ 马铃薯 potatoes
mǎlù 马路 road
mǎpǐ 马匹 horses
mǎshàng 马上 immediately, at once
mǎlǐ 玛丽 Mary
mà 骂 to swear (at)
mà rén 骂人 to swear (at people)
ma 吗 (question particle)

mǎi 买 to buy
mài 卖 to sell
mántou 馒头 steamed bun
mànchéng 曼城 Manchester
màn 慢 slow, slowly
mànmàn lái 慢慢 take your time
máng 忙 busy
māo 猫 cat
máobǐ 毛笔 writing brush
máojīn 毛巾 towel
máoyī 毛衣 sweater
màozi 帽子 hat
méi 没 not
méi(yǒu) 没(有) there is not; not
have
méiguī (huā) 玫瑰(花) rose
méimáo 眉毛 eyebrow
měi 每 every
měi 美 beautiful
měiguó 美国 America, USA
měilì 美丽 beautiful
mèimei 妹妹 younger sister
mén 门 door, gate
mén qián 门前 in front of the door
men 们 (plural suffix)
mǐ 米 rice; mw metre
mìfēng 蜜蜂 bee
miǎnbuliǎo 免不了 can do nothing
but, cannot avoid
miànbāo 面包 bread
miànbāochē 面包车 minibus, van
míng wǎn 明晚 tomorrow evening
míngbai 明白 to understand; clear
míngnián 明年 next year
míngtiān 明天 tomorrow
mótuōchē 摩托车 motorbike
mùdìdì 目的地 destination

N

ná 拿 to hold in hand, to take
nǎ/nèi 哪 which? how?
nǎr 哪儿 where?
nǎxiē 哪些 which? (plural)
nà/nèi 那 that
nà shíhou 那时候 at that moment
nàme 那么 so, like that
nàr 那儿 there
nǎxiē/nèixiē 那些 those

nǎinai 奶奶 (paternal) grandmother
nán háizi 男孩子 boy
nán péngyou 男朋友 boyfriend
nán 南 south
nánbian 南边 the south
nánmiàn 南面 the south
nán 难 difficult
nántīng 难听 unpleasant to hear
néng 能 can; may; be able to;
be capable of
nǐ 你 you
nǐ bié guǎn 你别管 none of your
business
nǐ de 你的 your, yours
nǐ gǎn 你敢? Dare you (do it)? How
dare you?
nǐ hǎo 你好 hello
nǐmen 你们 you (plural)
nǐmen de 你们的 your, yours
(plural)
nián 年 year
niánjí 年级 grade, year (at school)
niǎo 鸟 bird
nín 您 you (polite form)
niú 牛 cow; ox
niúǎi 牛奶 milk
niúròu 牛肉 beef
niúzǎikù 牛仔裤 jeans
nóngmín 农民 farmer, peasant
nòng 弄 to do, make, (mis)handle
nǔlì 努力 try/work hard, strive;
industrious/hard-working
nǚ háizi 女孩子 girl
nǚ péngyou 女朋友 girlfriend
nǚ'ér 女儿 daughter
nǚshì 女士 Miss, Ms
nuǎn 暖 warm
nuǎnhuo 暖和 warm

O

ōuzhōu 欧洲 Europe

P

pá 爬 to climb
pá shān 爬山 to climb a mountain
pāi 拍 to take (a photograph), shoot
(a film)
páiduì 排队 to queue

páng 旁 side
pángbian 旁边 at/by the side of,
next to
pàng 胖 fat
pǎo 跑 to run
pǎobù 跑步 to go jogging
péngyou 朋友 friend
pèng 碰 to touch, knock
pèngjiàn 碰见 to bump/run into
(someone)
píxié 皮鞋 leather shoes
pījiǔ 啤酒 beer
pǐ 匹 mw (for horses, rolls of cloth)
piān 篇 mw (for essays, articles etc.)
piányi 便宜 cheap
piàn 片 mw a slice of (bread, cake,
etc.)
piàn 骗 to deceive
piào 票 ticket
piàoliang 漂亮 pretty, beautiful,
handsome
pīngpāngqiú 乒乓球 table-tennis
píng'ān 平安 safe and sound
píngguǒ 苹果 apple
píng 凭 on the basis of; according to
píngpiào 凭票 by ticket only
píng 瓶 mw bottle of
píngzi 瓶子 bottle
pò 破 broken
pútáo 葡萄 grape
pǔsù 朴素 simple, plain
pǔtōng 普通 ordinary

Q

qī 七 seven
qīzi 妻子 wife
qī 期 mw issue (of a journal etc.)
qīpiàn 欺骗 to cheat
qítā 其他 others, the rest
qí 骑 to ride
qí 棋 chess
qǐ 起 up
qǐchéng 起程 to set out, depart
qǐchuáng 起床 to get up (out of bed)
qǐlái 起来 to rise, get up; up
qì 气 to be angry
qìqiú 气球 balloon
qìxiàng 气象 meteorological

qìxiàng yùbào 气象预报 weather
forecast

qìchē 汽车 car

qìchēzhàn 汽车站 bus stop

qìshuǐ 汽水 fizzy drink

qìyóu 汽油 petrol

qiān 千 thousand

qiānbǐ 铅笔 pencil

qián 前 before, in front of; former,
previous; in the past

qiánbian 前边 front; in front

qiánmian 前面 front; in front

qiánnián 前年 the year before last

qiántiān 前天 the day before
yesterday

qiántou 前头 front; in front

qián 钱 money

qián 钱 (surname) Qián

qiánbāo 钱包 purse

qiāng 枪 gun, rifle

qiáng 墙 wall

qiāo 敲 to strike, knock

qiáo 桥 bridge

qiáo 瞧 to look (at)

qínfèn 勤奋 industrious

qīngnián 青年 young man

qīngwā 青蛙 frog

qīng 轻 light (opposite of heavy)

qīng 氢 hydrogen

qīngchu 清楚 clear; clearly

qíngkuàng 情况 conditions

qǐng 请 please; to invite

qǐngkè 请客 to invite (guests),
to host

qìngzhù 庆祝 to celebrate

qiūtiān 秋天 autumn

qiú 球 ball

qiúmén 球门 (football) goal

qiú sài 球赛 match, game

qiúxié 球鞋 sports shoes

qǔzi 曲子 tune

qù 去 to go

qùnián 去年 last year

quán 全 complete, whole

quán jiā 全家 whole family

quàn 劝 to urge, persuade

quēxí 缺席 to be absent (from a
meeting etc.)

quèshí 确实 really; definitely

qúnzi 裙子 skirt

qún 群 mw crowd of; flock of; pack of

R

ràng 让 to let; to allow; to permit

rè 热 hot

rèqíng 热情 warmhearted; kind

rén 人 person; people; anybody,
somebody

rén shù 人数 number of people

rénjia 人家 someone else

rénkǒu 人口 population

rénqún 人群 crowd (of people)

rénrén 人人 everyone

rèncuò 认错 to admit a mistake

rènshi 认识 to know, recognise

rènwéi 认为 to think that

rènwu 任务 task

rēng 扔 to throw

rì 日 sun; date (of the month)

rìběn 日本 Japan

rìběn rén 日本人 Japanese (people)

rìyǔ 日语 Japanese (language)

ròu 肉 meat

rúhé 如何 how, how about

rùchǎng 入场 to enter a gathering;
to be admitted to (a theatre, etc.)

ruǎn 软 soft; weak

S

sāhuǎng 撒谎 to lie, tell a lie

sān 三 three

sānyuè 三月 March

sānmíngzhì 三明治 sandwich

sǎn 伞 umbrella

sǎngzi 嗓子 throat, voice

sàn bù 散步 to go for a walk

sǎosao 嫂嫂 sister-in-law (elder
brother's wife)

shā 沙 sand

shāfā 沙发 sofa

shātān 沙滩 beach

shāyú 鲨鱼 shark

shài 晒 to expose to the sun; to dry
in the sun

shài gān 晒干 to leave sth in the sun
till it is dry

shài tàiyang 晒太阳 to sunbathe
shān 山 hill; mountain
shānjiǎo 山脚 foot of the mountain
shānpō 山坡 hillside
shānshuǐhuà 山水画 (Chinese)
landscape painting
shāngchǎng 商场 shopping mall,
market
shāngdiàn 商店 shop
shàng 上 last, previous
shàng 上 to get on, board (a bus,
car, train, etc.); to go up, ascend;
to go to
shàng chē 上车 get on a bus, get
into a car
shàngbān 上班 go to work
shàngbian 上边 above
shàngchuáng 上床 go to bed
shànghǎi 上海 Shanghai
shàngkè 上课 go to class
shànglái 上来 (to come) upward
shàngmian 上面 above
shàngqu 上去 (to go) upward
shàngtái 上台 to go on the stage
shàngtou 上头 above
shàngwǎng 上网 to go on the
internet
shàngwǔ 上午 morning
shàngxià 上下 approximately
shàngxué 上学 to go to school
shang 上 on, above, over, up
shé 蛇 snake
shèhuì 社会 society
shèxiàngjī 摄像机 video camera,
camcorder
shèyǐngshī 摄影师 photographer
shéi/shuí 谁 who/whom
shéi de 谁的 whose
shēn shang 身上 on one's person
shēntǐ 身体 body
shēnkè 深刻 profound, deep
shénme shíhou 什么时候 when?
shénme 什么 what; everything
shēng 升 mw litre
shēng 升 to rise, ascend
shēng 生 to give birth to
shēngbìng 生病 to fall ill
shēnghuó 生活 life; to live

shēngqì 生气 to get angry
shēngri 生日 birthday
shēng 声 sound
shēngyīn 声音 sound
shéngzǐ 绳子 rope, piece of string
shèngdàn 圣诞 Christmas
shèngdànkǎ 圣诞卡 Christmas
card(s)
shèngshībān 圣诗班 choir
shèngqíng 盛情 great kindness
shīwàng 失望 to be disappointed,
lose hope
shīyè 失业 to be unemployed,
out of work
shīzi 狮子 lion
shī 湿 wet, damp
shí 十 ten
shí'èryuè 十二月 December
shífēn 十分 extremely
shíyīyuè 十一月 November
shí 石 (surname) Shi
shítou 石头 stone
shíhou 时候 time
shíjiān 时间 time
shíhuà 实话 truth
shíyàn 实验 experiment
shìzhōngxīn 市中心 city centre
shìchǎng 市场 market
shìjì 世纪 century
shìjiè 世界 world
shì(r) 事(儿) incident; matter
shìqing 事情 affair, business, matter
shì 是 to be
shì de 是的 yes
shìshì 逝世 to die, to pass away
shōushi 收拾 to tidy up
shóu/shú 熟 to ripen
shǒu 手 hand
shǒubiǎo 手表 watch
shǒutào 手套 gloves
shǒuzhǐ 手指 finger
shǒu 首 mw
shǒushi 首饰 jewellery
shòushāng 受伤 to be injured
shòu 瘦 thin
shū 书 book
shūbāo 书包 school bag
shūběn 书本 book

shūdiàn 书店 bookshop
shūjià 书架 bookshelf
shūshu 叔叔 uncle (father's younger brother)
shūfu 舒服 comfortable
shūshì 舒适 comfortable
shū 输 to lose (a bet)
shūcài 蔬菜 vegetables
shú/shóu 熟 ripe; ripen
shú/shóuxī 熟悉 to know very well
shǔ 属 to have (a particular sign of the zodiac)
shù 束 mw bouquet of
shù 树 tree
shùlí 树篱 hedge
shùmù 树木 tree
shuāng 双 mw pair of
shuí 谁 who?
shuí de 谁的 whose?
shuǐ 水 water
shuǐchí 水池 pool, pond
shuǐguǒ 水果 fruit
shuì 睡 to sleep
shuì lǎn jiào 睡懒觉 to sleep in, to get up late
shuìjiào 睡觉 to go to bed; to sleep
shuō 说 to say, speak, tell
shuō bu guòqù 说不过去 cannot be justified
shuō de guòqù 说得过去 be justifiable
shuōhuà 说话 to talk; speak
sījī 司机 driver
sì 四 four
sìzhōu 四周 on all sides, around
sōngshǔ 松鼠 squirrel
sòng 送 to deliver (letters)
sōu 艘 mw (for ships)
sùshè 宿舍 dormitory
suān 酸 sour; to ache
suānténg 酸疼 to ache; aching
sui 岁 years of age
suǒ 所 mw (for houses)

T

tā 它 it
tā 他 he/him
tā 她 she/her

tā de 他的 his
tā de 她的 her, hers
tāmen 它们 they/them (neuter)
tāmen 他们 they/them (masculine)
tāmen 她们 they/them (feminine)
tāmen de 他们的 their, theirs (masculine)
tāmen de 她们的 their, theirs (feminine)
tái 台 mw (for engines, machines)
tài 太 too; extremely
tàijíquán 太极拳 t'ai chi ch'uan, shadow boxing
tàitai 太太 Mrs; wife
tàiyáng 太阳 the sun
tàiyángjìng 太阳镜 sunglasses
tàiwùshì hé 泰晤士河 the Thames
tán 谈 to talk, chat
tánbushàng 谈不上 out of the question
tándào 谈到 to talk about
tándeshàng 谈得上 can go so far as to say
tánhuà/tiān 谈话/天 to talk, chat
tán 弹 to play (piano, organ, harp, etc.)
tànwàng 探望 to visit
táng 糖 sugar; sweets
tǎng 躺 to lie, recline
tàng 趟 mw (for times, occurrence)
tāo(chū) 掏(出) to take out
táozi 桃子 peach
téng 疼 to ache; to hurt; pain
tèyì 特意 specially
tī 踢 to kick
tí 提 to put forward
tí chū 提出 to put forward, raise
tímù 题目 topic, question
tì húzi 剃胡子 to shave
tì 替 cv for, on behalf of
tiān 天 day
tiān na 天哪 Heavens!
tiānhuābǎn 天花板 ceiling
tiānkōng 天空 sky, heaven
tiānqì 天气 weather
tiānshàng 天上 the sky
tiānwén 天文 astronomy
tián 甜 sweet (to the taste)

tiánměi 甜美 sweet (voice, etc.)
tiáo 条 mw piece of
tiáolì 条例 regulations, rules
tiáopí 调皮 naughty
tiào 跳 to jump
tiàoshéng 跳绳 to skip with a rope,
play with a skipping rope
tiàowǔ 跳舞 to dance
tīng 听 to listen
tīng dǒng 听懂 to (listen and)
understand
tíng 停 to stop; to park
tíngbó 停泊 to anchor
tíngchē 停车 to park (a car)
tōng 通 to lead to
tōngzhī 通知 to notify; notice,
circular
tóng 同 and; cv with
tóngxué 同学 classmate
tóngyì 同意 to agree
tǒng 桶 mw a pail/bucket of
tóu 头 mw (for cattle)
tóufa 头发 hair
túshūguǎn 图书馆 library
túshūzhèng 图书证 library card
tù(zǐ) 兔(子) hare; rabbit
tuījiànxin 推荐信 letter of
recommendation
tuǐ 腿 leg

W

wàizi 袜子 sock
wa 哇 wa (particle for exclamation)
wài 外 outside
wàibian 外边 outside
wàidì 外地 other places
wàimài 外卖 take-away food
wàimàidiàn 外卖店 take-away
(shop), carry-out
wàimian 外面 outside
wàitào 外套 jacket
wàitou 外头 outside
wān 弯 curved
wán 完 to the finish (complement)
wánchéng 完成 to finish, accomplish
wánjù 玩具 toy
wánr 玩儿 to play, amuse oneself
wǎn 晚 evening; late

wǎnfàn 晚饭 dinner, supper
wǎnhuì 晚会 (evening) party
wǎnshàng 晚上 evening
wǎn 碗 bowl
wǎngui 碗柜 cupboard
wàn 万 ten thousand
wáng 王 (surname) Wang
wǎngqiú 网球 tennis
wǎng/wàng 往 towards
wàng 旺 prosperous, vigorous
wàng 望 to gaze at
wéijīn 围巾 scarf
wěiba 尾巴 tail
wèi 为 cv for
wèile 为了 cv in order to, so that
wèishénme 为什么 why
wèi 位 mw (polite for persons)
wèi 喂 to feed; hello, hey
wénhuà 文化 culture
wénxué 文学 literature
wénzhāng 文章 essay, article,
composition
wèn 问 to ask
wèntí 问题 problem, question
wǒ 我 I, me
wǒ de 我的 my, mine
wǒmen 我们 we, us
wǒmen de 我们的 our, ours
wūyā 乌鸦 crow
wūding 屋顶 roof
wūzi 屋子 room
wúgù 无故 without reason
wú 吴 (surname) Wu
wǔ 五 five
wúyuè 五月 May
wúcānròu 午餐肉 (canned) luncheon
meat
wǔ 舞 to dance
wǔhuì 舞会 dance (party)
wù 误 to miss (because late)
wù 雾 mist, fog

X

xībian 西边 west, west side
xīguā 西瓜 watermelon
xīmian 西面 west, west side
xīchén 吸尘 to vacuum-clean
xīyān 吸烟 to smoke (cigarettes)

xīwàng 希望 hope; to hope
xíguàn 习惯 habit; to be accustomed to
xǐ 洗 to wash
xiyīdiàn 洗衣店 laundry
xiyījī 洗衣机 washing-machine
xìzǎo 洗澡 to have a bath
xīhuan 喜欢 to like
xǐmǎlāyǎshān 喜马拉雅山 The Himalayas
xìshì 喜事 happy occasion
xì 戏 play, drama
xìpiào 戏票 theatre ticket
xiázhǎi 狭窄 narrow
xià 下 come/go down, descend; to fall (rain, snow); next; under, below, beneath
xià chē 下车 to get off/out of a vehicle
xià lóu 下楼 to go/come downstairs
xiàbān 下班 to finish work
xiàbian 下边 below, under, beneath
xiàmian 下面 below, under, beneath
xiàtóu 下头 below, under
xiàwǔ 下午 afternoon
xià xuě 下雪 to snow
xià yǔ 下雨 to rain
xiàlǐng 夏令 summer time
xiàtiān 夏天 summer
xiān 先 first, before
xiānsheng 先生 Mr; gentleman
xiānhuā 鲜花 fresh flowers
xiánrén 闲人 idler; unconcerned person
xiàndài 现代 modern
xiànzài 现在 now
xiàn 线 thread
xiāngcūn 乡村 village, countryside
xiāng 香 fragrant; sweet-smelling
xiāngjiāo 香蕉 banana
xiāngzi 箱子 box, trunk
xiǎng 想 to think; want, would like to
xiǎngfǎ 想法 idea
xiàng 向 cv at, to, towards, in the direction of
xiàng ... xuéxí 向... 学习 to learn from

xiàng 项 mw piece of (work)
xiāoxi 消息 news
xiǎo 小 little; small
xiǎo shíhòu 小时候 in one's childhood
xiǎobā 小巴 minibus
xiǎohái 小孩 baby
xiǎohuǒzi 小伙子 youngster, lad
xiǎojī 小鸡 chick
xiǎojiě 小姐 Miss; young lady
xiǎolù 小路 path
xiǎomāo 小猫 kitten
xiǎoshí 小时 hour
xiǎoshuō 小说 novel
xiǎotíqín 小提琴 violin
xiǎotōu 小偷 petty thief
xiǎoxīn 小心 take care
xiào 笑 to smile; to laugh
xiē 些 a little; a few
xié(zi) 鞋(子) shoe
xiě 写 to write
xièxie 谢谢 thank you
xīnzhōng 心中 in one's heart
xīn 新 new
xīnnián 新年 New Year
xīnwén 新闻 news
xīnxiān 新鲜 fresh
xìn 信 letter
xìnfēng 信封 envelope
xìnjiàn 信件 correspondence
xìnxī 信息 information
xìnyòngkǎ 信用卡 credit card
xìnzhi 信纸 writing paper
xīngqī 星期 week
xīngqī èr 星期二 Tuesday
xīngqī liù 星期六 Saturday
xīngqī rì/tiān 星期日/天 Sunday
xīngqī sān 星期三 Wednesday
xīngqī sì 星期四 Thursday
xīngqī wǔ 星期五 Friday
xīngqī yī 星期一 Monday
xíng 行 to be all right
xíngbutōng 行不通 won't do/work
xíngdetōng 行得通 will do/work
xíngli 行李 luggage
xínglijia 行李架 luggage rack
xíngren 行人 pedestrian
xìng 姓 surname

xióngmāo 熊猫 panda
xiūxi 休息 to rest
xiū 修 to repair
xiū(lǐ) 修(理) to repair
xǔduō 许多 many, a lot of, much
xuǎn 选 to choose; to elect
xué(xí) 学(习) to study, learn
xuénián 学年 academic/school year
xuésheng 学生 student
xuéxiào 学校 school
xuě 雪 snow
xùnliàn 训练 to train, drill; training session

Y

yā 呀 (exclamation)
yāzi 鸭子 duck
yáchǐ 牙齿 teeth
yáshuā 牙刷 toothbrush
yǎ 哑 to be hoarse, to lose one's voice
ya 呀 (particle for exclamation)
yān 烟 cigarette
yángé 严格 strict
yánsù 严肃 (of composure) to be serious
yánzhòng 严重 serious, grave (matter)
yán 沿 *cv* along
yán'àn 沿岸 along the bank/coast
yán jiē 沿街 along the street
yánjiū 研究 to consider, research, study, look into
yán 盐 salt
yǎn 眼 eye
yǎnjìng 眼镜 glasses, spectacles
yǎnjīng 眼睛 eye
yǎnchū 演出 to perform; performance, show
yǎnshì 演示 to demonstrate
yáng 羊 sheep/goat
yáng ròu 羊肉 lamb
yáng 阳 the sun
yǎng 养 to keep/rear
yǎng 氧 oxygen
yāo 幺 one
yāoqiú 要求 to request, demand; demand

yào 药 medicine
yàofáng 药房 pharmacy
yào 要 to want; must, need to; to be about to
yàoshi 钥匙 key
yéye 爷爷 (paternal) grandfather
yě 也 also, too
yè 页 page
yè 夜 night, evening
yī 一 one
yī yǎn 一眼 at a glance
yī yè 一夜 all night
yīdiǎnr 一点儿 a little
yīdìng 一定 certainly
yīguàn 一贯 all along, consistent
yīhuìr 一会儿 (for) a while
yīkǒuqì 一口气 in one breath
yīlù 一路 all the way
yīqǐ 一起 together
yīxià 一下 one time, once; briefly, a while
yīxiē 一些 a little, some
yīyàng 一样 the same
yīyuè 一月 January
yízhí 一直 straight
yīfu 衣服 clothes
yīguì 衣柜 wardrobe
yījià 衣架 coat-hanger, clothes stand
yīzhuó 衣着 clothing
yīshēng 医生 doctor
yīyuàn 医院 hospital
yímǔ 姨母 (maternal) aunt
yízhàng 姨丈 uncle (husband of mother's sister)
yímín 移民 immigrant/emigrant; to emigrate
yǐ 已 already
yǐjīng 已经 already
yǐhòu 以后 later; after; afterwards
yǐqián 以前 ago; before, previously
yǐzi 椅子 chair
yì 亿 one hundred million
yìdàlì 意大利 Italy
yìjiàn 意见 view, opinion
yìlì 毅力 willpower, perseverance
yīn 阴 cloudy, overcast
yīnxiǎng 音响 hi-fi
yīnyuè 音乐 music

yīnyuèhuì 音乐会 concert
yínháng 银行 bank
yìnxiàng 印象 impression
yīngāi 应该 ought to, should
yīngguó 英国 England, Britain
yīngguó rén 英国人 British/English (people)
yīngjǐlǐ hǎixiá 英吉利海峡 the English Channel
yīnglǐ 英里 mile
yīngwén 英文 English (language)
yīngwú 鹦鹉 parrot
yíngyè 营业 open (for business)
yìng 硬 hard
yǒngyuǎn 永远 for ever
yòng 用 to use; cv using, with
yóu 由 by, up to; out of; from (place/time)
yóuyú 由于 cv because of, owing to
yóudìyuán 邮递员 postman
yóujú 邮局 post office
yóutǒng 邮筒 pillar-box
yóu 游 to swim
yóuyǒng 游泳 to swim
yóuyǒngchí 游泳池 swimming pool
yǒuhǎo 友好 friendly
yǒu 有 to have; there is/are; verb used in comparisons
yǒu kòng 有空 to be free
yǒu méiyǒu 有没有 did/have (you) ... or not?
yǒu yìsi 有意思 interesting
yǒumíng 有名 to be famous/well known
yǒuqián 有钱 to be rich
yǒuqù 有趣 interesting
yǒuxiào 有效 effective
yǒuyòng 有用 useful
yòu 又 again
yòubian 右边 (to) the right (of); right-hand side
yòumiàn 右面 (to) the right (of); right-hand side
yú 于 in; on; at
yú 鱼 fish
yǔ 与 cv with; and
yǔ 雨 rain
yǔsǎn 雨伞 umbrella

yùbào 预报 forecast
yuānyang 鸳鸯 mandarin ducks; an affectionate couple
yuán 圆 round (in shape)
yuǎn 远 distant, far
yuàn(yì) 愿(意) be willing (to)
yuēhàn 约翰 John
yuè 月 month; moon
yuèchū 月初 (at the) beginning of the month
yuèdǐ 月底 (at the) end of the month
yuèliang 月亮 moon
yuèqǔ 乐曲 music, musical composition
yuèlǎnshì 阅览室 reading room
yuè...yuè...yuè... 越...越... 越... the more ... the more ...
yuè lái yuè ... 越来越... more and more ...
yún 云 cloud
yùndòngchǎng 运动场 sports field
yùndònghuì 运动会 sports meeting
yùndòngxié 运动鞋 trainers/sneakers
yùndòngyuán 运动员 athlete
yùnhé 运河 canal

Z

zài 再 again
zàijiàn 再见 goodbye
zài 在 in, at; to be in, at; (continuous action aspect marker)
zài cǐ 在此 here
zàijiā 在家 to be at home
zánmen 咱们 we/us (including the listener)
zàntóng 赞同 to agree to, approve of
zāng 脏 dirty
zǎo 早 early
zǎodiǎn(r) 早点(儿) a bit earlier
zǎoshang 早上 morning
zěnmē 怎么 how
zěnmē yàng 怎么样 how, in what way
zěnyàng 怎样 how
zhàlán 栅栏 fence
zhànshèng 战胜 to defeat, overcome
zhàn 站 station, stop; to stand

- zhàntái** 站台 (station) platform
zhāng 张 mw (piece of paper, table)
zhāng 张(surname) Zhang
zhǎng 长 to grow; head, chief
zhàngfu 丈夫 husband
zhāoshǒu 招手 to beckon, wave
zhǎo 找 to look for
zhǎo dào 找到 to find
zhào 照 to take (a photograph)
zhàogu 照顾 to look after
zhàopiàn 照片 photograph
zhàoxiàngjī 照相机 camera
zhémo 折磨 to persecute, torment
zhè/zhèi 这 this
zhème 这么 so, like this
zhèr 这儿 here
zhèxiē 这些 these
zhèyàng 这样 so, like this
zhe 着 (aspect marker)
zhēn 真 true, real; really, truly
zhēn de 真的 honestly
zhēnshí 真实 true
zhēnxiàng 真相 real/true situation
zhèn 阵 mw a gust of (wind), a peal of (thunder), mw (for laughter)
zhèn 镇 small town
zhēngyuè 正月 the first month of the lunar year
zhěng 整 whole, entire
zhěngnián 整年 all the year round, the whole year
zhěngqí 整齐 tidy, in good order
zhěngtiān 整天 all day, the whole day
zhěng wǎn 整晚 the whole evening/night
zhèng 正 just; precisely
zhèngquè 正确 accurate, correct
(zhèng)zài (正)在 just/in the process of . . . ing
zhèngfǔ 政府 government
zhī 之 (Classical Chinese attributive)
zhī zhōng 之中 during, in, among, between
zhīhòu 之后 later; after; afterwards
zhīqián 之前 ago; before
zhī 支 mw (for pen, toothpaste, etc.)
zhī 只 mw (for animals, birds; utensils)
- zhī** 枝 mw (for rifle, etc.)
zhīdao 知道 to know
zhīshì 知识 knowledge
zhí 直 straight
zhíban 值班 to be on duty
zhíde 值得 to be worth, merit
zhíwùyuán 植物园 botanical garden
zhǐ 只 only
zhǐ yǒu 只有 only; only if
zhǐshì 只是 to just/only be; but then
zhǐ 纸 paper
zhǐzhāng 纸张 paper
zhìyú 至于 as for; as far as . . . is concerned
zhōng 中 during; in, among
zhōngguó 中国 China
zhōngguóhuà 中国画 Chinese paintings
zhōngguó rén 中国人 Chinese (people)
zhōngjiān 中间 the middle
zhōngwén 中文 Chinese (language)
zhōngwǔ 中午 midday, noon
zhōngxué 中学 secondary school
zhōng 钟 clock
zhōngtóu 钟头 hour
zhǒng 种 mw kind of
zhǒngzhǒng 种种 all kinds of
zhòng 中 to win (a prize)
zhòng 种 to plant
zhòng 重 heavy
zhòngyào 重要 important
zhōu 周 mw week
zhōu 周 (surname) Zhou
zhōumò 周末 weekend
zhōuwéi 周围 all around; vicinity
zhūzi 珠子 pearl
zhū 猪 pig
zhū nián 猪年 the year of the pig
zhǔ 煮 to cook, boil
zhù 住 to live, reside
zhùdexià 住得下 to house, accommodate
zhù 祝 to wish, express good wishes to
zhuā 抓 to grab, grasp
zhuāng 装 to pack
zhuāng 幢 mw (for buildings)
zhǔn 准 accurate

zhuōzi 桌子 table
zì 字 word; character
zì 自 from
zìjǐ 自己 oneself
zìjǐ lái 自己来 to help oneself
zìxíngchē 自行车 bicycle
zǒng shì 总是 always
zǒu 走 to walk; to leave; off (as a complement)
zǒubudòng 走不动 cannot walk (any more)
zǒulù 走路 to walk, go on foot
zū 租 to rent, lease
zú(zú) 足(足) fully, no less than
zúqiú 足球 soccer
zúqiúchǎng 足球场 football ground, soccer field
zúqiúduì 足球队 football team
zúqiúsài 足球赛 football/soccer match
zǔchéng 组成 to consist of, be made up of
zuān 钻 to come out of or go into (a hole, burrow, etc.)
zuǐba 嘴巴 mouth

zuì 最 most
zuìhǎo 最好 the best; had better
zuì 醉 drunk
zuìxūnxūn 醉醺醺 drunk, tipsy
zuó wǎn 昨晚 last night, yesterday evening
zuótiān 昨天 yesterday
zuǒ 左 left
zuǒbian 左边 left side
zuǒmiàn 左面 left side
zuǒyòu 左右 (suffix) about, or so
zuò 坐 to sit; to travel by (boat, plane, train, bus)
zuò xià 坐下 to sit down
zuòbuxià 坐不下 do not have enough room for
zuòyè 作业 coursework
zuò 座 mw (for mountains, bridges)
zuòtánhuì 座谈会 discussion, seminar, symposium
zuòwèi 座位 seat
zuò 做 to do; to be, act as
zuòfǎ 做法 method, way of doing something
zuòfàn 做饭 cook a meal

VOCABULARY LIST

English to Chinese

A

able to **huì** 会, **néng** 能

about: (regarding) **duìyú** 对于;

(approximately) **jǐ** 几, **lái** 来,

dàyuē 大约, **zuǒyòu** 左右

about to **yào** 要

above **shang** 上, **shàngbian** 上边,

shàngmian 上面, **shàngtou** 上头

absent (from a meeting etc.) **quēxí**

缺席

academic/school year **xuénián** 学年

accommodate **zhù de xià** 住得下

accomplish (get done) **bàndào** 办到,

(complete) **wánchéng** 完成

according to **ànzhào** 按照, **píng** 凭

accountant **kuàijì** 会计

accurate **zhèngquè** 正确, **zhǔn** 准

accustomed to **xíguàn** 习惯

ache **suān** 酸, **suānténg** 酸疼,

téng 疼

aching **suānténg** 酸疼

act as **zuò** 做

add **jiā** 加

admit a mistake **rèncuò** 认错

admitted to (a theatre, etc.) **rùchǎng**

入场

adult **dàren** 大人

advertisement **guǎnggào** 广告

affair **shìqìng** 事情

afraid **kǒngpà** 恐怕

after **hòu** 后, **yǐhòu** 以后, **zhīhòu**

之后; after all **jiūjìng** 究竟

afternoon **xiàwǔ** 下午

afterwards **yǐhòu** 以后, **zhīhòu** 之后

again **yòu** 又, **zài** 再

ago **yǐqián** 以前, **zhīqián** 之前

agree **tóngyì** 同意; agree to **zàntóng**

赞同

ah (exclamation) **ā** 啊

airport **fēijīchǎng** 飞机场, **jīchǎng**

机场

alive **huó** 活

all **dōu** 都, **gègè** 个个; all along

(always) **cónglái** 从来, (consistent)

yīguàn 一贯; all around **zhōuwéi**

周围; all kinds of **zhǒngzhǒng** 种

种; all right **xíng** 行; all the way

yīlù 一路

allow **ràng** 让

almost **chàbùduō** 差不多

along **yán** 沿, along the coast/bank

yán'àn 沿岸, along the street **yán**

jiē 沿街

Alps **ǎ'ěrbēisī shān** 阿尔卑斯山

already **yǐ** 已, **yǐjīng** 已经

also **yě** 也

always **zǒng shì** 总是

America **měiguó** 美国

among **zhī zhōng** 之中, **zhōng** 中

amuse oneself **wánr** 玩儿

amusing **hǎowánr** 好玩儿

affectionate couple **yuānyang** 鸳鸯

anchor (v) **tíngbó** 停泊

ancient **gǔlǎo** 古老

and **gēn** 跟, **hé** 和, **tóng** 同, **yǔ** 与

angry **qì** 气; get angry **shēngqì** 生气

another person **biéren** 别人

answer (solution) **dá'àn** 答案

anxious **jí** 急

anybody **rén** 人

apart from **chú(le)** . . . (**zhīwài/yǐwài**)
除(了) . . . (之外以外)
apple **píngguǒ** 苹果
approve of **zàntóng** 赞同
approximately **dàyuē** 大约, **shàngxià**
上下, **zuǒyóu** 左右
army **bùduì** 部队
around (approximately) **dàyuē** 大约,
lái 来; (on all sides) **sìzhōu** 四周
arrive **dào** 到, **dàodá** 到达; arrive
late **chídào** 迟到; arrive at (a
decision, conclusion) **déchū** 得出
article **wénzhāng** 文章
artist **huàjiā** 画家
as far as . . . is concerned, as for
zhìyú 至于; as regards **guānyú**
关于; as to **duìyú** 对于; as well as
chú(le) . . . (**zhī wài/yǐ wài**) 除(了)
. . . (之外以外)
ascend **shàng** 上, **shēng** 升
ask **wèn** 问
assemble **jíhé** 集合
astronomy **tiānwén** 天文
at **cháo** 朝, **duì** 对, **xiàng** 向; **yú** 于;
zài 在; at a glance **yī yǎn** 一眼; at
home **zàijiā** 在家; at once **jiù** 就,
mǎshàng 马上; at that moment
nà shíhòu 那时候; at the worst
dàbuliǎo 大不了
athlete **yùndòngyuán** 运动员
attend **cānjiā** 参加, (a meeting) **kāi**
开; attend to **kān** 看
August **bāyuè** 八月
aunt (father's sister) **gūgu** 姑姑;
(father's married sister) **gūmǔ**
姑母; (maternal) **yímǔ** 姨母;
(mother's sister; mother's
brother's wife) **jiùmǔ** 舅母; (wife
of father's elder brother) **bómǔ**
伯母
autumn **qiūtiān** 秋天
aware of **gǎnjué** 感觉
away: be away (from home) **chūmén**
出门
awful **kǔ** 苦

B

baby **xiǎohái** 小孩
bad **huài** 坏

bake **kǎo** 烤
ball **qiú** 球
balloon **qìqiú** 气球
banana **xiāngjiāo** 香蕉
bank **yínháng** 银行
bar **jiǔbājiān** 酒吧间
be **shì** 是; (become, act as), **dāng** 当,
zuò 做
be/come from **lái zì** 来自
beach **hǎi bian** 海边, **shātān** 沙滩
bearer **láirén** 来人
bearing **jǔzhǐ** 举止
beautiful **měi** 美, **měilì** 美丽,
piàoliang 漂亮
because of **yóuyú** 由于
beckon **zhāoshòu** 招手
bed **chuáng** 床
bee **mífēng** 蜜蜂
beef **niúròu** 牛肉
beer **píjiǔ** 啤酒
before **qián** 前, **xiān** 先, **yǐqián** 以前,
zhīqián 之前
beginning from **cóng . . . qǐ** 从 . . . 起
behind **hòu** 后, **hòubian** 后边,
hòumian 后面, **hòutou** 后头;
behind someone's back **bèihòu**
背后
Beijing **běijīng** 北京; Beijing opera
jīngjù 京剧
below, beneath **dìxia** 底下, **xià** 下,
xiàbian 下边, **xiàmian** 下面,
xiàtou 下头
beside **bian** 边
best, the best **zuìhǎo** 最好
between **zhī zhōng** 之中
bicycle **zìxíngchē** 自行车
big **dà** 大
bird **niǎo** 鸟
birthday **shēngri** 生日
bitter **kǔ** 苦
graduate (v) **bìyè** 毕业
black **hēi** 黑; black tea **hóngchá**
红茶
blackboard **hēibǎn** 黑板
bleed **chūxuè** 出血
bloodshot (of eyes) **hóng** 红
blow (v) **chuī** 吹
blue **lán** 蓝
blurred (of vision) **huā** 花

board (a bus, car, train, etc.)
shàng 上
 body **shēntǐ** 身体
 boil **zhǔ** 煮
 book **shū** 书, **shūběn** 书本
 booklet **běnzǐ** 本(子)
 bookshelf **shūjià** 书架
 bookshop **shūdiàn** 书店
 borrow **jiè** 借
 botanical garden **zhíwùyuán**
 植物园
 bother about **guǎn** 管
 bottle **píngzi** 瓶子
 bowl **wǎn** 碗
 box **hézi** 盒子, **xiāngzi** 箱子
 boy **nán háizi** 男孩子
 boyfriend **nán péngyou** 男朋友
 bread **miànbāo** 面包
 break **dǎpò** 打破
 breathe/pant **chuǎnqì** 喘气
 bridge **qiáo** 桥
 briefly **yíxià** 一下
 brightly coloured **hónghóng lǜlǜ**
 红红绿绿
 brilliant **jīngcǎi** 精彩
 bring **dài** 带
 Britain **yīngguó** 英国
 British/English (people) **Yīngguó**
rén 英国人
 broad **kuān** 宽
 broken **pò** 破
 build **gài** 盖
 building **lóufáng** 楼房
 bump/run into (someone) **pèngjiàn**
 碰见
 bus **bāshi** 巴士, **gōng(gòng qì)chē**
 公(共)汽车
 bus stop **qìchēzhàn** 汽车站
 business **shìqing** 事情
 busy **fánmáng** 繁忙, **máng** 忙
 but **bùguò** 不过, **dànshì** 但是,
kěshì 可是; but then
zhǐshì 只是
 buy **mǎi** 买
 by (passive agent) **bèi** 被, **ràng** 让,
jiào 叫, **yóu** 由; by the side of
bian 边; by ticket only **píngpiào**
 凭票

C
 cabbage **báicài** 白菜
 cabinet **guizi** 柜子
 cage **lóngzi** 笼子
 cake **dàngāo** 蛋糕
 call (the doctor, a taxi) **jiào** 叫
 calm **jìng** 静
 camcorder **shèxiàngjī** 摄像机
 camel **luòtuó** 骆驼
 camera **zhàoxiàngjī** 照相机
 can **huì** 会, **kě(yǐ)** 可(以), **néng** 能;
 can do nothing but **miǎn bu liǎo**
 免不了; can get along with **hé de**
lái 合得来; can go so far as to say
tán de shàng 谈得上
 can (tin) **guàntou** 罐头
 Canada **jiānádà** 加拿大
 canal **yùnhé** 运河
 cannot avoid **miǎn bu liǎo** 免不了;
 cannot be justified **shuō bu guòqù**
 说不过去; cannot get along with
hé bu lái 合不来; cannot help
jīnbuzhù 禁不住; cannot walk
 (any more) **zǒu bu dòng** 走不动
 capable of **néng** 能
 car **chē(zi)** 车(子), **qìchē** 汽车
 carry (on back) **bēi** 背, (with both
 hands) **duān** 端
 carry-out **wàimàidiàn** 外卖店
 cat **māo** 猫
 catch a cold **gǎnmào** 感冒
 catch up with **gǎnshàng** 赶上
 ceiling **tiānhuābǎn** 天花板
 celebrate **qìngzhù** 庆祝
 centimetre **gōngfēn** 公分
 century **shìjì** 世纪
 certainly **yīdìng** 一定
 chair **yǐzi** 椅子
 chalk **fěnbǐ** 粉笔
 change, small change **língqián** 零钱
 change **biànhuà** 变化, **gǎi** 改; change
 the time for **gǎiqī** 改期
 chaos/in chaos **luàn** 乱
 chat **liáotiān(r)** 聊天(儿), **tán** 谈,
tánhuà/tiān 谈话/天
 cheap **piányi** 便宜
 cheat (v) **qīpiàn** 欺骗
 chef **chúshī** 厨师

chess **qí** 棋
chick **xiǎo jī** 小鸡
chicken **jī** 鸡
chief **zhǎng** 长
child/children **háizi** 孩子
childhood/in one's childhood **xiǎo shíhou** 小时候
China **zhōngguó** 中国
Chinese (language) **hànyǔ** 汉语,
zhōngwén 中文; (people)
zhōngguó rén 中国人; Chinese
character **hànzì** 汉字, **zì** 字;
Chinese dumplings **jiǎozi** 饺子;
Chinese paintings **zhōngguóhuà**
中国画
choir **shèngshībān** 圣诗班
choose **xuǎn** 选
chopsticks **kuàizi** 筷子
Christmas **shèngdàn** 圣诞;
Christmas cards **shèngdànkǎ**
圣诞卡
church **jiàotáng** 教堂
cigarette **yān** 烟
cinema **diànyǐngyuàn** 电影院
circular **tōngzhī** 通知
city **chéng** 城, **chéngshì** 城市; city
centre **shìzhōngxīn** 市中心
class (school) **bān** 班
classmate **tóngxué** 同学
classroom **jiàoshì** 教室
clean **gānjìng** 干净, (v) **dǎsǎo** 打扫
clear **míngbai** 明白, **qīngchu** 清楚
clearly **qīngchu** 清楚
climb **pá** 爬; climb a mountain **pá shān** 爬山
clip (v) **jiǎn** 剪
clock **zhōng** 钟
close (near) **jìn** 近; (turn off)
guān(shang) 关(上)
cloth **bù** 布
clothes **yifu** 衣服, **fúzhuāng** 服装;
clothes stand **yījià** 衣架; clothes-
line **liàngyīshéng** 晾衣绳
clothing **yīzhuó** 衣着
cloud **yún** 云
cloudy **yīn** 阴
coach (n) **jiàoliàn** 教练
coat-hanger **yījià** 衣架

coffee **kāfēi** 咖啡; coffee bar
kāfēiguǎn 咖啡馆
cola **kělè** 可乐
cold **lěng** 冷
collapse **dǎo** 倒
collect honey **cǎi mì** 采蜜
come **lái** 来; come/be from **lái zì** 来
自; come back **huí lái** 回来; come
down **xià** 下; come from a
distance (of sound) **chuán lái** 传
来; come here/over **guò lái** 过来;
come in **jìn lái** 进来; come out **chū
lái** 出来; come out of (a hole,
burrow, etc.) **zuān** 钻; come to (a
conclusion) **dé chū** 得出; come/go
downstairs **xià lóu** 下楼
comfortable **shūfu** 舒服, **shūshi** 舒适
commit to memory **bèi shú/shóu**
背熟
communications **jiāotōng** 交通
complete **quán** 全
composed of **héchéng** 合成
composition **wénzhāng** 文章
computer **diànnǎo** 电脑
concerned about **guānxīn** 关心
concert **yīnyuèhuì** 音乐会
conclude **jiéshù** 结束
conclusion **jiélùn** 结论
conditions **qíngkuàng** 情况
consider **yánjiū** 研究
consist of **zǔchéng** 组成
consistent **yīgùan** 一贯
cook **chúshī** 厨师; (v) **zhǔ** 煮; cook a
meal **zuòfàn** 做饭
cooker **lúzi** 炉子
correct (right) **duì** 对, **zhèngquè**
正确, (v) **gǎi** 改
correspondence **xìnjiàn** 信件
cough **késou** 咳嗽
country **guójiā** 国家
countryside **xiāngcūn** 乡村
coursework **zuòyè** 作业
cow **niú** 牛
credit card **xìnyòngkǎ** 信用卡
cross **guò** 过
crossing **lùkǒu** 路口
crow **wūyā** 乌鸦
crowd (of people) **rénqún** 人群

cry **kū** 哭
culture **wénhuà** 文化
cup **bēi(zì)** 杯(子)
cupboard **guìzi** 柜子, **wǎngù** 碗柜
curtain (for window) **chuānglián** 窗
帘
curved **wān** 弯
cut (v) **jiǎn** 剪

D

damp **shī** 湿
dance (v) **tiàowǔ** 跳舞, (n) **wǔ** 舞,
(party) **wǔhuì** 舞会
dare **gǎn** 敢; dare you (do it)? **nǐ gǎn**
你敢?
dash **chōng** 冲
date (of the month) **rì** 日
daughter **nǚ'ér** 女儿
day **tiān** 天, **báitiān** 白天; all day
zhěngtiān 整天; day after
tomorrow **hòutiān** 后天; day
before yesterday **qiántiān** 前天
daytime **báitiān** 白天
deal with **bàn** 办
deceive **piàn** 骗
December **shí'èryuè** 十二月
decide **juédìng** 决定; (fix) **dìng** 定
decimal point **diǎn** 点
deep **shēnkè** 深刻
defeat **zhànshèng** 战胜
definitely **quèshí** 确实
degree (of temperature) **dù** 度
delicious **hǎochī** 好吃
deliver (letters) **sòng** 送
demand **yāoqiú** 要求
demonstrate **yǎnshì** 演示
depart, set out **qǐchéng** 起程
deposit (money) **cún** 存
deputy **fù** 副
descend **xià** 下
destination **mùdìdì** 目的地
dictionary **cídiǎn** 词典
die **shìshì** 逝世
difficult **nán** 难
difficulty **kùnnan** 困难
dinner **wǎnfàn** 晚饭
direction **fāngxiàng** 方向; in the
direction of **xiàng** 向

dirty **zāng** 脏
disappointed **shīwàng** 失望
disease **bìng** 病
dish (of food) **cài** 菜
disobedient **bù guāi** 不乖
disorder/in disorder **luàn** 乱
dissertation **lùnwén** 论文
distant **yuǎn** 远; distant from (a
place) **lí** 离
ditch (n) **gōu** 沟
do **nòng** 弄, **zuò** 做
doctor **yīshēng** 医生
dog **gǒu** 狗
don't **bié** 别, **bù yào** 不要
door **mén** 门
dormitory **sùshè** 宿舍
downstairs **lóuxià** 楼下
dragon **lóng** 龙
drama **xì** 戏
drawer **chōuti** 抽屉
dress **fúzhuāng** 服装
drill **xùnlìan** 训练
drink (v) **hē** 喝
drive **kāi** 开; (a car) **kāichē** 开车
driver **sījī** 司机
drop (v) **diào** 掉
drunk **zuì** 醉, **zuìxūnxūn** 醉醺醺
dry **gān** 干; dry in the sun **shài (gān)**
晒(干); dry/hang out to dry **liàng**
晾
duck **yāzi** 鸭子
during **zhī zhōng** 之中, **zhōng** 中
dysentery **lǐjì** 痢疾

E

each and every one **gègè** 个个
ear **ěrduo** 耳朵
early **zǎo** 早; a bit earlier **zǎodiǎn(r)**
早点(儿)
earnest, honest **lǎolaoshíshí** 老老实
实
earnestly **hǎohǎor** 好好儿
earrings **ěrhuan** 耳环
east **dōngbian** 东边, **dōngmian** 东面
eat **chī** 吃, **chīfàn** 吃饭; unable to eat
(anything/any more) **chī bu xià**
吃不下
economic, economy **jīngjì** 经济

education **jiàoyù** 教育
 effective **yǒuxiào** 有效
 egg **jīdàn** 鸡蛋
 eggshell **dànké** 蛋壳
 eight **bā** 八
 elder brother **gēge** 哥哥; elder sister
jiějie 姐姐
 elect **xuǎn** 选
 embassy **dàishǐguǎn** 大使馆
 emigrant/immigrant **yímín** 移民
 emigrate **yímín** 移民
 end (v) **jiéshù** 结束; end of the
 month **yuèdǐ** 月底
 engineer **gōngchéngshī** 工程师
 England **yīngguó** 英国
 English (language) **yīngwén** 英文;
 English/British (people) **Yīngguó**
rén 英国人; English Channel
yīngjīli hǎixiá 英吉利海峡
 enjoyable **hǎowánr** 好玩儿
 enough **gòu** 够
 enter **jìn** 进; enter a gathering
rùchǎng 入场
 entertain **kuàndài** 款待
 entire **zhěng** 整
 envelope **xìnfēng** 信封
 essay **lùnwén** 论文, **wénzhāng** 文章
 Europe **ōuzhōu** 欧洲
 even **lián** 连; even (more) **hái (yào)**
 还(要) ...; even more **gèng** 更
 evening **wǎn** 晚, **wǎnshang** 晚上,
yè 夜
 every **měi** 每
 everybody, everyone **dàjiā** 大家,
rénrén 人人
 everything **shénme** 什么
 exceptionally **fēicháng** 非常
 excuse (n) **jièkǒu** 借口
 expensive **guì** 贵
 experiment (n) **shíyàn** 实验
 explain **jiǎngjiě** 讲解
 expose to the sun **shài** 晒
 express **biǎoshì** 表示; express good
 wishes to **zhù** 祝
 extremely **fēicháng** 非常, **shífēn**
 十分, **tài** 太
 eye **yǎn** 眼, **yǎnjīng** 眼睛
 eyebrow **méimáo** 眉毛

F
 fall **diào** 掉; (of rain, snow) **xià** 下;
 (of tears, sweat) **liú** 流; fall ill
shēngbìng 生病
 family **jiā** 家
 famished **è sǐ le** 饿死了
 famous **yǒumíng** 有名
 far **yuǎn** 远
 farmer **nóngmín** 农民
 fat **pàng** 胖
 father **bàba** 爸爸, **fùqin** 父亲
 February **èryuè** 二月
 feed (give food to) **wèi** 喂
 feel **gǎnjué** 感觉; feel at ease **ānxīn**
 安心
 fence **zhàlán** 栅栏
 ferryboat **dùchuán** 渡船
 few, a few: **jǐ** 几 **xiē** 些; (in
 approximations) **jǐ** 几
 fight **dǎ** 打, **dǎjià** 打架
 film **diànyǐng** 电影
 find **zhǎo dào** 找到
 finger **shǒuzhǐ** 手指
 finish (v) **wánchéng** 完成;
 (successfully – suffix) **hǎo** 好;
 finish school/class **fàngxué** 放学;
 finish work **xiàbān** 下班
 finished (complement) **diào** 掉,
wán 完
 fire **huǒ** 火
 first **xiān** 先; the first **dìyī** 第一; the
 first floor **èr lóu** 二楼; the first
 month of the lunar year **zhēngyuè**
 正月
 fish **yú** 鱼
 five **wǔ** 五
 fizzy drink **qìshuǐ** 汽水
 floor **dìbǎn** 地板; (storey) **lóu** 楼
 flow **liú** 流
 flower **huā(r)** 花(儿), **huā duǒ** 花朵
 fly (insect) **cāngying** 苍蝇
 fly (v) **fēi** 飞
 fog **wù** 雾
 foot **jiǎo** 脚; foot of the mountain
shānjiǎo 山脚
 football ground **zúqiúchǎng** 足球场;
 football match **zúqiúsài** 足球赛;
 football team **zúqiúduì** 足球队

for **tì** 替, **wèi** 为; for/to **gěi** 给; for
ever **yǒngyuǎn** 永远
forecast **yùbào** 预报
former **qián** 前
four **sì** 四
fragrant **xiāng** 香
France **fǎguó** 法国
free (not busy) **yǒu kòng** 有空
French (language) **fǎwén/yǔ** 法文/语;
(person) **fǎguó rén** 法国人
frequently **chángcháng** 常常
fresh **xīnxiān** 新鲜; fresh flowers
xiānhuā 鲜花
Friday **lǐbài wǔ** 礼拜五, **xīngqī wǔ**
星期五
fridge **bīngxiāng** 冰箱
fried noodles **chǎomiàn** 炒面; fried
rice **chǎofàn** 炒饭
friend **péngyou** 朋友
friendly **yǒuhào** 友好
frog **qīngwā** 青蛙
from (place/time) **cóng** 从, **yóu** 由,
zì 自
front, in front **qián** 前, **qiánbian** 前
边, **qiánmian** 前面, **qiántou** 前头;
in front of the door **mén qián**
门前
fruit **shuǐguǒ** 水果
full (of food) **bǎo** 饱
fully **zú(zú)** 足(足)
funny **dòu** 逗
future, the future **jiānglái** 将来

G

gamble **dǔ** 赌, **dùbó** 赌博
game **qiú sài** 球赛
garage **chēkù** 车库
garbage **lājī** 垃圾; garbage/litter bin
lājītǒng 垃圾桶
garden **huāyuán** 花园
gate **mén** 门
gather **jíhé** 集合
gaze at **wàng** 望
generous **dàfāng** 大方, **kāngkǎi**
慷慨
gentleman **xiānsheng** 先生
German (language) **déwén/yǔ**
德文/语

get **dédào** 得到 get off/out of (a
vehicle) **xià (chē)** 下(车); get
on/into (a vehicle) **shàng (chē)** 上
(车); get out **chū qù** 出去; get to
dàodá 到达
get up **qǐlái** 起来; (out of bed)
qǐchuáng 起床; get up late **shuì lǎn**
jiào 睡懒觉
ginger **jiāng** 姜
girl **nǚ hái zi** 女孩子, **gūniang** 姑娘;
girlfriend **nǚ péngyou** 女朋友
give back **huán** 还; give birth to
shēng 生
glass **bēi(zi)** 杯(子)
glasses (spectacles) **yǎnjìng** 眼镜
gloves **shǒutào** 手套
go **qù** 去; go to **dào** 到, **shàng** 上;
go abroad **chūguó** 出国; go
angling/fishing **diàoyú** 钓鱼; go
back **huí (qù)** 回(去); go down
xià (qù) 下(去); go for a walk
sànbù 散步; go home **huí jiā** 回家;
go in **jìn qù** 进去; go into (a hole,
burrow, etc.) **zuān** 钻; go into
town **jìn chéng** 进城; go jogging
pǎobù 跑步; go on foot **zǒulù**
走路; go on holiday **dùjià** 度假; go
on the internet **shàngwǎng** 上网;
go on the stage **shàngtái** 上台;
go out **chū qù** 出去; go over
guò qù 过去; go to bed
shàngchuáng 上床, **shuìjiào** 睡觉;
go to class **shàngkè** 上课; go to
school **shàngxué** 上学; go to work
shàngbān 上班; go travelling
lǚxíng/yóu 旅行/游; go up **shàng**
上(去); go/come downstairs
xià lóu 下楼
goal (goalposts) **qiú mén** 球门
goat/sheep **yáng** 羊
goldfish **jīnyú** 金鱼
good **hǎo** 好; good/nice to drink
hǎohē 好喝
good at **huì** 会
goodbye **zàijiàn** 再见
good-looking **hǎokàn** 好看
government **zhèngfǔ** 政府
grab **zhuā** 抓

grade (in school) **niánjí** 年级
graduate (v) **biyè** 毕业
grandfather (paternal) **yéye** 爷爷
grandmother (paternal) **nǎinai** 奶奶
grape **pútáo** 葡萄
grasp **zhuā** 抓
grass **cǎo** 草; (lawn) **cǎodì** 草地
grave (matter) **yánzhòng** 严重
great kindness **shèngqíng** 盛情
Great Wall **chángchéng** 长城
green tea **lǜchá** 绿茶
ground **dì** 地
grow **zhǎng** 长
guess (v) **cāi** 猜
guest **kèren** 客人
guitar **jítā** 吉它
gun **qiāng** 枪

H

habit **xíguàn** 习惯
had better **zuihǎo** 最好
hair **tóufa** 头发
half **bàn** 半
hand **shǒu** 手; hand in **jiāo** 交
handle **bàn** 办, **nòng** 弄
handsome **piàoliang** 漂亮
hang (up) **guà** 挂
happy **gāoxìng** 高兴, **kuàilè** 快乐;
happy occasion **xǐshì** 喜事
harbour **gǎngkǒu** 港口
hard **yìng** 硬
hard-working **nǔlì** 努力
hare **tù(zì)** 兔(子)
hat **màozi** 帽子
have **yǒu** 有; have a bath **xǐzǎo**
洗澡; have a fever **fāshāo** 发烧;
have a meal **chīfàn** 吃饭; have an
appointment with **jiàn** 见; have an
injection **dǎzhēn** 打针; have an
operation **kāidāo** 开刀 have to
bìxū 必须, **deí** 得
he/him **tā** 他
head (chief) **zhǎng** 长
healthy **jiànkāng** 健康
heaven **tiānkōng** 天空; Heavens **tiān**
na 天哪!
heavy **zhòng** 重; heavy rain **dà yǔ**
大雨; heavy snow **dà xuě** 大雪

hedge **shùlí** 树篱
hello **nǐ hǎo** 你好; (on telephone)
wèi 喂
help **bāng(zhù)** 帮(助); help oneself
zìjǐ lái 自己来
her/hers **tā de** 她的
here **zhèr** 这儿, **zài cǐ** 在此
hey **wèi** 喂
hide **duǒ** 躲
hi-fi **yīnxiǎng** 音响
high **gāo** 高
hill **shān** 山, hillside **shānpō** 山坡
Himalayas **xǐmǎlāyǎ shān** 喜马拉雅山
his **tā de** 他的
history **lìshǐ** 历史
hit **dǎ** 打; hit out at people **dǎ rén**
打人
hoarse **yǎ** 哑
hold (in hand) **ná** 拿; (a meeting
etc.) **kāi** 开, **jǔ xíng** 举行
hole **dòng** 洞
home **jiā** 家; at home **zài jiā** 在家
honest **lǎoshi** 老实
honestly **zhēn de** 真的
hope (n/v) **xīwàng** 希望
horn (of a car) **lǎba** 喇叭
horse **mǎ** 马; horses **mǎpǐ** 马匹
hospitable **kuāndài** 款待
hospital **yīyuàn** 医院; hospital ward
bìngfáng 病房
host (v) **qǐngkè** 请客
hot **rè** 热; (peppery) **là** 辣
hour **xiǎoshí** 小时, **zhōngtóu** 钟头
house **fángzi** 房子; (v) **zhù de xià**
住得下
how (extent) **duō(me)** 多(么); how
big **duō dà** 多大; how far **duō**
yuǎn 多远; how long (of time) **duō**
jiǔ 多久, **duō cháng (shíjiān)** 多长
(时间); how many **duōshǎo** 多少,
jǐ 几; how much **duōshǎo** 多少
how (in what way) **zěnmeyàng** 怎么
样, **zěnmeyàng** 怎么, **zěnyàng** 怎样,
rúhé 如何
how about **rúhé** 如何, **zěnmeyàng**
怎么样
hum (a tune) **hēng** 哼
hundred **bǎi** 百

hungry è 饿
hurry ahead/along gǎnlù 赶路
hurt téng 疼
husband zhàngfu 丈夫; husband and
wife fūfù 夫妇
hydrogen qīng 氢

I

I wǒ 我
ice cream bīngjīlíng 冰激凌
idea xiǎngfǎ 想法, kànfǎ 看法
ideal lǐ xiǎng 理想
idler xiánrén 闲人
illness bìng 病, bìngtòng 病痛
immediately mǎshàng 马上
immigrant/emigrant yímín 移民
important zhòngyào 重要
impression yìnxiàng 印象
in zài 在, yú 于, ... lǐ 里, ... (zhī
zhōng 之中); in accordance with
ànzhào 按照; in good order
zhěngqí 整齐; in one breath
yīkǒuqì 一口气; in one's heart
xīnzhōng 心中; in order to wèile
为了; in the future jiānglái 将来;
in the past guò qù 过去, qián 前;
in three days' time dà hòutiān
大后天; in what way zěnmeyàng
怎么样
inch cùn 寸
incident shì(r) 事(儿)
increase (v) jiā 加
individual gèrén 个人
industrious nǔlì 努力, qínfèn
勤奋
inform gàosu 告诉
information xìnxi 信息
injured shòushāng 受伤
inside lǐ 里, lǐbian 里边, lǐmiàn 里面,
lǐtou 里头
intelligent cōngmíng 聪明
interesting yǒu yìsi 有意思, yǒuqù
有趣
intersection lùkǒu 路口
invite qǐng 请; (guests) qǐngkè 请客
issue (forth) fāchū 发出
it tā 它
Italy yìdàlì 意大利

J

jacket wàitào 外套
January yīyuè 一月
Japan rìběn 日本
Japanese (language) rìyǔ 日语;
(people) rìběn rén 日本人
jeans niúzáikù 牛仔褲
jewellery shǒushi 首饰
John yuēhàn 约翰
joke (v) kāi wánxiào 开玩笑
journey lùchéng 路程
jump tiào 跳
June liùyuè 六月
just zhèng 正, zhǐ shì 只是; just/in
the process of ... ing (zhèng)zài
(正)在
just (now) gāngcái 刚才, gānggāng
刚刚, gāng 刚
justifiable, be justifiable shuō de
guòqù 说得过去

K

keep fàng 放; (rear) yǎng 养
key yàoshi 钥匙
kick tī 踢
kilogram gōngjīn 公斤
kilometre gōnglǐ 公里
kind rèqíng 热情
kitchen chúfáng 厨房
kitten xiǎo māo 小猫
knife dāo 刀
knock pèng 碰, qiāo 敲
know zhīdao 知道; (recognise)
rènshi 认识; know (very) well
shú/shóuxī 熟悉
knowledge zhīshi 知识

L

lack chà 差
lad xiǎo huózi 小伙子
lake hú 湖
lamb yángrou 羊肉
lamp dēng 灯
landscape painting shānshuǐhuà
山水画
large dà 大
last shàng 上; last night zuó wǎn
昨晚; last year qùnián 去年

late **wǎn** 晚, **chí** 迟; arrive late
chídào 迟到
later **yǐhòu** 以后, **zhīhòu** 之后
laugh **xiào** 笑
laughable **hǎoxiào** 好笑
laundry **xǐyīdiǎn** 洗衣店
lead to **tōng** 通
learn **xué(xí)** 学(习); learn by heart
bèi 背; learn from **xiàng** ... **xuéxí**
向... 学习
lease **zū** 租
leather shoes **píxié** 皮鞋
leave **líkāi** 离开, **zǒu** 走; leave for
kāiwǎng 开往; leave behind **liú xià**
留下
Leeds **lìzī** 利兹
left (side) **zuǒ** 左, **zuǒbian** 左边,
zuǒmiàn 左面
leg **tuǐ** 腿
lend **jiè** 借
let, allow **ràng** 让
letter **xìn** 信; (incoming) **láixìn** 来信;
(of recommendation) **tuijiàn xìn**
推荐信
library **túshūguǎn** 图书馆; library
card **túshūzhèng** 图书证
lie **tǎng** 躺; (tell a lie) **sāhuǎng** 撒谎
life **shēnghuó** 生活
life-guard **jiùshēnghuóyuán** 救生员
lift **diàntī** 电梯
light (opposite of heavy) **qīng** 轻
light, lamp **dēng** 灯
like, be fond of **xǐhuan** 喜欢
like that **nàme** 那么, **nàyàng** 那样
like this **zhème** 这么, **zhèyàng** 这样
likeable **kě'ài** 可爱
likely to **huì** 会
lion **shīzi** 狮子
listen **tīng** 听; (understand) **tīng**
dǒng 听懂
litchi/lychee **lìzhī** 荔枝
literature **wénxué** 文学
litter **lājī** 垃圾; litter bin/garbage bin
lājītǒng 垃圾桶
little **xiǎo** 小; a little **xiē** 些, **yīdiǎnr**
一点儿, **yīxiē** 一些
live **shēnghuó** 生活; live (reside)
zhù 住

living **huó** 活
London **lúndūn** 伦敦
long **cháng** 长
long to **bābudé** 巴不得
look (at) **kàn** 看, **qiáo** 瞧; look after
guǎn 管, **kān** 看, **kānguǎn** 看管,
zhàogu 照顾; look down on
kànbuqǐ 看不起; look for **zhǎo** 找;
look into **yánjiū** 研究; look round
cānguān 参观
lose **diū** 丢; (a bet) **shū** 输; lose hope
shīwàng 失望; lose one's voice **yǎ**
哑; lose weight **jiǎnféi** 减肥
lot of, a lot of **xǔduō** 许多
lovely **kě'ài** 可爱
low **ǎi** 矮
luggage **xíngli** 行李; luggage rack
xínglijīa 行李架
luncheon meat **wǔcānròu** 午餐肉
lychee/litchi **lìzhī** 荔枝
lyrics **gēcí** 歌词

M

made up of **zǔchéng** 组成
mah-jong **májiàng** 麻将
main road **dàlù** 大路
make **nòng** 弄; (a phone call) **dǎ** 打;
(dumplings) **bāo** 包; (friends) **jiāo**
交; make a noise **chǎo** 吵; make sb
do sth **jiào** 叫
manage **bàndào** 办到; manage by
oneself **lái** 来
manager **jīnglǐ** 经理
Manchester **mànchéng** 曼城
mandarin ducks **yuānyang** 鸳鸯
manner, bearing **jǔzhǐ** 举止
many **duō** 多, **bù shǎo** 不少, **xǔduō**
许多
map **dìtú** 地图
March **sānyuè** 三月
market **shāngchǎng** 商场, **shìchǎng**
市场
marry **jiéhūn** 结婚
Mary **mǎlì** 玛丽
match (contest) **bǐsài** 比赛, **qiú sài** 球
赛; (safety) **huǒchái** 火柴
matter **shì(r)** 事(儿), **shìqing** 事情
may **kě(yì)** 可(以), **néng** 能

May **wǔyuè** 五月
me **wǒ** 我
meadow **cǎodì** 草地
meat **ròu** 肉
medicine **yào** 药
meet (sb) (at an airport, etc.) **jiē** 接
meet **jiànmiàn** 见面; (sb at an airport, etc.)
meeting **huì(yì)** 会(议)
merit (v) **zhíde** 值得
messenger **láirén** 来人
meteorological **qìxiàng** 气象
method **bànfǎ** 办法, **fāngfǎ** 方法, **zuòfǎ** 做法
metre **gōngchǐ** 公尺
midday **zhōngwǔ** 中午
middle, the middle **zhōngjiān** 中间
midnight **bànyè** 半夜
mile **yīnglǐ** 英里
milk **niúǎi** 牛奶
million **bǎiwàn** 百万
mine **wǒ de** 我的
minibus **miànbāochē** 面包车; **xiǎobā** 小巴
mishandle **nòng** 弄
misplace **diū** 丢
miss, be late for (a bus, train, etc.) **wù** 误
Miss **nǚshì** 女士, **xiǎojiě** 小姐
mist **wù** 雾
modern **xiàndài** 现代
Monday **lǐbài yī** 礼拜一, **xīngqī yī** 星期一
money **qián** 钱
monkey **hóu(zi)** 猴(子)
month **yuè** 月; beginning of the month **yuèchū** 月初; end of the month **yuèdǐ** 月底
moon **yuè** 月, **yuèliang** 月亮
more **duō**; more and more ... **yuè lái yuè ...** 越来越...; the more ... the more ... **yuè ... yuè ...** 越... 越...
morning **zǎoshang** 早上, **shàngwǔ** 上午
most **zuì** 最
mother **māma** 妈妈, **mǔqīn** 母亲
motorbike **mótuōchē** 摩托车

mountain **shān** 山
mouse/rat **lǎoshǔ** 老鼠
mouth **kǒu** 口, **zuǐba** 嘴巴
move **dòng** 动; (home) **bān** 搬
movie **diànyǐng** 电影
mow the grass **gē cǎo** 割草
Mr **xiānsheng** 先生
Mrs **tàitai** 太太
Ms **nǚ shì** 女士
much **duō**, **xǔduō** 许多; much more (complement) **dé duō** 得多
multi-coloured **hónghóng lǜlǜ** 红红绿绿
multi-storied building **dàlóu** 大楼
mum **māma** 妈妈
museum **bówùguǎn** 博物馆
music **yīnyuè** 音乐, (musical composition) **yuèqǔ** 乐曲
must **bìxū** 必须, **yào** 要
must not **bù dé** 不得
my, mine **wǒ de** 我的

N

name: what is your name (polite form) **guì xìng** 贵姓
nanny **bǎomǔ** 保姆
narrow **xiázhǎi** 狭窄
naughty **bù guāi** 不乖, **tiáopí** 调皮
near **jìn** 近; near(by) **fùjìn** 附近
need to **yào** 要
neighbour **línjū** 邻居
nervous **jǐnzhāng** 紧张
never **cóng bù** 从不; never again **bù zài** 不再
new **xīn** 新; New Year **xīnnián** 新年
news **xiāoxi** 消息, **xīnwén** 新闻
newspaper **bào(zhǐ)** 报(纸)
next **xià** 下; next year **míngnián** 明年; next to **pángbian** 旁边; next door **gébì** 隔壁
nice/good to drink **hǎohē** 好喝
nice/pleasant to the ear **hǎotīng** 好听
night **yè** 夜; (opposite of daytime) **hēiyè** 黑夜; all night **yī yè** 一夜
nine **jiǔ** 九
no **bù** 不, **bù shì** 不是; no less than **zú zú** 足足; no longer/more **bù zài** 不再; no need **bù bì** 不必, **bù yòng**

不用; no room for **zuò bu xià** 坐不下; no wonder **guàibude** 怪不得
no(t) more ... than **bù bǐ** 不比
nod (the head) **diǎntóu** 点头
none of your business **nǐ bié guǎn**
你别管
noon **zhōngwǔ** 中午
north (side) **běibiān** 北边, **běimiàn**
北面
nose **bízi** 鼻子
not **bù** 不, **méi** 没; not
allow(ed)/permit(ted) **bù zhǔn**
不准, **bù xǔ** 不许; not -er than
bù bǐ 不比;
not have **méi(yǒu)** 没(有); not ...
until **cái** 才
notebook **běn(zì)** 本(子)
notice **tōngzhī** 通知
notify **tōngzhī** 通知
novel **xiǎoshuō** 小说
November **shíyīyuè** 十一月
now **xiànzài** 现在
number of people **rén shù** 人数
nurse **hùshi** 护士

O

o'clock **diǎn zhōng** 点钟
obedient **guāi** 乖
obtain **dédào** 得到
of course **dāngrán** 当然
off (as a complement) **zǒu** 走
office **bàngōngshì** 办公室
often **chángcháng** 常常
old **lǎo** 老, **jiù** 旧; (of age) **dà** 大
Olympic Games **àolínpǐkè**
yùndònghuì 奥林匹克运动会
on **yú** 于, **zài** 在, **shang** 上; on the
ground **dìxià** 地下; on all sides
sìzhōu 四周; on behalf of **tì** 替;
on duty **zhíbān** 值班; on one's
best behaviour **hǎohǎor** 好好儿;
on one's person **shēn shang**
身上; on the basis of **gēnjù** 根据,
píng 凭
one **yī** 一, **yāo** 幺
once, one time **yíxià** 一下
one hundred million **yì** 亿
oneself **zìjǐ** 自己, **gèrén** 个人

only **zhǐ** 只, **zhǐ yǒu** 只有, only
zhǐshì 只是, **bùguò** 不过 (just)
gānggāng 刚刚; only if **zhǐ yǒu**
只有; only then **cái** 才
open **kāi** 开; (door) **kāimén** 开门;
(for business) **yíngyè** 营业
opinion **kànfǎ** 看法, **yìjiàn** 意见
opportunity **jīhuì** 机会
opposite **duìmiàn** 对面
or **huòzhě** 或者; (in questions) **háishi**
还是
orange **chéngzi** 橙子
order **jiào** 叫
ordinary **pǔtōng** 普通
other people **biéren** 别人; other
places **wàidì** 外地
others **biéren** 别人; (the rest) **qítā**
其他
ought to **gāi** 该, **yīnggāi** 应该; ought
not to **bù gāi** 不该
our/ours **women de** 我们的;
(including the listener) **zánmen de**
咱们的
out (of) **chūlái** 出来, **chūqù** 出去; out
of **yóu** 由; out of the question **tán**
bu shàng 谈不上; out of work
shīyè 失业
outcome **jiéguǒ** 结果
out-of-date **jiù** 旧
out-of-town (areas) **chéng wài** 城外
outside **wài** 外, **wàibiān** 外边,
wàimian 外面, **wàitou** 外头;
outside the city **chéng wài** 城外
oven **kǎoxiāng** 烤箱
over **shang** 上
overcast **yīn** 阴
overcoat **dàyī** 大衣
overcome **kèfú** 克服, **zhànshèng**
战胜
owing to **yóuyú** 由于
ox **niú** 牛
oxygen **yǎng** 氧

P

pack (v) **zhuāng** 装
packet **bāo** 包
page **yè** 页
pain **téng** 疼

paint (v) **huà** 画
painter **huàjiā** 画家
painting **huà** 画儿
panda **xióngmāo** 熊猫
paper **zhǐ**, **zhǐzhāng** 纸张
parcel **bāoguó** 包裹
parents **fùmǔ** 父母
Paris **bālí** 巴黎
park **gōngyuán** 公园
park (v) **tíng** 停; park (a car) **tíngchē**
停车
parrot **yīngwǔ** 鹦鹉
party (drinks) **jiùhuì** 酒会; (evening)
wǎnhuì 晚会
pass (time) **guò** 过
pass away **shìshì** 逝世
passenger **chéngkè** 乘客
path **xiǎolù** 小路
pay/salary **gōngzī** 工资
peach **táozi** 桃子
pear **lí** 梨
pearl **zhūzi** 珠子
peasant **nóngmín** 农民
pedestrian **xíng rén** 行人
Peking duck **běijīng kǎoyā** 北京烤鸭;
Peking University **běijīng dàxué**
北京大学
pen **bǐ** 笔
pencil **qiānbǐ** 铅笔
people **rén** 人
peppery **là** 辣
percentage **bǎi fēn zhī** 百分之
perform, performance **biǎoyǎn** 表演,
yǎnchū 演出
permit **ràng** 让
persecute **zhémó** 折磨
perseverance **yìlì** 毅力
person **rén** 人
persuade **quàn** 劝
petrol **qìyóu** 汽油
petty thief **xiǎotōu** 小偷
pharmacy **yàofáng** 药房
photograph **zhàopiàn** 照片
photographer **shèyǐngshī** 摄影师
piano **gāngqín** 钢琴
picture **huà** 画儿
piece of string **shéngzi** 绳子
pig **zhū** 猪

pigeon **gēzi** 鸽子
pillar-box **yóutǒng** 邮筒
place (v) **gē** 搁
plain **pǔsù** 朴素
plan **jìhuà** 计划
plane **fēiji** 飞机
plant (v) **zhòng** 种
platform (in a station) **zhàntái** 站台
play/drama **xì** 戏
play **wánr** 玩儿, **dǎ** 打 (basketball,
table-tennis, etc.); (piano, organ,
harp, etc.) **tán** 弹; (the violin) **lā**
拉; play mah-jong **dǎpái** 打牌; play
with a skipping rope **tiàoshéng**
跳绳
please **qǐng** 请
pleased **gāoxìng** 高兴
pocket **kǒudài** 口袋
polite **kèqì** 客气
pond/pool **chí** 池, **shuǐchí** 水池
population **rénkǒu** 人口
postman **yóudìyuán** 邮递员
post office **yóujú** 邮局
postpone **gǎiqī** 改期
potato **mǎlíngshǔ** 马铃薯
pound (currency) **bàng** 镑; (weight)
bàng 磅
pour out (tea) **dào** 倒
practice **dǎ** 打
Prague **bùlāgē** 布拉格
precisely **zhèng** 正
present (n) **lǐwù** 礼物
pretty **hǎokàn** 好看, **piàoliang** 漂亮
previous **qián** 前, **shàng** 上
previously **yǐqián** 以前
prize/prize money **jiǎng** 奖
problem **wèntí** 问题
profound **shēnkè** 深刻
programme **jiémù** 节目
prosperous **wàng** 旺
pub **jiǔbājiān** 酒吧间
public square **guǎngchǎng** 广场
pull **lā** 拉
purse **qiánbāo** 钱包
put **fàng** 放, **gē** 搁; put back **fàng huí**
放回; put forward **tí** 提, **tí chū**
提出; put up (a house) **gài** 盖
Pyramids **jīnzìtǎ** 金字塔

Q

quarrel **chǎo(jià)** 吵(架)
 quarter of an hour **kè** 刻
 question **wèntí** 问题, **tímù** 题目
 queue (v) **páiduì** 排队
 quick **kuài** 快
 quiet **ānjìng** 安静, **jìng** 静
 quieten down **ānjìng** 安静
 quilt **bèizi** 被子
 quite a few **bù shǎo** 不少

R

rabbit **tù(zi)** 兔(子)
 railway station **huǒchēzhàn** 火车站
 rain **yǔ** 雨, (v) **xià yǔ** 下雨
 raise **tí chū** 提出
 rat/mouse **lǎoshǔ** 老鼠
 reach **dàodá** 到达
 read **dú** 读, **kàn** 看
 reading room **yuèlǎnshì** 阅览室
 real **zhēn** 真; real situation
zhēnxiàng 真相
 really **quèshí** 确实, **zhēn** 真
 rear **hòubian** 后边, **hòumian** 后面,
hòutou 后头
 rear/keep **yǎng** 养
 reason **dàoli** 道理
 recall **jì** 记
 recline **tǎng** 躺
 recognise **rènshi** 认识
 record **jìlù** 记录
 red **hóng** 红
 reduce **jiǎnshǎo** 减少
 regarding **guānyú** 关于
 regulation **guīdìng** 规定, **tiáolì** 条例
 remember **jì** 记, **jìde** 记得
 remit **huì** 汇
 rent (v) **zū** 租
 repair (v) **xiū(lǐ)** 修(理)
 reply **huí** 回, **huída** 回答
 request **yāoqiú** 要求
 research **yánjiū** 研究
 reside **zhù** 住
 resolve **jiějué** 解决
 responsible for **fùzé** 负责
 rest **xiūxi** (v) 休息
 restaurant **cānguǎn** 餐馆, **fànguǎn**
 饭馆

result **jiéguǒ** 结果
 return (to a place) **huí** 回; (to one's
 country) **huí guó** 回国; (give back)
huán 还
 revise (lessons) **fùxí** 复习
 rice **mǐ** 米; (cooked) **fàn** 饭
 rich **yǒuqián** 有钱
 ride **qí** 骑
 ridiculous **hǎoxiào** 好笑
 rifle **qiāng** 枪
 right **duì** 对
 right-hand side, to the right (of)
yòubian 右边, **yòumiàn** 右面
 ripe **shú/shóu** 熟
 ripen **shóu/shú** 熟
 rise **qǐlái** 起来, **shēng** 升; (of the sun)
chū lái 出来
 river **hé** 河
 riverside **hé biān** 河边
 road **lù** 路, **mǎlù** 马路; by the side of
 the road **lù biān** 路边
 roadside **lù páng** 路旁
 roast **kǎo** 烤
 Rome **luómǎ** 罗马
 roof **wūding** 屋顶
 room **fángjiān** 房间, **wūzi** 屋子
 rope **shéngzi** 绳子
 rose **méiguī (huā)** 玫瑰(花)
 round (in shape) **yuán** 圆
 rucksack **bēibāo** 背包
 rule (n) **tiáolì** 条例
 run **pǎo** 跑; run after **gǎn** 赶;
 run/bump into (someone)
pèngjiàn 碰见
 rush for **gǎn** 赶
 Russia **éguó** 俄国
 Russian (language) **éyǔ** 俄语

S

safe and sound **píng'ān** 平安
 safe/strongbox **bǎoxiànguì** 保险柜
 salary **gōngzī** 工资
 salt **yán** 盐
 same, the same **yīyàng** 一样
 sand **shā** 沙
 sandwich **sānmíngzhì** 三明治
 Saturday **lǐbài liù** 礼拜六, **xīngqī liù**
 星期六

say **shuō** 说, **jiǎng** 讲
scarf **wéijīn** 围巾
scenery **fēngjǐng** 风景
school **xuéxiào** 学校; school bag
shūbāo 书包; school/academic
year **xuénián** 学年
scissors **jiǎndāo** 剪刀
score (a goal) **jìn qiú** 进球
sea **hǎi** 海
seagull **hǎi'ōu** 海鸥
seal **hǎibào** 海豹
seaside **hǎi biān** 海边, **hǎibīn** 海滨
seat **zuòwèi** 座位
secondary school **zhōngxué** 中学
see **jiàn** 见, **kàn** 看, **kànjian** 看见
sell **mài** 卖
seminar **zuótánhuì** 座谈会
send **jì** 寄
September **jiǔyuè** 九月
serious (of composure) **yánsù** 严肃
serious **yánzhòng** 严重
serve as **dāng** 当
set off/out **chūfā** 出发; **qǐchéng** 起程;
dòngshēn 动身
seven **qī** 七
shadow boxing **tàijíquán** 太极拳
Shanghai **shànghǎi** 上海
shark **shāyú** 鲨鱼
shave **guā húzi** 刮胡子, **tì húzi** 剃胡子
she/her **tā** 她
sheep/goat **yáng** 羊
sheet (for bed) **chuángdān** 床单
ship **chuán** 船
shipping **chuánzhī** 船只
shirt **chènshān** 衬衫
shoe **xié(zi)** 鞋(子)
shoot (a film) **pāi** 拍
shop **diàn** 店, **shāngdiàn** 商店
shopping mall (**dà**) **shāngchǎng** (大)
商场
shore **àn** 岸
short **duǎn** 短; (of stature) **ǎi** 矮
short cut **jìnlù** 近路; short hair
duǎn fà 短发
should **gāi** 该, **yīnggāi** 应该
shoulder **jiānbǎng** 肩膀
show **biǎoshì** 表示; (perform) **yǎnchū**
演出

sick leave **bìngjià** 病假
side **biān** 边, **páng** 旁; at/by the side
of **biān** 边, **pángbian** 旁边
simple **pǔsù** 朴素
since **cóng(... qǐ)** 从(... 起)
sing **chàng** 唱; sing (a song) **chànggē**
唱歌
sister-in-law (elder brother's wife)
sǎosao 嫂嫂
sit **zuò** 坐; sit down **zuò xià** 坐下
six **liù** 六
size: what size (shoes, etc.) **duō dà**
多大
skilful in **huì** 会
skip with a rope **tiàoshéng** 跳绳
skirt **qúnzi** 裙子
sky **tiānkōng** 天空; **tiānshàng** 天上
sleep **shuì** 睡, **shuìjiào** 睡觉; sleep in
shuì lǎn jiào 睡懒觉
slippery **huá** 滑
slogan **biāoyǔ** 标语
slow(ly) **màn** 慢
small **xiǎo** 小; small town **zhèn** 镇
smile **xiào** 笑
smoke (cigarettes) **chōuyān** 抽烟,
xīyān 吸烟
snake **shé** 蛇
snow **xuě** 雪; (v) **xià xuě** 下雪
so **nàme** 那么, **nàyàng** 那样, **zhème**
这么, **zhèyàng** 这样; so that **wèile**
为了
soaked (drenched) **lín shī** 淋湿
soap **féizào** 肥皂
soccer **zúqiú** 足球; soccer field
zúqiúchǎng 足球场; soccer match
zúqiúsài 足球赛
society **shèhuì** 社会
sock **wǎzi** 袜子
sofa **shāfā** 沙发
soft **ruǎn** 软
solution **dá'àn** 答案
solve **jiějué** 解决
some **yīxiē** 一些, **xiē** 些
somebody **rén** 人
someone else **rénjia** 人家
son **érzi** 儿子
song **gē(r)** 歌(儿)
sorry, I'm sorry **duìbuqǐ** 对不起

sound **shēng** 声, **shēngyīn** 声音
sour **suān** 酸
south **nán** 南; the south **nánbian**
南边, **nánmiàn** 南面
soya bean **huángdòu** 黄豆
speak **shuō** 说, **jiǎng** 讲, **shuōhuà** 说话
specially **tèyì** 特意
spectacles **yǎnjìng** 眼镜
spend **huā** 花
sports field/ground **yùndòngchǎng** 运
动场, **cāochǎng** 操场; sports
meeting, games **yùndònghuì** 运动
会; sports shoes **qiúxié** 球鞋,
yùndòngxié 运动鞋
spotlessly clean **gāngānjìngjìng**
干干净净
spring **chūntiān** 春天
square **fāng** 方
squirrel **sōngshǔ** 松鼠
stammer **jiēba** 结巴; stammering
jiējiēbābā 结结巴巴
stand **zhàn** 站
stand to reason **jiǎng dào** 讲道理
start **kāishǐ** 开始
starving **è sǐ le** 饿死了
station **zhàn** 站; (for train, bus)
chēzhàn 车站
stay **dāi** 呆/待; stay behind **liú xià**
留下
steamed bun **mántou** 馒头
still **hái** 还; still -er **hái (yào)** 还(要)
stipulate **guīdìng** 规定
stone **shítou** 石头
stop **tíng** 停, **zhàn** 站
storey (of a building) **lóu** 楼
story **gùshi** 故事
stove fire **lúhuǒ** 炉火
straight **yīzhí** 一直, **zhí** 直
strawberry **cǎoméi** 草莓
street **jiē** 街, **jiēdào** 街道, **lù** 路
strict **yángé** 严格
strike (v) **qiāo** 敲
string **shéngzi** 绳子
strive **nǔlì** 努力
strong (of wind) **dà** 大
strongbox/safe **bǎoxiǎngù** 保险柜
student **xuésheng** 学生
study (v) **xué(xí)** 学(习), **yánjiū** 研究

succeed **chénggōng** 成功
sugar **táng** 糖
suggest, suggestion **jiànyì** 建议
summer **xiàtiān** 夏天; summer time
xiàlìng 夏令
sun **rì** 日, **tàiyáng** 太阳, **yáng** 阳
sunbathe **shài tàiyang** 晒太阳
Sunday **lǐbài rì/tiān** 礼拜日/天;
xīngqī rì/tiān 星期日/天
sunglasses **hēi yǎnjìng** 黑眼镜,
tàiyángjìng 太阳镜
supervisor/tutor **dǎoshī** 导师
supper **wǎnfàn** 晚饭
sure to **huì** 会
surface of the sea/sea level **hǎimiàn**
海面
surname **xìng** 姓
swear (at) **mà** 骂; (at people) **mà rén**
骂人
sweat **hàn** 汗
sweater **máoyī** 毛衣
sweep **dǎsǎo** 打扫
sweet (to the taste) **tián** 甜; (voice,
etc.) **tiánměi** 甜美; sweets **táng** 糖;
sweet potato **fānshǔ** 番薯; sweet-
smelling **xiāng** 香
swim **yóu** 游, **yóuyǒng** 游泳
swimming pool **yóuyǒngchí** 游泳池
symposium **zuótánhuì** 座谈会

T

T'ai Chi **tàijíquán** 太极拳
table **zhuōzi** 桌子
table-tennis **pīngpāngqiú** 乒乓球
tail **wěiba** 尾巴
take **dài** 带, **ná** 拿; (a photograph)
zhào 照, **pāi** 拍; take a test **kǎo** 考;
take care **xiǎoxīn** 小心; take out
tāo (chū) 掏(出); take part in
cānjiā 参加; take your time
mànmàn lái 慢慢来
take-away food **wàimài** 外卖; take-
away (shop) **wàimàidiàn** 外卖店
talk (v) **shuōhuà** 说话, **tán** 谈,
tánhuà/tiān 谈话/天; (n) **huà** 话;
talk about **tándaò** 谈到
tall **gāo** 高
task **rènwu** 任务

tasty **hǎochī** 好吃, (of drink) **hǎohē** 好喝
taxi **dìshì** 的士
tea **chá** 茶; tea leaves **cháyè** 茶叶;
tea party **cháhuì** 茶会
teach **jiǎngkè** 讲课, **jiāo** 教, **jiāoshū** 教书
team **duì** 队; team captain **duìzhǎng** 队长; team member **duìyuán** 队员
tease **dòu** 逗
teeth **yáchǐ** 牙齿
telephone **diànhuà** 电话
television **diànshì** 电视; television set **diànshìjī** 电视机
tell **gàosu** 告诉, **shuō** 说; (ask to) **jiào** 叫; tell a lie **sāhuǎng** 撒谎
ten **shí** 十
ten thousand **wàn** 万
tennis **wǎngqiú** 网球
tension **jǐnzhāng** 紧张
test (v) **kǎo** 考
text **kèwén** 课文
Thames **tàiwùshì hé** 泰晤士河
thank **gǎnxiè** 感谢; thank you **xièxiè** 谢谢
that **nà/nèi** 那
the rest **qítā** 其他
theatre **jùchǎng** 剧场; theatre ticket **xìpiào** 戏票
their(s) (m) **tāmen de** 他们的, (f) **tāmen de** 她们的
then **jiù** 就
theory **lǐlùn** 理论
there **nàr** 那儿
there is/are **yǒu** 有; there is/are not **méi(yǒu)** 没(有); there is/are still (some left) **háiyǒu** 还有
these **zhèxiē** 这些
they/them (f) **tāmen** 她们, (m) **tāmen** 他们, (neuter) **tāmen** 它们
thin **shòu** 瘦
thing **dōngxī** 东西
think **xiǎng** 想, **rènwéi** 认为; think highly of **kàn de qǐ** 看得起
this **zhè/zhèi** 这; this evening **jīn wǎn** 今晚; this morning **jīn zǎo** 今早
those **nàxiē/nèixiē** 那些
thousand **qiān** 千

thread **xiàn** 线
three **sān** 三; three days ago **dà qiántiān** 大前天; three years ago **dà qiánnián** 大前年
throat **hóulóng** 喉咙, **sǎngzi** 嗓子
throw **rēng** 扔; throw away **diào** 掉
thunder **léi** 雷
Thursday **lǐbài sì** 礼拜四, **xīngqī sì** 星期四
ticket **piào** 票
tidy **zhěngqí** 整齐; tidy (up) **shōushi** 收拾
tiger **lǎohu** 老虎; (sign of the zodiac) **hǔ** 虎
time **shíhou** 时候, **shíjiān** 时间; in time for **lái de jí** 来得及; what time is it **jǐ diǎn (zhōng)** 几点(钟)
tin, can **guàntou** 罐头
tip (rubbish) (v) **dào** 倒
tipsy **zuìxūnxūn** 醉醺醺
tired **lèi** 累
to **cháo** 朝, **duì** 对, **xiàng** 向; to sb **gēn** 跟; to/for sb **gěi** 给; to and fro **lái lái wǎng wǎng** 来来往往
today **jīntiān** 今天
together **yìqǐ** 一起
toilet **cèsuǒ** 厕所
tomorrow **míngtiān** 明天; tomorrow evening **míng wǎn** 明晚
too **tài** 太; too (also) **yě** 也; too late for **lái bu jí** 来不及
toothbrush **yáshuā** 牙刷
topic **tímù** 题目
torment (v) **zhémó** 折磨
touch **dòng** 动, **pèng** 碰
tour **lǚxíng/yóu** 旅行/游
towards **cháo** 朝, **duì** 对, **wǎng/wàng** 往, **xiàng** 向
towel **máojīn** 毛巾
town **chéng** 城
toy **wánjù** 玩具
traffic **jiāotōng** 交通
train **huǒchē** 火车
train (v) **xùnliàn** 训练; training session **xùnliàn** 训练
translate, translation **fānyì** 翻译
travel by (boat, plane, train, bus etc.) **zuò** 坐, **dā** 搭

tree **shù** 树, **shùmù** 树木
trousers **kù(zi)** 裤(子)
true **zhēn** 真, **zhēnshí** 真实; true
situation **zhēnxiàng** 真相
truly **zhēn** 真
trunk **xiāngzi** 箱子
truth **shíhuà** 实话
try hard **nǔlì** 努力
Tuesday **lǐbài èr** 礼拜二, **xīngqī èr**
星期二

tune **qǔzi** 曲子
turn (v) **guāi** 拐
tutor **dǎoshī** 导师
two **èr** 二, **liǎng** 两
type (v) **dǎzì** 打字

U

umbrella **sǎn** 伞, **yǔsǎn** 雨伞
uncle (father's elder brother)
bóbo 伯伯; (father's younger
brother) **shūshu** 叔叔; (husband
of mother's sister) **yízhàng** 姨丈;
(mother's brother) **jiùjiu** 舅舅;
(husband of father's sister)
gūzhàng 姑丈
unconcerned person **xiánrén** 闲人
under **dǐxia** 底下, **xià** 下, **xiàbian**
下边, **xiàmian** 下面, **xiàtou** 下头
underground **dìxià** 地下
understand **dǒng** 懂, **liǎojiě** 了解,
míngbai 明白; (by listening) **tīng**
dǒng 听懂
unemployed **shīyè** 失业
university **dàxué** 大学
unpleasant to hear **nántīng** 难听
until **dào** 到
up **shàng** 上; **qǐ** 起, **qǐlái** 起来; up to
yóu 由; up till now **dào xiànzài**
到现在
upstairs **lóushàng** 楼上
upward **shàngqù** 上去, upward
shànglái 上来
urge **quàn** 劝
us **wǒmen** 我们, (including the
listener) **zánmen** 咱们
USA **měiguó** 美国
use **yòng** 用
useful **yǒuyòng** 有用

V

vacuum-clean **xīchén** 吸尘
van **miànbāochē** 面包车
vase **huāpíng** 花瓶
vegetable **cài** 菜; vegetables **shūcài**
蔬菜; vegetable garden **càiyuán**
菜园; vegetable oil **càiyóu** 菜油
vegetarian **chīsù** 吃素
vehicle **chēliàng** 车辆
very **hěn** 很
vice- **fù** 副
vicinity **fùjìn** 附近, **zhōuwéi** 周围
video camera **shèxiàngjī** 摄像机
view **yìjiàn** 意见
view (opinion) **yìjiàn** 意见, **kànfǎ**
看法
vigorous **wàng** 旺
village **xiāngcūn** 乡村
violin **xiǎotíqín** 小提琴
visit **cānguān** 参观, **fǎngwèn** 访问,
kàn 看, **tànwàng** 探望
visitor **kèrén** 客人
voice **sǎngzi** 嗓子

W

wages **gōngzī** 工资
wait (for) **děng** 等
walk **zǒu** 走, **zǒulù** 走路
wall **qiáng** 墙
want **xiǎng** 想, **yào** 要
ward (hospital) **bìngfáng** 病房
wardrobe **yīguì** 衣柜
warm **nuǎn** 暖, **nuǎnhuo** 暖和;
warmhearted **rèqíng** 热情
wash **xǐ** 洗
washing-machine **xǐyījī** 洗衣机
watch **kàn** 看
watch (wristwatch) **shǒubiǎo** 手表,
biǎo 表
water **shuǐ** 水; (v) **jiāo** 浇, **jiāo shuǐ**
浇水
watermelon **xīguā** 西瓜
wave (v) **zhāoshǒu** 招手
way of doing something **zuòfǎ** 做法
we **wǒmen** 我们; (including the
listener) **zánmen** 咱们
weak **ruǎn** 软
wear (clothes) **chuān** 穿, **dài** 戴

weather **tiānqì** 天气; weather
forecast **qìxiàng yùbào** 气象预报
wedding ceremony **hūnlǐ** 婚礼
Wednesday **lǐbài sān** 礼拜三, **xīngqī sān** 星期三
week **lǐbài** 礼拜, **xīngqī** 星期
weekend **zhōumò** 周末
welcome **huānyíng** 欢迎
well known **yǒumíng** 有名
west (side) **xībian** 西边, **xīmian** 西面
wet **shī** 湿
whale **jīngyú** 鲸鱼
what **shénme** 什么
when (as) **dāng** 当; (question)
shénme shíhou 什么时候, **jǐ shí**
几时
where **nǎr** 哪儿
which **nǎ/nèi** 哪; (plural) **nǎ xiē**
哪些
while: (for) a while **yíhuìr** 一会儿,
yíxià 一下
white **bái** 白
who, whom **shéi/shuí** 谁
whole **quán** 全, **zhěng** 整; whole
family **quán jiā** 全家; the whole
day **zhěngtiān** 整天; the whole
evening **zhěng wǎn** 整晚; the
whole year **zhěngnián** 整年
whose **shéi/shuí de** 谁的
why **wèishénme** 为什么
wide **kuān** 宽
wife **qīzi** 妻子, **tàitai** 太太, **fūren**
夫人
willing (to) **yuàn(yi)** 愿(意), **kěn** 肯
willpower **yìlì** 毅力
win (a prize) **zhòng** 中
wind **fēng** 风
window **chuāng(hu)** 窗(户); window
sill **chuāngtái** 窗台
windy **guā fēng** 刮风
wine **jiǔ** 酒
winter **dōngtiān** 冬天
wipe **cā** 擦, **mā** 抹
wish **zhù** 祝
with **gēn** 跟, **hé** 和, **tóng** 同, **yǔ** 与;
(using) **yòng** 用
without reason **wúgù** 无故

witty **dòu** 逗
wok **guō** 锅
wolf **láng** 狼
word **zì** 字
words **huà** 话; (of a song) **gēcí** 歌词
work **gōngzuò** 工作; work as **dāng**
当; work hard **nǔlì** 努力; will
do/work **xíng de tōng** 行得通;
won't do/work **xíng bu tōng**
行不通
world **shìjiè** 世界
worry (about) **cāoxīn** 操心, **dānxīn**
担心
worth **zhíde** 值得
would like to **xiǎng** 想
write **xiě** 写; writing brush **máobǐ**
毛笔; writing paper **xìnzhǐ** 信纸
wrong **cuò** 错

Y

Yangtze River **chángjiāng** 长江
year **nián** 年; school year **niánjí** 年
级; all the year round **zhěngnián**
整年; the year after next **hòunián**
后年; the year before last **qiánnián**
前年; the year of the pig **zhū nián**
猪年
years of age **sù** 岁
yellow **huáng** 黄; the Yellow River
huánghé 黄河
yes **duì** 对, **shì de** 是的
yesterday **zuótiān** 昨天; yesterday
evening **zuó wǎn** 昨晚
yet **hái** 还
you **nǐ** 你; (polite form) **nín** 您;
(plural) **nǐmen** 你们
young lady **xiǎojiě** 小姐; young man
qīngnián 青年
younger brother **dìdì** 弟弟; younger
sister **mèimei** 妹妹
youngster **xiǎohuózi** 小伙子
your(s) **nǐ de** 你的; (plural) **nǐ men**
de 你们的

Z

zero **líng** 零
zoo **dòngwùyuán** 动物园

GLOSSARY OF GRAMMATICAL TERMS

- adjectives** Words used to describe, define or evaluate qualities or characteristics associated with nouns, such as ‘big’, ‘green’, ‘good’. Gradable adjectives are adjectives that generally can be modified by a degree adverb. That is, they can be graded to varying degrees using a range of adverbs such as ‘very’, ‘extremely’, etc. Non-gradable adjectives are usually not modifiable by degree adverbs as they have more absolute meanings (e.g. ‘male’, ‘female’, ‘square’, ‘black’) and define rather than describe.
- adverbial** In Chinese, a word or phrase placed directly before a verb to modify it, usually providing background information such as time, location, means, method, manner, etc. (e.g. ‘yesterday’, ‘in London’, ‘by train’, ‘with chopsticks’, ‘slowly’, etc.).
- apposition** When two nouns (or noun phrases) are placed next to each other to indicate the same entity, the second being in apposition to the first (e.g. Gordon Brown, the Prime Minister, etc.).
- article** A word like ‘a’, ‘an’, or ‘the’ in English which assigns definite or indefinite reference to the noun that follows it.
- aspect markers** The functional words 了 **le**, 过 **guo**, 着 **zhe** and 在 **zài** which are closely associated with verbs. 了 **le**, 过 **guo** and 着 **zhe** are suffixed to the verb, and 在 **zài** immediately precedes it; they indicate the aspectual notions of completion, immediate or past experience, simultaneousness, persistence, and continuation. Chinese aspect markers are NOT indicators of tense. Tense is specified by time expressions placed before the verb or at the beginning of the sentence.
- attitudinal verb** In Chinese, a verb which reflects the speaker’s attitude. It may be followed by verbal as well as nominal objects (e.g. ‘I *like* tea, I *like* to drink tea’).

- attributive** In Chinese, a word, phrase or clause placed before a noun to qualify or identify it (e.g. ‘*nice weather*’, ‘*a very useful book*’, or a clause ‘*a nobody-will-ever-forget experience*’).
- case** In many languages, the form of a noun, pronoun or adjective changes to indicate its grammatical relationship with other words in the sentence. These forms are called cases. In English, cases only occur in pronouns for the nominative case (I, he, she, we and they) and the accusative case (me, him, her, us and them). They do not occur at all in Chinese.
- causative verb** A verb which causes its object to produce an action or to change state (e.g. ‘*ask him to come*’, ‘*make him happy*’, etc.).
- clause** A term employed to describe a subject-predicate or topic-comment construction which relates to other similar constructions, with or without conjunctive devices, to constitute a *sentence* in Chinese.
- comment** The part of a sentence in a topic-comment sentence which follows the *topic*. The topic establishes the theme or focus of interest in the sentence, while the comment describes, defines, explains or contends, etc. In contrast with a subject-predicate sentence which narrates an incident (e.g. *somebody did something*), a *topic-comment* sentence makes observations, provides descriptions, offers explanations, etc. The verb 是 **shì** ‘to be’, adjectives, modal verbs and the particle 了 **le** are all regular elements in a comment.
- complement** A word, phrase or clause which comes directly after either a verb (i.e. a *verbal complement*) to indicate the duration, frequency, terminal location or destination, result, manner or consequential state of the action expressed by the verb, or after an adjective (i.e. an *adjectival complement*) to indicate its degree or extent.
- composite sentence** A general term referring to a sentence which consists of more than one clause or predicate linked together by conjunction(s) or conjunctive(s). A composite sentence may therefore be of a compound or complex nature, using coordinate or subordinate conjunctions.
- conjunctions** Words used to join two words, phrases or clauses (e.g. ‘and’, ‘otherwise’, ‘because’, etc.). Conjunctions in Chinese often form related pairs (e.g. ‘because . . . therefore’, ‘though . . . however’, etc.).

conjunctives	<i>Referential adverbs</i> used to link two clauses or predicates/comments.
context	The extralinguistic situation or environment in which a verbal event takes place.
cotext	The verbal text (in speech or in writing) that goes before or after the verbal event under consideration.
coverb	In Chinese, a preposition-like verb which is not normally used on its own but is followed by another verb (or other verbs). A coverb with its object forms a <i>coverbal phrase</i> , which indicates location, method, instrument, reference, etc.
dative verb	A verb which requires two objects: a direct object and an indirect object (e.g. ‘give him a present’, in which ‘him’ is the indirect object and ‘present’ is the direct object).
definite reference and indefinite reference	Terms used in connection with nominal or pronominal items. The difference between definite and indefinite reference may be illustrated by the use of the definite article ‘the’ and the indefinite article ‘a(n)’ in English.
degree adverb demonstrative	See adjectives . A word (e.g. ‘this’, ‘that’, ‘these’ or ‘those’) which singles out an entity or entities from others of the same group or category.
direction indicators	A set of <i>motion verbs</i> which follow other verbs as direction complements to indicate the spatial direction or, sometimes, the temporal orientation (i.e. ‘beginning’, ‘continuing’ or ‘ending’) of the actions expressed by those verbs.
disyllabic indefinite reference	Of two syllables. See definite reference .
infinitive	The basic form of a verb which has not been changed to indicate tense, person, or number (in English ‘to go’ vs ‘goes’, ‘went’, etc.).
intensifier	A word used to emphasize or highlight elements in a sentence.
intentional verb	A verb which expresses the speaker’s intentions. It is generally followed by another verb indicating the action which the speaker intends to take (e.g. ‘I plan to study Chinese’).
location phrase	A location word or postpositional phrase preceded by the <i>coverb</i> 在 zài ‘(be) in’, ‘at’.
measure words	Also known as <i>classifiers</i> , these are words that must be used between a numeral or demonstrative and the

- modal verbs** A set of verbs which are used directly before other verbs to indicate possibility, probability, necessity, obligation, permission, willingness, daring, etc. (e.g. 'can', 'must', 'should', 'may', 'dare', etc.).
- monosyllabic** Of one syllable.
- notional** A term used to refer to a construction in which the object of the verb is brought forward to a subject position before the verb, while the verb is still encoded in its active form. Hence the passive voice is not realized in its actual form but can only be notional.
- passive** A term used to refer to a construction in which the object of the verb is brought forward to a subject position before the verb, while the verb is still encoded in its active form. Hence the passive voice is not realized in its actual form but can only be notional.
- noun** A word used to identify or name an individual or a member or members of a group or category, animate or inanimate, real or imaginary. These words are traditionally classified as proper, common, material or abstract with reference to the dominant characteristics of the entities they represent.
- object** A word that follows a transitive verb or a preposition and is seen to be governed by the verb or preposition.
- onomatopoeia** A word that is used to approximate to a natural sound in real life. There are a considerable number of conventionalized onomatopoeic words in Chinese, but they are also regularly created spontaneously.
- particle** In Chinese, a monosyllabic item which has no independent meaning of its own but serves to deliver a structural or functional grammatical message. The sentence particle 吗 **ma**, for example, has no independent semantic significance, but its presence has the function of changing a statement into a general question.
- phonaesthemes** Two-syllabled items which are suffixed to an adjective to add to its descriptive power by introducing some kind of sound connotation.
- postposition** A word placed after a noun to indicate a part of the noun or a spatial/temporal relationship to the noun (e.g. 'on', 'in', 'outside', 'above', etc.). A noun followed by a postposition is called a *postpositional phrase*, which usually indicates location or time, and resembles a *prepositional phrase* in English (e.g. the prepositional phrase 'on the table' in English is rendered in the word order 'the table on' in Chinese).

predicate	The part of a sentence that follows the <i>subject</i> . The subject is usually the initiator or recipient of the action expressed by the verb or verb phrase in the predicate. In a Chinese <i>subject-predicate</i> sentence, the subject is generally of <i>definite reference</i> .
predicative preposition	An adjective which forms the predicate of a sentence. A word used before a noun or other forms of speech indicating a temporal, spatial, instrumental or some other relational concept (e.g. ‘at’ as in ‘at dawn’, ‘by’ as in ‘by air’, ‘in’ as in ‘in here’, etc.).
pronoun	A word which is used instead of a noun to refer to someone or something already mentioned or known (e.g. ‘he’, ‘I’, ‘that’).
referential adverbs	A set of monosyllabic adverbs such as 就 jiù , 才 cái , 都 d(o-)u , 也 y(ev) , 又 yòu , 再 zài , 还 hái , 倒 dào , 却 què , etc., which in a sentence refer either backwards to elements before them or forwards to elements after them, echoing or reinforcing the meaning of those elements.
reflexive object	An object which has the same identity as the subject of the verb in the sentence (e.g. ‘himself’ as in ‘He blames himself’).
serial construction	A type of Chinese sentence in which more than one verb occurs in succession without any conjunctive devices.
set expression	A phrase which is grammatically fixed and whose components cannot normally be changed or re-ordered.
state verb	In Chinese, a verb which is formed by placing the particle 了 le after an adjective. A state verb indicates a state of affairs rather than an action or an event.
subject	See predicate .
tense	See aspect markers .
topic	See comment .

INDEX

- ā** 啊 (particle) 18, 20
a.m. 8
accompanying action **15**
action in progress **15**
action verbs 17
adjectival attributives 10
adjectival predicatives 10, 17
adjectives 2, 8, 9, **10**, 12, 22; (non-gradable) 11
affirmative-negative questions **18**, 19
alternative question 19
ànzhào 按照 (preposition) ‘according to’, ‘in accordance with’ 25
approximate numbers 5
aspect markers 2, 3, 9, 13, 14, **15**,
attitudinal verbs 17
attributives 10
- ba** 吧 (imperative or request particle) 3, 14, **20**; (question particle) **18**
- bǎ** 把 (measure word for knives, chairs, keys, etc; also ‘a handful’) 4, 6
- bàn** 半 ‘half’ 5
- bēi** 杯 (container measure word for tea, coffee, beer, etc.) ‘cup, glass, etc.’ 6
- běn** 本 (measure word for books, etc.) 6
- bǐ** 比 (coverb) ‘compared with’ 12, 24
- bǐ** 笔 (measure word) ‘sum (of money)’ 6
- biān** 边 (noun suffix) ‘side’ 13
- biàn** 遍 (measure word for frequency) 14
- bié** 别 ‘don’t’ 3, 17, **20**
- bìxū** 必须 (modal verb) ‘must’, ‘have to’ 16
brief duration 14
- bù** 不 (negator) 7, 9, 10, 11, 12, 16, **17**; ‘no’ 18; (negative potential complement) **23**
- bù** 部 (measure word for cars) 6
- bù bì** 不必 (modal verb) ‘need not’ 16
- bù dé** 不得 (formal) ‘must not’ 20
- bù shǎo** 不少 ‘many’, ‘quite a few’ 7, 10
- bù shì** 不是 ‘no’ 18, 19
- bù xǔ** 不许 (formal) ‘not permitted’ 20
- bù yào** 不要 (modal verb) ‘don’t’ 17, **20**
- bù yòng** 不用 (modal verb) ‘need not’ 16
- bù zhǔn** 不准 (formal) ‘not allowed’ 20
- bùguò** 不过 (conjunction) ‘but’, ‘nevertheless’ 10
- chà** 差 ‘to’ (in time of day) 8
- chǎng** 场 (measure word for games, films, etc.) 5, 10
- cháng** 场 (measure word) ‘shower (of rain)’, ‘fall (of snow)’ 6
- cháo** 朝 (coverb) ‘towards’, ‘in the direction of’ 24
- chí** 迟 (adverb) ‘late’ 12
Chinese full-stop 1
Chinese zodiac 11
- chū** 出 (measure word for plays) 6; (direction indicator) ‘to exit’ 21

- chuàn** 串 (measure word) ‘bunch (of grapes, bananas)’ 6
- chúle** 除了 (**zhī wài** 之外/ **yǐ wài** 以外) (preposition) ‘apart from’, ‘as well as’ 25
- cì** 次 (measure word for frequency) 14
- collective nouns 6
- collectivized noun 1
- comparisons **12**
- complement 12, 15, **21**, **22**, **23**
- complement of direction **21**, **23**
- complement of location/destination **21**
- complement of manner **22**
- complement of result 15, **22**, **23**
- complement of resultant state 22
- completed action 2, 9, **15**
- cóng** 从 (coverb) ‘from’, ‘since’ 13, 24
- cónglái** 从来 (time expression) ‘all along’ (always with negator) 17
- continuous state 13, **15**
- coverbs 4, **24**
- cuō** 撮 (measure word) ‘pinch (of salt)’ 6
- dàjiā** 大家 (pronoun) ‘everybody’ 3
- dào** 到 (coverb) ‘to’ 4, 13, 24; ‘to arrive’ 14, 21
- date (of the month) 8
- dates **8**
- day 6
- day of the week 8
- de duō** 得多 (degree complement) ‘much (more)’ 12
- de shíhòu** 的时候 (following a time or verb phrase) ‘when . . .’ 14
- de** 得 (complement of manner) 12, **22**; (potential complement) **23**
- de** 的 (particle for attributive) 3, 9, 10, 11, 14
- decimal 5
- definite **2**, 7
- definite reference 1, **2**, 7, 15, 22
- degree adverbs 10, 12
- degree complement 12
- děi** 得 (modal verb) ‘have to’ 16
- demonstratives **2**, 6, 10
- descriptive sentences 15
- dī** 滴 (measure word) ‘a drop of (water)’ 6
- dì** 第 (ordinal prefix) 5
- diǎn** 点 ‘point’ (in decimals) 5; (measure word) ‘hour’, ‘o’clock (in times of day)’ 8
- dǐng** 顶 (measure word for hats, etc.) 6
- disyllabic prepositions **25**
- dòng** 栋 (measure word for buildings) 6
- dōu** 都 ‘all, both’ 2, 11, 14, 17; (in emphatic constructions) 7, 10
- duì** 对 (measure word) ‘a pair’ 6; ‘yes’ 18, 19; (coverb) ‘to, at, towards’ 24, 25
- duìyú** 对于 (preposition) ‘as to’, ‘about’ 25
- dun-comma 1
- duō jiǔ** 多久 ‘how long’ 9
- duō le** 多了 (degree complement) ‘much (more)’ 12
- duō** 多 ‘over’ (with numbers) 5; (question word) ‘how’ (with adjective) 9; (exclamation) ‘how’ 20
- duǒ** 朵 (measure word for flowers, clouds) 6, 10
- duōme** 多么 (exclamation) ‘how’ 20
- duōshǎo** 多少 ‘how much/how many’ 5, 9
- duration 14
- exclamations **20**
- expository sentences 15
- fēn** 分 (in fractions, percentage) 5; ‘minute’ (in time of day) 8
- fēn zhī** 分之 (in fractions, percentages) 5
- fēng** 封 (measure word for letters) 6
- fractions 5
- frequency 14
- fù** 副 (measure word for spectacles) 6
- fú** 幅 (measure word for paintings) 6
- fùjìn** 附近 (postposition) ‘near’ 13

- gāi** 该 (modal verb) ‘ought to’ 16
gǎn 敢 (modal verb) ‘dare’ 16, 17
gè 个 (common measure word) 6
gěi 给 (coverb) ‘for, to’ 24
gēn 根 (measure word for matches, ropes, thread, etc.) 6
gēn 跟 (coverb) ‘with’ 3, 24; (in similarity expressions) 12
 general questions 18, 19
gèng 更 (degree adverb) ‘even (more)’ 12
gēnjù 根据 (preposition) ‘according to’, ‘on the basis of’ 25
gòu 够 ‘enough’ 10
guān 罐 (measure word) ‘bottle (of wine)’ 6
guānyú 关于 (preposition) ‘regarding’, ‘as regards’ 25
guo 过 (aspect marker) 3, 14, 15, 17, 18; (direction indicator) ‘to cross’ 21
- habitual action 2
hái 还 (degree adverb) ‘even (more)’ 12; (referential adverb) ‘still’, ‘yet’ 17
hái yào 还要 (degree adverb) ‘even (more)’ 12
háishì 还是 (alternative question) ‘or’ 19
hǎo bù hǎo 好不好 (tag in suggestions) ‘how about ...’ 19
hǎo jǐ 好几 ‘a good many’, ‘quite a few’ 14
hǎo ma 好吗 (tag in suggestions) ‘how about ...’ 19
hé 和 (conjunction) ‘and’ 1; (in similarity expressions) 12; (coverb) ‘with’ 24
hěn 很 (degree adverb) ‘very’ 10
hòu 后 (time expression) ‘after’ 8; (postposition) ‘behind’ 13
 hour 6
 how (with adjective) 9
 how long 9
 how much/how many 5, 9
 how, in what way 9
- huì** 会 (modal verb) ‘be likely to’, ‘can’, ‘be able to’, ‘be good at’, ‘be skilful in’ 16
huí 回 (direction indicator) ‘to return’ 21
huòzhě 或者 ‘or’ 19
- imperatives 20
 indefinite 2
 indefinite plurals 2, 7, 12, 14
 indefinite reference 2, 7, 15
 interrogative pronouns 4, 9, 18
- jǐ** 几 ‘a few’, ‘several’ 2, 7, 14; (question word) ‘how many’ (with numbers up to ten) 5, 6, 7, 8, 9
jiā 家 ‘home’; (measure word for shops, banks, etc.) 4
jià 架 (measure word for planes) 6
jiàn 件 (measure word for shirts, coats, etc.) 6, 10
jiān 间 (measure word for rooms, schools, etc.) 6
jiào 叫 ‘tell’, ‘order’ 20
jìn 进 (direction indicator) ‘to enter’ 21
jǐshí 几时 (interrogative) ‘when’ 8
jiù 就 ‘then’ 15
jiūjīng 究竟 (adverb) ‘after all’ 23
jù 句 (measure word for words, sentences) 6
jú 局 (measure word for a game of chess) 6
- kè** 刻 ‘quarter of an hour’ (in time of day) 8
kē 棵 (measure word for trees, plants, etc.) 6
kē 颗 (measure word for pearls, beans, etc.) 6
kěn 肯 (modal verb) ‘be willing to’ 16
kěshì 可是 (conjunction) ‘but’ 10
kěyǐ 可以 (modal verb) ‘can’, ‘may’ 16, 17, 23; (in tag questions) 19
kuài 块 (measure word) ‘a piece of’ 6

- la** 啦 (exclamation) 20
- lái** 来 ‘to come’ 3, 11; ‘about’ (in approximate numbers) 5; (complement of direction) 21, 24
- lǎo** 老 (familiar term of address to someone older) ‘old’ 9
- le** 了 (aspect marker) 2, 9, **15**, 17, 18, 21, 22; (sentence particle) 3, 14, 10, 15, 17, 18, 20, 22
- lí** 离 (coverb) ‘from’ (distance) 9, 24
- li** 粒 (measure word) ‘a grain of (rice, sand, etc.)’ 6
- lǐ** 里 (postposition) ‘in(side)’ 13
- lián** 连 ‘even’ 7
- liǎng** 两 ‘two’ (before a measure word) 5
- liàng** 辆 (measure word for cars) 6
- líng** 零 ‘zero’ 5, 8
- location expressions **13**,
location phrase 2, 11, 21
- ma** 吗 (question particle) 2, 11, **18**
- measure words 1, 2, **6**
- méi** 没 (negator) 17, 22
- méiyǒu** 没有 (negator) 2, 3, 7, 11, 15, **17**, 18, 22; ‘have not’ 4, 7, 18; (in negative comparisons) 12
- mén** 们 (plural suffix) 1, 3, 7
- miàn** 面 (noun suffix) ‘side’ 13
- modal verb 2, **16**, 17, 18
- month 6, 8
- more and more . . . 12
- na** 哪 (exclamation) 3, 20
- nǎ/něi wèi** 哪位 (interrogative pronoun) ‘who’, ‘which person (polite)’ 4
- nǎ/něi** 哪 (question word) ‘which’ 4
- nà/nèi** 那 (demonstrative pronoun or adjective) ‘that’ 2
- nàme** 那么 (in comparisons, with an adjective) ‘so’ 12
- nǎr** 哪儿 (question word) ‘where’ 1, 4; (in indefinite expressions) 7
- nàr** 那儿 (postposition) ‘at the home of’, ‘where someone is’ 13
- narrative sentences 15
- ne** 呢 (sentence particle) 18
- negators 2, 3, 7, 9, 10, 11, 12, 16, **17**
- néng** 能 (modal verb) ‘can’, ‘may’, ‘be able to’ 16, 23
- nǐ** 你 (personal pronoun) ‘you’ 3
- nǐmen** 你们 (personal pronoun) ‘you (pl)’ 1, 3
- nín** 您 (personal pronoun) ‘you (polite)’ 3
- no 18
- nouns 1
- numerals/numbers 1, **5**, 6, 10
- or 19
- ordinal numbers 5
- p.m. 8
- pair 6
- pángbiān** 旁边 (postposition) ‘by’, ‘beside’ 13
- passive voice 18
- past experience 3, 14, **15**
- percentage 5
- personal pronouns **3**
- phonaesthemes 22
- pǐ** 匹 (measure word for horse) 10
- piàn** 片 (measure word) ‘a slice of (bread)’ 6
- piān** 篇 (measure word for composition, writing) 6
- píng(zhe)** 凭(着) (preposition) ‘on the basis of’ 25
- please 15
- possession 3
- possessive adjectives 3
- possessive pronouns 3
- postpositions 13
- potential complement **23**
- predicatives 10
- prepositions **25**; (see also *coverbs*)
- qǐ** 起 (direction indicator) ‘to rise’ 21
- qián** 前 (time expression) ‘before’ 8; (postposition) ‘before’, ‘in front of’ 13; ‘before’, ‘ago’ 14
- qǐlái** 起来 (aspect marker) 15, 17, 21
- qǐng** 请 (polite request) ‘please’ 15, **20**

- qù** 去 ‘to go’ (complement of direction) 21, 24
- quán** 全 ‘all’, ‘entirely’ 11
questions 4, 9, 18, 19
- qún** 群 (measure word) a crowd, flock, pack 6
- ràng** 让 ‘let’, ‘allow’ 20
reduplicated adjectives 10
reduplicated measure words 6
reference 2
reflexive object 3
- rén** 人 (pronoun) ‘person’, ‘anybody’ 3
- rénjiā** 人家 (pronoun) ‘others’ 3
- shàng** 上 ‘last’, ‘previous’ 5, 8;
(postposition) ‘on’, ‘above’, ‘over’ 13; (direction indicator) ‘to ascend’ 21
- shàngxià** 上下 ‘approximately’ 5
- shéi de** 谁的 (interrogative possessive pronoun/adjective) ‘whose’ 4
- shéi/shuí** 谁 (interrogative pronoun) ‘who(m)’ 4; (in indefinite expressions) 7
- shénme** 什么 (interrogative pronoun/adjective) ‘what’ 4; (in indefinite expressions) 7
- shénme defang** 什么地方 ‘where’, ‘what place’ 4
- shénme shíhòu** 什么时候 (interrogative) ‘when’ 8
- shí** 时 (following a verb phrase) ‘when . . .’ 14
- shì** 是 ‘to be’ 2, 10, 11, 13; ‘yes’ 18; (emphatic structure) 19
- shì de** 是的 ‘yes’ 18, 19
- shì . . . de** 是 . . . 的 (emphatic structure) 11, 19
- shǒu** 首 (measure word for songs, poems, etc.) 6
- shù** 束 (measure word) ‘bouquet (of flowers)’ 6
- shuāng** 双 (measure word) ‘a pair’ 6, 10
similarity 12
- sìzhōu** 四周 (postposition) ‘around’ 13
state verbs 17
subject-predicate 2
- suǒ** 所 (measure word for houses) 6
superlative 12
- tā** 他/她/它 (personal pronoun) ‘he(him)’, ‘she(her)’, ‘it’ 3
tag questions 19
- tài** 太 (adverb) ‘too’ 10
- tāmen** 他们/她们/它们 (personal pronoun) ‘they/them’ 1, 3
- tàng** 趟 (measure word for frequency) 14
tense 8, 14, 15
the more . . . the more . . . 12
- tì** 替 (coverb) ‘for’, ‘on behalf of’ 24
- tiáo** 条 (measure word for roads, skirts, dogs, trousers – ‘a pair’, etc.) 6, 10
time expression 3, 8, 15
time of day 8
times 8
- tóng** 同 (in similarity expressions) 12; (coverb) ‘with’ 24
- tǒng** 桶 (measure word) ‘pail’, ‘bucket’ 6
too 10
topic-comment 2, 11
- tou** 头 (noun suffix) ‘side’ 13
verb-object verbs 9, 22
- wa** 哇 (exclamation) 20
- wài** 外 (postposition) ‘outside’ 13
- wǎn** 晚 (adverb) ‘late’ 12
- wǎng/wàng** 往 (coverb) ‘towards’, ‘in the direction of’ 24
week 6
- wèi** 为 (coverb) ‘for’ 6, 24
- wèi shénme** 为什么 (question word) ‘why’ 9
- wèile** 为了 (preposition) ‘in order to’, ‘so that’ 25
what 4
when (conjunction) 14
when (interrogative) 8

- where 1, 4
 which 4
 who/whom 4
 whose 4
 why 9
wǒ 我 (personal pronoun) ‘I(me)’ 3
wǒmen 我们 (personal pronoun)
 ‘we(us)’
- xià** 下 ‘next’ 5, 8; (postposition)
 ‘under’, ‘below’, ‘beneath’ 13;
 (direction indicator) ‘to descend’
 21
xiàlá 下来 (aspect marker) 15,
 17, 21
xiān 先 (adverb) ‘early’ 12
xiàng 向 (coverb) ‘towards’, ‘in the
 direction of’ 24
xiǎng 想 (modal verb) ‘want’, ‘would
 like to’ 1, 16, 17
xiǎo 小 (familiar term of address to
 someone younger) ‘young’ 9
xiàqù 下去 (aspect marker) 15,
 17, 21
xiē 些 (plural suffix [for
 demonstratives]) 2, 4
xīhuan 喜欢 (attitudinal verb) ‘like
 to’ 17
xíng bù xíng 行不行 (tag question)
 ‘is it all right if . . .’ 19
xíng ma 行吗 (question tag) ‘is it all
 right if . . .’ 19
xǔduō 许多 ‘many’, ‘much’, ‘a great
 deal’ 7, 10
- ya** 呀 (exclamation) 20
yán 沿 (coverb) ‘along(side)’ 24
yán zhe 沿着 (coverb) ‘along’ 24
yāo 么 ‘one’, alternative for **yī** 5
yào 要 (modal verb) ‘want’, ‘would
 like to’ 1, 16
yě 也 (in emphatic constructions) 7,
 10, 18; ‘also’ 2, 17
 year 8
 yes 18
yī 一 ‘a(n), one’ 1
yidiǎnr/diǎnr 一点儿 ‘some’, ‘a little’,
 ‘a bit’ 4, 7, 10, 12, 18
- yǐhòu** 以后 ‘afterwards’ 14;
 (following a time or verb phrase)
 ‘later, after . . .’ 14
yīhuìr 一会儿 (brief duration) ‘a
 while’ 14
yǐjīng 已经 (time adverb) ‘already’
 14, 17
yīnggāi 应该 (modal verb) ‘ought to’
 16
yǐqián 以前 ‘previously’ 14;
 (following a time or verb phrase)
 ‘ago’, ‘before . . .’ 14
yīxià 一下 (brief duration) ‘a
 moment’ 14
yīxiē 一些 ‘some’ 2, 7, 12
yīyàng 一样 ‘(to be) the same’ 12,
 24
yòu 又 ‘once again’ 17
yǒu 有 ‘exist’, ‘to have’ 2, 4, 7, 9, 10,
 11, 13, 18; (in comparisons) 12
yóu 由 (coverb) ‘up to’, ‘by’, ‘from’
 24
yóuyú 由于 (preposition) 25
yǔ 与 (in similarity expressions) 12;
 (coverb) ‘with’ 24
yú 于 (coverb) ‘in’, ‘on’, ‘at’ 24
yuànyì 愿意 (modal verb) ‘be willing
 to’ 16, 17
yuè lái yuè . . . 越来越 ‘more and
 more . . .’ 12
yuè . . . yuè . . . 越 . . . 越 ‘the more . . .
 the more . . .’ 12
yuèfèn 月份 ‘month’ 8
- zài** 在 ‘to be in/at/on’ 4, 21; (coverb)
 ‘in’, ‘at’ 4, 13, 24; (aspect marker)
 15, 17
zánmen 咱们 (personal pronoun)
 ‘we(us)’ 3, 20
zǎo 早 (adverb) ‘early’ 12
zěn yàng 怎样 (question word)
 ‘how’, ‘in what way’ 9
zěnme 怎么 (question word) ‘how’,
 ‘in what way’ 9; ‘how is it . . .’,
 ‘how come . . .’ 9
zěnme yàng 怎么样 (question word)
 ‘how’, ‘in what way’ 9; (predicative)
 ‘what is (something/someone)

- like', 'how is (something/ someone)' 9; (question word) 'what/how about . . . ' 9
- zhāng** 张 (measure word for paintings, tables, paper – 'a piece of', etc.) 6
- zhe** 着 (aspect marker) 13, 15, 17
- zhè/zhèi** 这 (demonstrative pronoun or adjective) 'this' 2
- zhème** 这么 (in comparisons, with an adjective) 'so' 12
- zhēn** 真 (degree adverb) 'really', 'truly' 18, 20
- zhèn** 阵 (measure word) 'gust (of wind)', 'peal (of thunder)' 6
- zhèngzài** 正在 (aspect marker) 'in the process of' 15
- zhèr** 这儿 'here' 13, 14
- zhī** 只 (measure word for animals, birds, etc.; one of a pair) 6
- zhǐ** 只 'only' 1
- zhī** 支 (measure word for pens, etc.) 6
- zhī hòu** 之后 (following a time or verb phrase) 'later', 'after . . . ' 14
- zhī qián** 之前 (following a time or verb phrase) 'ago', 'before . . . ' 14
- zhīyú** 至于 (preposition) 'as for', 'as far as . . . is concerned' 25
- zhōng** 中 (time expression) 'during' 8, 14
- zhōng(jiān)** 中(间) (postposition) 'in (the middle of)', 'among', 'between' 13
- zhōuwéi** 周围 (postposition) 'around' 13
- zhuàng** 幢 (measure word for buildings) 6
- zhuōzi** 桌子 'table', (as measure word) 'a table (full) of . . . ' 6
- zì** 自 (coverb) 'from' 24
- zìjǐ** 自己 (pronoun) '(one)self'; (with **de** 的) '(one's) own' 3
- zuì** 最 (superlative) 'most' 12
- zuò** 座 (measure word for buildings, mountains) 6
- zuǒyòu** 左右 'approximately' 5